Tool Survey
Existing and Proposed

Lean Urbanism is a way to restore common sense to the processes of development, building, starting small businesses, community engagement, and acquiring the necessary skills. The Project for Lean Urbanism is collecting and developing tools and daylighting techniques to enable and encourage those activities. This collection is the result of a survey to identify tools developed elsewhere and to track ideas for those that are needed. As tools are developed by the Project for Lean Urbanism, they will be made freely available at www.leanurbanism.org.

The categorization of tools in this Survey corresponds loosely with the platforms of Lean Urbanism:
• Lean Building
• Lean Development
• Lean Regulation
• Lean Infrastructure
• Lean Business
• Lean Financing
• Lean Governing
• Lean Learning

The tools in each category are further grouped according to whether they are ready tools, applied tools, or proposed tools.

Ready Tools are publicly available for use, but perhaps are not yet widely tested.

Applied Tools have been used and tested, some to the point where they are precedents, often created by entities outside the Lean Urbanism group.

Proposed Tools are in the process of development, or are simply ideas to address an identified need.

Bruce Donnelly is an urban planner, editor, and New Urbanist intellectual based in Cleveland, Ohio. His main work is in editing plans and published works, and in analyzing codes and documents and framing/explaining issues, problems, and solutions. He has collaborated on codes and comprehensive plans for several cities, has worked on the Louisiana Speaks recovery plan, and has authored essays in Landscape Urbanism and its Discontents and the upcoming Transect Reader.

Sandy Sorlien is an urban code writer, editor, photographer, and teacher. She is former Director of Technical Research for the Center for Applied Transect Studies, and was the managing editor for the DPZ SmartCode and its Modules from 2005 to 2010. She wrote the Pocket Code in 2013. Sandy is currently employed by the Philadelphia Water Department as an Environmental Educator at the Fairmount Water Works. She is completing a photographic book about Main Streets and has embarked on another about the Schuylkill River. In March 2014 she won a micro-grant from the Awesome Foundation (very lean) for her public art project, Rescue H2O.
# Table of Contents

**Introduction** ......................................................................................................................... 10  
  Lean Urbanism ................................................................................................................................. 10  
  Ready, Applied, and Proposed Tools ................................................................................................. 10  

**Lean Building** ......................................................................................................................... 11  
  **Ready: Building** ............................................................................................................................. 12  
    Developer in a Box ............................................................................................................................. 12  
    A Hierarchy of Residential Building Types ..................................................................................... 13  
    Housing Type Studies ...................................................................................................................... 14  
    Live-in Low-tech Construction ........................................................................................................ 16  
    Internal Fabrication .......................................................................................................................... 16  
    Modular Construction ....................................................................................................................... 16  
    Timbrel Arches and Vaults ................................................................................................................ 17  
    An Incremental Method for Rentals .................................................................................................. 18  
    Codes for Existing Buildings .......................................................................................................... 18  
  **Applied: Building** ..................................................................................................................... 20  
    Neighborhood Grit ............................................................................................................................ 20  
    Preservation Green Lab .................................................................................................................... 20  
    Architectural Salvage ...................................................................................................................... 22  
    Case Studies of Small Houses ........................................................................................................ 22  
    Tools for Leaning Environmental Technology ............................................................................... 22  
    Sustainable Urbanism Performance-based Module ........................................................................ 23  
  **Proposed: Building** .................................................................................................................. 24  
    A Fundable Building Initiative ......................................................................................................... 24  
    Homeownership Reform ................................................................................................................ 25  

**Lean Development** ............................................................................................................... 26  
  **Ready: Development** ............................................................................................................... 27  
    Incremental Greenfield Development ............................................................................................. 27  
    Eliminating Parking Minimums ....................................................................................................... 28  
    Price Parking for 15 Percent Clearance ......................................................................................... 29  
    Framing Public Issues .................................................................................................................... 29  
    Local Watchdogging ....................................................................................................................... 29  
    Food Self-Sufficiency on a small lot ............................................................................................... 30  
    Adaptive Agricultural Reuse Module ............................................................................................ 30
Walkability Audit Tools ................................................................. 31
Affordable Housing Incentives Module .......................................... 31

**Applied: Development** ................................................................. 32
  Performative Democracy ........................................................... 32
  Markets on Platforms ............................................................... 33
  Rapid Deployment ................................................................. 33
  Nonprofit Community Development ........................................ 35
  Tools for Streamlining Code Compliance .................................... 35
  Toolkits and Software for 3D Visualization .................................. 36
  Self-created Plazas ................................................................ 37
  Canal Urbanism Module ........................................................... 37
  Community Fire Breaks ............................................................ 38

**Proposed: Development** ............................................................... 39
  Reverse-Engineering Sabotage ................................................... 39

**Lean Regulation** ........................................................................ 40

**Ready: Regulation** ..................................................................... 41
  Code Reform ........................................................................... 41
    Code and Zoning Audit .......................................................... 41
    Lean Code Tool ................................................................. 41
    Pocket Code ....................................................................... 42
    Lean Codes ........................................................................ 42
    Adaptive Code ..................................................................... 42
    Type-based Form-based Codes .............................................. 43
    Code Tool for Accessory Dwelling Units ................................. 43
    Synergy Between Code and Design Center ............................... 43
    Limits on Store Size ............................................................. 44
    Easements for Small Clusters ................................................ 44

**Applied: Regulation** ................................................................. 45
  Lean Code Draft ................................................................... 45
  San Francisco Zoning Code of 1948 ........................................... 45

**Proposed: Regulation** ................................................................. 47
  Detroit's Pink Zone .................................................................. 47
  Pink Code ............................................................................... 47
  "No Minimums" Codes ........................................................... 47
  The Codes Project ................................................................. 48
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New Code Technology</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rules for Homeless Encampments</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neighborhood Conservation Kit</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ideas for Fundable Regulatory Initiatives</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lean Infrastructure</strong></td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ready: Infrastructure</strong></td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Existing Infrastructure</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lean Sidewalks</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low-head Hydro</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lean, Scalable, and Incremental Wastewater Treatment</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bicycle Infrastructure Module</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light Imprint Matrix and Handbook</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Development Models for Street Types</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lean Business</strong></td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ready: Business</strong></td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lean Startup Tools</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intellectual Property</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ratings and Reports</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walk Score</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H+T Index</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOCUS Reports</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small Change Index</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RentFax</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mentorship and Incubation</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small Business Administration</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Boot Camps</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maker City Book</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business-oriented Cooperative Service Organizations</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Business Incubators</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legal Support for Co-ops and the Sharing Economy</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDS Consulting Co-op</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Applied: Business</strong></td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreateHereNow Connecticut</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redeveloping Publicly Owned Land</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tools for Supporting Businesses in Detroit</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Collaborative Economy .......................................................... 66
Single-Crew Workplaces .......................................................... 66
Callister Brewing Co ................................................................. 67

Proposed: Business ...................................................................... 68
Policy Changes for Lean Development ........................................ 68
Placemaking Bond Funds ......................................................... 69
Innovation Districts .................................................................... 69
Remaking Martin Luther King Jr. Streets ................................... 70

Lean Financing ............................................................................ 71
Ready: Financing ......................................................................... 72
Community Credit Unions and Specialized Revolving Loan Funds ........................................................................ 72
Community Credit Unions ....................................................... 72
Specialized Revolving Loan Funds ......................................... 72
Neighborly ................................................................................ 73
Neighborhood Investment Co-ops ........................................... 73
ioby — Nonprofit Crowdsourcing ............................................. 74
Self-Organized Credit Circles .................................................. 74

Proposed: Financing .................................................................... 75
Development Fees, Incentives, and Local Equity ....................... 75

Lean Governing ........................................................................... 76
Ready: Governing ........................................................................ 77
Institutional Support for Developing Small ............................. 77
Place-based Management ....................................................... 77
Better Homeowners' Associations .......................................... 78
LOCUS Programs ..................................................................... 80
Neighborhood Leadership ...................................................... 81
Design and Innovation Centers .............................................. 81
BIMBY Toolkit .......................................................................... 82

Applied: Governing .................................................................... 83
Localism ..................................................................................... 83
Social Enterprises and Benefit Corporations ........................... 83
National Main Street program ............................................... 84

Proposed: Governing .................................................................. 85
Roles for HOAs and PUDs ....................................................... 85
Quicker New Construction ..................................................... 85
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High Cost of Free Parking Slides</td>
<td>352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The High Cost of Free Parking</td>
<td>353</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agriculture on a 50-foot lot</td>
<td>460</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagram of 50-foot Lot</td>
<td>461</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food Movement of Lean Communities</td>
<td>462</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Food Movement of Lean Communities</td>
<td>463</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adaptive Agricultural Reuse</td>
<td>469</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adaptive Agricultural Reuse SmartCode Module</td>
<td>470</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affordable Housing Incentives Module</td>
<td>474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affordable Housing Incentives SmartCode Module</td>
<td>475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subsidiarity - Our Localism</td>
<td>478</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subsidiarity (Our Localism)</td>
<td>479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Institute for Market Transformation Checklist</td>
<td>482</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streamlining Compliance Processes</td>
<td>483</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plaza Application and Guidelines</td>
<td>496</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pedestrian Plaza Guidelines &amp; Application</td>
<td>497</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canal Urbanism Module</td>
<td>517</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canal Urbanism SmartCode Module</td>
<td>518</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire Mitigation in Wildlands</td>
<td>530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire Mitigation in the Wildland Urban Interface SmartCode Module</td>
<td>531</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1944 CIA Sabotage Toolkit</td>
<td>545</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple-Sabotage Field Manual</td>
<td>546</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pocket Code</td>
<td>566</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Pocket Code</td>
<td>567</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lean Code Tool</td>
<td>572</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lean Code Tool</td>
<td>573</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adaptive Code</td>
<td>604</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Adaptive Code</td>
<td>605</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Dumb Code</td>
<td>612</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Common Sense Code for Urban Architecture</td>
<td>613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Downtown Lafayette Code</td>
<td>614</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article 2 Districts “D” Downtown</td>
<td>615</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Development Design Center Explained</td>
<td>642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Development &amp; Design Center</td>
<td>643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Store Size Caps</td>
<td>647</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introduction

Lean Urbanism

The Lean Urbanism was started by Andrés Duany. It has its own website at the Center for Applied Transect Studies, and supported by the John S. and James L. Knight Foundation. Stephen Mouzon has blogged a short summary of it, and about why “Lean is the New Green.”

There is a lexicon of terms by Andrés Duany, Sandy Sorlien, and the Lean Urbanism online group. There are several white papers and a list of related articles publicly available.

The tools in this Survey have been categorized roughly according to the several realms listed on the Lean Urbanism website. The tools in each category are further grouped according to whether they are ready tools, applied tools, or proposed tools.

Ready, Applied, and Proposed Tools

The tools are organized into several categories. Each of those categories is subdivided into the following sub-categories:

Ready Tools: These are publicly and available for use, but perhaps are not yet widely tested.

Applied Tools: These have been used and tested, some to the point where they are precedents, often created by entities outside the Lean Urbanism group.

Proposed Tools: These are in the process of development, or are simply ideas to address an identified need.
Lean Building

These tools pertain to lean building types, methods, and resources.

Ready: Building ................................................................. 12
  Developer in a Box ......................................................... 12
  A Hierarchy of Residential Building Types ................................ 13
  Housing Type Studies .................................................... 14
  Live-in Low-tech Construction ........................................ 16
  Internal Fabrication ........................................................ 16
  Modular Construction ..................................................... 16
  Timbrel Arches and Vaults .............................................. 17
  An Incremental Method for Rentals ................................... 18
  Codes for Existing Buildings .......................................... 18

Applied: Building .............................................................. 20
  Neighborhood Grit ....................................................... 20
  Preservation Green Lab .................................................. 20
  Architectural Salvage ................................................... 22
  Case Studies of Small Houses ......................................... 22
  Tools for Leaning Environmental Technology ....................... 22
  Sustainable Urbanism Performance-based Module .................. 23

Proposed: Building ............................................................ 24
  A Fundable Building Initiative ......................................... 24
  Homeownership Reform ................................................. 25
Ready: Building

The following are ready-to-use building types that can be used in the United States, at least in some capacity.

Developer in a Box

R. John Anderson and David Kim have produced a Developer in a Box tool. These are the general tasks that John Anderson suggested as part of that effort:

1. Build model projects while documenting the component parts for rookies, and the order of work. Projects should be characterized by small, incremental, development with regular repeatable building types.

2. Create and curate the approximately 127 essential PDFs and templates needed to develop lean projects and build lean everyday buildings. This started at the 202 session at CNU 22 in Buffalo. There has been a lot of interest from rookie developers. Strong Towns did a relevant interview (voice recording) with John Anderson, and he also has a video on Vimeo: The Dark Art of Developing Small Projects. There is also a Facebook page well-used by over 1000 small developers.

3. Figure out an internship/apprentice circuit so that aspiring builders and developers can work with practicing builders and developers for 4-6 months. Seeing operations on the ground with more than one developer would be best. Maybe this would be a fellowship with some foundation grant support. I think having a stream of protégés rolling through a builder or developer's shop would establish an ethos of research and development and training. Dan Camp, Bill Gietema, and Bob Chapman indicated that they needed to get a few more projects in their pipeline for their shops to be ready for folks investing their time to learn the trade.

4. Convene face-to-face workshops of various duration to share best practices and problems that need solutions. Online stuff like Google Hangouts, WebEx and
GoToMeeting can be helpful, but being in the same place with peers, seeing projects, and sharing food and drink are more potent. This is cheapest online, but face-to-face workshops make for better connections.

A HIERARCHY OF RESIDENTIAL BUILDING TYPES

R. John Anderson proposed a hierarchy of residential building types. We can also add trailer parks to the list. The stairstep function of cost is visible at the three minute mark in this video. John Anderson writes:

There is a range of building types that work under the frame of making small possible. Some of them are larger buildings that still provide a lot of ‘small’ benefits. If we understand the relative strengths and weaknesses of each building type, we can better imagine how they will be deployed within the neighborhood, and how a desirable mix will be achieved in a variety of settings and circumstances. The larger scale, more expensive buildings are most vulnerable to constraints from local context such as site dimensions and configuration, parking requirements, rents that are too low, opportunity costs that are too high, or politics that are against the building type or project scale.

David Kim and I are setting aside the smaller lean building types for the moment. These include single story main street or workshop/flex buildings, freestanding houses, live/works, accessory dwelling units, bungalow courts, and other buildings with 3 dwelling units or fewer. These building types do not trigger the Federal Fair Housing Act or a more demanding code treatment under the IBC or local off-street parking requirements. Those are the rules you have to deal with in construction, finance, and local entitlements if you are attempting incremental development today without the benefit of a Pink Zone. The following list ramps up in scale and cost:
1. Single Stair Walk-up 2-3 stories. (IBC TYPE V)
2. Two Stair + corridor Walk-up 2-3 stories. (IBC TYPE V)
3. Walk-up Rear Gallery Building with two stairs / 2-3 stories. (IBC TYPE V)
4. Elevator Real Gallery Building with two stairs / 2-4 stories. (IBC TYPE V)
5. Elevator Building with two stairs and a double-loaded corridor 2-4 stories (IBC TYPE V)
6. Hybrid Elevator Building with two stairs and a double-loaded corridor 2-5 stories (IBC TYPE V over TYPE I podium).

Moving up on the scale can also bring a hit in reduced efficiency in the floor plan. Moving from a Single Stair Walk-up to a two stair + corridor walk-up also includes a reduction in yield because the un-rentable portion of the building devoted to common area goes up. An example on a 100' x 100' parcel served by an alley:

- A freestanding 80' x 40' three story, Single Stair Walk-up has 11% of its SF in common area.
- With rated walls at the side property lines, a 100' x 60' three story, Two Stair + Corridor Walk-up has 18% of its SF in common area.

Housing Type Studies

1. An Atlantic article makes the case for trailer parks. It discusses issues of class and cost, as well as codes and design.

2. DPZ’s matrix-like DPZ’s One-Story Attached Housing (on page 110) — one of many examples.
3. Andrew Frey of the Townhouse Center has building type studies and resources. These student housing studies are particularly interesting:
   - The Infill Housing Book
   - Infill Housing Book 2

4. The Urban Housing Handbook by Eric Firley. (Amazon and Google)

5. A House In The City: Home Truths in Urban Architecture by Robert Dalziel Sheila Qureshi. (Amazon and Google)

6. Massive Small: The Operating Programme for Smart Urbanism by Kelvin Campbell (British) (Amazon and Google)

7. Andrew also pointed out that High Res Miami has a forum for discussion around fine-grained urbanism for Miami. It especially promotes "missing middle housing." (See the missing middle housing website by Opticos.)

8. Sara Hines has written Cottage Communities – The American Camp Meeting Movement: A Study in Lean Urbanism about Camp Meetings — Methodist camps and Chautauqua camps. (See Amazon and Google.) She writes,

   The book is a study of the Camp Meeting Movement and how a vernacular system of planning and spatial design creates a sense of community through an intuitive sense of space and design. Buildings tend to be extremely lean in design and construction with sometimes ingenious systems to get the most impact with the least material. The result is visually rich, complex space, always walkable, and evolved in many locations to include retail, commercial and civic buildings--early acts of town creation. The land use governance in many cases supports the affordability and consistent quality over time periods well over 150 years. Where these camp meetings are well maintained, the quality of the experience of being in a dense community of small structures is very high. Even when camps have suffered from
lack of care, there are many lessons to be learned about what is possible with the human experience of community.

**LIVE-IN LOW-TECH CONSTRUCTION**

Clay Chapman has a website, *Hope for Architecture*, which explains his technique for controlling construction cost as well as his method for load-bearing masonry construction. He lives on-site, and lays the bricks day by day until the construction is complete. A *Better Cities! article* claims: “Chapman lays bricks three bricks deep, giving his walls 12 inches of insulating thermal mass.” However, this is disputable, since masonry provides a great deal of thermal mass, but little insulation.

**INTERNAL FABRICATION**

Dan Camp fabricates his own details for his *Cotton District* development.

1. He builds details like cupolas, fanlights, and trim in-house.
2. Some of these items are done in concrete. They build the details (e.g., column capitals) out of wood, then make molds, and cast them in concrete. Their bull-nose details, stairs, and so on are thus durable concrete.
3. He has concluded that true divided lights are too expensive, but he’s not giving up on the look.
4. He no longer fabricates his own windows, but he wraps aluminum windows in wood frames, so that they fit in like wood ones.

**MODULAR CONSTRUCTION**

Paddy Steinschneider notes that under certain conditions modular construction can be more affordable than stick-built construction — and can sometimes provide better
quality:

The negative on modular construction in the United States is that it came more from the mobile home industry than from the homebuilding guilds. This has tainted its reputation and created a self-defining character of being oriented to the low end of the development spectrum. The reality is that there is nothing intrinsic about modular construction that limits quality. In fact, given its fabrication in a more controlled environment with more sophisticated equipment available, it can be superior to stick-built. Modulars are designed to withstand the forces of being transported and lifted into place. The best stick-built home will fall apart if put on wheels and driven down the road.

The contention here is that because modulars reduce the complexity, cost, and time that it takes to deliver a residential unit, this method of fabrication can be part of a Lean Initiative.

High quality designs, developed in collections similar to the Builders Companion and Plan Books developed in the 1800s to help people working without architects, can be provided by the modular company with all of the engineering and code compliance requirements already worked through and provided. Ideally, this could be in a form that already fits the requirements of most Building Departments. Architects and designers can still be involved, but the process is simplified to make it easier to get things right.

TIMBREL ARCHES AND VAULTS

Timbrel arches and vaults do not need centering or forms. While not as strong as reinforced concrete or steel, they have reasonably good seismic performance.

Low Tech Magazine's article on timbrel arches.
Smithsonian Magazines article on timbrel arches, which historically were cheaper than concrete or steel.

**AN INCREMENTAL METHOD FOR RENTALS**

Dan Camp has been building on an incremental basis in the Cotton District development in Starkville, Mississippi, for 45 years.

1. **Keep ownership.** If you start small and keep ownership, you can build your cash flow enough to self-finance, or you can qualify for very low rates.
2. **Boost your cash flow with additional fees for additional items,** such as a $50 application fee to apply. (This relies on good design.)
3. **Use very good design.** If you do it right, you can get a premium. He is at almost 3x the median for Starkville, Mississippi — about $1.70 per square foot.
4. **If you do it right,** rentals can have less turnover than condos. He does rental because people don’t stay in condos.
5. **Grow slowly,** so you don’t have to do cookie-cutter work. Make everything unique.
6. **Take your time.** The intersection of Maxwell Street and University Drive (and Rue du Grand Fromage) took about 10 years to complete, bit by bit. This lets you manage the market as well.
7. **Manage your own properties in-house.** The Cotton District has its own handymen and painters. It also does its own fabrication (See *Internal Fabrication* (on page 16)).

**CODES FOR EXISTING BUILDINGS**

The International Existing Building Code makes it easier to renovate older buildings by reducing the requirements for them — often to the time that they were built. This
article explains the benefits of the code.

New Jersey produced an influential rehabilitation subcode, and received an Innovations in American Government Award for the code in 1999. The code ramps up compliance gradually depending on the scale of the renovation.
**Applied: Building**

These building types and types of construction are limited to certain locations or certain narrow purposes. While they are not suitable for use everywhere and for everyone in the United States, they suggest models that can be replicated anywhere.

**Neighborhood Grit**

Michael Pyatok, FAIA offers a critique. He says that neighborhoods are better when they have a place for gritty businesses and household arrangements. Some of these depend on architectural design policies, such as having rear elevations that are not visible from the street, so they can be a little bit messy. Every city has examples of such gritty but necessary environments. The same goes for rear yards, alleyways and so forth. Inside, workplaces can be cordoned off from messy living spaces, so that visitors to businesses see a professional interior.

The author suggests that zoning regulations and even building regulations should be revised to permit these messy activities. Moreover, property managers and lenders need to anticipate a little more grit with a little more tolerance for a little messiness, noise, and sometimes odors.

**Preservation Green Lab**

Margaret O’Neal offered resources in her Preservation Green Lab, which is a project of the National Trust for Historic Preservation. It is designed to explore the nexus between preservation, livability, and environmental conservation. It has several projects and a future publication relevant to Lean Urbanism:

Older, Smaller, Better is a project and research report (pdf) that demonstrates the value of older, smaller buildings within livable areas. It shows that they can outperform...
bigger-scale development. It focuses on Seattle, San Francisco, and Washington DC. The web page includes updates to the report.

**Realizing the Energy Efficiency Potential of Small Buildings** is a similar project to *Older, Smaller Better*. Its research report focuses mainly on energy.

**The Environmental Value of Building Reuse** is another similar project and report, focusing on several environmental benefits — as well as livability benefits.

**America Saves!** Is a tool for finding opportunities to save energy in older buildings — especially in Main Street locations. does not yet include a projected tool for "getting started."

**Outcome Based Energy Codes** is a project to move energy codes from requiring specific technologies and construction types to requiring only a certain level of performance — and being flexible about how that performance is achieved. It somewhat echoes subsidiarity. It focuses on a pilot project in Seattle.

The Lab is preparing a National Manual for Building Reuse. It will cover the following, among other subjects:

1. Adaptive Reuse Ordinances
   - Los Angeles Adaptive Reuse Ordinance
   - Phoenix Adaptive Use Ordinance
2. Parking policies (and waivers, etc)
   - No parking required for structures landmarks and districts, Denver
   - No demo permit w/o approved plan for new structure, Denver
   - Surface parking not a use-by right, downtown Denver
   - Parking exemption for small buildings, Miami
   - Parking waiver for pedestrian "P" streets, Chicago
3. Building Code flexibility
4. Energy Code flexibility
   - Seattle Outcome-Based Energy Code

ARCHITECTURAL SALVAGE
Architectural salvage is a resource for lean building.¹
   1. Video on and Facebook page on architectural salvage in Detroit.
   2. Reclaimed Salvage in Cleveland.

CASE STUDIES OF SMALL HOUSES
Small Housing British Columbia has produced the Small Houses: British Columbia Case Studies (on page 113) of small houses. It includes multifamily and small houses that are not especially small (e.g. 1500 square feet).

TOOLS FOR LEANING ENVIRONMENTAL TECHNOLOGY
Doug Kelbaugh FAIA produced two documents that provide a framework for de-escalating environmental concerns. They list basic principles, and leave the technologies for meeting them largely open. The solutions are not necessarily low-tech. The focus on outcome, though, lets people choose the means that require low levels of permission and of money.

Lean, Energy-Efficient Buildings: Seven Principles focuses on the basic principles for energy strategy for buildings, and Urban Heat Islands (on page 211) focuses on the urban heat island (UHA) effect.

¹Noted by Mark Nickita
Steve Mouzon has piloted a scorecard for lean green building: the *Original Green Scorecard* (on page 221). It could potentially be an alternative to LEED certification by the US Green Building Council, which is anything but lean.

**Sustainable Urbanism Performance-based Module**

Several different issues combine in building in a sustainable way. The *Sustainable Urbanism Module* (on page 241), by Doug Farr and Leslie Oberholtzer, offers a concise set of metrics for judging the energy performance of buildings, both according to the year the project was approved and according to T-zone.
**Proposed: Building**

These tools are for certain building types and types of construction that seem like good ideas, but are not (yet) fleshed out with examples.

**A Fundable Building Initiative**

Sara Hines has an interest in building with low technologies. She notes that rammed earth and other very low-tech methods may be worth researching. She was inspired by *With Dirt And A Vision, Palestinian Architects Break The Mold*, on the Parallels website. She writes:

> There are also uses of building with dirt combined with cement, sometimes called swish-crete for third-world building. They usually mold blocks with it. The cement mainly functions to stabilize the dirt, but some climates might not require that. Cob is another technique. Some of the thinking for alternative building systems is that you build with what you have available on a site, if rocks, then stone, if trees, then wood, even stacked cordwood, or straw or sod or dirt. The goal is to import no outside product for the construction.

Mobile, Alabama has changed its Quiet Title program to streamline the process of renovation.¹ The process would be shortened and simplified in exchange for an agreement by the new owner to improve the property. Title would revert if the new owner were to fail to improve the property.

An effort to get banks and other investors to lower or drop their internal de-facto parking requirements for buildings could complement *Eliminating Parking Minimums* (on page 28).²

---

¹Noted by Sandy Sorlien
²Suggested by Kit McCullough
Homeownership Reform

Barack Obama has proposed some reforms to homeownership: Protecting the American Dream. While actually achieving these reforms would be very un-lean, they would make homeownership itself leaner.
## Lean Development

These tools pertain to lean types and methods of development, and supports for development.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ready: Development</strong></td>
<td>Incremental Greenfield Development</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Eliminating Parking Minimums</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Price Parking for 15 Percent Clearance</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Framing Public Issues</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Local Watchdogging</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Food Self-Sufficiency on a small lot</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Adaptive Agricultural Reuse Module</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Walkability Audit Tools</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Affordable Housing Incentives Module</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Applied: Development</strong></td>
<td>Performative Democracy</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Markets on Platforms</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rapid Deployment</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nonprofit Community Development</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tools for Streamlining Code Compliance</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Toolkits and Software for 3D Visualization</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Self-created Plazas</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Canal Urbanism Module</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Community Fire Breaks</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Proposed: Development</strong></td>
<td>Reverse-Engineering Sabotage</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Ready: Development**

The following are ready-to-use tools for development that can be used in the United States, at least in some capacity.

**INCREMENTAL GREENFIELD DEVELOPMENT**

Paul Crabtree and Stephen Mouzon have both proposed versions of tools for incremental growth in greenfields. They both mimic the kind of incremental development found in real communities, and they both give an important place to infrastructure.

Mouzon’s Sky Method is closer to being a tested solution, although it can’t really be called a precedent. It is also much more evolved graphically, and more focused on the development process itself. ([pdf](#))

Crabtree’s Tool for Generative Hamlet Growth (on page 277) is more focused on infrastructure, such as underground utilities and roads. It grew out of the Salon des Refuses project. His Lean Infrastructure Presentation (on page 288) on appropriate infrastructure emphasizes leanness and good placemaking, while de-escalating the drift toward gold-plated infrastructure. The tool has a separate table appended. It would coordinate T-zones and types of infrastructure.

Phased build-out was essential to the Port of Kennewick project (See p. 55 of this online pdf.)¹ It uses front/back distinction to allocate messy and informal uses to the rear and formal to the front. This includes all utilities. That way you can avoid tearing up finished frontage when you upgrade the infrastructure. (This works with varying curb-to-curb dimensions on streets, as at Poundbury.)

---

¹Noted by R. John Anderson
ELIMINATING PARKING MINIMUMS

1. There are numerous resources for helping communities and neighborhoods eliminate excess parking requirements — from both the government side and from the development side.

2. **Victoria Transport Policy Institute paper** on Parking Requirement Impacts on Housing Affordability

3. **A Strong Towns map** of cities that got rid of parking minimums

4. **Video on parking minimums** (specific to Ottawa, ON)

5. *The High Cost of Free Parking*, by Donald Shoup, *(Google and Amazon)* is the bible of parking strategies, some of which are Lean and most of which support Lean goals. At 800 pages, however, the book itself isn’t Lean (though it is compelling). His recent presentation (*High Cost of Free Parking Slides (on page 352)*) has numerous useful slides for Lean Learning, including these simple steps for managing downtown parking:

   - Charge the price for curb parking that leaves one or two empty spots per block most of the time. *(See *Price Parking for 15 Percent Clearance (on the facing page)*.)*
   - Create Parking Benefit Districts, which are politically popular. The money from parking meters goes directly into block or neighborhood improvements (meters with revenue return).
   - Reduce/remove the off-street minimums and don’t change them when uses change.

6. **Sandy Sorlien’s Pocket Code** is a model Lean Code that eliminates several conventional minimums, including parking.
PRICE PARKING FOR 15 PERCENT CLEARANCE

R. John Anderson suggests a series of steps for building and taking advantage of a rational pricing mechanism for parking.

1. Create as many on-street spaces as possible on the existing asphalt. (See Jeff Speck’s report for West Palm Beach.)
2. Price on street parking for 15% clearance.
3. Upgrade the parking meters to best refine the dynamic pricing of on-street parking and parking in the public garages.
4. Negotiate public master leases of the private surface parking lots so that they can be managed with the public on-street and public structured parking.
5. Establish a parking benefit district and financing mechanism for increasing the supply in the future (if needed) with structured parking. (See Eliminating Parking Minimums (on the previous page).)
6. Provide a master lease or condominium structure for creating public parking in the footprint of future private buildings.

FRAMING PUBLIC ISSUES

The Frameworks Institute has several resources, including Framing Public Issues (pdf). Framing is the social construction of a way of thinking about some subject. This is generally done by getting people to think that something is equivalent to something else, or by simplifying it so that people can start thinking about it without being overwhelmed. The document is not lean in itself, but it can help promote Lean Urbanism.

LOCAL WATCHDOGGING

Many cities have community and civic organizations that pay attention to public process and intervene to slow down bad decisions and promote good ones. Some are
grassroots community-based networks, while some are more formal “grass tops” or business networks. Others are local and not-so-local groups (often nonprofits) dedicated to a collective benefit, but if they have the capacity and inclination, they can also put pressure on government and business to help alleviate difficult problems.  

FOOD SELF-SUFFICIENCY ON A SMALL LOT

Writing for the Codes Project, Sandy Sorlien included a historic method for growing food on a small lot. The drawing by S. L. Berry shows a lot 50' wide: the minimum width allowed in the Gables Single-Family Residential (SFR) zone. It provides an intriguing plan for the evolution of our suburban residential areas into more self-sustaining environments. Smythe’s book is a how-to manual for living off a single urban residential lot. (Drawing from City Homes on Country Lanes: Philosophy and Practice of the Home-in-a-garden by William Smythe, 1921.) See also Agriculture on a 50-foot lot (on page 460)

Ann Daigle produced Food Movement of Lean Communities (on page 462).

ADAPTIVE AGRICULTURAL REUSE MODULE

Sometimes land that is poor for food production can be used to mitigate carbon dioxide — either by planting trees on the land or by using it to grow biofuel. (At least to the extent that the biofuel is actually carbon negative.) Adaptive Agricultural Reuse (on page 469) from Steve Coyle provides some lean approaches to reusing marginal land.

---

1 Paraphrased from Scott Bernstein
WALKABILITY AUDIT TOOLS

Stephen Mouzon and Rick Hall both have tools for walkability audits in the works. Both tools are relatively leaner than typical tools of their type.

Rick Hall’s is the “Walkability Index,” which is intended to get people to walk around the city and note improvements that can be made. A version is included in Street Design: The Secret to Great Cities and Towns (Amazon, Google), by John Mas-sengale and Victor Dover.

Steve Mouzon's is "Walk Appeal," which he gives an extensive write-up in his blog. His primary post also has several pages of further information, on it, and he is planning a book on it. It includes both "measurable" and "immeasurable" indicators, although experienced auditors would probably agree on the same "immeasurable" ratings.

AFFORDABLE HOUSING INCENTIVES MODULE

One of the impediments to building affordable housing is the cost of building. The Affordable Housing Incentives Module (on page 474) would encourage affordability by streamlining the application and approval process. (More modules are available.)

31
**Applied: Development**

These tools for development are limited to certain locations or certain narrow purposes. While they are not suitable for use everywhere and for everyone in the United States, they suggest models that can be replicated anywhere.

**Performative Democracy**

Elzbieta Matynia’s performative democracy includes a model for labeling activities according to how well they are officially tolerated. It is based on the Polish experience under communism.¹

Elzbieta Matynia was a disciple of Hannah Arendt. In Matynia’s book *Performative Democracy* (Amazon and Google) she writes about the evolution of four policies applied by the party-state in Poland just prior to the emergence of Solidarity. These policies defined four kinds of citizens’ engagement:

- The preferred and rewarded (e.g., party organs)
- The preferred but limited (e.g., national theater)
- The unofficial (e.g., small private theater)
- The forbidden (e.g., anti-communist conversations in private homes)

This range aligns well with subsidiarity because it is bottom-up. It also aligns with platforms, as the preferred is supported and the unofficial is tolerated.

Public space was co-opted by the government so it was official space. Public space was effectively forced into hiding in households. When the power loosened (starting in the ’70s) the government stopped censoring the tiny theaters and private spaces. This was similar to Václav Havel’s experience in Czechoslovakia. Also see Sylwetka Adama Michnika of the newspaper Ggazeta Wyborcza.

¹Noted by Christopher (Kip) Bergstrom
MARKETS ON PLATFORMS

Bruce F. Donnelly has written a blog post suggesting that an important way to "make small possible" is to build a market on top of a platform. A platform in this sense is a way to compete against big players that enjoy economies of scale. For example, a public market can take on the overhead for the building itself, advertising, operations, and so on. The market, as an institution, would be able to take advantage of economies of scale, and pass those economies on to its tenants. Those tenants could then compete against big supermarkets on more equal terms than they could if they had to bear those costs individually.

Similar economies can be realized if, for instance, a nonprofit were to subdivide land and secure zoning entitlements for small, individual buildable lots. A city could provide a power, water and sewer supply point for a block, into which individual builders could tap. Such infrastructure "machines" are similar to a solution proposed by Paul Crabtree and Andrés Duany for rebuilding Haiti after its earthquake. (See this New York Times article on Detroit.)

Sometimes platforms can be based on negatives. For example, demolishing the outdated Class C office that cannot be returned to Class B office or converted to residential could be part of a platform for clearing and re-positioning development sites.¹

RAPID DEPLOYMENT

Lean favors rapid deployment development and tools.

In general Lean derives a sense of urgency from "Agile" software development's methodology.

Agile development began with the "hacker" ethos, which was exploratory, but also sought to produce useful things. This required hackers, and later agile developers, to hold the end goal somewhat loosely, so that the means of getting to that goal can be

¹Suggested by R. John Anderson
somewhat fluid. Since design in an agile project is somewhat exploratory, you can’t know in advance exactly where you are going. However, you can generally be fairly comfortable with your progress as long as there is always more than one way to move forward.

One of the people who explains the connection best is Joi Ito, the director of the MIT Media Lab. He offers a number of observations compacted into principles:

- **Deploy or Die.** Rather than "publish or die," this principle says that you need to get something out in the real world — not just prototyped, and certainly not just published.

- **Pull over Push.** Pull resources you need (people, tools, money, etc.) from your network as you need them. Don’t just stockpile them in advance because you might need them.

- **Learning over Education.** Specifically, you need to "pull" what you need to know, when you need to know it. You need to learn what you need to learn when you need to learn it, not stockpile knowledge unconnected with your need for it.

- **Compass over maps.** Have a vision of what you want to do; don’t try to map out too much in advance. You might build a "roadmap" for yourself, and miss where you should have turned.

Bruce F. Donnelly suggests an additional principle, the 80% solution. This assumes Pareto was right that in any given situation, 80% of the effects come from 20% of the causes. A somewhat loose interpretation of this observation is that it often seems that you can solve 80% of your problem with 20% of the effort. The principle serves as a warning not to try to optimize too early or too much. Doing either usually involves unforeseen consequences and unwelcome trade-offs. Instead of trying to solve something to 100%, then, you can solve it to 80%, and then reassess to see whether you are headed in the right direction. Then you can solve the next 80%, and the next, and the next, and the next — for the same effort you might have solved for 100%.
NONPROFIT COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT

Operating on a shoestring, nonprofit development groups such as HERO\(^1\) can combine federal and local programs to help individual homeowners and would-be developers develop their communities. There are many cities in which community development corporations operate effectively. (See Cleveland's.)

TOOLS FOR STREAMLINING CODE COMPLIANCE

Several tools for writing codes help ensure that they are easy to satisfy, and that procedures are streamlined.\(^2\)

1. The [Institute for Market Transformation](https://www.imt.org) has produced the *Institute for Market Transformation Checklist* (on page 482) of steps to take while streamlining codes and procedures to make them easy to meet.

2. _This study_ shows methods that governments can employ to figure out how to streamline compliance processes — such as inspecting flow charts and educating applicants on common errors.

3. _This Article in Builder_ echoes the streamlining compliance requests

4. The [National Partnership to Streamline Government](https://streamline.gov)’s [toolkits](https://streamline.gov/toolkits) for streamlining codes "in the digital age." From the National Partnership to Streamline Government. The site addresses building regulatory processes, including inspections. (10 toolkits)

Business rules engine or business process management streamlines processes even if they are complex.

They operate on the ideas that

\(^{1}\)Suggestion from Ann Daigle

\(^{2}\)Suggested by Scott Bernstein
1. business rules produce knowledge, and that 
2. the workflows should perform business work.

That is, business rules do not perform business work, and workflows don't produce (much) knowledge. They separate workflows from rules, which is to say thou-shalls and thou-shalts from the tasks used to get things done. If the tasks are done properly, business process management helps break down silos within organizations. For instance, instead of having to kick something up to a superior in order to engage someone in another department, business process management could let someone talk to her peer in another department directly.

TOOLKITS AND SOFTWARE FOR 3D VISUALIZATION

There are several resources for 3-D visualization. Although they are not necessarily lean, they can help reduce "brain damage." If a city employed them, it could make decisions easier for entrepreneurs.

1. This toolkit, on the Smart Communities website, is an anti-NIMBY tool. It doesn't present arguments so much as help people make decisions and visualize what could happen in new development.

2. Place/Matters is a partnership for civic engagement and process in planning. It uses technology to make investment easier. It also builds websites and web tools for civic engagement. Its Place/Matters game-like tool helps participants prioritize and allocate resources, so as to understand trade-offs. Place/Matters’ has a “WalkScope” tool for neighborhood walk-audits, which are intended to be easy to deploy.

---

1Suggested by Peter Katz
3. Autodesk’s **Urban Canvas** combines GIS, design, and visualization tools. It is designed to combine scenarios and analysis. It could be useful for the public process, as this video with Paul Waddell shows.

4. In contrast to Peter Calthorpe's **Urban Footprint** modeling software, RapidFire planning tools seem relatively useful for Lean Urbanism.

5. The **Measuring Street Design** website (through ArcGIS) and its field manual show how the tool can be used for walkability audits. Jon Larsen’s article on the **Strong Towns website** explains how useful it can be.

6. SmarterBetterCities is another visualization platform, built on ESRI’s **CityEngine**. (ESRI makes ArcGIS.) Geoff Taylor worked with Matthew Lambert on using it for the SmartCode. Models can be shared on Cloudcities — a sharing platform.

**SELF-CREATED PLAZAS**

Philadelphia’s **Plaza Application and Guidelines** (on page 496) offer simple guidelines for citizen-initiated pedestrian plaza design. They are slightly more involved than most Tactical Urbanism. However, the paperwork is relatively simple.\(^1\)

**CANAL URBANISM MODULE**

Building near canals and other human-made bodies of water can be fraught with engineering hurdles. Dan Bartman has written the SmartCode module, **Canal Urbanism Module** (on page 517) to help ensure that the physical design is at least appropriate for the Transect zone. (More modules are available.)

---

\(^1\)Noted by Sandy Sorlien
COMMUNITY FIRE BREAKS

When building a greenfield community in an area susceptible to fire, obeying the ordinary separations between buildings would tend to make a community unwalkable, and preclude cluster development. Therefore, *Fire Mitigation in Wildlands* (on page 530) presents ways to build fire breaks around entire communities, so the individual structures don't need them. The intervening land can be used for agriculture.
**Proposed: Development**

These tools are for certain types of development and supports for development that seem like good ideas, but are not (yet) fleshed out with examples.

**Reverse-Engineering Sabotage**

The CIA produced a *1944 CIA Sabotage Toolkit* (on page 545) for sabotaging the enemy's war effort. Today, we can reverse-engineer it to find burons.
Lean Regulation

These tools pertain to types and methods of regulation that are lean because they are lighter, easier, or are designed to help those without abundant resources.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ready: Regulation</th>
<th>41</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Code Reform</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synergy Between Code and Design Center</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limits on Store Size</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Easements for Small Clusters</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Applied: Regulation</th>
<th>45</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lean Code Draft</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco Zoning Code of 1948</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proposed: Regulation</th>
<th>47</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Detroit's Pink Zone</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pink Code</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;No Minimums&quot; Codes</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Codes Project</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Code Technology</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rules for Homeless Encampments</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neighborhood Conservation Kit</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ideas for Fundable Regulatory Initiatives</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ready: Regulation

The following are ready-to-use tools for lean regulation that can be used in the United States, at least in some capacity.

CODE REFORM

Although the project of reforming zoning and building codes is not in itself Lean, it can enable Lean Urbanism by providing support for small and incremental development.

The following tools are intended to discover whether the current codes are lean, help to lean them, and provide specific models for lean development.

CODE AND ZONING AUDIT

Smart Growth America offers communities a tool for auditing these codes:

1. The Land Use Code
2. The Zoning Code and Zoning Regulations
3. Subdivision Regulations and Ordinances
4. Overlay District Regulations
5. Special Use District Regulations

The audit is heavy on form-based and service-based issues, but it does support things like small lots and live-work.

LEAN CODE TOOL

The Lean Code Tool (on page 572), by Susan Henderson and Matthew Lambert with Bill Spikowski, suggests incremental revisions to existing development codes — for places that don’t have political, administrative, or budget capacity for a form-based code immediately. The tool uses an appealing S, M, L, XL rating system according to
the capacity of the municipality. It is a first public draft so may change later in 2016, but can still be helpful.

**Pocket Code**

Sandy Sorlien has produced a *Pocket Code* (on page 566). It uses types of buildings, frontages, and et cetera, and is partly for this reason somewhat slimmer than even just the section of the *SmartCode* that pertains to existing neighborhoods. This streamlined approach can also be adapted to conventional zoning categories, so that it might require fewer adaptations from an existing code than the model SmartCode does. It is hosted at her SmartCode Local website.

**Lean Codes**

David Mayernik’s *The Dumb Code* (on page 612) is a one-page architectural code with just two context settings, Rural and Urban.

Andrés Duany proposed a Homebuilt Housing Act in the aftermath of Katrina. It was not adopted. (From the The Codes Project.)

**Adaptive Code**

Andrew Burleson created the *Adaptive Code* (on page 604) in 2013. His summary explains the basis:

The Adaptive Code is a schematic framework for rules that allow self-organizing, bottom-up emergence.

**Principles of the Code**

1. Favor free-markets over management, bottom-up emergence over top-down administration.
2. Only regulate what is essential to:
   - Promote long-term stability and appreciation in property values.
   - Eliminate externalities.
   - Favor consumption-based fees over flat-rate services.

TYPE-BASED FORM-BASED CODES

Spikowski Planning Associates has done several easy-to-understand form-based codes. They use building types extensively, in order to make the process easy for citizens to master, as Spikowski explains. Peter Katz worked in Sarasota, under Spikowski’s code for that city, and found it easy to explain. The Form-Based Codes Institute has an explanation of the Lee County (Florida) Compact Communities Code. (pdf version) (See Bill Spikowski.)

CODE TOOL FOR ACCESSORY DWELLING UNITS

See this Model code for accessory dwelling units. Portland’s recent initiative processes accessory dwelling units as Detached Bedrooms. Doing so sidesteps the issue of impact fees, since they are just additions, legally speaking. The "bedrooms" can have power, water, and sewer, but no kitchen. This essentially just means they can't have stoves.¹

SYNERGY BETWEEN CODE AND DESIGN CENTER

Nathan Norris has piloted the Lafayette, Louisiana Downtown Lafayette Code (on page 614). A one-page graphical Intent section illustrates its principles. The tool is approachable — although not especially lean in format.

¹Noted by Dean Gunderson, MCRP
However, that code and a Development + Design Center (DDC) work together in a lean way. See *Development Design Center Explained* (on page 642). The code is simple, but needs the DDC to explain its use with free design consultation. The DDC can show a developer how to get up to the “better” level in a good-better-best hierarchy of designs.

**LIMITS ON STORE SIZE**

The Institute for Local Self-reliance produced *Store Size Caps* (on page 647). It is a tool for ensuring that an ordinance that caps the size of stores is legal and appropriate. It also states why store-size caps may be necessary, and offers different approaches to applying them. Community-Wealth.org created the toolkit in 2006.¹

**EASEMENTS FOR SMALL CLUSTERS**

Developers can use access easements for bungalow courts, or to avoid homeowners’ associations. R. John Anderson writes from his experience:

> Small HOA’s often have disproportionately higher administrative costs, particularly when you are filing the initial setup with the State Dept. of Real Estate, etc. Bungalow courts can be done without HOA management of common facilities if you design them with access easements, particularly if you have a center walk configuration in lieu of a center court with surrounding walkway. Shared driveway agreements for access and maintenance don’t require an HOA. Rental bungalow courts can operate under multifamily zoning conventions.

¹Noted by Scott Bernstein
**Applied: Regulation**

These tools for regulation are limited to certain locations or certain narrow purposes. While they are not suitable for use everywhere and for everyone in the United States, they suggest models that can be replicated anywhere.

**Lean Code Draft**

DPZ produced the *Tigard Lean Code Draft* (on page 660) for Tigard, Oregon. It provides thresholds below which and above which certain studies and other kinds of proof of conformity are required. The intent is to make it easy to build small, and then ramp up the requirements and the amount of documentation required as the sizes of projects increase. The consequences for getting things wrong are more significant, generally, for large projects.¹

The existing model SmartCode says, "The modification of existing buildings is permitted By Right if such changes result in greater conformance with the specifications of this Code." This allows the SmartCode, or any including such a statement, to develop incrementally into a more walkable urbanism. A locality could flesh out what is meant by "greater conformance" — either by making a non-statutory interpretation or by adding standards to the code.

**San Francisco Zoning Code of 1948**

In 1948, San Francisco produced one of the last lean zoning codes before codes began to balloon under the influence of large, automobile-centric development. *1948 San Francisco Code* (on page 666) is roughly based an urban Transect, and it could be adapted for today.²

---

¹Courtesy of Matthew Lambert

²Courtesy Sandy Sorlien
**Proposed: Regulation**

These tools are for certain types and methods of regulation that seem like good ideas, but are not (yet) fleshed out with examples.

**Detroit's Pink Zone**

A 2016 Knight Cities Challenge Winner, this project is led by Detroit Planning Director Maurice D. Cox, joined by Lean Urbanist and UM professor Doug Kelbaugh FAIA. It aims to create new opportunities for jobs and businesses by streamlining city development regulations and engaging design talent and developers to help reshape several commercial districts. Andrés Duany proposes that Pink Zones should be legal PUDs with an Homeowners' Association and/or a Business Improvement District for management.

**Pink Code**

The Transect-based *Pink Code Draft* (on page 695) was sketched out by Andrés Duany and DPZ during the High Point, NC charrette in 2013. The Procedures section features a lean use of Levels, to reduce the amount of regulatory approval needed for most applications.

"No Minimums" Codes

Any code can be made significantly leaner (in outcome) by removing nearly all minimums: parking, lot width, lot size, frontage buildout, front setback, height, etc. These may still require maximums to maintain walkable blocks.

The strategy for no-minimums codes is to look for required minimums that either cannot be justified on rational grounds (as opposed to class-based grounds) or are already prescribed by other requirements. Building codes, for example, have minimum
room-size and window-size requirements. Banks usually have requirements for the amount of parking. Neither of those needs to be in a code.

Some minimums, such as minimum house size, are usually designed to ensure that only a certain class of resident or business can locate in a zone. These codes deliberately make small impossible.

THE CODES PROJECT

The Code Project has scores of codes surveyed by Emily Talen, PhD. A contemporary Lean Code could be developed from some of the simpler early codes, which are essentially Transect-based. The foundational 16th-century “Laws of the Indies” document contains common sense lean language, such as:

112. The main plaza is to be the starting point for the town; if the town is situated on the sea coast, it should be placed at the landing place of the port, but inland it should be at the center of the town. The plaza should be square or rectangular, in which case it should have at least one and a half its width for length inasmuch as this shape is best for fiestas in which horses are used and for any other fiestas that should be held.

This entire resource is well worth perusing for lean ideas and language.

NEW CODE TECHNOLOGY

Zoning, building, and subdivision regulations could benefit from technologies to help organize their content. Many of these technologies are used for product documentation.¹

¹Suggested by Bruce F. Donnelly
One benefit is shared, reusable content. A Toyota Corolla's owner's manual might share content with a Toyota Camry's owner's manual, and the Corolla's owner's manual might share content with the Corolla's maintenance manual. Similarly, a zoning code, subdivision ordinance, and a building code could use the same set of definitions, and it could come with or without annotations for novices.

Another benefit could be that only the relevant information for a given site might be printed, so that the applicant wouldn't have to page through the code. For instance, an assistant at the application counter might hand the owner of a site for mixed-use buildings that is serviced by a rear alley only the regulations for mixed-use buildings, and omit any driveway standards that are not applicable to sites serviced by an alley. Instead of a table listing, say, setback regulations by zone, the code would only show the setbacks for the relevant zone. A novice owner might also be given an annotated copy of the code explaining the reasons for certain regulations, and alternatives that might be obvious to an experienced user. Either way works by using conditional text, which is a way of marking text so that it only prints in desired documents. For instance, a setback regulation might read,

The front setback is **12 feet, 20 feet, 40 feet**.

If a specific lot's zone is the one highlighted in blue, then the text will read,

The front setback is **12 feet**.

An equally important benefit would be a set of advanced text processing tools, including the automatic processing of glossary terms, easier indexing, and more. These help maintain consistency and readability. One important standard is DITA: the Darwin Information Typing Architecture OASIS standard. It is explained at DITA XML.org. This is a highly organized and cumbersome standard. The open-source Oxygen XML program supports it. However, DITA is a highly exacting standard, so the two main software applications for documentation, Adobe Framemaker and Madcap Flare, use looser technical standards. They have a steep learning curve, but much gentler than Oxygen XML. (This document is written in Flare.)
A hard-copy example is the model SmartCode v9.2, which has a single building-scale page for each T-zone. If builders are only working in T4, only the T4 page would be handed to them.

**RULES FOR HOMELESS ENCAMPMENTS**

The Low Income Housing Institute has produced the *Tent Encampments and Tiny House Villages* (on page 700) report. It explains why they form, and how they can be obviated or improved.

**NEIGHBORHOOD CONSERVATION KIT**

The Neighborhood Conservation Kit is a code overlay tool. It should be ready by Fall 2016. A 2015 Knight Cities Challenge Winner, the project is led by Sandy Sorlien and the Central Roxborough Civic Association (At Street-trip). It provides a short guide and template for simple rules to protect existing walkable neighborhoods from incoming car-oriented development. It was initially correlated to the City of Philadelphia's rezoning processes, but could be adapted elsewhere.

**IDEAS FOR FUNDABLE REGULATORY INITIATIVES**

Certain people have made suggestions of small Lean initiatives that would require funding.

- Bruce F. Donnelly has suggested *New Code Technology* (on page 48).

- B. Aaron Parker has suggested developing a workaround for the proposed changes to the International Energy Conservation Code, which would encourage the demolition of old buildings. (See the *Architect Magazine* article, since removed but available by Archive.org.)
Lean Infrastructure

These tools pertain to lean infrastructure and ways to build it without gold-plating.

- Ready: Infrastructure ................................................................. 52
- Existing Infrastructure ................................................................. 52
- Lean Sidewalks ........................................................................ 53
- Low-head Hydro ...................................................................... 54
- Lean, Scalable, and Incremental Wastewater Treatment ............. 55
- Bicycle Infrastructure Module .................................................. 55
- Light Imprint Matrix and Handbook ......................................... 55
- Development Models for Street Types ...................................... 55
**Ready: Infrastructure**

The following are ready-to-use tools for infrastructure that can be used in the United States, at least in some capacity.

**EXISTING INFRASTRUCTURE**

Paddy Steinschneider suggests that we need tools that allow for existing infrastructure where there has been a lot of demolition and disinvestment. Paddy writes:

This may sound obvious, but practice in the United States has demonstrated that using what is already available is not the first assumption made when someone is considering building or developing something. When the cost of creating infrastructure has already been invested and either the demands on that infrastructure have reduced or perhaps never reached full use, taking advantage of that existing residual investment by rebuilding, infill development, or the adaptive reuse of existing buildings significantly simplify, expedite, and reduce the costs of development.

We have old cities that are already improved with the transportation networks, the utility connections, and the infrastructure necessary to support a significant growth within areas already developed. The scale at which this can happen is the full spectrum: Individual homes and buildings can be renovated and restored to optimum use; Infill buildings can be constructed on the vacant lots on a previously developed block; And, entire blocks or even rows of blocks that are already served by roads and utilities can be the site for large scaled redevelopment.

Retrofitting Suburbia and Sprawl Repair both identify many types of opportunities, from repurposing buildings that are no longer viable for their original intent, to the re-densification of sprawl communities that can make better use of existing infrastructure, to mixing new uses with existing, such as adding residential use to shopping centers. The surplus capacity within
existing infrastructure provides a quicker and easier way of providing the facilities and residences needed in a community than having to start with creating the infrastructure.

One of the aspects of increased use of the existing infrastructure that contributes to the Lean Urbanism's philosophy is the way in which it can bring the additional revenue necessary to maintain and support that infrastructure, whereas simply creating more infrastructure has the increased expense of first creating the infrastructure and then the additional cost of maintaining it.

One of the most damaging things to the triple bottom line of our economy, environment, and culture that can be done by the development community is the strategy of moving further out or developing in green fields because the land may be cheaper to assemble or acquire. When there is existing infrastructure in place that can be used instead, there are cost savings that can offset lower land costs. The economic cost/benefit analysis that leads to that kind of decision usually is incomplete and does not always include the cost of the future maintenance of additional infrastructure.

An efficient household makes intelligent use of the leftovers in the refrigerator. Great meals can be created out of what remains from a previous dinner. If it is not used, it deteriorates and is wasted. We need to apply the same efficiencies to our left over infrastructure and find those ways to create new great places with what is already waiting to be reused.

LEAN SIDEWALKS

Paul Crabtree offers these rules for lean sidewalks:

53
1. Soil prep would be
   a. none, or
   b. smoothed and lightly compacted by hand or small equipment.
2. Drainage characteristic would be a well-drained soil – like sand or gravel – that
   would form a stable subgrade that would infiltrate rainwater than fall onto/ran off
   from the sidewalk surface.
3. Material would be locally sourced, competitively priced, durable, smooth, skid-
   resistant, somewhat flexible, and easily installed without large equipment.
4. Color would be very light in southern regions (high albedo to reduce UHI for ped-
   estrian comfort) and grayish in northern regions (to capture solar rays for the melt-
   ing of snow and ice).
5. Maintenance would be minimal or none. Snow shoveling, sweeping, washing,
   an occasional smoothing out of anomalies.
6. Replacement could be accomplished in small patches by a couple of workers
   without large equipment, and without looking a lot different from the original.
7. Capital costs may trump life-cycle costing since a high capital cost barrier could
   prevent the Lean Project from even getting started.

**LOW-HEAD HYDRO**

The National Hydropower Association reports that newer low-head Hydro is done with
Archimedes screws, and is very fish friendly. In fact, if fish are running, you can
reverse the flow and boost them upstream. Fish gates need to be adequate even at
smaller dams. Small beaver dams can even be utilized to help manage fish pop-
ulations. There is a profitable business in relocating beavers so that they will build
dams.
LEAN, SCALABLE, AND INCREMENTAL WASTEWATER TREATMENT

Steve Coyle offers his *Lean Wastewater Treatment Tools* (on page 730) for Developing Countries, Regions, and Communities. Some were created out of necessity while he worked with a local crew for several years on a SmartCode plan and lean building project in Gabon. He writes:

Villages, towns and cities require durable, simple, and low maintenance infrastructure from potable water service, and wastewater treatment and facilities to storm water collection and flood protection, electric power, streets, sidewalks, and pathways. This set of Lean Tools can be deployed in hamlets, villages, towns, and cities using local labor and materials.

BICYCLE INFRASTRUCTURE MODULE

The Street Plans Collaborative has written a SmartCode module, the *Bicycling Module* (on page 736) to try to ensure that bicycle infrastructure matches its surrounding conditions.

LIGHT IMPRINT MATRIX AND HANDBOOK

Thomas E. Low has written a *Light Imprint Handbook*. (Amazon and Google). Light Imprint is meant to be a lean, lighter alternative to Low Impact Development, which tends to over-engineer by comparison. The *Light Imprint Matrix* (on page 750) provides a simple way to see which responses to rainwater are appropriate to each zone.

DEVELOPMENT MODELS FOR STREET TYPES

Frank Starkey proposed *Economics of Street Types* (on page 754), based on economics, profitable development opportunity, and place-making.
Lean Business

These tools pertain to lean business methods and to supports and resources for businesses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ready: Business</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lean Startup Tools</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intellectual Property</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ratings and Reports</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mentorship and Incubation</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small Business Administration</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Boot Camps</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maker City Book</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business-oriented Cooperative Service Organizations</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local Business Incubators</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legal Support for Co-ops and the Sharing Economy</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDS Consulting Co-op</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Applied: Business</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CreateHereNow Connecticut</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redeveloping Publicly Owned Land</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tools for Supporting Businesses in Detroit</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Collaborative Economy</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single-Crew Workplaces</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Callister Brewing Co</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proposed: Business</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Policy Changes for Lean Development</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Placemaking Bond Funds</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Innovation Districts</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remaking Martin Luther King Jr. Streets</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Ready: Business**

The following are ready-to-use business types and supports for businesses that can be used in the United States, at least in some capacity.

**Lean Startup Tools**

Lisa Nisenson started Greater Places — "The Community for Urban Design." It is a crowd-sourced site for design and community empowerment. The site focuses on citizen-initiated activity, although it includes detailed information about plans and codes, financial arrangements, and infrastructure. Many of its projects, such as this in Santa Monica, use techniques similar to Tactical Urbanism. However, this resulted in what was in effect a public workshop sanctioned by the city. The "Plans and Codes" page has several tools, and even some codes that are very lean. She also recommends resources and a book for lean startups. Her site is intended to support catalytic, less wasteful, and more responsive business models.

**Intellectual Property**

Copyright and trademark law can hamper the free flow of ideas. For this reason, the Maker culture (Large pdf) generally eschews conventional copyright in favor of Creative Commons licenses, which can be tailored more finely to the needs of the author. Creative Commons also works to help organizations implement open licensing. The Open Source Initiative indexes several open-source licenses — generally for software. (See this explanation for the distinction between “copyleft” (as in Creative Commons) and “open source.”)

The P2P Foundation is one of the major centers of this de-centralized Maker culture. (“P2P” stands for “peer to peer.”)

Makerspaces, which are also called Hackerspaces and Fablabs, can benefit their local economies, as an article from The Atlantic suggests. These are sometimes
nonprofits, and sometimes for-profits, but they always share resources and intellectual property (sometimes called “hacks”).

RATINGS AND REPORTS
Rating systems and reporting systems can help small developers justify things like reduced parking requirements, and they can help them flesh out their pro-formas. For example, if a builder can show that an area has ample transit access, it may be possible to charge higher rents. A report about pent-up demand, or about the desirability of certain lifestyles can help make the case to bankers that they are not taking such a big chance. Some rating systems can also help small investors and builders estimate how much income they can expect.

WALK SCORE
Walk Score is a proprietary, a widely used index. It can be used within other indices, such as real estate marketing.

H+T INDEX
The H+T Index is The Center for Neighborhood Technology's index of costs combining housing and transportation. It estimates the affordability including transportation costs, rather than just raw housing cost. In the United States, it generally shows a lower cost for urban areas well-served by public transportation, and for compact areas.¹

¹Suggested by Scott Bernstein
LOCUS REPORTS

Smart Growth America’s LOCUS Program, under Christopher Coes, produces two reports that are relevant to Lean Urbanism, and that demonstrate market demand for projects.

1. **Foot Traffic Ahead** ranks the country’s top 30 metropolitan areas based on the strength of their walkable urban places (as defined by LOCUS). The report and a video are available on the report’s webpage.

2. The **WalkUP Wake Up Call** is actually a series of four separate reports about “WalkUPs” (which stands for Walkable Urban Places) for different states and cities. It demonstrates the scope of pent-up demand for such places. The reports also identify existing and developing WalkUPs.

SMALL CHANGE INDEX

Small Change has a crowd-funding platform. It uses the Small Change Index as a proprietary scoring system to illustrate the impacts that small projects have on their settings.

Small Change uses *Small Change Index Indicators* (on page 765).

RENTFax

RentFax offers predictive analytics for rental properties. It’s like a credit score, but for rental buildings — and it helps produce a realistic pro-forma rather than a credit report. The score is called the RISC score: Rental Income Stability Composite. It can be used before acquiring the property, and after it for management and financing. In addition, it can be used to forecast rents. *Private Lender magazine* has a press release on it.
Mentorship and Incubation

Certain organizations offer mentorship and incubation. These are sometimes big organizations, or even government organizations that support small players.

Small Business Administration

The Small Business Administration's SCORE chapters has a good mentorship program. Miami's free business plans are one example of the kind of resources that can be found in most SCORE offices.

The Small Business Association also certifies nonprofit corporations to work with participating lenders in order to provide financing to small businesses. There are 270 Certified Development Companies nationwide, and most of them serve a specific geographic area.¹

Business Boot Camps

Scott Bernstein writes:

Business boot camps teach business and workforce development. They provide on-the-job training via businesses. See Illinois Manufacturing Foundation in Chicago. That foundation has been operating since 1981. It partners with networks and associations of small manufacturers and sets up production line based no-nonsense training with close to 100 percent placement and retention rate. This occurs in specialties ranging from packaging equipment to cabinet making, screw machine operation, computerized numerical control equipment, and metal finishing. In fact, Ric Gudell, its Executive Director is as persuasive as John Anderson: See Specialized manufacturing training and placement. Another organization is the Bay Area Video Coalition, which since 1976 has trained youth in the skills of video, information, and new

¹Noted by Scott Bernstein
media. The Chicago TV Network is similar. Some high schools still offer vocational education, and there’s pressure growing to increase the utility of public expenditures for community colleges. Land grant universities still offer access to students through cooperative degree programs in which alternating-quarter placements with local businesses occur.¹

**MAKER CITY BOOK**

The Maker City Project has produced the Maker City Book, which explains the economic and social benefits of a Maker community. It helps to explain how the Maker movement is different from ordinary manufacturing and the ordinary arts scene, and how it helps to leapfrog beyond ordinary community development.

**BUSINESS-ORIENTED COOPERATIVE SERVICE ORGANIZATIONS**

Insurance is an example of a Cooperative Service Organization. Today’s State Farm, Countrywide, and Nationwide Insurance Companies started in response to how Depression conditions affected rural communities and farms. The first two of these are still owned by their policy holders, but are no longer locally constituted. The National Cooperative Bank (successor to the National Consumer Cooperative Bank) has a home page story and an article on financing resident-owned manufactured housing communities. Note: this is a Congressionally-chartered bank, and a group successfully sued President Reagan to reverse his rescission of this bank’s authority to operate.²

---

¹Paraphrased from Scott Bernstein
²Paraphrased from Scott Bernstein. Scott Bernstein was in the group that sued President Reagan.
Local Business Incubators

Local business incubators provide lean startup space and supportive business development services to their tenants. The most successful one in Chicago is focused on manufacturing businesses. It has operated for 33 years, and enjoys almost 100 percent occupancy. It kicks companies out after a reasonable period of time, since the goal is to launch businesses, not lease to mature ones. This is different from Maker spaces or co-working spaces — a bit closer to the shark tank R. John Anderson proposed. See also the International Business Innovation Association (formerly the National Business Incubator Association).¹

Legal Support for Co-ops and the Sharing Economy

A few organizations provide legal support for various forms of sharing — especially co-ops and the "sharing economy." Legal resources seem to be focused on liability, legality, and maintaining the "sharing economy" as a brand.

Co-opLaw provides a library of legal information on cooperatives: types, legal topics (e.g., how to convert to a cooperative), state law, and a list of organizations that support co-ops.

The Sustainable Economies Law Center provides legal education, research, advice, and advocacy for "more just and resilient communities." It focuses mainly on law and policy resources for the sharing economy.

CDS Consulting Co-op

CDS is a co-op itself, and not a non-profit. It is a co-op of consultants who support co-ops. That said, it has an extensive list of resources for people who want to start co-ops, including articles, links to dozens of resources, toolboxes, and a legal library. So

¹Paraphrased from Scott Bernstein
far, there are seven toolboxes. Some of them are free, and some of them are for sale. They focus mainly on management and how-to. They are somewhat eclectic.
**Applied: Business**

These business types and types of support are limited to certain locations or certain narrow purposes. While they are not suitable for use everywhere and for everyone in the United States, they suggest models that can be replicated anywhere.

**CREATEHERENOW CONNECTICUT**

This lean approach to "BID Lite" is useful for artists, artisans, and others involved in products with art content. It focuses on supporting retail by using low-cost vacant storefronts as incubators for arts-based and conventional retail business. Eventually they should be able to pay full rent. These tend to catalyze other, more conventional developments.

Links to CreateHereNow Organizations

CreateHereNow Connecticut. This is an umbrella organization for several local CreateHereNow organizations.

CreateHereNow New London. CreateHereNow's Facebook page.

**REDEVELOPING PUBLICLY OWNED LAND**

There are several businesses that help to clear government-owned land, as well as other land that is usually disposed of at low prices.

1. **OpportunitySpace** — a company marketing publicly-owned land to innovative and small developers. It has a rudimentary scoring protocol.

2. **CivicSource** — an auction site for adjudicated and tax-foreclosed properties.

3. **OppSites**— a site similar to Opportunity Space (The founder, Ian Ross, is a New Urbanist).

---

1See Christopher (Kip) Bergstrom for more information, as he was intimately involved in its creation.
TOOLS FOR SUPPORTING BUSINESSES IN DETROIT

These organizations support businesses in Detroit.

1. **Build Institute** is a hub for education and support. It was formerly part of D:Hive
2. **Shareable**, from the Sustainable Economies Law Center, is policy primer for municipal leaders who want to encourage the sharing economy in their communities.
3. **REVOLVE Detroit**, from the Economic Growth Corporation, supports retail business. See *Revolve Detroit Guidebook (on page 770)*

THE COLLABORATIVE ECONOMY

*The Collaborative Economy Honeycomb Diagram* (on page 809) and a separate website explain the synergies within the "Collaborative Economy." The diagram is explained in an article in the Next City. The newer version is much larger.

Ann Daigle made a presentation, *New Economy of Sharing* (on page 811), at CNU 21 in Salt Lake city. (She has also provided *Draft Notes Towards a New Economy of Sharing* (on page 834).)

SINGLE-CREW WORKPLACES

Stephen Mouzon is promoting single-crew workplaces (also here). These are run by a single shift, and perhaps by people who "live over the store." Such workplaces can have very low overhead, although they require a great deal of commitment from the proprietors. Most of the examples given are for retail, but they may also be for services.
The Callister Brewing Company is a collaborative brewery, which can also be called a co-working brewing incubator. It features support and a peer-learning network. It shares equipment and commercial facilities so that small professional brewers and home brewers can get up to scale. It is located in Vancouver British Columbia (Canada). Right now it has the founders and three set of co-brewers.
*Proposed: Business*

These tools are for certain types of businesses and supports for them that seem like good ideas, but are not (yet) fleshed out with examples.

**Policy Changes for Lean Development**

Ann Daigle drafted *The Lean Business of Place-Based Enterprise*. It would tilt policies in favor of small place-based businesses, and provide a framework for those businesses.

R. John Anderson suggested a wish list of requirements for lean development:

1. Eliminate off-street parking minimums. (Local)
2. Up-zone any parcel that is limited to one dwelling unit to allow four units plus 35% of conditioned space as workspace as of right (including one or more units in an outbuilding). I think spending time and calories trying to get just one ADU is a waste of resources. The goal is too timid, a half measure that will bring out all the same NIMBYs anyway with a fraction of the benefit. (Local)
3. Revise the FHA, Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac mortgage underwriting requirements for 30 year loans to reflect the 4 unit/35% workspace frame.
4. Eliminate the mortgage interest deduction. It is a moral hazard. (Federal)
5. Get municipal building departments out of the business of issuing building permits for buildings for which they bear no liability. (State)
6. License as Architects anyone with a contractor's license or with four years' experience in a skilled trade, who can pass the exam. (State)
7. Eliminate the upfront fees charged for new construction or renovation work by utility companies — public or private. They can roll the cost of their administrative, engineering, and inspection staff into the operating budgets approved by each state’s utility commission and recovered through the rates they are allowed to charge. (State)
8. Get the SEC to complete the Rules for crowd-sourced investments in real estate for non-accredited investors. (Federal)
9. Pitch John Oliver on a piece pointing out how ridiculous it is to believe that anyone is entitled to stable or ever-increasing real estate value. (some guy who knows John Oliver's producer)

PLACEMAKING BOND FUNDS

A *Placemaking Bond Fund Proposal and Legislation (on page 844)* would help cities and organizations to partner together so that they could pool their capabilities for mutual benefit. Christopher (Kip) Bergstrom proposed legislation and a pilot project for this purpose.

The bond fund would have helped to make places walkable and suitable for modern, mobile talent — especially Makers and immigrants. It would also have included new models of finance and development, and would help to pilot new types of zoning and enforcement. The general idea was to figure out *Approach for a Placemaking Bond Fund (on page 849)*, and then use that experience to draft legislation that would be standardized.

INNOVATION DISTRICTS

Christopher (Kip) Bergstrom proposed Innovation Districts, which would have supported the following:

1. compact, walkable places that enable frequent interaction among entrepreneurs,
2. transit-connected places that would have anchor institutions (universities, large businesses, hospitals, etc.),
3. co-working / incubator / accelerator spaces (In order of greater support), and
4. mentorship networks.
The Innovation districts legislation, which was never enacted, could be a template for legislation. It was designed to protect the ecosystem for innovation, and do more than just enable startups. It's more proactive, and is designed to be catalytic.

**Remaking Martin Luther King Jr. Streets**

This essay and a précis in CityLab is based on the observation that streets that are named after Martin Luther King Junior tend to be poorer even than other streets with the same demographics. It offers a way to improve such streets.
Lean Financing

These tools pertain to lean methods for financing businesses and neighborhood development (except for buildings).

Ready: Financing ................................................................. 72
  Community Credit Unions and Specialized Revolving Loan Funds .......... 72
  Neighborly ........................................................................ 73
  Neighborhood Investment Co-ops .............................................. 73
  ioby — Nonprofit Crowdsourcing ............................................ 74
  Self-Organized Credit Circles .................................................. 74

Proposed: Financing .............................................................. 75
  Development Fees, Incentives, and Local Equity ................................. 75
Ready: Financing

The following are ready-to-use tools for lean finance that can be used in the United States, at least in some capacity.

Certain associations support funding: directly, by securing credit, or by finding government support. These include foundations, community development corporations, and religious and charitable organizations. Many localities maintain lists of such organizations in their offices of development.

COMMUNITY CREDIT UNIONS AND SPECIALIZED REVOLVING LOAN FUNDS

These are two different, but related approaches to pooling credit.¹

COMMUNITY CREDIT UNIONS

Community development credit unions and similar kinds of place-based co-operative credit providers, some of which have focused on providing both capital and patient coaching to small businesses. There’s a limit to the percent of assets that can be met from outside investors, which keeps growth rates modest but local accountability high.

By relating to national banking facilities intended to support such locally controlled organizations, locally generated resources can be magnified. See the National Cooperative Bank and the Community Development Financial Institutions Fund (and an explanation of its work). Also see the Opportunity Finance Coalition.

The National Federation of Community Development Credit Unions has a website that provides a great deal of information, including explanations of products and services.

SPECIALIZED REVOLVING LOAN FUNDS

There are at least 5,000 specialized revolving loan funds. It’s very likely there are one or more in the places CATS is working in now. Some are based in community foundations; others are their own organizations.

¹ Courtesy Scott Bernstein
NEIGHBORLY

This can be called a crowd-funding platform for investing in your city.

We should look at right-sized public financing such as Neighborly. It has been established to lower the cost of providing small-scale bond financing for hyper-local projects by lowering the minimum bond size. Denver’s pilot “mini-bond” offering to raise $12 million for a neighborhood’s road-water-sewer sold out in 23 minutes. Most states now also support "linked deposits," in which everyday public receipts are used to purchase certificates of deposit in banks, if the banks agree to lend in conditions that are otherwise barriers to access. These purposes may range from small business to housing. The arrangement started in Illinois way back when Adlai Stevenson was treasurer, and it’s generally carried out by treasurers in local, county and state governments.¹

NEIGHBORHOOD INVESTMENT CO-OPS

These are neighborhood-scale investment vehicles designed as legal cooperatives. They are available nationwide, and the Northeast Investment Cooperative (NEIC) in Minneapolis is a good example.

From its FAQs:

The cooperative model is an innovative vehicle for community investment with many advantages over traditional models. A cooperative operates democratically on a one-member, one-vote basis, so that all members have equal voting power. Because a cooperative is a for-profit business it can provide members with a modest return on their investment. A cooperative also typically focuses on multiple bottom lines, including improving a community’s social and economic capital. For the NEIC, this means giving

¹Paraphrased from Scott Bernstein
Northeast Minneapolis residents a way to work together to make long-term, stabilizing, and strategic investments that will help transform our community.

Another example is the Alberta Community & Co-operative Association (ACCA). It has a program for unleashing local capital, which helps groups form Opportunity Development Co-operatives (ODCs). ODCs are organized with Provincial (Canadian) support to raise and pool capital raised from local investors, in order to support local businesses.

**IOBY — NONPROFIT CROWDSOURCING**

The nonprofit ioby is an activist nonprofit crowdsourcing organization for neighborhood development. From the website: "ioby mobilizes neighbors who have good ideas to become powerful citizen leaders who plan, fund and make positive change in their own neighborhoods."

**SELF-ORGANIZED CREDIT CIRCLES**

Self-organized credit circles such as savings clubs give members access to resources and know-how. Members can also use their professional training in financial literacy. This New York Times article is on self-organized credit circles in which people lend each other money in order to build a credit history.¹

¹Paraphrased from Scott Bernstein
Proposed: Financing

These tools are for certain types of finance that seem like good ideas, but are not (yet) fleshed out with examples.

DEVELOPMENT FEES, INCENTIVES, AND LOCAL EQUITY

In Hennepin County as elsewhere, affordable housing developers tap locally-administered federal funds and those force them to accept them to absorb inflated costs. The developers then suck their development fees from the poor neighborhood where the affordable housing is concentrated. For this reason, the County’s Community Works organization is now looking for a way to build relatively affordable building types (preferably owner-occupied), using modest techniques, and build up a local skilled workforce. This keeps the money in the neighborhood in two ways: wages and home equity. It also builds neighborhood capacity through home ownership.\(^1\)

Paddy Steinschneider writes that affordable housing is frequently too expensive and conspicuous, but that localities can subsidize or incentivize “natural affordability,” or use sweat equity. They can do this by reducing the costs for any small builder to build, regardless of the builder’s willingness to do paperwork. For example, they could reduce fees or provide free services to developers that provide housing at a low cost. A government could even give away prepared sites (with hookups).

Myron Orfield has written on the “poverty industry,” and its inability to address important issues. See also his Institute on Metropolitan Opportunity project’s web page.

---

\(^1\)Noted by B. Aaron Parker
Lean Governing

These tools pertain to lean governance and organizations that support lean governance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ready: Governing</th>
<th>77</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Institutional Support for Developing Small</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place-based Management</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Better Homeowners' Associations</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOCUS Programs</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neighborhood Leadership</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Design and Innovation Centers</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIMBY Toolkit</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Applied: Governing</strong></td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Localism</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social Enterprises and Benefit Corporations</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Main Street program</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Proposed: Governing</strong></td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roles for HOAs and PUDs</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quicker New Construction</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supporting Immigrant Entrepreneurship</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Private Government</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ready: Governing

The following are ready-to-use tools and organizations that can aid governance, and that can be used in the United States, at least in some capacity.

Institutional Support for Developing Small

An article by Jim Heid appears in Urban Land, the Urban Land Institute’s house organ. It extols the virtues of small development, and explains the ULI’s approach to it. The article mentions both the Real Estate Entrepreneur Program and the Small-Scale Development Council and three case studies of small-scale projects.

- The following people participated in the effort:
  - Jim Kumon and John Anderson of Incremental Development Alliance (@IncrementalDev)
  - Christopher Coes of LOCUS (@LOCUSDevelopers)
  - Brian Falk of Lean Urbanism (@Lean Urbanism)
  - Andrew Frey of Townhouse Center (@TownhouseCenter)
  - Jim Lindberg and Margaret O’Neal of Preservation GreenLab (@PresGreenLab)
  - Chuck Marohn of Strong Towns (@StrongTowns)
  - Lynn Richards of CNU (@NewUrbanism)
  - Frank Starkey of National Town Builder Association
  - Matt Wagner of National Main Street Center (@NatlMainStreet)
  - Jim Heid of ULI (@UrbanLandInst)

Place-based Management

Smart Growth America’s LOCUS Program, under Christopher Coes, has a guidebook for revitalizing downtowns: (Re)Building Downtown. It is mainly geared towards
managing redevelopment and then keeping the area viable in the long term: place-based management.

The LOCUS program's Attainable Housing Social Equity Initiative operates mainly through crowdsourced community engagement.

**Better Homeowners' Associations**

Daniel Slone suggests some innovative developers know how to make HOAs better. He offers several minimalist approaches to improving homeowner's associations from a legal point of view.

1. **Subsidiarity via nested dolls.** We can develop subsidiarity by combining nested dolls and limitations on authority, and potentially a "bill of rights."

2. **Nested doll.** One option is a "nested-doll" approach to homeowner's associations. Smaller entities can operate inside bigger entities, and the bigger entities can be limited in scope so as not to step on the smaller entities' toes. Each state is different, so you should consult your state's laws. A Master Property Owners Association would provide an umbrella organization over individual Homeowners Associations, while leaving those associations intact for their normal and distinct functions. The *Articles of Incorporation for an MPOA* (on page 853) would incorporate an MPOA, while the *Provision for Subassociations in Owner Documents* (on page 860) would allow subassociations of various scales to be set up for different purposes: i.e. the block, neighborhood, or park level. The decision making and financial responsibility would then be distributed to that level.

3. **Limited authority.** Each association can have a limited authority. It can be "dialed down" to just maintenance of common areas or "dialed up" to the typical boilerplate-over-the-top-nanny level.
4. Dispute resolution. Within this framework, the homeowners’ association should have a dispute-resolution process similar to traditional communities' processes using local chiefs. The Dispute Resolution Framework (on page 862) could be included in association documents to allow community members to resolve disputes using trusted community members rather than litigation or formal arbitration.

5. Declaration of owner rights: a corollary of limited authority. There is a problem with HOAs, if they keep people from doing things that are considered normal elsewhere, such as hanging laundry. Such a declaration in ordinances could help restrain the HOA from restricting say, freedom of speech or commercial rights. Virginia offers statements for unit-owners' rights and for lot-owners' rights (See Virginia Statement of Owner Rights (on page 865)). The AARP has proposed a AARP Model Bill of Rights for Homeowners (on page 867). It would guarantee basic rights of representation within an association. Further, the article, Free Speech Rights in CICs (on page 870) might help challenge some restrictions. It explains that some restrictions (especially against speech) may already be illegal, and should probably be pro-actively eliminated by HOA boards. This would help people do things like opening businesses.

6. Sunset clauses. Many things are decided by sheer inertia, and never change. Thus sunset clauses can make HOAs decide whether to support the status quo affirmatively. If the HOAs stay passive, the sunset clause ends the status quo. Typically, a 67% or 75% majority has to agree in order to make any changes. Clause 7.3 of the New Pattonsburg Declaration of Community Responsibilities, Covenants and Restrictions, New Pattonsburg Declaration of Community Responsibilities, Covenants, and Restrictions is a “sunset” clause. It can be adopted for contemporary HOAs. Dan Slone writes:

   It essentially says that all of the town’s rules (building code, zoning and subdivision) will disappear 25 years after its adoption, and that the community has until then to figure out what wants to put in place
to replace them. This entire document is an interesting study in Lean.

We were moving this town out of the flood plain and the mayor
brought me in to create a building code, subdivision and zoning
code. The only problem was that the citizens (like all good folks from
Missouri) did not like laws – so they did not want a bunch of laws. So
I asked if they would agree to govern their town with a contract. When
they said “yes”, I created this. It has some light zoning, references the
plat for subdivision and adopted the BOCA code by reference (this
was in 1995 before we might have looked for a lighter building code).
In 2020 they have to decide whether to continue this or put actual
ordinances in place or just let it go. One must be careful with this
approach – it could give a bank concerns but fortunately they rarely
read the recorded documents.

LOCUS PROGRAMS

Smart Growth America’s LOCUS Program, under Christopher Coes, coordinates with
several other programs for funding development. Its Federal Financing Toolkit is con-
stantly updated to remain current. It mentions several programs that would be useful
for places to support small-scale development.

The Fixing America’s Surface Transportation (FAST) Act expands two such programs.

1. The Federal Transportation Infrastructure Finance and Innovation Act (TIFIA) pro-
gram already offers credit assistance for transportation projects that cost over
$10 million. Localities can use this credit to do things like streetscape improve-
ments, sidewalks, bike lanes, and etc. Under the expanded scope the FAST Act
gave it, it can support TOD projects.

2. Similarly, the FAST Act expands the Railroad Rehabilitation Improvement and
Financing (RRIF) program to offer direct loans and loan guarantees for railroad
projects, under the Federal Railroad Administration. The FAST Act allows those resources to be used for developing TOD near passenger rail and commuter rail lines.

NEIGHBORHOOD LEADERSHIP

Nextdoor and SeeClickFix are two platforms for developing leadership and civic involvement, using the Internet.¹

Nextdoor is a social network for your physical neighborhood, but it also allows you to organize events and groups. It is widely used, and does not require governmental involvement. However, the organizations neighbors create within the network can be recognized by the locality, and the locality can be invited to support and respond to them.

SeeClickFix is a tool by which citizens can report things like potholes and street signs that have been obscured — or nuisances and even crimes. The locality has to buy into it. Otherwise there is no point in making a report.

DESIGN AND INNOVATION CENTERS

Design and innovation centers can be helpful for lean businesses. Several of them operate through universities:²

1. Temple University’s Center for Design + Innovation
2. The University of North Carolina systems’ Center for Design Innovation

¹Suggested by Christopher (Kip) Bergstrom
²Suggested by Scott Bernstein
BIMBY TOOLKIT

The BIMBY (Beauty In My Back Yard) Toolkit is a well-thought-out and user-friendly series of online workshops to guide a community of (largely) non-experts through creating a BIMBY Housing Manual. (See the BIMBY website.) It is a product of the Prince’s Foundation for Building Community in the UK, but is easily adaptable elsewhere. See the Toolkit page.

David Sucher also proposed some paths to citizen participation in City Comforts, a leanly-formatted book.
**Applied: Governing**

These tools for policy and governance are limited to certain locations or certain narrow purposes. While they are not suitable for use everywhere and for everyone in the United States, they suggest models that can be replicated anywhere.

**LOCALISM**

BALLE is a platform for developing leadership, organizing funding, and promoting localism in general. It has produced *A Guide to Community Capital* (on page 913). It explains neighborhood capital. It offers specific advice on investment offerings and community capital platforms, as well as basic explanations of finance and debt. Areas include owning and managing co-ops, commons, and trusts; community lending and place-based lending (they say investing); and leadership development. The organization built a Local-First Toolkit. It is designed to help increased demand for local businesses. A local-first how-to guide is available for $50.

**SOCIAL ENTERPRISES AND BENEFIT CORPORATIONS**

A social enterprise is an organization that applies commercial strategies in order to provide social and environmental benefits. It is somewhat similar to a benefit corporation. Renew Australia is a "social enterprise" for community renewal and economic development in the arts and other creative industries.¹

Benefit corporations are a type of for-profit corporation that is legally obligated to provide a positive impact for society, workers, the community and the environment. A benefit corporation still has a fiduciary responsibility to turn a profit, but that responsibility does not eliminate the legal obligation. See this explanatory site.

---

¹Suggested by Scott Bernstein
NATIONAL MAIN STREET PROGRAM

The National Main Street Program helps some small cities and towns to fund public and private improvements of streets. Many cities have storefront programs, renovation programs, and so forth.¹

¹Noted by Christopher (Kip) Bergstrom
Proposed: Governing

These tools are for types and methods of governance that seem like good ideas, but are not (yet) fleshed out with examples.

Roles for HOAs and PUDs

Bruce F. Donnelly has proposed Principles for Managing Neighborhoods (on page 935) for lean homeowners associations, and Andrés Duany suggests that Planned Unit Development could accommodate Pink Zones. See also Better Homeowners’ Associations (on page 78) and Private Government (on the next page).

Quicker New Construction

Cleveland sells its land bank lots inexpensively, but it requires a long process of vetting and design review before anyone can build on the lots. Therefore, Knez Homes is working with Ohio City, Inc. (a Community Development Corporation) to speed the process for buyers. The city does not cut any corners, but Knez and Ohio City Inc. take on the burden by preparing in advance. This strategy works partly by agreeing to standard designs in bulk, and by working with the land bank all at once. See this Plain Dealer article.

Supporting Immigrant Entrepreneurship

We need tools specifically for supporting immigrants. Although Extracts from A World of Opportunity (on page 939) does not supply actual tools, it suggests areas that need to be addressed — specifically high barriers to entry, cultural insensitivity, and other issues specific to immigrant communities.
PRIVATE GOVERNMENT

Bill Dennis notes the following as a potential approach to privatizing government development initiatives:

New Amsterdam used Patroons. The system of Patroons was instrumental in the early successful growth of the colony: a method for decentralizing decisions and initiatives. Patroons were charters to individuals for deeded tracts and they gave those individuals basically medieval feudal rights:

- the creation of courts,
- appointment of officials, and
- holding the land in perpetuity.

They were required to settle the land with at least 50 families within four years to keep those rights, which was incentive to make a mutually beneficial deal with the settlers. The system was changed to the term 'Manor' by the English and some of these existed into the 1800s.
## Lean Learning

These tools help the small and their neighborhoods to learn about Lean Urbanism

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ready: Learning</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lean Builder Workshops</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small Developer Boot Camps</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smart Growth Schools Report Card</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yimby Party Platform for More Housing</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Time Renovator Training</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lean Slides and Lean Lexicon</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lean Architectural Education</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Applied: Learning</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>West Philadelphia Repair Initiative</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code Check Guides for Building Codes</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proposed: Learning</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pocket Handbooks</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lean Twitter Tips</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tool for Designing Streets as Places</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Ready: Learning**

The following are ready-to-use tools for lean learning that can be used in the United States, at least in some capacity.

**LEAN BUILDER WORKSHOPS**

Stephen Mouzon offers several workshops for Lean Builders. The scale is very lean. These include: Tear-Out Prevention Workshop, Eave Workshop, Dormer Workshop, Porch Workshop, Door & Window Workshop, and others. He offers municipal, institutional, development, and neighborhood workshops. See *Lean Builder Resources* (on page 955).

**SMALL DEVELOPER BOOT CAMPS**

Jim Kumon and R. John Anderson and the Incremental Development Alliance run workshops called Small Developer Boot Camps. These can be scheduled in a town if there is enough local buy-in. They also provide Coaching and Speaking. The website itself is lean in format and provides a good introduction to why building small is important.

**SMART GROWTH SCHOOLS REPORT CARD**

Nathan Norris created this evaluation tool in 2009. In addition to being a great format for teaching issues, the report card can also guide communities to more lean development patterns oriented to neighborhood schools. (See also the *Smart Growth Schools Report Card* (on page 959).)
**Yimby Party Platform for More Housing**

This website is lean and well-written. It provides a model for educating and mobilizing voters for particular issues and causes. In this case, the goal is increasing the housing supply in a city. Thus, the format is lean and the outcome supports making small possible.

**First Time Renovator Training**

These affordable workshops through the Preservation Resource Center in New Orleans can be models to apply anywhere.¹

**Lean Slides and Lean Lexicon**

Dhiru Thadani and Sandy Sorlien have produced slides for educational purposes. Sandy Sorlien's slides explain the Leaning of codes and the Lean Lexicon (*Leaning of Codes* (on page 972) and *Lean Lexicon* (on page 980), respectively). The Lean Lexicon is available online.

Dhiru Thadani's slides explain pocket codes. (See *Pink Code Illustrations* (on page 1012)).

**Lean Architectural Education**

Andrés Duany proposes the following framework, based on the practice of the office of Robert A.M. Stern and his Associates. It has these elements:

1. very high quality production,
2. the disciplines of normal programs and budgets,

---

¹Courtesy Ann Daigle
3. a system that is not dependent on outstanding talent,
4. extremely efficient production,
5. systematic rather than leadership-based leadership,
6. economic sustainability: pay the apprentices rather than have them pay fees,
7. strong commitment to funded research, even to an academic level,
8. an open-minded attitude toward sources and agile in response,
9. an atelier or team spirit, and
10. the ability to scale and replicate.

There are other benefits, un-enumerated.
**Applied: Learning**

These learning tools are limited to certain locations or certain narrow purposes. While they are not suitable for use everywhere and for everyone in the United States, they suggest models that can be replicated anywhere.

**West Philadelphia Repair Initiative**

The West Philadelphia Repair Initiative (WPRI) is a home repair program that assists low-income homeowners in the maintenance and improvement of their homes. Using volunteers from Bryn Mawr Presbyterian Church, WPRI (formerly "The Other Carpenter") has completed more than 750 projects since 2001 with the help of volunteers and engaged community members. WPRI's repair program is based on Habitat's traditional model of homeowner participation, in which the homeowner works with staff and volunteers on repairs and improvements, and is responsible for 25% of the cost of materials.

**Code Check Guides for Building Codes**

Code Check has common-sense, well-designed precedents for simple guides that explain and link to much more complex material. Lean Urbanism aspires to make the actual codes as easy to navigate as the guides to the codes. See *Code Check Sample* (on page 1001).
**Proposed: Learning**

These tools are for learning about lean that seem like good ideas, but are not (yet) fleshed out with examples.

**Pocket Handbooks**

Pocket Handbooks can be developed for various Lean Urbanism skills to guide self-builders in a simple, straightforward, and portable manner. A suggested format is the laminated slim jim folder that folds accordion-style and slips into a pocket. The Waterford Press Pocket Naturalist Guides are beautiful examples.

**Lean Twitter Tips**

Assign someone to tweet tips on Lean Urbanism frequently, to #LeanUrbanism and related targets. Example:

- Want more reasonably-priced housing? Allow four units in SFD where one is now; remove lot size & parking mins. #LeanUrbanism

**Tool for Designing Streets as Places**

Although it is geared towards UK practice, and although its process is not especially lean, Creating Streets: A Policy Guide for Scotland (pdf) is a fairly brief template for excellent design guidance. The document also has a companion "Creating Places" website.
Further Resources

Contacts (on page 94): People who have contributed ideas or who may have further information.

Appendices (on page 109): Documents included for reference.
**Contacts**

**R. JOHN ANDERSON**
Principal and co-founder, Anderson | Kim Architecture+Urban Design

Anderson | Kim Architecture+Urban Design
300 Broadway Boulevard NE.
Suite K
Albuquerque, Nm, 87102-3488
janderson@andersonkim.com
530 624 5093

**DAN BARTMAN**
Senior Planner, City of Somerville, MA
Department of Planning, George Proakis Director
Somerville City Hall
93 Highland Avenue
Somerville, MA 02143
planning@somervillema.gov
617 625 6600 ext. 2500

**CHRISTOPHER (KIP) BERGSTROM**
Project Manager at State of Connecticut Office of Policy and Management
860 418 6200
SCOTT BERNSTEIN
President and Co-Founder, Center for Neighborhood Technology
2125 W. North Avenue,
Chicago, IL 60647
cott@cnt.org
773 278 4800

ANDREW BURLESON
burlesona@cnu-houston.org

DAN CAMP
Founder, The Cotton District
The Cotton District,
1002 Cotton Row,
Starkville, MS, 39759
662 323 5132

CLAY CHAPMAN
Principal, Period Architecture
ccc@periodarchitecture.com
Santa Barbara 805 722 5932
Atlanta 404 617 3132
New York 917 991 5590
CHRISTOPHER COES
Director, LOCUS
1707 L Street, NW,
Suite 250, Washington, DC 20036
United States
ccoes [at] locusdevelopers.org
202 207 3355 ext. 156

MAURICE D. COX
Director, City of Detroit Department of Planning and Development
CoxM@detroitmi.gov

STEVE COYLE
Principal, Town Green
steve@town-green.com

PAUL CRABTREE
President, Crabtree Group, Inc.
308 South Ventura St.
Ojai, CA 93023
422 E. Main Street
Ventura, CA 93001
325 D. Street
P.O. Box 924
Salida, CO, 81201
pcrabtree@crabtreegroup.net
719 221 1799

**ANN DAIGLE**  
The CityBuilding Exchange, Company Farm Pecans  
ABDaigle@aol.com

**BILL DENNIS**  
Principal, B. Dennis Town Design  
90 Oriole Avenue,  
Providence, Rhode Island, 02906  
bill@bdennis.com  
401 330 9552

**BRUCE F. DONNELLY**  
Office of Bruce F. Donnelly  
bfd@accessplaces.com  
216 223 8467

**MARTIN DREILING**  
President, Dreiling Terrones Architecture, Inc.  
1103 Juanita Avenue  
Burlingame, California 94010
314 Center Street
Ste 220
Healdsburg, California 95448
md@dtbarch.com
707 431 1305

ANDRÉS DUANY
Partner, Duany Plater-Zyberk & Company

Miami, FL office:
1023 SW 25th Ave.
Miami, FL 33135
Miami office number: 305 644 1023

Washington, DC office:
320 Firehouse Lane,
Gaithersburg, MD 20878
Washington, DC office number: 301 948 6223

Portland, OR office:
7435 NE Halsey St,
Portland, OR 97213
Portland, OR office number: 305 644 1023

Berlin, Germany office
Fritschesstrasse 26, 10585,
Berlin, Germany
Berlin, Germany office number: 49 30 2693293
DOUG FARR
President, Farr Associates
53 W Jackson Street
Suite 650
Chicago, IL 60604
doug@farrside.com
312 408 1661

ANDREW FREY
Executive Director, Townhouse Center
afrey@townhousecenter.org
303 555 0110

DEAN GUNDERSON, MCRP
Urban planner, Gunderson Planning & Design
gun.plan.design@gmail.com
Urban Designer for the City of Thomasville, Georgia
dean.gunderson@thomasville.org
229 227 4008

RICK HALL
President, PE of Hall Planning & Engineering, Inc.:  
322 Beard Street 
Tallahassee, FL 32303
JIM HEID
Author at Urban Land Magazine (Urban Land Institute)
urbanland@uli.org.
President & Founder, Urban Green
P.O. Box 29627
San Francisco CA 94129
511 Johnson Street
Healdsburg, CA 95448
415 218 6709
jim@urbangreen.net

SUSAN HENDERSON
Susan Henderson Principal / Town Planner, Placemakers
Albuquerque, NM
susan@placemakers.com
505 332 9561

SARA HINES
Principal, Hines Design Associates, Inc.
321 Eliot St.
Ashland, MA 01721
infocottagecommunities@gmail.com
508-881-3288

**PETER KATZ**

Peter Katz, Smart Growth and Urban Design Consultant
5268 G Nicholson Lane #280
Kensington, MD 20895
Katzoid@Earthlink.net
202 486 7160

Doug Kelbaugh FAIA

Professor of Architecture and Urban and Regional Planning and former Dean
Taubman College of Architecture & Urban Planning
University of Michigan
2000 Bonisteel Blvd.
Ann Arbor, MI 48109-2069
kelbaugh@umich.edu
734 764 1300

**DAVID KIM**

Principal and co-founder, Anderson | Kim Architecture+Urban Design

Anderson | Kim Architecture+Urban Design
dkim@andersonkim.com
646 248 2164
JIM KUMON
Executive Director at the Incremental Development Alliance
jkumon@incrementaldevelopment.org

MATTHEW LAMBERT
Partner, Duany Plater-Zyberk & Company
Portland, OR office:
7435 NE Halsey St,
Portland, OR 97213
Portland, OR office number: 305 644 1023

THOMAS E. LOW
AIA CNU LEED AICP NCARB
Principal, Civic By Design
info@civicbydesign.com

MIKE LYDON
Principal, Streets Plans Collaborative
mike(at)streetplans(dot)org
155 Water Street, Second Floor
Brooklyn, NY 11201
New York office number: 917 767 9850
221 Aragon Avenue, Suite 204
Coral Gables, Florida 33134
Coral Gables office number: 305 978 6426
3150 18th St., Suite 462
Mailbox #109 | San Francisco, CA 94110
San Francisco office number: 628 400 3586

DAVID MAYERNIK
Associate Professor, School of Architecture, University of Notre Dame
mayernik.4@nd.edu
Principal, David Mayernik, Ltd.
574 631 4451
About David Mayernik

KIT MCCULLOUGH
Lecturer in Architecture, A. Alfred Taubman College of Architecture and Urban Planning
University of Michigan
2000 Bonisteel Boulevard
Ann Arbor, MI 48109-2069
Office: 3122
kitmcc@umich.edu
734-764-1300
STEPHEN MOUZON
Mouzon Design
steve@mouzon.com
305 213 7539

MARK NICKITA
Founder, Archive DS
The Guardian Building
500 Griswold, 36th Floor
Detroit, MI 48226
info@archiveds.com
313 963 6687

LISA NISENSON
Founder, Greater Places
lisa@greaterplaces.com
202 744 6854

JOHN NORQUIST
Urban Consultant, author
LinkedIn page
NATHAN NORRIS
CEO, Downtown Development Authority
735 Jefferson St. #204
Lafayette, LA 70501
nathan@downtownlafayette.org
337 291 5566

MARGARET O’NEAL
Senior Manager, Sustainable Preservation - Preservation Green Lab at National Trust for Historic Preservation
2600 Virginia Avenue NW
Suite 1100
Washington, DC 20037
202 588 6000

BARACK OBAMA
President, United States of America
The White House
1600 Pennsylvania Avenue NW
Washington, DC 20500
president@whitehouse.gov
202-456-1414 (switchboard)

LESLIE OBERHOLTZER
AICP, RLA, LEED AP
Principal, CodaMetrics
1129 Cleveland St
Suite B
Evanston IL 60202
leslie(at)codametrics(dot)com
773 680 7130

B. AARON PARKER
President, B. Aaron Parker & Associates | Metropeligo P.C.
bap@metropeligo.com
612 327 1729

DONALD SHOUP
Distinguished Research Professor, Department of Urban Planning, UCLA
(310) 825-5705
shoup@ucla.edu

DANIEL SLONE
Partner at McGuireWoods
Gateway Plaza
800 East Canal Street
Richmond, VA 23219-3916
dslone@mcguirewoods.com
804 775 1041
SANDY SORLIEN
Principal, SmartCode Local, Transect Collection
340 Gates Street
Philadelphia, PA 19128
sandysorlien@comcast.net
215 487 2716

BILL SPIKOWSKI
Principal, Spikowski Planning Associates
1617 Hendry Street
Suite 416
Fort Myers, Florida 33901-2947
bill@spikowski.com
239 334 8866

FRANK STARKEY
President of People Places, LLC, Developer of the Longleaf Community
starkey.f@gmail.com

PADDY STEINSCHNEIDER
President Gotham Design & Community Development Ltd.
329 Broadway
Dobbs Ferry, NY 10522
arch329@gmail.com
914 693 5093

EMILY TALEN, PhD
Professor, University of Chicago

DHIRU THADANI
Principal at Thadani Architect + Urbanist (TAU)

BRUCE TOLAR
228 872 2598
DPZ’S ONE-STORY ATTACHED HOUSING
This is one of many examples that DPZ has. (Courtesy Andrés Duany.)
SMALL HOUSES: BRITISH COLUMBIA CASE STUDIES

Small Housing British Columbia’s case studies of small houses.
Innovations in Small-scale Living from North America
It’s not a movement about people claiming to be ‘tinier than thou’ but rather people making their own choices toward simpler and smaller living however they feel best fits their life.

~ Jay Shafer
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acknowledgements</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreword</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What is a small house?</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What are the benefits of a smaller home?</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why a series of case studies?</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case Studies</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Small Lot Homes</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. House-plex</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Grow Homes</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Cottage Housing</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Cohousing</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Laneway Houses</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Suites in Duplexes</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Lock-off suites</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Micro suites</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Tiny Home</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glossary</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resources</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Acknowledgements

Small Housing BC would like to thank the Real Estate Foundation of British Columbia for their support and interest in advancing research on innovative small housing developments.

In particular, we would like to thank the many individuals that contributed their time and expertise to inform the examples in this toolkit. They include Derek Leavitt and Christian Navar of Modative; Ross Chapin of Ross Chapin Architects, Anne Easton from the Cranberry Commons, Avi Friedman a renowned affordable housing expert, Dale Mickelson from UniverCity, Kimia Hadan from the City of San Francisco. Michael Epp of the City of North Vancouver, and John McFarlane of Camera Buildings Ltd.

We would also like to acknowledge the support, guidance and interest of Sean Hodgins of Cenury Group, David Crenna from the Canadian Home Builders Association, Rebecca Siggner of BC Housing, Margaret Eberle of the Metro Vancouver Housing Committee and Duncan Hill from the National Housing Research Committee (part of the Canadian Housing and Mortgage Corporation).

Lastly, we would like to recognize the valuable guidance provided by Jake Fry and Bob Ransford founding directors of Small Housing BC.
Foreword

MANY FORCES ARE SHAPING CHANGE in our North American communities today.

The ageing of the baby-boom generation is shifting demographics. The combined forces of globalization, urbanization and the mass emergence of a consumer-driven culture in China is re-shaping economies globally and locally. A rising consciousness about mankind’s impact on our planet’s ecosystems is causing many to re-think their own impact, driving some to try to reduce their own ecological footprint. The structure of the traditional North American suburb has failed to live up to the expectations of many who settled in suburban neighbourhoods, and new ways are being sought to re-engineer suburban living and re-build those settlement patterns.

Meanwhile, others are fleeing suburban areas and returning to inner-city neighbourhoods. Social change is altering the concept of the family. The traditional family is no longer traditional. Singles, single-parent families, combined generations - all are searching for living arrangements that are no longer the alternative, but are becoming the norm.

Change in the way we plan, design and build human shelter, or housing, has been slow coming. While household numbers have been declining, we have seen only small changes in the last decade or two in the sizes of homes. Meanwhile, people have seen their lifestyles transform and are seeking alternatives to housing types, tenure and size. The demand for smaller forms of housing, or alternative housing design, isn’t just driven just by the desire for more affordable housing, although that is one objective that can be achieved with housing forms we have yet to embrace. Some want to live in a different, smaller kind of house because they have different lifestyle priorities that have been shaped by the aforementioned change.

Many people have come to understand the simple reality that our houses have become too large, over the last few decades. Their best evidence are the memories they have of growing up in - and seeing their parents and grandparents live in - much smaller houses where they lived lives as meaningful, if not more meaningful, more convenient, more comfortable and more affordable than we all live today in much bigger houses.
The move toward embracing smaller forms of housing is a neo-traditional movement. We’ve built these smaller homes before. We can build them today - better designed, more durable and more ecologically responsible.

The above reality was the impetus for the formation of Small Housing BC - a British Columbia-based advocacy and educational non-profit organization. Our mandate is to support the development and promotion of small housing as a sustainable housing form, and act as a public voice for the small housing industry, consumers and citizens who wish to see the benefits of advanced urbanism with the development of small forms of housing.

We fulfill our mandate by contributing to research, knowledge transfer, education and the achievement of excellence associated with small forms of housing and related advanced urbanism. This Small Houses toolkit is one of our contributions to research, knowledge and education. We surveyed and documented recent innovations in North America, where the regulatory regime has been purposefully designed - or substantially reformed - to encourage the development of well-conceived small forms of housing.

We hope this resource document will not sit on the shelves of offices where house builders, planners, architects, municipal councillors and citizen-activists hang their hats. Instead, we hope the pages within people’s respective copies become dog-eared and the hotlinks well used, as instigators of change embrace some of the ideas herein and begin building the kind of smaller housing for which people are searching.

Bob Ransford

Founding Director,
Small Housing BC
Introduction
A major change is underway that is defining where and how we are choosing to live. In 2011, for the first time in nearly a hundred years, the rate of urban population growth outpaced suburban growth, reversing a trend that held steady for every decade since the invention of the automobile. In urban centres across the country, building activity that until recently had been almost entirely focused on the suburban fringe, has moved back toward the metropolitan centres to meet the demands of the 21st century household.

Increasing environmental consciousness, financial pressures and demographic changes are shifting housing preferences. Large detached houses in car-centric communities that at one time typified the Canadian dream, are losing followers to households seeking smaller homes in ‘location-efficient’ neighbourhoods. These new consumers are looking for neighbourhoods that are walkable and well served by transit. They are seeking communities where amenities like groceries, parks, community centres and office space are accessible by buses and trains or human-powered travel (e.g. walking, cycling and running). Renters and owners are also looking for affordable housing in an increasingly expensive housing market and they are willing to sacrifice square footage to access more desirable communities. Additionally, households are getting smaller and traditional housing forms are not meeting the needs of empty nesters, one-parent families, singles and multi-generational families.

Municipalities and developers have begun to respond to these changes and are slowly introducing small housing options that reflect consumer preferences, as well as environmental and financial pressures. British Columbia has been a leader in many of these initiatives, championing laneway housing, lock-off suites and micro-suites, to name a few. However, market penetration of small housing forms is still relatively small, even as consumer demand grows.

This toolkit is intended to inspire greater uptake of small housing forms in British Columbian communities by showcasing 10 innovative examples of housing under 1500 square feet, from around North America. From cottage housing to small lot homes and house-plexes, the future is big for small housing.
What is a small house?

There are no industry standards to determine when a house is considered small. A space that might be considered ‘small’ for a family of four could be large, if it was for a single person household. That said, some forward-thinking leaders have emerged over the last few decades to contribute to the debate on the definition of small housing.

The Small Housing Society, which was founded as a result of the tiny house movement, carefully defines 9 forms of small housing. From an efficiency home of approximately 480 sq.ft. to a micro house which barely exceeds 160 sq.ft. the Society leans towards what most North Americans would consider tiny spaces.

A research study of small market units in British Columbia defined small housing as a dwelling of any form (apartment, detached dwelling, moveable unit, etc.) that is sized to meet its occupants’ needs with little excess space - more specifically, approximately 500 sq.ft. for 1-2 people, or slightly larger at 750 sq.ft. for a household of 3 or more.

Sarah Suzanka, the author of Not So Big House, stays clear of defining small in terms of size and instead advocates for a new approach to housing, one that values quality, not quantity, and challenges the development community to build better, not bigger.

In determining their small housing definition, Small Housing BC (SHBC) considered a broad range of factors, including historical data on house size, consumer preferences and household size. SHBC defines small housing as homes between 100 and 1500 sq.ft. They can be detached, such as laneway houses, or attached homes, akin to townhomes or secondary-suites. They are often built in and around urban centers as new construction. However, small housing is increasingly showing up as medium density infill in established neighbourhoods, changing the housing patterns of existing communities.

In 1945, the average size of a Canadian home was 800 sq.ft. and typically housed a family of 4 or more. Today an average British Columbian home easily surpasses 2000 sq.ft. and is providing shelter to 2.5 individuals.
What are the benefits of a smaller home?

There are many individual and societal benefits to living in smaller spaces. People who live in small homes generally own fewer possessions, consume less, and have lower utility bills. Smaller homes require less building materials for construction and use less land. As such, they often cost much less to purchase, maintain, and live in. Construction of smaller homes can utilize more efficient, natural, healthy, high-quality materials that might not be affordable in larger dwellings. All of these benefits result in healthier, more cost-effective living, and a better environment.

According to Jay Shafer, who wrote the *Small House Book*, people who downsize from a larger home and into a small house tend to report the following benefits:

- Less time cleaning;
- Less time maintaining the house;
- Fewer personal possessions and baggage;
- More time with family and friends;
- Less expensive monthly costs for either utilities or mortgage; and
- Less debt and financial risk.
Why a series of case studies?

In British Columbia, as in other regions in North America, the tendency is to associate small housing with boxes stacked high in the sky, located in heavily urbanized environments. This is typically contrasted with the large suburban detached homes, located in car-reliant communities. The purpose of this toolkit is to demonstrate the variety of housing forms that exist in between these two extremes and encourage greater appreciation of small homes.

While reviewing a number of innovative small housing options from North America, Small Housing BC selected examples that:

• Were supported by a municipal lever such as an ordinance or bylaw;
• Were not one-off cases, but rather wide-spread policies or approaches;
• Varied in terms of size from 100 sq.ft. to approaching 1500 sq.ft.;
• Demonstrated varied forms of tenure (ownership or rental);
• Targeted a diverse range of consumers;
• Tended toward low to mid-rise infill development; and
• Addressed issues of affordability, sustainability and/or neighbourhood ‘fit’.

Each of the cases offer a description of the historical context that led to the new initiative, photographs and design drawings of projects in question, the technical levers (or ‘Fact Sheet’) supporting the housing form, as well as the benefits and drawbacks experienced of each.

A Glossary and Appendix, located at the end of the report, supplement the information on each case study.
Case Studies
Average Size of Case Studies

Case Study Number

1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9  10

Traditional Single Family Home
Small Lot Homes
House-plex
Grow Homes (Townhouse)
Cottage Housing
Cohousing
Laneway Housing
Suites in Duplexes
Lock-Off Suites
Micro Suites
Tiny Homes

Average Size of Case Studies

2400 sq.ft.
2000 sq.ft.
1600 sq.ft.
1200 sq.ft.
800 sq.ft.
400 sq.ft.
0 sq.ft.
1. Small Lot Homes
Los Angeles, California

Los Angeles is the second-largest city in the United States. It is a multi-cultural city known as the hub of the entertainment industry and a center of arts, culture, and fashion. Similar to other cosmopolitan cities like Vancouver and Sydney, housing affordability has been a challenge for Los Angeles for several decades. In 1999, the Los Angeles city council established the **Housing Crisis Task Force** in response to the city’s severe affordable housing shortage. Thousands of affordable housing units were being demolished every year to make way for more luxurious homes, and the nearly built-out city did not have the land to accommodate new housing developments. In the months that followed, the task force released a report strongly recommending that Los Angeles increase the availability and production of affordable housing through innovative land use strategies.

In response to the call-to-action, the Los Angeles City Planning Department developed a proposal that would permit the subdivision of lots located within existing multifamily and commercial zones to develop fee-simple, detached townhomes exempt from typical homeowner’s association...
requirements. In 2005, the city passed the proposal into law and the Small Lot Subdivision Ordinance was born.

Since the City of Los Angeles passed the ordinance, small lot projects have been developed in neighborhoods across the city. As of November 2013, over 160 subdivision cases had been filed, resulting in the approval of over 1,500 individual lots. In 2014, as a result of public and private feedback, the City of Los Angeles released a modification of their design guidelines focused on improving the integration of new small lot developments within established neighbourhoods.

**The Small Lot Subdivision (Townhome) Ordinance**

The Small Lot Subdivision (Townhome) Ordinance is an amendment to the Los Angeles Municipal Code. It allows for the subdivision of multi-family and commercially zoned properties into small single-family or townhome style lots, that enable ownership of fee simple homes. Intended as infill development and an alternative to the traditional suburban single-family subdivisions, small lot homes have undersized lot areas with compact housing footprints, as well as reduced setbacks, frontages and open space.
Detached townhomes have two or more floors and an exterior entrance. However, unlike traditional townhomes, they are structurally independent and do not share common walls. Instead, they have a 6 inch (or more) separation that may be covered by flashing.
| **Demographic** | • First-time homeowners, young professionals and retirees |
| **Zones** | • R2, RD, R3, R4, R5, RAS, and C (Multifamily and Commercial). |
| **Minimum lot size** | • 600 sq.ft. and 16 ft wide;  
  • Small lots may be irregularly shaped. |
| **Number of units** | • Dependant on the dwelling unit requirements established by the underlying zone;  
  • Typically 3 to 6 homes are developed per lot. |
| **Average unit size** | • 1000 – 1500 sq.ft. |
| **Height** | • Building-to-height ratio of 1:4.  
  • Buildings should have a height of at least ¼ of the width of the roadway. For example, on a 100-foot wide street, an appropriate building height would be 25 ft. |
| **Open space requirements** | • All structures on a lot may not occupy more than 80 percent of the lot area;  
  • Exceptions are allowed if the tract or parcel map provides common open space equivalent to 20 percent of the lot area of each lot not meeting the 80 percent requirement. |
| **Setbacks** | • A 5-foot setback is required between the subdivision and adjoining properties;  
  • There are no yard or setback requirements along alleys, streets, or between lots within the approved subdivision. |
| **Parking** | • 2 garaged parking spaces are required per unit;  
  • The spaces need not be located on the same lot. |
| **Separation of units** | • Small lot homes must be structurally independent, with no shared foundations or common walls. |
| **Tenure** | • Fee-simple ownership;  
  • No homeownership association (HOA) required. |
| **Approval process** | • 17 steps and a number of multi-departmental approvals in order to obtain a final building permit. |
1. **Fee-simple homeownership for condominium-style housing**

   The *Small Lot Ordinance* allows buyers to own the land and the structure, rather than just a percentage of shared space (as in a condominium project). The land is subdivided and each unit built on a separate lot. While easements for shared pathways and driveways may be necessary, there are no common walls or foundations and, therefore, the units are not subject to strata fees.

2. **Making use of underutilized lots**

   Although small lot developments do not technically increase zoning density, they are usually built on underutilized lots, thereby increasing the number of units made available to the public.

3. **Increase diversity of housing options for purchase**

   Home ownership options have traditionally been limited to single-family homes on 5,000 sq foot lots or condominiums. The *Small Lot Ordinance* extends this ownership option to include townhomes, row houses, and other types of infill housing typically only available for rent.
1. **No demonstrated use in single-family neighbourhoods**

   The *Small Lot Ordinance* is restricted to use in commercial and multi-family zoned areas. While this form of infill development could be appropriate for some single-family neighbourhoods, it is unlikely that such a development would ever come to pass. Single-family neighbourhoods in Los Angeles are strongly defended and protected from densification.

2. **Inadequate public consultation**

   The minimum consultation required was applied to the development of *The Small Lot Ordinance*. Despite having significant implications for communities in the City, public consultation was restricted to a few council meetings. The impact of this was that many homeowners were caught off guard by the policy and frustrated with its wide-reaching scope. For many, despite living in a home on a property zoned for commercial and multi-family units, the area shared the typology and residential character of a typical single-family neighbourhood.

3. **Takes too long to implement**

   Implementing small lot developments can still be challenging for developers. First, subdividing land for small lot development can take up to a year (or longer), making the entitlement process complicated, time consuming and costly. A complicated permitting process can significantly delay projects. Developers applying for permits in the city of Los Angeles must go through approximately 17 steps and a number of multi-departmental approvals, in order to obtain a final building permit.

4. **Parking requirements are too high**

   Despite locating developments on through-ways and in mixed-use areas, the parking requirements mimic those of single-family zones. A typical parking space requires up to 300 sq.ft.; the *Small Lot Ordinance* generally requires that each unit provide two garaged parking spaces, shrinking the availability of land for housing. Tailoring parking requirements to reflect the availability of transit options will promote compact and pedestrian-friendly communities.
2. House-plex
Portland, Oregon

With a population of roughly 600,000, the City of Portland, Oregon is a diverse and historic city on the west coast of the United States. After the passage of Oregon’s land use planning system in 1973, Portland embarked on a grand experiment in city planning: an urban growth boundary containing development - within a 22-sq-mile area - that protects the surrounding farmland and open space, a regional governance system spanning 24 municipalities and three counties, and an ambitious system of light rail and streetcars to service more dense, compact, mixed-use urban form.

As a result, Portland has pioneered a variety of new housing types and residential patterns. One such example is their approach to existing residential neighbourhoods. In 2008, The City of Portland created an Infill Design Toolkit, targeted at adding new housing outside of central Portland in areas that were primarily low-to-medium density.

The Toolkit presented like a menu, providing housing configurations to developers that were economically viable and met city approval requirements. It focused primarily on larger and irregular lots.

THE BIG IDEA
The appearance of single-family housing and the cost savings of attached homes.
Furthermore, it embraced a wide diversity of housing styles including craftsman, cottage, colonial, and modern. Although it permitted variety, it also emphasized the existing neighbourhood pattern through the use of trees, similar frontage requirements, and orientation of buildings. The maintenance of these patterns facilitated the seamless integration of a diversity of new homes such as cottage clusters, courtyard townhouses, or House-plexes.

The House-plex

A House-plex is 3- to 4-unit residence that mimics a large single-family house. They are also called tri-plexes and four-plexes. House-plexes were a popular multi-family housing type in Portland neighbourhoods, during the early 20th century. Often built on small lots, the house-like appearance allowed them to blend in with nearby single-family homes. The House-plex can have a townhouse style or a stacked form with units on top of each other. This housing form is permitted in all three standard residential zones. The size of a single unit within the House-plex can range from 1,000-1,400 sq.ft. They have been sold as condominiums and have also been developed as purpose-built rental.

The guiding principles for the development of house-plexes are similar to what you might find in a detached single-family home development:

- Windows, doors, and porches oriented towards the street;
- Matching the front setback with the adjacent houses and neighbourhood configurations;
- Avoiding large blank walls that face the street;
- Locating and designing windows and balconies to minimize overlook impacts on adjacent yards and residential interiors; and
- Making use of rear parking or tuck-under parking.

The approval process is relatively unique, and could be considered a best practice insofar that it was designed to remove uncertainty from the typical process. Thus, the Infill Design Toolkit provides designs for housing that are pre-approved by local government. The designs were developed by architects chosen by the city through a competitive process. The pre-set plans are particularly important since many of the infill sites are developed by contractors or smaller developers who may not have the resources to take on a complex infill project.
7 unit house-plex. Credit: City of Portland Bureau of Planning.

Four-plex. Credit: City of Portland Bureau of Planning.

House-plex development. Credit: Oris Developments.
### FACT SHEET - House-plex

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Demographic</strong></td>
<td>• Retirees, small families and young professionals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Zones</strong></td>
<td>• R1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minimum lot size</strong></td>
<td>• 5000 sq.ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Number of units</strong></td>
<td>• 3 – 4 units.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit size</strong></td>
<td>• 1000 – 1400 sq.ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Height</strong></td>
<td>• 40 feet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Open Space Requirement</strong></td>
<td>• 50 percent.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Parking Standards**     | • The parking guidelines are flexible and depend on the availability of transit;  
                            | • They range from 0 to 4 spaces.                                       |
| **Approval process**      | • No rezoning nor municipal council involvement required;               
                            | • If pre-approved plans are used, development permits are granted immediately. |
| **Tenure**                | • Strata ownership or rental.                                          |
| **Other provisions**      | • Street frontage requirements to match existing neighbourhood pattern. |
Benefits

1. **New housing option for residential neighbourhoods**
   
   More compact housing forms have typically been reserved for urban centres and commercial areas. The house-plex allows new residents - such as young professionals, small families and retirees - to access neighborhoods that were previously inaccessible, due to finances or undesirable due to maintenance. They are drawn to the housing form because of its similarity to freestanding housing - with the private green space and street-oriented features - but with the affordability of attached housing.

2. **Pre-approved plan permit option**
   
   Portland offers homeowners or contractors the opportunity to purchase and use house plans that have been pre-approved and conform with local building codes and many other standards. This simple, inexpensive-to-implement option reduces the permit process time for selected housing types and, in doing so, can contribute to reduced housing costs and making the units more affordable.

3. **Accommodating density, preserving existing neighbourhood**
   
   The house-plex units and site organization, significantly reduce the appearance of density. The housing form has height restrictions similar to a typical single-family home. The requirements to match the existing neighbourhood patterns - including street trees, front yard setbacks, allowable frontage, and others - must all be maintained in order to provide a seamless integration at the street and neighbourhood scales.
1. **Insufficient parking**

   This is the most challenging issue when creating house-plexes, especially given that there may not be enough space for rear parking. This being the case, the construction of a concrete garage that is “tucked under” the house-plex can make the construction cost-prohibitive. Portland allows parking relaxations if the house-plex is near transit, but off-street parking is one of the biggest challenges for this style of housing.
3. Grow Homes
Montreal, Quebec

Montreal, Quebec is the second largest city in Canada, with a population fast approaching 4 million. Montreal is unique in the country, insofar that it is known for its low homeownership rates and more compact housing patterns. Canadian homeownership statistics in 2011 showed that 69 percent of households owned their home. In contrast, Montreal dominated by tenants, with 64 percent of households renting housing. These rental rates are the highest in the country, even surpassing those found in Vancouver – the most expensive real estate market in Canada.

Another distinguishing feature of the Montreal is the diversity of its the housing stock. Unlike many urban centres, detached single-family homes do not make up the majority of the housing. In fact, 65 percent of households live in attached dwellings such as row houses, duplexes and apartments. This contributes to its reputation as a compact city, with close to 900 people per square kilometer typical for most neighbourhoods, according to the 2011 Canadian Census.

The challenge for Montreal has been to continue to provide affordable housing options for its residents. While rental and cooperative housing
have been the main vehicles for affordability, in the 1990s, the city piloted a new housing form, called the Grow Home, that was created to assist renters with the leap to homeownership.

The first Grow Homes were built in the suburbs of Montreal, in 1990. All of the units were sold before completion of the project. At the time, construction costs came to $35,000 per unit. Once land cost was included, the final sale price was less than $60,000. This was roughly half of the price of a detached single-family house, during that era.

Today, the cost of construction has remained essentially the same. This is due, in part, to the use of prefabricated units being built in a warehouse and pieced together on site. However, even in suburban areas where the price of a new Grow Home has risen to approximately $150,000, this is still considerably less than a single-family home, whose value has doubled or tripled in similar areas.

As of 1999, there were 6,000 Grow Homes produced in the Montreal region, and a further 4,000 were produced in the rest of Canada and United States. Today, Avi Friedman - creator of the Grow Home, in collaboration with Witold Rybczynski - believes there to be as many as 10,000 Grow Homes in Montreal.

The Grow Home

The Grow Home is an attempt to create an affordable ownership option through informed design and prefabrication. Grow Homes are narrow row houses that are largely unfinished and lack partition walls. The lack of finishes reduces the costs and time required for construction, with savings passed on to the homeowner. At their leisure, or when finances permit, residents “grow” their home - finishing rooms, building partitions and adding fixtures. This is similar to the standard building practices in places such as South America, where limited income requires many to ‘grow’ into their homes over longer periods of time than is typical in North America.

The simple construction and design of the Grow Home also keep prices accessible for single-parent families and single-income households - groups that would have otherwise been shut out of the ownership market.

The Grow Home is typically built on a small lot. The homes are often 14 ft wide and approximately 1000 sq.ft. There are four models ranging from

A study conducted by the Canadian Mortgage and Housing Corporation found that 2/3rds of Grow Home residents finished their space after the 1990 purchase date, and 75 percent of those did it themselves or with neighbors.
the most basic to a more elaborate option. The entry-level model has two floors and is built as a slab-on-grade. Typically, there is a kitchen, small bathroom, and living room on the main floor. The second floor has an unpartitioned master bedroom and secondary bedroom with an additional bathroom. In this model, there are no balconies, the upper level flooring is left as unpainted plywood and the kitchen is finished with melamine cabinets and countertops.

The most elaborate option includes two balconies, a basement (adding a third level), garage, hardwood flooring on the main level and carpeting on the second. Additionally, the buyer can request certain features be ready-installed into the home such as a roof window, a second bathroom, or an enclosed kitchen.

Since the housing form is a rowhouse, there was no new zone created - or bylaw amendment introduced - to facilitate the construction of the Grow Home. However, many development projects had to be rezoned to allow for more flexible land-use and smaller lots. Existing zoning also favoured condominium or co-op ownership options, as units under 18 ft wide could not be offered for sale as fee-simple or freehold.

The third of four Grow Home models

Configurations: Unfinished basement; lower balconies front and rear; no balconies at upper level; upper area with single partition; flat roof.

Exterior: Canexel siding; single-clad windows and patio doors; window shutters.

Interior: Vinyl and carpet flooring on ground level; unpainted plywood on upper level; pine stairs; L-shaped pine kitchen.
### FACT SHEET - Grow Homes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Demographic</strong></td>
<td>• Low income families (single mothers, single-income households).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Zones</strong></td>
<td>• Townhouse or rowhouse development (H3-G-347).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minimum lot size</strong></td>
<td>• 2421 sq.ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Density</strong></td>
<td>• 0.25 to 0.9 FSR.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Number of units</strong></td>
<td>• 3 – 8 units per rowhouse development.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit size</strong></td>
<td>• 800 – 1000 square feet on two levels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit dimensions</strong></td>
<td>• 14 ft wide, 36 ft long.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Height</strong></td>
<td>• 32 ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Number of units</strong></td>
<td>• 3 – 8 units per rowhouse development.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Open Space Requirement</strong></td>
<td>• A rear yard is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Setbacks</strong></td>
<td>• The front setback is 19.6 ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The back setback is 23 ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parking Standards</strong></td>
<td>• 1 – 1.8 per unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Separation of units</strong></td>
<td>• Party wall agreement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Orientation</strong></td>
<td>• Street-oriented.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Approval process</strong></td>
<td>• Rezoning with council approval required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ownership</strong></td>
<td>• Strata ownership (under 18 ft wide) and fee-simple ownership (over 18 ft wide).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Other provisions</strong></td>
<td>• Rental units possible within the home.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. **Effective affordable housing strategy**

   The Grow Home has a number of attributes of that contribute to affordability. The most obvious are the simple design and reduced finishing requirements. The costs to build a Grow Home range from $10 to $30 per sq. ft. - in stark contrast to average cost of $300 per sq. ft in Vancouver. Costs are further minimized because of the efficient land-use model.

   The lots required for development are relatively small and the fact that the housing form is attached typically saves approximately 60 percent on infrastructure costs, in comparison to a detached single-family home. That the home is also designed to be affordable post-occupancy is unique. Homeowners gain the ability to modify their home and upgrade the features, as they become more financially secure.

2. **Flexible use of space to meet changing household needs**

   At the point of sale, homeowners are only required to approve a minimum number of finishes. That said, they have the option to add additional features such as a secondary bathroom, a dormer window, or enclosing walls within the suite. Over time, as the needs and financial stability of the household changes, walls and fences can be added, additional floors completed and new features introduced.

3. **Energy efficient housing form**

   Through the compact design of the Grow Home, there can be savings on utilities such as heating and cooling. Witold Rybczynski, the co-creator of the Grow Home found that the narrow-front of the home resulted in a significant reduction in operating costs, since heat loss was limited to two exposed walls (front and rear) and a small roof area. A servicing cost of $400 per linear foot totals $20,000 for a typical 50-foot lot. This cost is lowered to $5,600 for a 14-foot wide Grow Home.
1. **Ghettoization of community**

   The majority of the units have been built in the suburban communities of Montreal. In many cases, the Grow Home was replicated over 400 times in close proximity to one another. The built form facilitated an enclave of low-income residents and, because the units were isolated from transit, commercial activity and other housing types, a ghetto-like community emerged.

2. **Compromised quality finishings**

   One of the ways that the Grow Home ensures affordability is by selecting entry-level finishings in certain models. Thus, for example, melamine is used for the kitchen cabinets and vinyl siding for the homes exterior of certain options. These products typically break down and damage more easily. As such, the shorter lifespan of the interior finishings may increase costs over the long term, as broken or damaged products need to be replaced more rapidly.
4. Cottage Housing
Langley and Seattle, Washington

Langley is a small community of approximately 1000 residents town located on Whidbey Island – an hour ferry commute to Seattle, Washington. In the early 1990s, development pressures stemming from the nearby urban metropolis offered new vitality to the Langley community through an increase in tourism and permanent residents. However, the changes also threatened to overwhelm the town’s rural character. A typical Pacific Northwest community, virtually all of the housing stock at the time consisted of conventional detached homes. In 1995, in response to the increased demand for housing, the community championed the first cottage housing ordinance in the state.

Cottage houses are single-family detached homes, typically less than 1000 sq.ft. in size. They incorporate many of the amenities prized by conventional single-family homes, such as no shared exterior walls and private green space. However, unlike conventional housing which is oriented towards the street and away from neighbours, cottage housing arrange 8 to 12 small homes around a introverted common open space, or courtyard, with parking screened from public view.
The *Cottage Housing Development Ordinance* in Langley, Washington led to several developments within the village. Interest in the housing form was not limited to the island community, but rather caught on throughout the Pacific Northwest. Several communities including Spokane, Kirkland, Bothell Bainbridge Island and Shoreline developed their own cottage housing ordinances (many as pilot ordinances) and embraced the housing option as a way to diversify their housing stock, introduce affordable options and increase density.

For a number of reasons - including the availability of larger lots and the preference towards high-density infill developments - cottage housing is primarily viewed as an alternative housing solution for suburban and rural communities. However, Seattle – the fastest growing major city in the United States with 4 million residents - has recently included cottage housing as an option for infill development on larger lots, within existing single-family neighbourhoods. Seattle’s *Residential Small Lot Zone*, which was modified in 2012 to include guidelines for cottage housing, is an attempt to build on the success of cottage housing in other communities, while tailoring the housing form to meet the constraints of an urban context.

**Cottage Housing Development Model Standards**

Although most aspects remain the same, cottage housing developments typically manifest themselves differently between suburban or rural communities, and urban centres. As a rule, cottage housing developments in less populated communities tend to be built on larger lots with larger homes (800 sq.ft. and greater). They also tend to allocate more space between common areas, semi-private and private zones. Lastly, they are more likely to include a common building which could be used as a workshop, guesthouse or ‘great hall’. That said, there are still strong principles that often underpin the development of any cottage housing ordinance.

A pocket neighborhood is a grouping of smaller residences, often around a courtyard or common garden, designed to promote a close knit sense of community and neighborliness with an increased level of contact. Unlike cottage housing, pocket neighborhoods are not restricted to detached homes and can include any number of housing forms so long as they are oriented around a common space.
Tatlow Park is a de facto pocket neighborhood located on the West side of Vancouver. The 12 units were built as rental cottages in 1928. The homes stand out for their English country style steep pitched rooftops, bay windows, diamond leaded and arched windows, and traditional exterior beams. The homes surround a large landscaped enclosed courtyard, with a lychgate entryway. Tatlow Park was saved from demolition in 1974. The cottages were converted to two level homes, without destroying the Tudor style.

Southlands is a neighbourhood development plan for the municipality of Delta. It will provide residents with a walkable, diverse neighbourhood connected to an agricultural resource area and one of the largest community farms in North America. As one of the housing options it plans to include cottages. The cottages will range in size from 900 to 1,600 sq.ft., with a main floor living concept. Each home will be surrounded by its own private small yard, offering an outdoor area for a patio and small garden.
# FACT SHEET - Cottage Housing Development Model Standards

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Demographic</strong></td>
<td>Retirees and small families.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Zones</strong></td>
<td>Residential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minimum lot size</strong></td>
<td>6400 sq.ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Density</strong></td>
<td>Cottage housing developments may be built at up to twice the allowed density for the underlying zone. This could be achieved three ways, depending on the municipality’s zoning system: 1. Double the allowed units per acre; 2. Halve the minimum lot size requirements; 3. Allow two cottages on each single-family lot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Clusters</strong></td>
<td>Minimum of 4 cottages and no more than 14 cottages; Developments tend to be made up of 1 or 2 clusters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit orientation</strong></td>
<td>Facing inward on a common open space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Setbacks and separation</strong></td>
<td>Cottages must be within 25 ft of the common open space; All buildings must be at least 6 ft apart and 5 ft from the lot line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parking</strong></td>
<td>Clustered and hidden from public view, either off of an alley or a private driveway; Garages are permitted; No more than five contiguous parking spaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Open space</strong></td>
<td>At least 400 sq.ft. per unit; Minimum of 200 sq.ft. for public space; 150 sq.ft. or greater to a private yard; All remaining space should be allocated for semi-private transitional landscaping.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Community infrastructure</strong></td>
<td>A community building is encouraged, but not required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lot coverage</strong></td>
<td>40 percent of the lot can be covered by all built forms (homes and common spaces).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cottage size</strong></td>
<td>Cottages may be no larger than 1200 sq.ft.; Ground floor limited to 850 sq.ft. in rural communities and 650 sq.ft. in Seattle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Height</strong></td>
<td>Limited to 25 ft. in rural communities and 18 ft. in Seattle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ownership</strong></td>
<td>Fee-simple ownership, strata ownership or rental.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. **Appealing to a demographic that might otherwise choose a single-family home**

   Cottage housing has become popular with a wide range of residents, but often attracts retirees looking to downsize and small families seeking an affordable, community-oriented housing option. Cottage housing offers the privacy of a conventional single-family home by virtue of its detached housing model. Additionally, each cottage retains private green space, typical of conventional housing. However, because cottages are smaller and have much less private land, they tend to be more affordable to purchase and maintain.

2. **More efficient use of land**

   Cottages can make the most of a smaller piece of land through their compact size and orientation on the lot. Typically, cottage housing developments double the underlying zoned density.

3. **Clustered arrangements can contribute to a sense of community**

   Homes face inward, towards a common open space. Additional design features - such as large, covered porches - encourage the mingling of neighbours. A shared meeting or eating area further nurtures community relations.
1. **Not always affordable**

On a per-square-foot basis, cottages are more expensive to build than larger houses. This poses a direct challenge to the goal of using cottage housing to make homes more affordable. Cottages contain all of the same expensive parts of a conventional house - kitchen and bathrooms - but none of the builder’s typical profit centres (such as sitting rooms, dining rooms or extra bedrooms) that add to the price of a house, but are inexpensive to build.

2. **Limitations on density**

Cottage housing does require a larger lot and there are more efficient models of land-use when density is the goal. Cottage housing alone is unlikely to increase population densities sufficiently to support additional amenities and address some the impacts of unsustainable land-use.

3. **Not necessarily transit-oriented**

Cottage housing development ordinances still require on-site parking and, as a result, reflect the car-oriented development approach typical in North America. However, the densities allowed are sufficient to prompt frequent bus service and projects could be developed with transit in mind.
In 1964, a group of senior residents and an architect purchased a site outside of Copenhagen, with the intent of co-developing the property for their own use. The group envisioned a development suited to supportive living. The site design included 12 terraced rowhouses, surrounding a common house and a swimming pool. Local officials supported the plan, however, residents living adjacent to the property vocally opposed the project and prevented it from proceeding. This early attempt at community-led development was the first iteration of cohousing. Since then, the idea of private ownership combined with shared amenities has spread worldwide. The Canadian Cohousing Network has counted more than 119 cohousing units in North America completed since 1991 and there are currently 100 more being developed.

Cranberry Commons Cohousing Development

In March 1999, a number of families from New Westminster and Vancouver came together with one shared purpose – to build a community that would be walkable, sustainable, and would provide a balance of privacy and community.
These were early days for the cohousing movement in North America. Not many people knew what cohousing was and many people assumed it was a type of social housing.

The Vancouver group had secured a site in North Burnaby (after many years of searching in the Vancouver area), and the New Westminster group had secured a site in the Sapperton area. However, neither group was able to attract the membership needed to make their project happen on the sites they had optioned. By joining together they had enough financial capacity to move forward. They made the decision to focus on the North Burnaby location.

In order to generate the funds and enter into contracts to purchase land and construct homes they formed a development company called Cranberry Commons Cohousing Development Corporation (a standard limited liability corporation). They had secured one lot, but needed to purchase the four adjacent lots from the City of Burnaby in order to have enough land for the multi-family development.

The neighborhood reflected all of their needs. It was within walking distance to restaurants, a recreation center, library, parks, medical services and a grocery store. The neighbourhood was also well served by transit, with connections to downtown and major skytrain hubs.

The site was originally zoned R5 Residential and had been designated for redevelopment by the City of Burnaby. The initial rezoning application by Cranberry Commons was for CD Comprehensive Development based on RM4 guidelines however they found the RM4 guidelines were too restrictive to accommodate the shared spaces and intergenerational community.

Therefore an application was made to increase the FAR from 1.1 to 1.3 to include the additional area required for the common amenities as well as increased circulation space required to accommodate a combination of apartment and townhouse units that would serve the needs of both young families and elders. After zoning had been completed, the 5 properties were consolidated into one parcel.
The Cranberry Commons members moved into their homes, in October 2001. The cohousing development featured 22 units that mix townhouses with apartments. The buildings range in height from 3 to 3.5 stories tall and are arranged around a common courtyard. There is a great variety of unit sizes, ranging from 500 sq.ft. for a bachelor suite, to 1300 sq.ft. for a 3 bedroom townhouse. Each unit has their own private outdoor space.

The greatest distinguishing feature of cohousing developments, from a built form perspective, is the common space. Cranberry Commons has approximately 6000 sq.ft. of shared outdoor space (featuring a courtyard, roof deck and garden). The interior common amenity, referred to as a common house, totals an additional 3400 sq.ft. of common area and features a lounge, kitchen, dining/multi-purpose room, laundry space, guest room, a workshop, office space, meeting room, children’s playroom, Teen’s room and storage. At the parking level, there is bicycle storage, a car servicing area and a woodworking room.
## FACT SHEET - Cranberry Commons Cohousing Development

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Demographic</td>
<td>Families and seniors with shared values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zones</td>
<td>CD (Comprehensive development)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lot size</td>
<td>20,117 sq.ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Density</td>
<td>1.3 FSR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Units</td>
<td>22 homes: 10 apartments and 12 townhomes;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Smallest unit a bachelor apartment 493 sq.ft.;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Largest unit a 3 bedroom townhouse 1,267 sq.ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>35-40 feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking Standards</td>
<td>Total 38 stalls (32 residents and 6 visitor stalls)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orientation</td>
<td>All unit kitchens face towards the inner courtyard (to support connection with neighbours) and also face outwards to the street to allow for the balance of privacy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ownership</td>
<td>Strata ownership</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Provisions</td>
<td>Rezoning required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Benefits

1. **Private small homes mixed with large shared amenities**

   Because the resident group is involved in all decisions related to the design, the homes can be as large or as small as they choose. However, the desire to live more sustainably and the opportunities for sharing that exist with the extensive common amenities mean the homes can be much smaller without negatively impacting lifestyle.

2. **An intentional community that prioritizes neighbourliness**

   Cohousing residents participate in the planning, design, ongoing management and maintenance of their community—the final product is a direct response to the needs and desires of the group. They meet once or twice a month to address each of these processes. The cohousing model for decision-making works with individual interests while balancing the interests of the whole in order to come to a solution that is in the best interest of the group. In that process they build the bonds that are the foundation for ongoing community. In Cranberry Commons, one of the residents is 95 years old, living independently, but benefiting from the support of the community.

3. **Contributes to affordability and environmental sustainability**

   Cohousing neighbourhoods tend to offer environmentally sensitive, pedestrian-oriented design, at a price that is comparable to conventional homes in the local area. However, because of the social structure and access to shared resources, cohousing homes provide opportunities for reducing home sizes and thus living costs that are not available in conventional neighbourhoods. Since one of the deep-rooted principles of cohousing is to reduce the community’s ecological footprint, choices related to compact design, energy management and sustainable material use tend to be prevalent. In the case of Cranberry Commons, the homes included solar panels to augment domestic hot water, high-efficiency in-floor radiant heating, water-efficient toilets and showers, resource-efficient building materials, and non-toxic interior finishes.
Challenges and Drawbacks

1. **Lengthy and complicated development process**

   Cohousing is predicated on a large group of committed individuals coming together to find, secure and develop a property. This is a complicated process for an experienced developer, let alone a group of passionate individuals. In the case of *Cranberry Commons*, they had to form their own development company and contribute their own money in order to purchase a property. The fact that they were seeking a walkable, affordable neighbourhood complicated matters, as they competed directly with developers for desirable lots. Groups need to work with experienced professionals and many groups make the mistake of thinking they can do it themselves. The Vancouver group spent five years trying to make a project happen before coming to the realization that they needed to hire professional help. Once professionals were involved, the project took approximately three and a half years from site acquisition to move-in.

2. **Consensus-based decision-making model**

   A traditional strata property is made up of a council of homeowners that use a voting system, based on proportionate unit entitlement, to set rules about the use of common and private space for all residents. A cohousing strata is based on a consensus decision-making model. While not everyone has to agree, all residents are invited to share their opinions and are asked to strive for agreement, in all of their decisions. In the case of stalemates, residents are asked to consider whether or not they can live with the result, and if the response is ‘yes,’ a decision can be reached. This is a highly involved and challenging process that tests the residents’ ability to compromise, communicate and keep the collective good of the community in mind.
6. Laneway Houses
Vancouver, British Columbia

On July 28th, 2009 Vancouver City Council approved a bylaw amendment allowing small homes to be built in the backyards of single-family residences. With one of the largest proportions of single-family lots in North America, laneway housing marked an important decision by the City of Vancouver to introduce policies of urban intensification into low-density neighbourhoods. Many Vancouver residents had been anxiously awaiting the new housing form, attracted by the role laneway housing could play as a mortgage-helper and easing the financial burdens of homeownership in city’s expensive real estate market. For others, laneway housing had the potential to solve family problems, such as providing aging parents and adult children with a home of their own.

Early iterations of laneway housing (LWH) were introduced to the public through EcoDensity neighbourhood consultations in the early 2000s, however, it would take many more years before Vancouver became the first city in North America to widely embrace the idea of building small homes in residential backyards.
In July 2009, Council adopted laneway housing regulations and guidelines for properties in the RS-1 and RS-5 single-family districts, which make up 94 percent of the city’s single-family lots. In November 2010, after 100 laneway housing permits were issued, staff reported to City Council with a Monitoring Report on Laneway Housing Development. Council directed staff to report back with amendments to address key issues of neighbourliness, livability, and length of the permitting process. Staff reported to Council with proposed amendments to the laneway housing regulations and guidelines, as well as the expansion of the laneway housing program into new RS districts in spring 2013.

Well over 1,500 laneway house permits have been issued in Vancouver since they became legal in 2009.

**Laneway Housing Program**

According to the city’s specifications, laneway houses are detached dwellings located in the backyard of a single-family lots, ranging in size from 500 sq.ft. to 900 sq.ft. The program allows for the placement of a small residential building on almost every 33 foot wide (or larger) detached housing lot in Vancouver. The laneway housing program has established design guidelines which must be followed to access a development permit.

Vancouver is not the only municipality in the region to permit laneway housing, however, it has implemented the most expansive, inclusive program. Homeowners can undertake a laneway home development while retaining or establishing a secondary suite (basement apartment) in the main home - adding to the overall density of the lot. As long as the lots meet certain minimum requirements, laneway housing is permitted in the city’s entire single-family home lots, allowing over 70,000 homeowners to build them on their property.
Laneway housing has been present in the community over the last century and has many different names including coach houses, carriage homes, granny flats, garden suites and infill housing. In the early 1900s, a coach house was sometimes the first unit built on a lot to house the owners while the principal residence was constructed. The coach house sometimes survived afterwards at the rear of the lot. Usually they were replaced by a garage. Other times they were built to provide housing for expanding or extended families.
### FACT SHEET - Laneway Houses in Vancouver

| Demographic | • Young professionals, small families and retirees. |
| Zones | • RS-1 & RS-5 (Single-family dwelling district) |
| Minimum lot size | • 33ft. x 122ft. |
| Number of units | • 3 units are allowed on the property. A principal dwelling with secondary suite and laneway home. |
| Unit size | • The floor area of a laneway house must be a minimum of 26m² (280ft²), with a possible relaxation down to 19m² (204ft²); • The maximum floor area of a laneway house is determined by multiplying the lot area by 0.16. This results in maximum unit sizes of approximately 56m² (644ft²) on standard 33’ x 122’ lots, and 84m² (900ft²) on 50’ x 122’ lots. The maximum size of a laneway house is 900ft², regardless of lot size. |
| Height | • A 1 storey laneway house is limited to the same maximum height as a garage, which ranges from 3.7m (12ft.) if a flat roof or to 4.6m (15ft.) for a sloped roof; • A laneway house with a partial upper storey can have a maximum height of 5.5m (18ft.) to 6.1m (20ft.) depending on roof type and pitch; • The partial upper storey (measured to the extreme outer limits) is restricted to 60% of the footprint of the laneway house. This is intended to limit shadowing and overlook on neighbouring backyards. |
| Open Space Requirement | • A laneway house should have access to private outdoor space in the backyard and/or on an upper level deck facing the lane; • Landscaping is encouraged along the edge of the lane. A permeable surface is required for parking areas. Green roofs, green walls, and drought-tolerant plantings and deciduous trees are also encouraged. |
| Parking Standards | • A minimum of one unenclosed and uncovered parking space MUST be provided on site adjacent the laneway house for both one and 1½ storey laneway houses. The parking space may be for the use of any of the dwelling units on site. |
| Privacy standards | • To enhance both livability and neighbourliness, upper level decks are allowed, but are limited in size and must face the lane, not the backyard or a neighbouring garden; • Upper level windows facing sideyards and gardens are limited and/or designed to increase privacy and reduce overlook of neighbouring properties. If a 0.6m (2ft.) sideyard setback is provided, windows are not permitted along the side facing the sideyard. |

NOTE: A more comprehensive list of laneway house requirements across various municipalities in Metro Vancouver can be found in the Appendix and at: www.smallhousingbc.org/
1. **Typifies gentle densification**

   Unlike towers and apartment buildings, laneway housing is a relatively benign form of densification. Since the homes are hidden away from the street and smaller than the principal residence, the added density is not immediately visible. With pressures to accommodate new residents in urban centers and move away from unsustainable land use patterns, laneway housing offers a reasonable solution for existing residential neighbourhoods.

2. **Flexible housing arrangements**

   Laneway housing facilitates intergenerational living and more flexible family arrangements. The homes can be used for aging family members, adult children, caregivers and homeowners wishing to downsize.

3. **Acts as a mortgage helper**

   Vancouver has the highest housing prices in Canada. A 2012 article on homeownership, written by the Vancouver Sun’s Tracy Sherlock, calculated that owning a single-family detached bungalow in the city would take up 91 percent of a typical household’s pre-tax income. The revenue generated from the rental of a laneway house can currently range from $1500 to $3000 per month, which can contribute substantially to mortgage payments.
1. **Neighbourhood resistance**

   Single-family neighbourhoods are often characterized by a uniformity of available housing options. The introduction of a housing form that facilitates more residents into low-density communities has been met with some resistance. Opponents have raised concerns about the lack of available parking, privacy (since some homes look onto their neighbour’s backyard), shading on adjacent lots, and the impact on housing prices. The development process is also very disruptive. Laneway house construction typically involves noisy and messy processes with cranes, hammering and many truck loads of product, which can last for months and aggravate neighbours.

2. **Permanence of built form**

   Unlike a basement suite which can be easily re-absorbed into the main home if circumstances change, a laneway house is much more permanent. Even if the financial stability of the homeowner changes and they no longer need the income from a rental property, the laneway house cannot be easily re-absorbed. To reclaim a backyard would require the laneway house to be destroyed...an expensive solution.

3. **Cost prohibitive**

   Even though the homes are small, the construction costs are significant, with the average development ranging from $250K to $350K. This can be mostly attributed to the nature of infill housing, which is typically done on a case-by-case basis and requires navigation of existing infrastructure - such as other homes, cars, power lines etc. Similar to cottage housing, laneway homes can cost more since they retain the more expensive elements of housing such as kitchens and bathrooms, while forfeiting inexpensive additions, such as extra bedrooms.
The City of North Vancouver is a waterfront municipality located on the north shore of Burrard Inlet, directly across from Vancouver, British Columbia. It is unique within the region because of its small size (11 km²) and highly urbanized land use. Pressures to accommodate a growing population, coupled with limited affordable housing options, have driven the city to diversify their residential rental and homeownership options, ranging from apartments, townhouses and coach houses. Residents of single-family homes have not been exempt from the housing pressures and the uptake on secondary suites within single-family homes has been tremendous.

The trend first began in the 1990s, as homeowners seeking mortgage helpers illegal created secondary suites. In 1997, the City of North Vancouver responded by approving secondary suites within detached single-family homes.

Secondary suites have not remained limited to detached single-family homes. Within the last five years, the City of North Vancouver noted well over 100 instances where residents added suites to their duplexes.
Recognizing that the units served an important role of providing affordable rental housing stock, the City was hesitant to enforce their own bylaw restricting their use to single-family homes. After much deliberation, the city enacted a moratorium on the enforcement of their bylaw, in 2012. They also initiated steps to address the health and safety issues within existing duplex suites and establish the parameters for the development of secondary suites within duplexes.

In March 2013, the City of North Vancouver passed a bylaw amendment allowing the development of secondary suites within duplexes. They are the first municipality in North America to allow for the provision of an accessory dwelling within a duplex.

The bylaw amendment legalizes the development of new dwelling units on the City’s 670 lots with duplex designation, in the Official Community Plan. This lays the foundation for upwards of 1,300 accessory suites. The change will result in a more efficient use of land in close proximity to the city’s service core, with little or no visual change to established neighbourhoods.

**Accessory Dwelling Units in Two Unit Residential Buildings**

A duplex, or semi-detached house, is a structure where two dwellings are attached side-by-side (or back-to-front) by a common wall(s). There is no dwelling above or below each unit, and each has its own separate entry. The installation of a secondary suite in a new or existing single-family dwelling or duplex is permitted in the City of North Vancouver, subject to both the City of North Vancouver Zoning Bylaw and the British Columbia Building Code (BCBC).

As defined by the BCBC, a secondary suite is an additional self-contained dwelling unit within single-family dwelling or duplex that includes cooking and sleeping facilities and a washroom.

The bylaw amendment includes the following requirements:

- The owner of the building must live in one of the units;
- The accessory suite must be enclosed within the principal building;
- An off-street parking space must be provided;

A secondary suite is an additional separate dwelling unit either in the basement or the ground floor, within a home that would normally accommodate only one dwelling unit.
• Secondary suites are limited to one per principal dwelling unit;

• The size of the suite is limited to a minimum of 400 sq.ft. and a maximum of 969 sq.ft. OR 40 percent gross floor area, whichever is less; and

• The accessory unit shall not be stratified as a separate unit under the Strata Property Act.
## FACT SHEET - Suites in Duplexes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Demographic</strong></td>
<td>• Students and young professionals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Zones</strong></td>
<td>• RT-1 (Two-family dwelling district)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minimum lot size</strong></td>
<td>• 4800 sq.ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Number of units</strong></td>
<td>• 1 accessory unit per duplex; • 4 units total if both basements are developed into suites.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit size</strong></td>
<td>• Minimum of 400 sq.ft.; • Maximum of 969 sq.ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Height</strong></td>
<td>• 33 ft maximum height.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Open Space Requirement</strong></td>
<td>• 35 percent of the lot size must be dedicated to open space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Usable porches</strong></td>
<td>• Porches and decks cannot exceed 10 percent of usable floor space; • Recessed porches are preferred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parking Standards</strong></td>
<td>• 1 additional parking space for accessory suite.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Privacy standards</strong></td>
<td>• Minimum of 8 ft. of private outdoor amenity space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Separation of units</strong></td>
<td>• Smoke tight barrier and a wall with 1 hour fire protection rating; • A 6.1m separation between duplex and rear garage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Approval process</strong></td>
<td>• Development permit process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tenure</strong></td>
<td>• Owner must occupy one of the duplex units; • The secondary suite may be used for rental or family.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Other provisions</strong></td>
<td>• The entry to a secondary suite should be a discrete element when viewed from the street.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. **Staggered changes led to improved policy choices**

   The City of North Vancouver spread out the implementation of the bylaw amendment over several years. The timing of each successive lever allowed for appropriate public consultation and feedback, as well as the time necessary to modify the policy and legislative levers. For example, the bylaw was suspended in 2012 and amended (following community consultation) in 2013. Design guidelines aimed at improving livability were only developed and approved in 2014. The delay ensured that the design guidelines addressed real challenges regarding the implementation of the bylaw.

2. **Responsive community engagement strategy**

   The City of North Vancouver ensured that many of the concerns expressed by residents - such as parking shortages, traffic congestion, overcrowding and character change - could be addressed through the planning process. The City’s engagement process included a survey, several open houses and city council hearing. Furthermore, residents were given the option to opt-out of a zoning change on their property, if they felt strong opposition.

3. **Facilitated hidden density**

   Since the accessory dwellings are located within the duplex, the increase in density is not explicitly visible from the street.

4. **Increases housing options**

   The option to develop a duplex within a secondary suite, or retrofit an existing duplex to support one, increases the options available to potential homeowners. Such options become particularly appealing for families with children seeking a mortgage helper, as well as multi-generational families looking for a two-family home.
1. **Challenges to fire and safety standards**

   The *British Columbia Building Code* (BCBC) provisions make secondary suites in duplexes difficult and cost prohibitive to build. Currently, under the building code, a duplex building with an accessory unit is considered a four-plex. This results in a requirement, among other considerations, for a firewall between units, and makes conversions in existing buildings impractical. A firewall is a non-combustible wall, usually made of concrete. Such a wall is only really feasible within a new development and is nearly impossible within older housing stock. While the City of North Vancouver is working with the Province and developers to address this, current regulations limit the option to new construction.

2. **Allocating space for parking**

   Parking can prove to be a challenge when adding a suite to an existing duplex, or in the case of a new construction. The City of North Vancouver intends to keep the requirements unchanged. Therefore, an additional parking space would be required for the new suite. This can be costly for a homeowner to do themselves, as well as reduce green space available on the lot. As transit infrastructure improves, planners will have to identify where parking requirements could potentially be reduced.

3. **Compromised livability in existing duplexes**

   There are design and construction challenges when creating accessory suites in duplexes. In existing duplexes, the challenge of meeting design guidelines for daylighting and livable suites would be very difficult for a building with a sunken basement. The firewall retrofit is also not always feasible. As a result, this bylaw amendment will most likely apply to new developments rather than existing housing stock - greatly reducing the potential impact of the policy.
8. Lock-off Suites
Burnaby, British Columbia

The City of Burnaby was the first municipality in North America to legalize secondary suites within apartments. Also called lock-off suites, they enable owners of condominiums to rent out extra space in their homes. Burnaby is a municipality east of Vancouver, British Columbia with a population of almost 250,000. The city has two large post-secondary schools - Simon Fraser University and British Columbia Institute of Technology. Those institutions have approximate student populations of 23,000, and 18,000, respectively, and a significant proportion of those students require rental housing.

In 2000, prompted by a proposed development adjacent to the Simon Fraser University campus, the City of Burnaby introduced zoning to allow secondary suites in apartment buildings.

The proposed development has become UniverCity - an intact high-density, mixed-use, transit accessible, walkable and family-friendly community at the top of a mountain. UniverCity is managed by the Simon Fraser University Community Trust and one of the goals of which is to champion innovative
neighbourhood development approaches. Lock-off suites are one such innovation and a product of the collaboration between the Trust and the City of Burnaby.

Lock-off Suites

The lock-off suites were created in response to the greater rental need on Burnaby mountain, due to the large student population at Simon Fraser University. The P11 and P11e zones were created in the municipality to facilitate lock-off suites. The terminology used at the time was “multi-flex housing.” However, the term “lock-off suites” has emerged as the more popular vernacular, within Metro Vancouver.

At the time of their inception, lock-off suites were seen as a mechanism to prevent a culture of investors purchasing units and renting them to students. Instead, the apartments were designed to appeal to families and singles that might, at some point, want to rent the semi-private suites for additional revenue. The lock-off suites are currently in three developments: NOVA 1, NOVA 2, and One UniverCity Crescent. There is currently one additional project slated to incorporate the lock-off suites in its design.

The design guidelines were inspired by hotel rooms that feature separate suites in the same unit, by using a lockable door between its rooms.

Review and Approval Process

The requirements for approval within UniverCity are comparable to other multi-family units - requiring topographic data, a grading plan, floor plans, materials, and massing documentation. However, in order to approve the lock-off suites at UniverCity, the development application must also include:

- A summary of public consultation activities and input; and
- Certification by Simon Fraser University and Burnaby Mountain Community Corporation that the development meets their development guidelines.
Floor plan of lock-off suite. Credit: Perkins & Co.
**FACT SHEET - Lock-off Suites**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Demographic</th>
<th>• Students and extended family.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zones</td>
<td>• P11 and P11e (Public and Institutional Districts).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum lot size</td>
<td>• 43,057.53 sq.ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Density</td>
<td>• 0.45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Number of units              | • Minimum 10 per building, maximum of 50 percent of total units can be lock-off suites;  
                                • The suites can take up a maximum of 35 percent of gross floor area of building. |
| Unit size                    | • Minimum 258 sq.ft.            |
| Height                       | • P11: 4 stories maximum (54 ft.);  
                                • P11e: 10 stories maximum (110 ft.) |
| Lot coverage                 | • P11: 30 percent of lot area;  
                                • P11e: 35 percent of lot area. |
| Parking Standards            | • 1 additional parking space for accessory suite. |
| Bicycle parking              | • 1 residential parking space unit;  
                                • 2 visitor bicycle parking spaces per unit. |
| Privacy standards            | • Secondary Suite is lockable.   |
| Approval process             | • Development Permit Process.    |
| Tenure                       | • Strata title ownership;  
                                • Owner must occupy one of the duplex units, and the lock-off suite can be used for rental or family. |
| Other provisions             | • If the unit is made available for rent then it must be registered with the Student Housing Registry at Simon Fraser University. |
Benefits

1. Increased housing options

   The lock-off suites provide an additional form of rental housing that introduces newer suites, at a reasonable rental rates. The newer suites have greater design and livability standards, as they have gone through an appropriate review process. Unlike secondary suites in single-family homes, lock-off suites allow a renter to live without a car, by virtue of the housing type being more connected to transit and amenities.

2. Increase affordable rental stock

   When compared to the rents in purpose-built rental buildings, the rate for secondary suites is typically seen to be lower. The rents for the lock-off suites in Burnaby range from $525 per month to $750 per month. The lock-off suites are considered another form of secondary suites. According to the Canadian Mortgage and Housing Corporation, secondary suites have been estimated to make up as much as one fifth of the rental units in British Columbia. The inclusion of these suites into new condominiums can significantly increase the rental stock in cities.

3. Mortgage helper

   A homeowner of an apartment can factor in rental income when calculating mortgage payments. The additional rental income can greatly help to meet mortgage payments. This rate can be affordable for a renter who, in Vancouver, would pay an average of slightly over $1,000 for a one-bedroom apartment (Numbeo, Cost of Living in Vancouver, Canada).

4. Room for extended family

   Multi-generational housing arrangements are increasing, as a result of the high cost in housing in Metro Vancouver and an emerging consumer that values shared living arrangements with family. The ability to use the units for adult children or aging parents is one option presented by the lock-off suites. In the case of one building in UniverCity, the secondary suite is on a separate floor, for additional privacy.
1. **High construction costs**

The requirements for the suite which include a second kitchen, lockable doors, and fireproofing standards, add to construction costs. The increased construction costs are passed on to the consumer and overall purchasing prices tend to be higher, when compared to a traditional 2- or 3-bedroom unit.

2. **Parking availability**

All secondary suites have had issues with the new tenants needing more parking space. In the case of UniverCity, the parking requirements were lowered due to transit accessibility and the walkable nature of the community. However, the community (which is situated atop Burnaby Mountain) is still located far from other amenities and communities in Burnaby and, as a result, rates of car ownership are higher than expected.

3. **Security of tenure**

The hidden nature of these suites makes poor rental practices more likely. Landlords may increase rent prices unfairly and rapidly. Additionally, the agreements may be informal in nature, so the tenants can be evicted without proper notice. Registration into a secondary suites program and enforcement of the Residential Tenancy Branch are important for successful implementation of the lock-off suites - or secondary suites, in general - as they provide protection for the renter.

4. **Incentivizing lock-off suite construction**

Lock-off suites are more complicated and costly to build than typical apartment buildings and, since profit margins are sufficient in traditional development, there are few incentives to build them. Furthermore, in areas that are considered more affordable - such as suburban municipalities - there may not be a market for this type of accommodation.
9. Micro Suites
San Francisco & Los Angeles, California

San Francisco is a city that has had a notorious affordability problem, similar to the metropolitan Vancouver region. Over the last 10 years, wealthy high-tech programmers and entrepreneurs seeking an opportunity to live in the culturally rich city, have flooded the housing market. The influx of capital has increased rental rates and decreased vacancy in many areas of the city. San Francisco has taken steps to tackle their affordability problem using a historically large stock of public housing, stringent rent control regulations on over 100,000 rental units, and the development of micro suites.

The creation of micro suites - or efficiency suites - was done in response to the challenge of affordable housing. The choice was predicated on the belief that smaller unit sizes would allow increased density of units in a similar sized lot, and the smaller unit size would command a smaller rent. The efficiency units are also an effort to engage the middle class, in a city where policies are meant to help the poorest and the existing housing serves the upper-middle and wealthy classes.
The Efficiency Dwelling Units Ordinance

In 2012, the San Francisco Planning Department introduced *Efficiency Dwelling Units*, authorizing the development of micro-suites in the city.

San Francisco planning department set out several requirements for the development of the suites:

- The minimum suite envelope was defined as 220 sq.ft., measured from the inside perimeter of the exterior walls of the unit. It can include closets, bathrooms, kitchen cabinets, living, and sleeping areas.

- A minimum of 150 sq.ft. must be retained for the living area.

- Each unit must be equipped with a kitchen sink, cooking appliance and refrigeration facilities, each having a clear working space of not less than 30 inches.

- Each unit is required to have a separate closet.

- A separate bathroom containing a water closet, lavatory and bathtub or shower is required.

- No more than 2 residents can inhabit the micro suite.

- The open space requirements are calculated based on number of units built and the location of these units.

- 15 percent of the approved units must be priced below market rate. Exceptions can be made for suites that are intended for student housing.

Multi-purpose furniture is important for Micro Suites. View of kitchen and living area. Credit: The Harriet Building Panoramic Interests.
The table can be used as a workspace or eating area by day. Credit: The Harriet Building Panoramic Interests.

The same unit converts to a bed. Credit: The Harriet Building Panoramic Interests.
## FACT SHEET - Micro Suites

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Demographic</td>
<td>• Singles, high-tech professionals and millennials.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zones</td>
<td>• Mixed-use and multi-family zones.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lot size</td>
<td>• Dependent on zone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Density</td>
<td>• Dependent on zone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of units</td>
<td>• 375 maximum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit size</td>
<td>• 150sq.ft. for living area; • 220 sq.ft. for total unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>• Dependent on zone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open Space Requirements</td>
<td>• 50 sq.ft. – 300 sq.ft. per unit dependant on location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking</td>
<td>• Bicycle parking required, zero parking requirements in the urban core;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Car share parking requirement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green space</td>
<td>• There is no mandatory green space requirement for efficiency suites, however there are appropriate landscaping and street tree requirements for street facing buildings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review process</td>
<td>• Full application and council review.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tenure</td>
<td>• Strata title ownership or rental.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Benefits

1. Increased density

Micro suites allow for high levels of density without towers. The units are best located in mid-rise apartment buildings, where the density can be hidden. An example is Vancouver’s Burns Block building, which has 30 units contained in a 6 story building, with the first level serving as commercial space.

The San Francisco Planning Department conducted an analysis that demonstrated that a 50,000 sq.ft. micro suite building can gain as much as 32 percent in additional suites (55 units). This can be a very large gain for the rental stock in a city, non-market units, or other subsidized housing.

2. Improved affordability

The San Francisco Planning Department demonstrated that the overall cost of construction is similar to the traditional-sized apartment. However, the absolute cost of rental or ownership of these units is lower than a traditional-sized unit. The average rental price in San Francisco regularly increases, with the average price of a studio apartment in 2014 being greater than $2,000 monthly. The new micro units have been shown to reduce the rent to $1,200 - $1,500 monthly which is a 25 to 40 percent drop from market rates.

3. Housing for millennials and singles.

The inner cities are attracting more and more young people, while the demand for larger suburban houses decrease. This is creating a significant demand for one- or two-bedroom units close to amenities, and micro suites are poised to fill this demand.

4. Meeting social housing goals.

According to the San Francisco Planning Department, the key advantage of micro suites is the promise of affordable social housing. Building subsidized housing is expensive for government or non-profits, and this alternative can become a cost effective solution to that problem. While upfront costs may be similar, the operating costs can be lower for the suites. Micro suites can also be purpose-built for seniors with limited mobility, persons with special needs, or at risk youth.
Micro Suites

Challenges and Drawbacks

1. Lack of prior examples and successes

The affordability crisis is an emerging trend in North America, partially due to increasing land constraints. Micro suites are a response to those constraints. However, there are no historical examples in the western world where micro units have gone through a full life-cycle. Thus, the degree to which this housing type is sustainable - versus a simple trend - is difficult to gauge.

2. Livability

A major drawback for micro suites has been the perception that they compromise livability. The lack of space makes storage a challenge and the multi-purpose nature of the space may not be practical. Natural lighting and visibility also tends to be reduced, as windows can only be built on one small wall.

3. “Twitter Apartments”

Tenancy rights activists, as well as affordable housing advocates, have taken issue with micro suites, asserting that they are intended for high-tech workers to have a ‘crash pad’ and that they speak to the fact that is okay to ‘box people up.’ Opponents believe that San Francisco should do more to make family housing affordable. In response, the city limited the number of micro suites that can be built per building.
It would be impossible to discuss the innovations that have occurred in small housing over the last two decades, without paying tribute to the tiny house movement. It is an architectural and social movement that encourages the development of small homes, as a means to live minimalist lifestyles that are both environmentally and financially sustainable.

The tiny house movement is most often associated with a few key individuals who, over the course of several decades, influenced the thinking of ten of thousands of people. In the 1980s, an architect named Lester Walker published a book of photographs and drawings called *Tiny Houses: or How to Get Away From It All*. The book included pictures of the dune shacks in Provincetown, Massachusetts; 200 sq.ft. houses built in Texas, in the late nineteenth century by German farmers; and the 140 sq.ft. houses that San Francisco built in 1906 for survivors of the earthquake.

In 1998, Sarah Susanka published the book *The Not So Big House* which is credited with starting the backlash against supersized homes. Susanka challenged Americans to think about housing as a sanctuary that simplifies our lives, rather than taxing our energies in maintaining it.
Soon afterwards, in 1999, Jay Shafer built a 110 sq.ft. home on wheels and lived in it for 5 years. His decision to place his home on a trailer platform was a deliberate choice to circumvent “minimum size standards” required by city bylaws. The trailer platform made the home mobile and, as a result, exempt from the municipal regulatory framework. His ‘tiny’ decision became instrumental in propelling the tiny house movement into the realm of possibility for thousands of North Americans and he would go on to become the first tiny house builder/designer, as well as an author of several books.

Outside of the thought leaders on the subject, the tiny house movement is often explained as a response to several external factors, such as climate change, ecological degradation, the economic crisis and a rejection of consumerism.

Mirroring the interest in small homes, a burgeoning industry has emerged to support the proliferation of tiny houses. There are dozens of blogs, books and even a television show dedicated to exploring the phenomenon. Builders have sprung up to meet the consumer demand for prefab trailer homes. Workshops, equipping tiny house enthusiasts with the tools to build their own home, regularly sell out. The first tiny house hotel opened its doors in 2010, and several communities have begun to explore how the houses can be used to address homelessness.

**Tiny Homes**

Although there is no authority on the definition of tiny homes, the emergent understanding is that they range from between 80 to 180 sq.ft. They are detached houses, usually on a trailer bed, and often fall under the category of accessory building or ‘shed’. Since they are typically built as a mobile unit, they are usually between 6 and 8 ft wide and between 10 ft. and 18 ft. long. Similar to micro-suites, space is simple, consisting of one multi-functional space with a private washroom. Many are designed with a small loft space that houses a bed.
Surprisingly, it is illegal to inhabit a tiny home in most urban centres in North America. Referred to as *minimum size standards*, the purpose of these restrictions is to preserve health, safety and accessibility. According to Canada’s *National Building Code*, living areas within dwelling units, either as separate rooms or in combination with other spaces, cannot be less than 145 sq.ft. The *Code* also stipulates a minimum kitchen size of approximately 40 sq.ft., a bedroom of 105 sq.ft., dining room of 75 sq.ft. and space allocated for a toilet, shower and/or bathtub.

On the other hand, temporary housing is often described in building codes as “any tent, trailer, motor home or other structure used from more than 30 calendar days” (Shafer J, 2009). Such structures are often exempt from building codes and, hence, development permits etc. So long as a tiny home is built to be portable, it can (if unplugged periodically) be inhabited on the lot of an existing residence indefinitely.

**Vancouver Tiny Homes**

Vancouver and the Lower Mainland have demonstrated a great interest in tiny homes. From workshops equipping tiny homesteaders with the skills to build their own shelter, to builders such as Western Camera Buildings Inc. selling mobile units across British Columbia for between $30,000 and $70,000, the tiny house movement is alive and well in the region.

*Interior view shows main floor and loft*

*Credit: Tumbleweed Houses and The Small House Book*
Subtractive design: A well-designed little house is like an oversized house with the unusable parts removed. Such refinement is achieved through subtractive design — the systematic elimination of all that does not contribute to the intended function of a composition. In the case of residential architecture, everything not enhancing the quality of life within a dwelling must go. Anything not working to this end works against it. Extra bathrooms, bedrooms, gables and extra space require extra money, time and energy from the occupant(s). Superfluous luxury items are a burden. A simple home, unfettered by extraneous gadgets, is the most effective labor-saving device there is.

Jay Shafer
Benefits

1. **Facilitates simpler, more sustainable lifestyles**

   By virtue of the smaller footprint, residents of tiny homes own fewer possessions and consume less. Additionally, a tiny house uses less materials to build and energy to maintain. According to Jay Shaffer, his homes were built with 4,800 pounds of building materials, less than 100 pounds of which went to the local landfill. Each produced less than 900 pounds of greenhouse gases during a typical Iowa winter. In contrast, the average American house consumes about three quarters of an acre of forest, produces about 7 tonnes of construction waste and emits 18 tons of greenhouse gases, annually.

2. **Affordable housing option**

   According to Western Camera Buildings Inc., their typical tiny homes sell for between $30,000 and $70,000. For individuals that choose to undertake the project themselves, these costs can be reduced even further. For many, this is an accessible path to homeownership.

3. **Advances the conversation on the role of housing today**

   Tiny homes exemplify a shift towards simpler living, financial freedom and more time for ourselves and loved ones. While most Canadians and American’s cannot imagine living in a home barely 100 sq.ft., many are seeking greater balance between work life and personal time. The tiny house movement inspires great deliberation on the value we place on money, time, possessions and people.

4. **Exempt from most bylaws and development permits**

   Development permits and municipal regulatory frameworks are complicated, expensive and onerous processes. By virtue of the fact that most tiny homes are built on a trailer bed and are typically considered a de facto shed and do not have to gain permission or approval from municipally governments.

5. **Cost savings in space can be allocated towards better finishings**

   Energy efficient windows, green roofs, hand-selected wood in a typical home can significantly increase development costs. However, these items are more feasible in tiny homes because the number and size required is greatly reduced.
1. **Securing a location for the tiny home**

While building a tiny home may be feasible and accessible to many individuals, finding a location to set-up the house may be more difficult. Unlike most traditional options for homeownership, tiny homes do not come with a location. Instead, the homeowner must either own or have access to an existing property, where the house can be placed.

2. **Difficult to access traditional tools for homeownership**

Ironically, one of the greatest benefits of tiny homes - the fact that they are outside of the regulatory framework - is also a significant drawback. Because tiny homes are not recognized as permanent dwellings, banks will not loan individuals money to build them. Similarly, insurance companies are unlikely to protect the contents from theft, fire or floods and service providers are challenged to connect tiny homes with water, electrical and internet provisions.

3. **Insufficient amount of storage**

A common complaint for residents of small housing is the lack of storage. This is exacerbated in a tiny house. There is little to no room for storing items, forcing residents to significantly downsize the number of items they retain and use in their household.
Glossary
Accessory Dwelling Unit (ADU) – An additional living quarter on a typical single-family lot. ADUs can be attached to the principal home such as with basement suites. However they are detached from the primary dwelling unit such as coach houses or laneway home.

Basement suite - One form of a secondary suite where the lower floor of a single family home, or townhouse is given up for rent. The suite has livability requirements if registered and can feature a separate entrance. The basement suite can also have a private kitchen and bathroom.

Coach homes - A detached dwelling located in the back yard of a typical single-family residential lot. In most cases the coach house is smaller in size than the principal dwelling.

Comprehensive development - Comprehensive Development Zoning is typically used in large, mixed-use, and complicated plans. This form of zoning enables a municipality to negotiate detailed guidelines and specifications for all aspects of a development in an integrated manner.

Cottage housing - Multiple detached homes that are 1,000 square feet or less and are arranged around a common open space rather than street facing. There are typically 8 to 12 homes that share a common courtyard for example. The parking is tucked away at the rear of the home.

Cluster housing - The mechanism or strategy that facilitates small housing grouped together around a large open space. Lot size, setbacks, and private open space requirements are usually reduced in order to create a neighborhood that is more compact.

Detached townhomes - Detached townhomes have 2 or more floors and an exterior entrance. However unlike traditional townhomes, they are structurally independent and do not share common walls. Instead they have a 6inch (or more) separation that may be covered by flashing.

Efficiency suite - Terminology used in San Francisco which is similar to Micro-Suites“ in the Canadian context. The small sized nature of the apartment makes maximum use of dwelling unit yield on a lot.
**Granny Flat** - A small separated unit in the rear yard of a single family lot. The granny flat is a detached, self-contained dwelling located totally on the ground floor in the rear yard of a single family residential lot with lane access.

**Laneway housing** - A detached small house at the rear of a single family lot. There are many variations in terminology, however the laneway house term has become popular in Vancouver due to the prevalence of existing lanes in the city’s neighborhoods. The house can be used for residential, parking, and accessory uses.

**Lock-off suite** - A rental suite that is placed within a strata apartment or townhouse. Can feature a small kitchen and bathroom and has a lockable, separating door within the strata unit.

**Mother-in-law suite** - Similar to a granny flat, but the terminology is used more in Britain, New Zealand, and Australia. The small unit can be rental or for family use. The unit is typically built above a garage, but not always and will generally have a separate entrance. The suites will typically accommodate an elderly family member.

**Micro-suite** - Apartment buildings that usually meet the minimum size requirement for livable space according to local building code. Most suites are below 500 square feet, and as little as 150 square feet for livable space in San Francisco.

**Multi-flex family housing** - The zoning terminology applied by the City of Burnaby to facilitate rental suites within a mixed-use type development. The rental suite would be built within a strata apartment building or townhouse.

**Pocket Neighbourhood** - A cluster of neighbouring housing or apartments gathered around a shared open space – a garden courtyard, a pedestrian street, series of joined backyards, or a reclaimed alley – all of which have a clear sense of territory and shared stewardship. They can be in urban, suburban or rural areas.

**Secondary suite** - An additional separate dwelling unit either in the basement or the ground floor, within a home that accommodate only one dwelling unit. The suite is usually meant for rental purposes under the legislation in British Columbia.
**Single Room Occupancy (SRO) Units** - Short-term or long-term accommodation in single rooms that are usually subsidized by senior levels of government. These suites generally lack a private bathroom and kitchen but are provided in a shared arrangement. The purpose of the SRO is to provide housing for those who are at risk of being homeless.

**Corner-Lot “Captain’s Homes”** - These homes typically include 3-5 units with a single entry, shared front porch, common front yard, and a backyard with private space. Parking is shared, with an entry from the side street or the alley. These homes are ideal for large corner lots either in the downtown or residential areas.

**The New “Boarding House”** - These homes are a combination of a captain’s home and an adult family home. They can include private space with cooking facilities, a shared social space, and intimate work space. Like the captain’s homes, corner lots in the downtown corridor are suitable.
Resources
Case Study 1: Small Lot Homes. Los Angeles, California


http://www.modative.com/

Leavitt, Derek. & Navar, Christian. Personal interview. 28.03.2014.

Case Study 2: Cottage Housing. Seattle, Washington

"Why Aren’t We Seeing Cottage Homes Here?" Making New Homes Affordable. Real Estate Board of Greater Vancouver, n.d.
http://www.rebgv.org/why-aren%E2%80%99t-we-seeing-cottage-homes-here

http://www.lvpc.org/pdf/cottageHousingDev.pdf


"Cottage Housing." Cottage Housing. The Municipal Research and Services Center, n.d.
http://www.mrsc.org/subjects/planning/cottagehousing.aspx


Chapin, Ross. Personal interview. 15.08.2014.
Case Study 3: Cohousing. Burnaby and Bowen Island, British Columbia


Case Study 4: Laneway Houses. Metro Vancouver, British Columbia


Case Study 5: House-plex. Portland, Oregon


Case Study 6: Grow Home. Montreal, Quebec


http://www.canadianarchitect.com/news/ten-years-old-and-growing/1000149184/?&er=NA


"Grow Home - Montréal, Quebec | CMHC." Building Housing Incrementally. Canada Mortgage and Housing Corporation, n.d.

http://www.worldhabitatawards.org/winners-and-finalists/project-details.cfm?lang=00&theProjectID=36

http://www.witoldrybczynski.com/modern-life/housing-redux/


http://thetyee.ca/News/2011/09/30/Avi-Friedman/

Friedman, Avi. Personal interview. 03.09.2014.
Case Study 7: Secondary Suites in Duplexes. North Vancouver, British Columbia


http://www.cnv.org/~media/93ACABF2AA4849DF8346C890B90A36BD.pdf


Case Study 8: Lock-off suites. Burnaby, British Columbia


http://www.univercity.ca/upload/P11e.pdf

"Multi-Family Flex Units." West Coast Environmental Law. N.p., n.d.
http://wcel.org/multi-family-flex-units

http://thetyee.ca/News/2009/03/10/SkySuites/

Mickkelsen, dale. Personal interview. 14.08.2014.

**Case Study 9: Micro-suites. San Francisco, California**


http://www.citylab.com/housing/2012/11/micro-apartments-so-nice-youll-wish-your-place-was-small/3932/

http://articles.latimes.com/2012/sep/24/local/la-me-micro-apartments-20120924


Hadan, Kimia. Personal Interview. 07.27.2014.
Case Study 10: Tiny Homes. Iowa City, Iowa


McFarlane, John. Personal interview. 20.09.2014.
Appendix
Sample Cottage Housing Development Plan

Development plan for cottage housing in Delta, British Columbia
Credit: Southlands community plan by Century Group
Sample Cottage Housing Parking and Setback Details

- No more than 25 ft from the front of the cottage to the common space.
- Units abutting a public street must have a secondary porch or other enhancement facing the street.
- Minimum 10 ft to a public street.
- Parking access via ally or private driveway.
- No more than 5 contiguous parking spaces.

Sample Cottage House

- Covered porch does not count toward footprint or gross floor area.
- A covered porch, at least 65 square feet in size is required for each cottage.
- Unheated basements do not count toward footprint or gross floor area.
- Bay window does not count toward footprint or gross floor area.
- Total footprint: 850 sq ft.
- Max. height: 25 ft.
- Unsealable space.
Cohousing Principles

- Cohousing is based on private ownership of complete, self-contained homes centered around and focused on shared facilities such as children’s play spaces, adult meeting spaces, library, office, workshop, guest rooms, common kitchen and dining room, gardens, greenhouse and other features the members may choose. Although every home has its own complete kitchen, shared dinners are typically available a few days each week, at the common house for those who wish to participate.

- Participatory process - residents participate in planning and development so that the design directly meets their needs.

- The physical design encourages a sense of community, providing opportunities for spontaneous connection as well as maintaining the option for privacy.

- Non-hierarchical structure and decision-making.

Cohousing in British Columbia

Belterra Cohousing is a new cohousing unit is being built on Bowen Island, BC. This unit will feature 30, 2 story townhome units in 5 separate buildings. Some of the features of the common house will include a large commercial-style kitchen, dining area, workshop area, guest rooms, and children’s play room. The majority of units were sold before completion of construction, but the remaining units are typically priced from $420,000 to $440,000.
Laneway Housing in Vancouver

All RS single-family zones can build a laneway house on their lot.
Credit: City of Vancouver

Permitted laneway houses as of February 2013.
Credit: City of Vancouver
### Design Issues for Micro Suites

**How do you fit appliances and electronics?**
- Thinner and smaller appliances and electronics can be sourced.

**How do you address large pieces of furniture such as tables, couches and a bed?**
- Murphy beds, which can be tucked away into a wall, are a useful solution. Sourcing modular and multi-purpose furniture is also key.

**How do you accommodate storage?**
- Make ceilings higher and building storage space above closets and cabinetry.

**What about open space?**
- Requirements should follow a similar process as other multi-family buildings in order to preserve livability.

### Micro Suites in North America

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>New York City (USA)</th>
<th>Vancouver (Canada)</th>
<th>San Francisco (USA)</th>
<th>Surrey (Canada)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Size of Units</strong></td>
<td>275-300 sq.ft.</td>
<td>226 sq.ft.</td>
<td>150 sq (minimum living area)</td>
<td>300-648 sq.ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Requirements</strong></td>
<td>Entire building cannot consist of micro suites</td>
<td>Only 1 person may occupy</td>
<td>2 persons maximum</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40% of micro suites must be below market rental</td>
<td>Mandatory housing agreement for rental</td>
<td>Must contain a kitchen and bathroom.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tenure</strong></td>
<td>Strata title ownership or rental</td>
<td>Rental</td>
<td>Strata title ownership or rental</td>
<td>Strata title ownership</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cost to rent or own</strong></td>
<td>Monthly rent varies by income. $939/month for those who earn 80 percent of the area's average annual income, or $55,000 annually per couple</td>
<td>Average monthly rent of $875-$1100</td>
<td>Average monthly rent of $1200-$1500</td>
<td>Average cost to purchase is $130,900 to $240,900.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$1,873 for those earning 155 percent, or $106,640 per couple</td>
<td></td>
<td>$199,000-300,000 Ownership</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Laneway Housing in Metro Vancouver

## Location

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>West Vancouver</th>
<th>City of North Vancouver</th>
<th>District of North Vancouver</th>
<th>Richmond</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

## Housing Term and Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Coach House</th>
<th>Coach House</th>
<th>Coach House</th>
<th>Granny Flat and Coach House</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A coach house replaces &quot;carriage house,&quot; which means a detached unit that is smaller than the primary dwelling on a residential lot, and maybe attached to the garage.</td>
<td>A coach house is a detached non-strata unit also known as a &quot;carriage house.&quot; They are accessory to a principal one-unit dwelling.</td>
<td>Coach houses are compact homes, usually built in the rear year of a single-family residential lot, that are smaller than the principal dwelling.</td>
<td>A granny flat is a detached, self-contained dwelling located totally on the ground floor in the rear yard of a single family residential lot.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Zoning

| All RS single family zones, RD1 and RD2 zones (duplex dwelling zones) | All RS single family zones | Limited to residential lots greater than 10000 sq ft. Some exceptions for corner lots and homes with laneways. Development variance permit required. | RE1 (single detached zone – Edgemere) |

## Number of Allowable Dwellings Per Lot

| 2 - principal dwelling, secondary suite or coach house | 2 – principal dwelling, secondary suite or coach house | 2 – principal dwelling, secondary suite or coach house | 2 – principal dwelling, secondary suite or coach house |

## Tenure

| Rental or family use | Rental or family use | Rental or family use | Rental or family use |

## Unit Size

| A maximum floor area not exceeding the lesser of 10% of lot area or 1238 sq ft, whichever is less | The maximum floor area of a 1 storey coach house is 800 sq ft. The maximum floor area of a 2 storey coach house is 1000 sq ft. | Maximum size not exceeding 968 sq ft plus a 232 sq ft garage. | The minimum floor area of a granny flat is 355 sq ft and the maximum is 452 sq ft. |

## Height and Storey Limits

| 1 and 2 storey homes are allowed. A 1 storey is limited to 13ft. A 2 storey can have a maximum height of 22ft. | 1 and 2 storey homes are allowed. A 1 storey is limited to 10ft if it is a flat roof or 15ft for a sloped roof. A 2 storey can have a maximum height of 22ft. | 1 and 2 storey homes are allowed. A 1 storey is limited to 15 ft. A 2 storey is limited to 22 ft. | 1 and 2 storey homes are allowed. A grey flat is limited to 16ft. A 2 storey can have a maximum height of 24ft. |

## Minimum Lot Size

| NA | 3900 sq ft | 10,000 sq ft | 4843 sq ft for a granny flat and 5920 sq ft for a coach house |

## Location on Lot (Setbacks, Distance from Principal Home)

| The coach house must be set back from the rear property line by a minimum of 6ft and 4ft for any portion of the building containing an enclosed garage. There must be a minimum separation of 16ft between the coach house and principal house. | The coach house must be set back 2.5 ft from the rear property line. There must be a minimum separation of 16ft between the coach house and principal house. | The coach house must be set back 4 ft from the rear property line and 8ft from the side yard. There must be a minimum separation of 20 ft between the coach house and the principal dwelling. | A granny flat or coach house shall be located within 4ft and 26ft of the rear lot line. There must be a minimum separation between the principal house and a granny flat of 10ft or 14ft for a coach house. |

## Parking Requirements

| 1 off-street parking required exclusively for the use of the coach house. | 2 onsite parking spaces are required (one parking space for each unit) A maximum of one enclosed stall in the Accessory Coach House is permitted. | 3 onsite parking spaces are required (2 parking spaces for the principal unit and 1 for the coach house) | 1 parking space is required and must be accessed from lane. It must be unenclosed and uncovered. |

## Landscaping and Allocation of Open Space

| Design private open space between the dwelling and the coach house, so that it is useable open space for occupants. | The coach house can occupy up to 15% of the lot. Prominent existing trees and vegetation should be retained. | Retain mature vegetation where possible. Landscaping encouraged along rear lot line. Required usable outdoor private space for coach house occupants. | Prominent existing trees and vegetation should be retained. 30% of the lot area is restricted to landscaping with live plant material. |
## Laneway Housing in Metro Vancouver

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LOCATION</th>
<th>Vancouver</th>
<th>Coquitlam</th>
<th>Delta - Ladner</th>
<th>Maple Ridge</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>HOUSING TERM AND DESCRIPTION</strong></td>
<td>Laneway house</td>
<td>Garden Cottage/Carriage House</td>
<td>Coach House</td>
<td>Detached Garden Suite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laneway house</td>
<td>A laneway house is a small house at the rear of a lot near the lane and includes both a dwelling unit and parking/accessory uses.</td>
<td>A garden cottage is an accessory residential suite to a one-family dwelling unit. It is a one-storey building with the suite at-grade.</td>
<td>A coach house refers to a second dwelling unit located in an accessory building on a lot. The accessory building is typically a separate garage with the dwelling unit situated on the second storey or at ground level.</td>
<td>A detached garden suite is a self-contained second dwelling unit that is separate, subordinate in size and accessory to the principal dwelling unit. The unit may be a free-standing structure, or may be located beside or above a detached garage or other accessory structure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ZONING</strong></td>
<td>All RS single family zones, RT11 (two-family dwelling district - Norquay) and RM7 (multiple-dwelling district – Norquay)</td>
<td>RT1 (Two-family residential)</td>
<td>RS9 (Infill residential zone)</td>
<td>All RS single family zones and A zones (agriculture)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NUMBER OF ALLOWABLE DWELLINGS PER LOT</strong></td>
<td>3 – principal dwelling, secondary suite and laneway house</td>
<td>2 – principal dwelling and garden cottage or carriage house</td>
<td>2 – principal dwelling, secondary suite or coach house</td>
<td>2 – principal dwelling, secondary suite or coach house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TENURE</strong></td>
<td>Rental or family use</td>
<td>Rental or family use</td>
<td>Rental or family use</td>
<td>Rental or family use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>UNIT SIZE</strong></td>
<td>The maximum floor area of a laneway house is determined by multiplying the lot area by 0.16. This results in maximum unit sizes of approximately 644 ft² on standard 33 x 122 ft lots, and 900 ft² on 50 x 122 lots. The maximum size of a laneway house is 900 ft², regardless of lot size. The maximum size of a laneway house is 280 ft² with a possible relaxation down to 204 ft².</td>
<td>The maximum size of the garden cottage or carriage house is 540 sq ft.</td>
<td>The maximum floor area of a coach house is 1184 sq ft.</td>
<td>The maximum floor area of a garden suite is 968 sq ft. The minimum floor area of a coach house is 398 sq ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HEIGHT AND STOREY LIMITS</strong></td>
<td>1 and 2 storey homes are allowed. A 1 storey is limited to 12ft if it is a flat roof or 1.5ft for a sloped roof. A 2 storey can have a maximum height of 18ft to 20ft depending on roof type and pitch. The upper storey is restricted to 60 percent of the footprint of the laneway house.</td>
<td>1 storey homes are allowed. Height limits are not specified.</td>
<td>1 and 2 storey homes are allowed. Coach houses must be clearly distinguishable from principal structures in terms height. A 2 storey can have a maximum height of 27ft for a flat roof and 32ft for a sloped roof.</td>
<td>Height limits are informed by underlying zoning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MINIMUM LOT SIZE</strong></td>
<td>3595 sq ft and 32.15 ft wide</td>
<td>3983 sq ft and 33 ft wide</td>
<td>3552 sq ft</td>
<td>5995 sq ft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LOCATION ON LOT (SETBACKS, DISTANCE FROM PRINCIPAL HOME)</strong></td>
<td>The laneway house must be set back from the lane a minimum of 3ft, and more where possible. Entries facing the lane should be set back a minimum of 5ft. There must be a minimum separation of 16ft between the laneway house and principal house for both 1 and 2 storey laneway houses.</td>
<td>Setbacks</td>
<td>Setbacks: 8'2&quot; front setback 3' side setback 5' rear setback</td>
<td>10 ft rear setback on average Distance from principal building varies on the zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PARKING REQUIREMENTS</strong></td>
<td>A minimum of 1 unenclosed and uncovered parking space MUST be provided on site adjacent the laneway house. The parking space may be for the use of any of the dwelling units on site.</td>
<td>A minimum of 1 parking space per garden cottage or carriage house plus the 2 parking spaces for the principal house for a total of 3 spaces, provided on site.</td>
<td>One parking space per &quot;secondary suite&quot; is required.</td>
<td>1 spot for 1 bedroom garden suite 2 spots for 2 bedroom garden suite Must register for parking covenant with Land Titles Office.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Urban Heat Islands

Doug Kelbaugh FAIA wrote this Lean Urbanism white paper on combating the urban heat island effect.
Cooling Urban Heat Islands

“…large cities in the U.S. (tend) to be warming at more than twice the rate of the planet as a whole as a result of the loss of naturally vegetated land covers…global estimates of climate change are likely to underestimate rates of warming in the very places where most of the global population now resides: cities.”

Brian Stone, *The City and the Coming Climate*, 2012

I. WHAT ARE URBAN HEAT ISLANDS?

The Urban Heat Island (UHI) and Urban Heat Island Effect (UHIE) are two interchangeable terms that describe the higher air and surface temperatures in cities relative to their suburbs and hinterland. The phenomenon is easily conflated and confused with what is usually described as climate change (CC) or global warming. There is considerable overlap, but also consequential difference. In short, CC is a global phenomenon, and UHI is a local phenomenon. They are both heating up cities, but in different ways.

The local increase in UHI is *not* from GHGs trapping more heat in the atmosphere, but from a local increase in palpable, or *sensible heat* (as opposed to latent heat, which is not detectable). This heat comes from two sources: hot gases emitted from tailpipes and chimneys, and from dark surfaces - blackish rooftops, streets and parking lots - that radiate heat, because they have been heated by the sun to temperatures hotter than the surrounding air and surfaces. (It’s like dark sand on a beach, which not only burns your feet but also heats the air right above and creates warm convection currents.) Both heat sources raise the average urban temperature higher than the surrounding suburbs and rural countryside, which have fewer tailpipes, chimneys and dark surfaces per acre. The rural to urban temperature gradient can be 5 to 7 or more degrees Fahrenheit (F) at a given time, with heat waves that can double this delta between a city’s center(s) and hinterland.

![Fig. 1 - Air and especially surface temperatures are higher in the central city than surrounding suburban and rural areas.](image-url)
Land surface temperatures vary even more dramatically, with deltas of over 75 degrees F.

Brian Stone, a Georgia Institute of Technology Professor of Urban Planning and UHI expert, has written that cities like Atlanta have experienced more climatic modification from local UHI than from global CC. He suggests that hotter temperatures amplified by UHI will soon make outdoor activities for more than a few hours per day too uncomfortable for most Atlantans. Indeed, heat waves in most large American cities are trending hotter and more frequent, with the increasing need for “cool centers” that are open to people whose homes are dangerously hot. These air-conditioned sanctuaries (with back-up generators) are typically in institutional buildings open to the public, like municipal libraries and schools, where citizens can find relief, including extended stays if necessary. Annual deaths from heat waves are increasing, and more of these centers will be needed to cope with hotter and longer episodes. According to the New York Times (6/6/15) “The July-August 2010 heat wave in western Russia killed about 54,000 people…from 1981 to 2010, the average American experienced about four dangerously hot and humid days… By 2030, that level is expected to more than double, to about 10 days per summer.” Cities in hot, humid tropical zones will be especially hard hit with the sickening and deadly combination of higher temperatures and more humidity.

There are a host of potential motivators engendered by problems around the world - from urban air pollution and congestion to health problems and infrastructure failure, not to mention the more global phenomenon of sea level rise, extreme weather, storm water flooding, drought, famine, etc. The particular cocktail of concerns will vary from climate to climate, culture to
culture, and economy to economy. For many urbanized places, especially those in hot and in
temperate climates, rising temperatures and heat waves kill more people than all other natural
disasters (although many more homeless people die from extreme cold, arguably victims more
of poverty than climate). And because hotter urban temperatures impact not just poor and
marginal areas but all areas of the metropolis, their impact is being widely felt. Indeed, the loss
of air-conditioning in a large Middle-Eastern city during a heat wave in the summer of 2015
triggered civil unrest as or more intense than the geo-political violence in this war-torn area.

II. WHY URBAN HEAT ISLANDS ARE TIMELY AND HELPFUL

The UHI is an opportunity, as well as a burden for cities. Very importantly and very fortuitously,
ways to mitigate and adapt to local UHI are complementary to ways to address global CC. But
as a 5-10 year rather than a 50-100 year challenge, it can more immediately and more
effectively motivate people to modify their behavior. UHI is manageable, with concrete steps that
give direct, clear feedback. Because its negative impacts beget quick, concrete attention, UHI
also tends to privilege adaptation above mitigation. And adaptation tends to feel proactive, direct
and satisfying. And because UHI can threaten human health, it is a personal stimulant. On the
other hand, it can be argued that it gives cities a bad name for being hotter than suburbia and
the countryside, at precisely the time that more people are moving to urban places. Indeed, if
severe enough, UHI could dampen, even reverse migration to cities.

III. UHI MITIGATION AND ADAPTATION STRATEGIES

There are three ways to mitigate and adapt to UHI in order to achieve urban cooling.
1. The first is higher albedo, which is a technical way of saying more reflective roofs and
pavements. Albedo is measured by the Solar Reflectivity Index (SRI), which indicates the
percentage of solar radiation that is reflected back through the earth’s atmosphere into outer
space, before it heats up any terrestrial mass or air. It’s a significant metric because solar
energy that hits light colored surfaces is reflected back into space before it makes the photo-
thermal conversion, that is, before it changes from short wave to longer wave infrared radiant
heat, which in turn would be trapped by the earth’s atmosphere. The incoming solar energy
enters and immediately bounces back off our planet without heating it up, passing directly
through the atmosphere and its GHGs in both directions. Accordingly, white and light colored
horizontal surfaces with a high SRI – primarily roofs and pavement– increase the urban albedo,
and thereby reduce the ambient air temperature. By converting half a city’s rooftops to green
roofs, it is estimated that temperatures can be diminished by up to 3.5 degrees F.8 (Planted
green roofs offer a number of environmental benefits, but a recent study suggests that white
roofs actually are more effective, by directly bouncing solar radiation back through our
atmosphere. The study compared three types of roofs – green, black and white – and concluded
that white roofs have measurable economic benefits, and that they are also three times more
effective than the other two roof types at fighting UHI.)9

Obviously, the infrastructure for motorized vehicles is a fat target for albedo enhancement. The
paved street and road surfaces tend to be dark colored asphalt, which absorbs the solar
radiation and heats the air temperature above them. The surface area devoted to vehicles in
motion is immense, as is the paved parking areas for vehicles at rest. In some cities, the
combination - call it “motorized space” - is a very high percentage of the land area. Both areas
can be literally lightened up with paint, made all the more timely by recent technical and cost
breakthroughs in durable pavement coatings. (It’s also worth noting that painting can often be
done by volunteer or “guerilla” labor in an initiative often referred to as Tactical Urbanism.)

Fig. 4a - In downtown Detroit, Michigan, empty sites make for “motorized space” of about 60%.

Fig. 4b - In cities that have been visited by less decline, the percentage is lower, but still
surprisingly high. This widely-published photo of parking lots in downtown Houston, Texas
purportedly embarrassed the City into building several public venues and arenas in the area –
the paved area shown considerably exceeds 50%.

More reflective surfaces, especially horizontal ones like roofs and pavement, are very effective
ways to bounce back solar radiation before it heats up the surface and nearby air. Deep street
canyons that have lighter building facades can redouble the benefits.
Fig. 5a – The reflectivity of roof and pavement surfaces is sensitive to color, and varies widely.

Fig. 5b - Princeton University students painting a roof white in New York City.

2. The second strategy is *sensible heat reduction*, that is, to reduce the local production and release of sensible heat into the urban environment, in the form of hot air and other gases. This means decreasing the combustion of hydrocarbon fuels in both motor vehicles, power plants and industrial processes. Compact, walkable, bikable, transit oriented urbanism is an effective way to reduce tailpipe emissions of heat, but this is beyond the lean seam. Building HVAC systems that emit lower temperature fumes can play a positive role. Better insulated buildings also help to reduce sensible heat radiating and convecting from their exterior surfaces, as well as reduce hot chimney emissions. Last, lower tech, passive cooling and dehumidification devices can reduce the voluminous hot air pumped into the urban air shed by air conditioning systems, which are energy-intensive, heat-spewing mechanical systems.
3. The third strategy is creating *cool micro-climates* within the city. This cooling is achieved primarily with plants, especially shade trees, as well as by urban morphologies that enhance cooling breezes that are stifled by crowded and tall buildings. Trees are the great natural multi-taskers of the environment. Trees along streets, roads and in parking lots constitute a large and particularly effective part of the urban tree canopy. The list of the environmental contributions of vegetation is long: trees provide cool shade, evapo-transpiration (evaporation from leaves) that cools and moistens the air, carbon sequestration, particulate pollution filtration, soil retention, water retention, animal habitat, nuts, fruits, flowers and fragrance, while absorbing sound, shaping/softening public space and bestowing beauty and biophilic presence. Every culture seems to relish trees and the dappled light they filter (probably because humans are believed to have originally evolved under the canopy at the forest edge, overlooking the savannah of east Africa). Urban street trees often grow larger, with bigger canopy spread, than trees in a forest, because they have less competition from other trees. Accordingly, a healthy urban specimen can have many times the cooling capacity of a forest tree. Green "living walls" and planted green roofs also have cooling benefits, but are less cost-effective and require more maintenance and irrigation than trees on terra firma. In hot, arid climates, water fountains and pools can also cool the air by evaporation, as can mechanical "swamp coolers," which do not discharge sensible heat and use less electricity as air conditioning.

Trees are also known to increase real estate values, especially along tree-lined streets. They've even been shown to decrease crime. Trees and other vegetation can also decrease mental fatigue, improve worker attitudes on the job, and reduce stress as well as feelings of anger, depression, or anxiety. There are a few negative externalities of trees, such as increased water demand, raking and removal of fallen leaves, maintenance costs, allergies, and resistance from some residents who don’t want trees in front of their homes. And vegetation that provides cover for criminals is also an obvious downside.

**Three main UHI reduction strategies:**

1. **Albedo Enhancement** (lighter-colored roofs, pavement and walls)

2. **Sensible Heat Reduction** (less hot gas from tailpipes, chimneys and air conditioners)

3. **Cool Micro-climates** (trees and vegetation to shade, filter, cool the air, etc., while providing scale, beauty and other amenities)

Many cities have lost their forest cover – Atlanta has lost half its tree cover in the last quarter century, while Seattle has lost a third - but studies have shown that recouping Atlanta’s original tree cover could lower air temperatures by more than 12 degrees F on the hottest days and diminish heat waves even more. According to the U.S. Conference of Mayors, at least 135 cities have tree inventories, planting and maintenance programs, and almost half of them have adopted tree canopy goals. For instance, Washington, D.C., has incorporated a citywide 40 percent tree canopy goal. To achieve this goal by 2032, the city must increase its canopy cover from the existing 35 percent by planting 8,600 trees per year. Seattle plans to increase its tree canopy from 18 to 30% in 30 years. Many of the trees are being planted along streets, roads, sidewalks and biking/walking paths. Melbourne, Australia - where they’re not just planting trees but an “urban forest” to deal with increasing temperatures - plans to double the forest canopy from around 22% to around 40% over the next 20 years. In city that is 4-7 degrees C hotter than its green suburbs, their research indicates that that will actually cool the city by four of hose degrees. Urban trees are part of a larger global reforestation effort, one that is arguably about *recarbonizing* the environment, while we try to *decarbonize* our lives.
Fig. 6 – Trees are the great multi-taskers of urban cooling.

All three of these strategies are proven antidotes to global CC, on top of their urban cooling benefits. Importantly, they directly adapt to CC by tempering increasing global air temperatures, while quietly and indirectly helping to mitigate these increases. They are achievable, easily understandable strategies that lend themselves to distributed, democratic action at the local scale. The bottom-up, low-tech nature of albedo enhancement, which can be as easy as applying white paint to rooftops, is consistent with both Tactical Urbanism and Lean Urbanism (two parallel spin-offs of New Urbanism, the former focused on small, temporary interventions and the latter on workarounds relaxation of onerous regulations on small- and middle-scale, permanent development). Planting and watering street trees and other vegetation along sidewalks and in median strips can be done with volunteer labor, and is consistent with Tactical, Lean and New Urbanism. Reducing tailpipe and chimney heat can be achieved by both low- and high-tech techniques, with the most effective and leanest strategy being the negatrip – simply walking and biking, rather than driving - in compact, location-efficient, mixed-use, transit-served neighborhoods consistent with pre-automobile cities and New Urbanism.

These techniques are local, accessible, appreciable ways to adapt to UHI, while obliquely mitigating it. Albedo enhancement and reforestation "are the single most effective option available to cities …none is more effective and less energy-intensive than planting trees."17 And, unlike infrastructure, which begins to degrade and lose value the moment it is installed, a tree increases in value and size for decades after it’s been planted. Combining tree planting with avoided local deforestation makes for “adaptive mitigation,” which is a more potent and effective way to synergistically address UHI.

UHI mitigation will be both more effective and more appealing in cities in hot, humid climate zones, where increasing summer temperatures will continue to make outdoor activity more uncomfortable and in some cases prohibitively inhospitable and unhealthy. “Simulations in the NASA-funded research suggest that the number of ‘high heat stress’ days in Houston will more than double by mid-century, researchers said. In some areas, the number could triple, they said.”18 A long list of American cities – Baltimore, Birmingham (AL), Charleston (SC), Charlotte,
Denver, Memphis, Nashville, Richmond, St. Louis, and Washington (DC) are estimated to see 5 to 9 times as many heat stress days (either above 90 or 100 degrees, depending on geographic location/climate zone) by 2050 and 18 to 33 as many by 2100. More distressingly, by the end of this century, the Persian Gulf region could be hit by waves of heat and humidity so severe that simply being outside for several hours could threaten human life, according to a recent study. UHI, in conjunction with CC, could overwhelm the human body’s ability to cool itself through perspiration and ventilation.

Because cooling UHIs emphasizes adaptation over mitigation, it appeals to the human proclivity for short-term thinking and prompt action, especially in times of crisis. Its concrete initiatives provide a proactive sense of progress amidst the vagaries and uncertainties of the unfurling disruption of the earth’s weather and climate. Urban cooling is essential for cities to continue to attract more residents, and to keep their existing populations from migrating to their relatively cooler suburbs and countryside, where their larger carbon footprints would make both cities and suburbs ever hotter. Urban cooling is about addressing a real, costly and accelerating physical problem.

FOOTNOTES
1. Brian Stone, The City and the Coming Climate, 2012, pp. 93-95
2. Ibid, p. 1-15
5. Brand, Whole Earth Discipline, p.20
6. Steve Mouzon, Original Green, website/blog 7/31/09
7. Andres Duany, lecture, U. of Michigan, April, 2013, and in Agrarian Urbanism, Prince’s Fdn, 2011, pp. 66-68 (later retitled Garden Cities)
8. Brian Stone, The City and the Coming Climate, p.107
14. Emily Oaksford, APA Sustaining Places, website/blog, 3/18/15, citing source in footnote 9
15. Hayley Birch, “Where is the world’s hottest city,” The Guardian, 7/22/15
18. Carol Christian, Houston Chronicle, “Houston’s high heat stress days could double by mid century,” 6/10/15
21. Michael Bloomberg, “City Century: Why Municipalities Are the Key to Fighting Climate Change,” Foreign Affairs, 8/18/15
22. Ibid
ORIGINAL GREEN SCORECARD

A scorecard for lean green building. (Courtesy Stephen Mouzon.)
Original Green Scorecard

Building Type: Homes

Region: Southeastern US Coast

Place Metrics

Region
Largest settlement close enough that you might work or shop there (city, town, village, or hamlet)

Locality
Settlement Rating (periodically rated and available to all citizens)
Neighborhood Rating (periodically rated and available to all neighbors)
Transect Zone
Walk Appeal to Nearest Grocery (from Neighborhood Scorecard for this address)
Walk Appeal to Work (from Neighborhood Scorecard for this address)

Building Metrics

Building Configuration
Building Faces to (North, East, South, West)
Building to North Property Line (LF)
Building to East Property Line (LF)
Building to South Property Line (LF)
Building to West Property Line (LF)
Overall Dimension Front to Back (not including porches)
Overall Dimension Side to Side (not including porches)
How far is the first level finished floor above BFE (Base Flood Elevation)?
Number of Exterior Building Corners

Site Footprints (SF)
Total Lot Area
Frontage Area
Heated Footprint
Unheated Indoor Footprint
Porch Footprint Behind Frontage
Porch Footprint in Frontage
Outdoor Rooms Behind Frontage
Lawn
Landscape Beds (not part of outdoor room edges)

**Conditioned Area (SF)**

Main Level
Second Level
Higher Levels
Conditioned Basement
Number of Bedrooms
Number of Residents

**Unconditioned Area (SF)**

Unfinished Bonus Space
North Porch
East Porch
South Porch
West Porch
Outdoor Rooms

**Exterior Walls**

Main Level Wall Height
Upper Levels Wall Height
North Wall (LF, either outside house or inside courtyard, typical)
East Wall (LF)
South Wall (LF)
West Wall (LF)

**Doors & Windows**

Primary Window Type (double-hung, single-hung, casement, fixed)
Main Level Primary Window Size (sash width & height)
Upper Level Primary Window Size (sash width & height)
North Wall Main Level Windows & Glazed Doors (count, with smaller or larger windows approximated by counting fractions so that if primary window is 32”x78” (17.333 SF) and secondary window is 24”x54” (9 SF) then it takes approximately two secondary windows to equal one primary window
North Wall Upper Levels Windows & Glazed Doors (count, as above)
East Wall Upper Levels Windows & Glazed Doors (count, as above)
East Wall Upper Levels Windows & Glazed Doors (count, as above)
South Wall Upper Levels Windows & Glazed Doors (count, as above)
South Wall Upper Levels Windows & Glazed Doors (count, as above)
West Wall Upper Levels Windows & Glazed Doors (count, as above)
West Wall Upper Levels Windows & Glazed Doors (count, as above)
Operable Shutters? Solid or Louvered?

Porches & Balconies
Finish Floor Minimum Elevation Above Sidewalk (at front porch)

Eaves & Roofs
Primary Roof Slope
Secondary Roof Slope
Primary Roof Shape (hip, gable, shed)
Eave Overhang
Bell-Cast Eave? (this is one of several metrics that will be illustrated, so that people know what the term means)
Sacrificial Eaves? (can blow off in a hurricane, leaving the main roof untouched)

Attachments & Sitework
Frontage Fence, Hedge or Wall? Height?
Neighbor’s Fence?
Private Yard Fence or Garden Wall? Height?
Lane or Alley Fence? Height?

Sustainable Place Credits

Most of the accounting of the sustainability of the place where a building is built comes from the rating of the settlement (city, town, village, or hamlet) and the rating of the neighborhood, but the building itself can contribute in some ways as well to creating a sustainable place, and those ways are measured
by these credits. Please note that there should be a mechanism to account for whether each item is already required within the urban coding or not. Anything required by the neighborhood already gets credit in the neighborhood rating, so these would only be available when they go above and beyond what the neighborhood requires. But because the settlement, neighborhood, and building ratings are meant to plug seamlessly together, this is something that can be automated “under the hood.”

**Nourishable Credits**

### Plants

**Yard Gardens (SF)**

Includes front yards, side yards, etc... basically, any part of the yard around a house where plants grow primarily on the ground.

**Roof or Terrace Gardens (SF)**

**Arbor Gardens (SF)**

**Wall Gardens (LF)**

**Balcony or Porch Gardens (LF)**

**Window Gardens (LF)**

### Animals

Most animals have correlating homes under “built things.”

**Chickens**

**Fish**

**Bees (only available in T2-T3)**

Bees should probably be further limited to a certain minimum lot size, or maybe to a minimum distance from a neighbor’s property.
Goats (only available in T2)

Cows (only available in T2)

Pigs (only available in T2)

**Built Things**

**Rainwater Collection (gallons of barrels/cisterns)**

**Earth to Earth**

Are there mechanisms for composting kitchen wastes in a way that will not be smelled by the neighbors?

**Chicken Coop**

**Fish Pond**

**Bee Hives**

**Greenhouse**

**Garden Pavilion**

**Accessible Credits**

**Gift to the Street**

Does this building give a gift to the street that either refreshes people walking by (like a fountain), delights them (like a beautiful frontage garden), directs them (like a tower to create a goal in the middle distance), entertains them, informs them (like a clock or a sundial), helps them remember (like a memorial) or gives them a place to rest?

**Place to Park a Bike**

Is there a place where bikes for each of the inhabitants may be secured?
**Side Wall Windows**
Is there at least one window within 8’ of the front corners of the building at both the main and upper levels?

**Serviceable Credits**

**Home Office**
Does this home have a dedicated office within it, or one that at most would double as a guest suite?

**Home Workshop**
If this home is located on the end of a block, is there a workshop (that might include a retail display window) where the side street meets the alley? If not located here, is there a workshop (without retail) on the alley or rear lane?

**Live/Work**
Does this unit have a workspace identifiable as such on the building frontage?

**Securable Credits**

**Eyes on the Street**
<calculated from windows on frontage and height above sidewalk because the likelihood of window treatments being left open varies with height above sidewalk>

**Strong Blocks**
Is there a fence, hedge, or wall that separates the private frontage from the private yard behind? If so, are there fences, hedges, or walls regulating access to all private yards around the house?
**Sustainable Building Credits**

Many of the sustainable building credits are calculated in whole or in part from the building metrics collected at the beginning. Other credits collect credit-specific data that may be numeric, yes/no, or multiple-choice (radio buttons).

**Lovable Credits**

**Things That Reflect Us - Human Form**

**Door Proportion**
Do doors reflect the vertical proportion of the standing human body, which is the way we walk through a door?

**Porch Bay Proportion**
Is the height of the columns greater than the space between columns so that the columns frame vertically-proportioned spaces that reflect the vertical proportions of the humans that may be standing within them?

**Window Pane Proportion**
Do window panes reflect the vertical proportion of the human face?

**Horizontal Arrangement**
Does at least the face (entry) of a building reflect the symmetry of the horizontal arrangement of the human face?

**Vertical Arrangement**
Does the building as a whole and all of its major parts reflect the vertical arrangement of the human body with a top (head), middle (body), and bottom (feet)?

**Composure of the Face**
Did you give as much thought to the composition and composure of the face of this building as you would to your own face and bodily appearance before going to a formal dinner? Be honest... this is one of a handful of credits based entirely on the honor system.
Things That Reflect Us - The Human Hand

Made by Hand
Is there at least one major element or surface both inside and outside this building that is obviously not machine-made?

Lovable Equipment
Is equipment that is open to view designed not just as a piece of machinery, but instead (like an old chimney or cast-iron radiator) as an object meant to be at least somewhat lovable?

Skills of the Region
Is there at least one major component in this building created by the skills of craftspeople in this region that you can’t get somewhere else?

Built from Things Nearby
Is there at least one building element that has materials harvested or quarried within 200 miles of this building site? Is it obvious to anyone that this is a local material? (2 levels of credit)

Things That Delight Us - Sensual Delight

Embers on the Hearth
Is there some setting (such as a fireplace) for producing non-mechanical heat on cold evenings during the short coastal winters?

Cool Summer Breeze
Are windows arranged on at least two sides of every principal room so that places people sit for periods of time can be comfortably cross-ventilated?

Sound of Water
Are there windows that open to the sound of a fountain outdoors?

Birdsong and Children Playing
Do windows open to places children play, or near trees where birds might be singing?
Windows in the Walls
Does the percentage of glass in the walls of the house reflect the percentage of broad daylight that should be admitted to the interior (12% - 30%) for comfortable interior light levels?

Things That Delight Us - Group Delight

Sitting Where You’ll Meet
Is the private frontage designed so that people feel comfortable sitting outside (like on a porch) where unplanned conversations might occur with someone they don’t yet know? (will include diagrams; may self-calculate if I can figure it out.)

Things That Delight Us - Memory Delight

A Memorable Place
Is there something about this building and its site that distinguishes it from every other place on earth?

Things That Delight Us - Intellectual Delight

Stories to Tell
Does this building tell some sort of story that can be appreciated by people other than just the architects?

Things That Delight Us - Sheltering Delight

Embracing Spaces
Does this building combine with its fences, hedges, and landscape walls to enclose exterior spaces, either in courtyards or outdoor rooms?

Sheltering Roof
Does the roof start high and end low, visibly sheltering this house from the elements? (this credit is most important in T2 and T3 where roofs are most visible and least important in T5, where most of them are not visible at all).
Things That Delight Us - Challenging Delight

Bracing Spaces
Is there any place in or around this building that might be a bit spine-tingling? Like maybe a tower room high above the street?

Things That Put Us In Harmony - Mathematical

Proportions of Principal Spaces
Are principal spaces in and around this building well-proportioned either rationally (4:3, 3:2, 2:1, 1:1) or irrationally (Golden Mean, square root of 2)?

Things That Put Us In Harmony - Simplicity

Necessary Things
Do you really need everything in this design? There’s no scientific answer to this question; instead, it’s a gut feeling. So do you? Really? This credit runs entirely on the honor system.

Things That Put Us In Harmony - Authenticity

Signs of Depth
Does this building use solid timber posts instead of boxed columns built of thin boards, even if there are checks and splits that reveal the fact that this is solid timber?

Things That Put Us In Harmony - Natural Laws

Visible Means of Support
Is it obvious from the details and spans of this building how things are being held up, and that it is capable of standing up long into the future?
Things That Put Us In Harmony - Natural Forms

Ornament
Is this building adorned in some way with elements based on the human form, animal forms or plant forms?

Things That Put Us In Harmony - Region

Regional Wisdom
Did the design of this building begin with architectural wisdom collected in this region over the past two centuries?

Durable Credits

Commodities vs. Proprietary Products

Repaired by Your Children
What percentage of the value of this house is built of elements that are commodities, not proprietary, so that they may be repaired and you can buy replacement parts a generation from now after the manufacturer is out of business, or the component has been taken out of production?

Patchable Parts

Able to be Maintained
What percentage of the value of this house is built of elements that are patchable and make no claims at being “no-maintenance” (because what that really means is that those elements cannot be maintained, but when they fail, they must be ripped out entirely and replaced).

Carbon Impact

Life Cycle Impact
Divide the carbon impact of building materials and construction energy by the expected lifespan of the building to get the carbon impact per year.
Durable Materials

Open Spaces
What percentage of structural cavities such as the spaces between wall studs or floor joists have been opened up to breathe so they no longer conceal moisture, mold, mildew, and bugs?

Aging Gracefully
Without regular pressure-washing, will the exterior wall materials of this building look better or worse in 25 years? In 100 years?

Real Masonry
Does masonry on this building hold itself up with masonry arches or stone lintels, not needing steel elements that will rust? Are they real load-bearing masonry walls? (2 levels of credit)

Insulated Roofline
Do you insulate the rafters with closed-cell foam insulation instead of insulating the ceiling so that pipes, ducts, and things stored in the attic stay near room temperature and perform better?

Insulated Crawl Space
Do you insulate your crawl space with durable rigid wall insulation instead of fiberglass batts in the floor that soak up moisture and harbor mold and mildew?

Durable Outside Walls
From most flammable to least flammable, are exterior wall finish materials primarily vinyl or plastic, wood, steel, concrete or cementitious, or stone?

Wall Base
Are the foundation walls finished in a visibly different color or surface from the main building walls so they can be refinished more frequently without requiring the entire wall to be refinished?
Chamfered Posts
Are wood posts chamfered at the corners to make them more durable to physical abuse?

Hurricane Hardening

Walls That Can Take a Bath
What percentage of wall finishes that would normally be sheetrock have been replaced on the first level with materials that are less susceptible to water damage? On upper levels?

Heavy Piers
How much heavier are your piers than structurally necessary so that they can resist impact from water-borne debris in a storm?

Main Level Elevation
<self-calculating... the higher above BFE, the better... to a point>

Durable Roofline
<this one uses roof metrics already collected for roof slopes, shapes, and edge conditions... multiple levels of credit here>

Shuttered Openings
<self-calculating for solid shutters from data collected earlier>

Instructed Operation

Operating Manual Thickness
How big are your operating manuals? The thinner the manual, the more likely the system will be running long into the future. The best systems operate in ways that are self-evident. This is one of the honor system credits.
Adaptable Credits

Proximity to the Street

Front Yard
<self-calculates from metrics collected earlier... the closer a building is, the more things it can be used for>

Ceiling Height

Ceilings in the Region
<self-calculates based on pre-Thermostat Age ceiling heights in the region>

Simple Shapes

Simplicity of Massing
<self-calculates based on footprint area, exterior building corners, and linear feet of first level walls>

Simple Paths

Simplicity of Circulation
Are the first building forms you see when approaching the building the walls that enclose spaces you stay, or spaces you move through?

Envelope Attachment

Attachable Percentage
What percentage of the exterior wall of this building allows for attachment of partitions, cabinets, and fixtures. (Hint: start by eliminating all glass in the wall, then eliminate other fragile things as well.)

Patchable Attachment
How easily can something attached to the envelope of this building be removed and the points of attachment be patched so that evidence of the previous attachment is no longer visible?
Pipes

Spaces & Chases
Are building services concealed in the building in such a way that you can access them later without destroying finished surfaces?

Frugal Credits

Condition People First

Outdoor Rooms
<self-calculates percentage of outdoor to indoor rooms>

Outdoor Room Shapes
Are outdoor rooms shaped convexly, so you can stand at any point in the room and see any other point in the room?

Outdoor Room Walls
Are your outdoor rooms enclosed by building walls, fences, hedges, or landscape walls?

Outdoor Room Floors
Is each outdoor room floored with a different material from adjacent rooms?

Outdoor Room Furnishings
Is every outdoor room furnished with places to sit? How many of the outdoor rooms are furnished with tables?

Outdoor Room Fixtures
How many outdoor rooms are equipped with other fixtures such as fountains, outdoor kitchens, and outdoor cabinets?

Smaller & Smarter

Building Size Credit
<self-calculated based on data collected earlier>
**Grow Zones**
How many Grow Zones are reserved in the plan through which the house may be expanded in the future? How many of them allow expansion towards the sunlight?

**Booths**
Are you using a dining booth instead of a dining room? And have you wired and equipped it so it can triple as a homework station and home office?

**Insulating Bed Alcoves**
Are you nestling beds into curtained alcoves that can be closed on winter nights, allowing body heat to warm the air while the thermostat is turned down low throughout the house?

**Armoires vs. Closets**
Are you using armoires instead of closets, saving space and a little money while storing just as many clothes in a more interesting enclosure?

**Stair Nooks**
Is space under stairs used for reading nooks, kids’ nooks, or night nooks instead of being wasted? Or maybe pantries or half baths?

**Baskets Under Beds**
Are you using the space under beds for storage baskets?

**Window Sill Shelves**
Are window sills flat and extra wide so they double as shelves?

**Boarded Walls**
What percentage of your walls are finished with boards instead of sheetrock so that you can attach shelves, hooks, and other storage devices and even appliances and cabinets at any point on the wall without looking for a stud?

**Open Walls**
What percentage of interior boarded walls are you opening up from one side, installing shelving in space that would have otherwise been wasted? And are
you varying the stud width according to what you want to store? Like 2x10 studs for a library wall that holds standard-size books?

**Light Wings**

**Light and Air**

<self-calculates daylighting and cross-ventilation likelihood>

**Material Processing**

**Embodied Energy**

How highly-processed are the major structural materials and other materials that make up the majority of your building in terms of BTUs per pound of material? <this one will likely be answered by radio buttons, with the user selecting the primary materials>

**Waste Not**

**Building Reuse**

If there was an existing building on your site, what percentage of the building did you use in the design of this building?

**Recycled Materials**

What percentage of the total value of this building is made up of recycled materials? <radio buttons for general percentage ranges>

**Surrounded by Heirlooms**

What percentage of furniture and fixtures in this building were manufactured for a previous owner?

**Green Shed**

Does this building have a Green Shed for recycling, storage of excess building materials, and plant potting? Does the Green Shed also collect solar electricity or hot water on its roof?
**Fresh Air Laundry**

Is there a Laundry Eave under which clothes may be hung to dry that will shelter them in the event of a rain shower?

**Landscape Irrigation**

Are you using plant material that is native or well-adapted to this place so that it does not require long-term irrigation?

**Healthy Place**

**Mower-Free Garden**

Is the landscape design of this property completely free of turf grass? If not, how much grass are you using?

**Animal House**

How many beneficial species of non-humans are sheltered or fostered in this design?

**Pest Control**

Do you sprinkle boric acid into concealed spaces before sealing them up? It’s deadly to roaches, but completely non-toxic to humans.

**Biting Bugs**

Do you use natural botanical sprays in your mosquito misting system?

**Fresh-Air Parking**

Do you park cars or other gas-powered vehicles in open air, like under a carport? If enclosed in a garage, is the garage separated from the rest of the house by outdoor air so that exhaust fumes cannot enter the house directly from the garage?

**Local Green Power**

**Wind Power**

Do you generate electricity with wind turbines? How many watts?
Solar Electricity
Do you generate solar electricity? How many watts?

Solar Hot Water
Do you generate hot water from the sun? How many gallons per day?

Solar Ready
Even if you’re not actively collecting solar energy right now, have you oriented enough of your roof toward the sun that you can collect enough solar energy in the future?

That’s all for now... I have another 20 or so items to add to this Frugal section, but am exhausted and want to get this out tonight to get some comments rather than waiting to finish it later. All thoughts and commentary are much appreciated!

~Steve Mouzon
SUSTAINABLE URBANISM MODULE

A guide and SmartCode module for energy performance metrics. by Doug Farr and Leslie Oberholtzer.
You never change things by fighting the existing reality. To change something, build a new model that makes the existing model obsolete.

R. Buckminster Fuller
STANDARDS FOR ARTICLE 2, ARTICLE 3, AND ARTICLE 4  ..................... 5
ZERO NET ENERGY BUILDINGS
PUBLIC DARKNESS
VEHICLE MILES TRAVELED
TREE CANOPY COVER
STORMWATER MANAGEMENT

STANDARDS FOR ARTICLE 5 ........................................................................... 7
ZERO NET ENERGY BUILDINGS
PUBLIC DARKNESS
VEHICLE MILES TRAVELED
TREE CANOPY COVER
STORMWATER MANAGEMENT

TABLES FOR ARTICLE 6
SU1 - ZERO NET ENERGY BUILDINGS ......................................................... 11
SU2 - SURFACE TO VOLUME RATIO & BUILDING ORIENTATION ............. 17
SU3 - SHADING OF GLAZING ................................................................. 19
SU4 - PUBLIC DARKNESS ........................................................................ 21
SU5 - VEHICLE MILES TRAVELED ......................................................... 23
SU6 - TREE CANOPY COVER ............................................................... 27
SU7 - STORMWATER MANAGEMENT ....................................................... 29
ARTICLE 3
ZERO NET ENERGY BUILDINGS
This section activates Table SU1, Table SU2, and Table SU3. The Architecture 2030 Challenge, which has been put forward by the non-profit organization Architecture 2030 (www.architecture2030.org) is used in those tables as a benchmark goal for building energy use reduction. It proposes that all new buildings produce no greenhouse gas emissions by the year 2030. Buildings are responsible for 48% of all energy consumption in the United States, making them the single largest contributor to greenhouse gas emissions. The baseline to establish reductions should be taken from an established regional average by the applicable building type (e.g., edgeyard house, rearyard building, mixed use building) from a set year, such as the year of the code adoption.

These goals should be applied on the Building Scale per each Transect Zone. However, communities seeking a particular city-wide goal may consider requirements for District Energy Generation. For that reason Article 3 Standards are included.

See Table SU1 for additional standards and annotations.
See Table SU2 for details on Surface to Volume Ratio and Building Orientation.
See Table SU3 for details on Shading of Glazing.

PUBLIC DARKNESS
This section activates Table SU4, which addresses standards at the light source to maintain desired general ambient light levels across the Transect. Lighting standards protect against glare, preserve the night sky, and reduce unnecessary energy use from overlighting. Rural zones tend to be darker, while higher levels of outdoor lighting may be more suitable in mixed use urban zones.

See Table SU4 for additional standards and annotations.

VEHICLE MILES TRAVELED
This section activates Table SU5, which adapts the 2030 Community Campaign benchmarks to each Transect Zone for reduction in Vehicle Miles Traveled (VMT).

The 2030 Community Campaign is based on sustaining us as “a nation of neighborhoods.” The Intent section of the SmartCode spells this out. The average American family is dependent on cars to meet its daily needs, driving on average 21,500 miles a year. Vehicle miles traveled by Americans is expected to grow 2.5% per year, increasing energy consumption and carbon emissions contributing to climate change. Additionally, obesity and other side effects of inactive lifestyles are predicted to shorten life span as much as five years per American.

Base VMT to establish the percentage decrease should be calculated from local or regional community data from 2005. (National baseline from 2005 per the American Planning Association, the Environmental and Energy Study Institute, and the 2030 Community Campaign, is 8,000 VMT per person).

Methods recommended to achieve the goal are listed in Table SU5 as more appropriate or more efficient for some Transect Zones, though many of the methods may be utilized across the Transect. Development patterns contribute to reducing VMT as do policies and strategies for Transportation Demand Management (TDM).

See Table SU5 for additional standards and annotations.

TREE CANOPY COVER
This section activates Table SU6, which provides a goal for minimum tree canopy cover by Transect Zone as well as methods to achieve these goals. Tree canopy cover cools the urban environment, traps air pollutants, absorbs carbon dioxide, and intercepts rainwater to reduce stormwater runoff. The minimum tree canopy coverage goals for each zone in this table have been developed as a benchmark for the local community. The amounts should be calibrated to the community, based on the climate. The methods are standards to achieve these goals and promote tree health and survival.

See Table SU6 for additional standards and annotations.
ARTICLE 3. NEW COMMUNITY SCALE PLANS

3.X. ZERO NET ENERGY BUILDING STANDARDS

3.X.1. GENERAL
   a. Communities and their buildings shall be designed and constructed to reduce
      energy consumption to the percentages defined in Table SU1. Performance goals
      shall be met by projects approved on or after January 1 of the year listed in the
      left column.
   b. Methods provided in Table SU1, Table SU2, and Table SU3 are intended for
      guidance in reaching these goals.
   c. The development's annual electricity purchased from renewable sources through
      an energy contract shall be limited to the percentage listed in Table SU1 for each
      Transect Zone. Any such contract shall specify a minimum term of two years.
   d. See Article 5 standards in this Module for specific requirements for buildings.

3.X.2. SPECIFIC TO ZONES T2, T3, T4
   a. A minimum of 70% of Lots shall be oriented within 30 degrees of true east/
      west.

3.X.3. SPECIFIC TO ZONES T5, T6
   a. A District Energy system shall be installed for any development of two or more
      buildings.

3.X. PUBLIC DARKNESS

3.X.1. GENERAL TO ALL ZONES T1, T2, T3, T4, T5, T6 AND SD
   a. All exterior lighting shall conform to the shielding, brightness and curfew standards
      defined in Table SU4.

3.X. VEHICLE MILES TRAVELED

3.X.1. GENERAL
   a. Communities shall be designed to reduce Vehicle Miles Traveled (VMT) to the
      percentages defined in Table SU1. Performance goals shall be met by projects
      approved on or after January 1 of the year listed in the left column.
   b. Methods provided in Table SU1 are intended for guidance in reaching these
      goals.
   c. A bicycle system shall be incorporated into New Community Plans. See the
      Thoroughfare Module for Tale 4C and the Cycling Module.
   d. At least one of the Community Scale Transportation Demand Management poli-
      cies listed in Table SU5 shall be provided.

3.X. TREE CANOPY COVER

3.X.1. GENERAL
   a. Standards listed in Table SU6 shall be met in order to establish a minimum tree
      canopy cover over a New Community.
   b. Existing trees may be utilized to meet the canopy requirements. When existing
      trees do not meet the requirements, new trees of species appropriate for the
      bioregion and form appropriate for the Transect Zone shall be planted. See Table
      6 Public Planting.
STORMWATER MANAGEMENT (ARTICLE 3)
This section activates Table SU7, which establishes standards for managing rainwater as close to where it falls as is reasonable. Limiting the change in stormwater runoff volume, in addition to runoff release rates, is a fundamental practice to avoid overtaxing community and regional stormwater infrastructure and to preserve the health of waterways. Incorporating stormwater management features into the design of the city and its open spaces maximizes land use without the need for retention basins that are only utilized for holding water during a storm event.
See Table SU7 for additional standards and annotations.

ZERO NET ENERGY BUILDINGS (ARTICLE 5)
This section activates Table SU1, Table SU2, and Table SU3. It is also possible to use this text section, with some modification, without a table. The Architecture 2030 goals should be applied on the Building Scale per each Transect Zone. However, communities seeking a particular city-wide goal may consider requirements for District Energy Generation. For that reason Article 3 Standards are also included on Page M5.
See Table SU1 for additional standards and annotations.
See Table SU2 for details on Surface to Volume Ratio and Building Orientation.
See Table SU3 for details on Shading of Glazing.
3.X. STORMWATER MANAGEMENT

3.X.1 GENERAL

a. A District Stormwater System shall manage stormwater on site to serve all or a portion of the community. The system shall meet the standards listed in Table SU7. Lot Level standards may contribute to the total.
b. If the District Stormwater System serves more than one Transect Zone, the standards for the largest Transect Zone in area shall be followed.
c. A development may follow the standards of a lower Transect Zone, but shall never follow the standards of a higher Transect Zone.
d. If the Community Scale standards are met without Lot Level standards, then the Lot Level standards may be waived.

ARTICLE 5. BUILDING SCALE PLANS

5.X. ZERO NET ENERGY BUILDING STANDARDS

5.X.1 GENERAL to all zones T2, T3, T4, T5, T6 and SD

a. The following minimum R values shall be utilized for all buildings:
   i. Walls: [established for locale]
   ii. Roof: [established for locale]
   iii. Windows: [established for locale]

b. Fifty percent of the windows on a building shall be operable. The operable windows should be distributed to maximize the direction of prevailing breezes.
c. A minimum daylight factor of 2%, per USGBC LEED for New Construction requirements, shall be provided in 75% of regularly occupied interior areas.
d. There shall be a direct line of sight to glazing from 90% of all regularly occupied spaces.
e. The Solar Reflectivity Index for flat roofs shall be a minimum of 78. The Solar Reflectivity Index for sloped roofs shall be a minimum of 29.
f. The Solar Reflectivity Index for pavement shall be a minimum of 29.
g. All south facing windows shall be shaded. See Table SU3 for appropriate methods.
h. The use of wind turbines and solar photovoltaic/solar thermal energy systems is permitted.
i. Any building’s annual electricity purchased from renewable sources through an energy contract shall be limited to the percentage listed on Table SU1 for each Transect Zone. Any such contract shall specify a minimum term of two years.

5.X.1 SPECIFIC to zones T2, T3, T4 and SD

a. Buildings should be oriented as provided on Table SU2.
b. Buildings should meet Surface-to-Volume Ratios as provided on Table SU2.
PUBLIC DARKNESS (ARTICLE 5)
This section activates Table SU4, which addresses standards at the light source to maintain desired general ambient light levels across the Transect. Exterior lighting of the private frontage affects Public Darkness, so this brief Article 5 reference to Table SU4 is important. Lighting standards protect against glare, preserve the night sky, and reduce unnecessary energy use from overlighting. Rural zones tend to be darker, while higher levels of outdoor lighting may be more suitable in mixed use urban zones. This section and Table SU4 should replace the older SmartCode Lighting Module for Article 5.

VEHICLE MILES TRAVELED (ARTICLE 5)
The 2030 Community Campaign provides a benchmark for reduction in Vehicle Miles Traveled (VMT). This section for Article 5 activates portions of Table SU5 that address the Building Scale.

TREE CANOPY COVER (ARTICLE 5)
This section activates Table SU6, which provides a goal for minimum tree canopy cover by Transect Zone as well as methods to achieve these goals. Trees on private property are counted toward Community Scale canopy cover, therefore this Article 5 section is included. The amounts on the table should be calibrated to the community, based on the climate. The methods are standards to achieve these goals and promote tree health and survival. See Table SU6 for additional standards and annotations.

STORMWATER MANAGEMENT (ARTICLE 5)
This section activates Table SU7, which establishes standards for managing rainwater as close to where it falls as is reasonable. The Lot Level standards apply at the Building Scale of Article 5. See Table SU7 for additional standards and annotations.
5.X. PUBLIC DARKNESS
5.X.1 General to all zones T1, T2, T3, T4, T5, T6 and SD
   a. Exterior building lighting shall conform to the shielding, brightness and curfew standards defined in Table SU4.

5.X. VEHICLE MILES TRAVELED
5.X.1. General to all zones T1, T2, T3, T4, T5, T6 and SD
   a. Parking requirements shall be waived for car-free housing and reduced for Transit-Oriented Development (TOD).
   b. All non-residential buildings with more than \( x \) occupants shall provide bicycle amenities (racks, lockers, and showers) per the Cycling Module.
   d. All non-residential buildings with more than \( x \) occupants shall provide a minimum of three of the Transportation Demand Management policies listed in Table SU5.

5.X. TREE CANOPY COVER
5.X.1 General to all zones T2, T3, T4, T5, T6 and SD
   a. Standards listed in Table SU6 shall be met in order to establish a minimum tree canopy cover over a New Community or Infill Community.
   b. Existing trees may be utilized to meet the canopy requirements. When existing trees do not meet the requirements, new trees of species appropriate for the bioregion shall be planted. See Table 6 Public Planting.

5.X.2 Specific to zones T4, T5, T6
   a. Structural soil shall be utilized adjacent to tree pits.

5.X. STORMWATER MANAGEMENT
5.X.1 General
   a. Lots shall meet the standards for Lot Level runoff volume and Runoff Release Rate as listed in Table SU7, unless such standards are waived due to District Stormwater Management accomplishing the district goal.
   b. A Lot may follow the standards of a lower Transect Zone, but shall never follow the standards of a higher Transect Zone.
TABLE SU1 - ZERO NET ENERGY BUILDINGS

The Architecture 2030 Challenge, which has been put forward by the non-profit organization Architecture 2030 (www.architecture2030.org) is used in this table as a benchmark goal for building energy use reduction. It proposes that all new buildings produce no greenhouse gas emissions by the year 2030. Buildings are responsible for 48% of all energy consumption in the United States, making them the single largest contributor to greenhouse gas emissions. The baseline to establish reductions should be taken from an established regional average by the applicable building type (e.g., edgeyard house, rearyard building, mixed use building) from a set year, such as the year of the code adoption.

These goals should be applied on the Building Scale per each Transect Zone. However, communities seeking a particular city-wide goal may consider requirements for District Energy Generation.

Methods recommended to achieve the goal are listed as more appropriate or more efficient for some Transect Zones, though many of the methods may be utilized across the Transect. The first step is to reduce the need for the energy through efficient building methods. Secondly, increase efficiencies by generating energy as close to the use as possible, through on-site energy generation or District Energy. Finally, utilize renewable energy sources to reduce, and eventually eliminate, the use of fossil fuels for energy generation. These methods are defined based on the typical central city in the United States and should be calibrated for the specific municipality’s regional climate and character.

Method: Energy Demand Reduction

Building energy use reduction is achieved by combining traditional site specific building practices with current material technology. The passive building methods listed below need to be calibrated with building types to maximize energy savings.

Surface to Volume Ratio

Surface to Volume Ratio is the amount of surface exposed to the outside per volume of building unit. Fewer exterior wall surfaces per unit, or smaller surface-to-volume ratios, minimizes heat gain in the summer and heat loss in the winter. See Annotation for Table SU2.

Building Orientation

Building orientation describes buildings sited for passive energy use. See Table SU2.

Building Envelope Efficiency

A highly efficient building envelope significantly reduces the energy usage of a building. Efficiency is measured by its “R-value,” which refers to the resistance to heat flow of the wall, roof, door, window, floor, or foundation membrane. There are many methods for insulating against heat flow and these vary by region and structure type. Minimum R-Values for the parts of the building envelope should be determined for the location and established as part of the code.

Natural Cooling

Natural Cooling refers to the process of building design to allow cool air to enter the building during warm months and hot air to exhaust without mechanical means, i.e. through a thermal chimney.

Appropriate Glazing

Appropriate glazing refers to a regionally-appropriate amount of glazing per building face for optimum passive solar heating and cooling. Typically, a building with 40-50% of its glazing on the south building facade and less than 20% glazing on all other facades will optimize passive solar. Appropriate glazing can typically reduce energy use by up to 20% and is most applicable where southern light is not obstructed. Communities may consider more explicit glazing requirements according to their location.

Operable Windows

Natural ventilation through operable windows reduces energy use by approximately 15%. Typically, buildings should be required to have a minimum of 50% of the glazing to be operable, distributed to maximize use of prevailing breezes on the site.

Shading of Glazing

Shading of glazing should be utilized for preventing excess heat gain in warmer months. See Table SU3.
**Table SU1: Zero Net Energy Buildings.** This summary table provides goals for achieving Zero Net Energy buildings within each Transect Zone. Projects must achieve an energy savings goal of the percentage of baseline energy used. Additionally, methods are recommended for Transect Zones where they will meet the goals most efficiently, though many of the methods may be utilized in all Transect Zones.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ARCHITECTURE 2030 CHALLENGE: GOAL FOR ZERO NET ENERGY</th>
<th>T2</th>
<th>T3</th>
<th>T4</th>
<th>T5</th>
<th>T6</th>
<th>SD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Projects approved prior to 2010</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Projects approved in or after Year 2010</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Projects approved in or after Year 2015</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Projects approved in or after Year 2020</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Projects approved in or after Year 2025</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Projects approved in or after Year 2030</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**METHOD: ENERGY DEMAND REDUCTION - BUILDING SCALE (ARTICLE 5)**
- Surface to Volume Ratio (see Table SU2)
- Building Orientation (see Table SU2)
- Building Envelope Efficiency
- Natural Cooling
- Appropriate Glazing
- 50% Operable Windows
- Shading of Glazing (see Table SU3)
- Daylighting
- High Albedo Roofs (sloped > 29, flat > 78)
- High Albedo Pavement (>29 SRI)
- Landscape Siting

**METHOD: BUILDING/LOT RENEWABLE ENERGY GENERATION (ARTICLE 5)**
- Wind Energy Generation
- Solar PV
- Solar Thermal
- Groundsource Heat Exchange (Geothermal)
- Biomass

**METHOD: DISTRICT ENERGY GENERATION - COMMUNITY SCALE (ARTICLE 2, ARTICLE 3 & ARTICLE 4) & MULTIPLE BUILDINGS (ARTICLE 5)**
- Non-Renewable Heat and Cool
- Combined Heat and Power
- Groundsource Heat Exchange (Geothermal)
- Biomass
- Other Renewable

**METHOD: LONG TERM CONTRACTING (MINIMUM TWO YEAR CONTRACT)**
- Maximum Amount of Power
- 10% 15% 15% 20% 20% 20%

• Method is appropriate and most efficient toward achieving the goal within this Transect Zone.
Daylighting
Daylighting refers to the use of daylight as a primary source of general illumination in a space, providing opportunities for energy savings. A minimum daylight factor of 2%, per USGBC LEED for New Construction requirements, should be provided in 75% of regularly occupied interior areas as well as a direct line of sight to vision glazing from 90% of all regularly occupied spaces. The result of this practice will typically be narrower buildings. Daylighting techniques should be coordinated with Shading of Glazing techniques in warm climates so they do not conflict.

High Albedo Roofs
High albedo surfaces have both a light color for high solar reflectance and high emittance, an ability to reject heat back into the environment. High albedo roofs prevent heat absorption; this cooling effect can reduce energy use within the building by 13-15%. In most US climates, flatter roofs should have a minimum Solar Reflective Index rating of 78. For sloped roofs, the Solar Reflective Index can be lower, with a minimum of 29.

High Albedo Pavement
Similar to high albedo roofs, high albedo pavement surrounding the building has a cooling affect on the environment, reducing the heat island effect and the energy required to cool buildings in the area. For most US climates, the Solar Reflective Index rating for pavement should be minimum of 29.

Landscape Siting
Landscape design can impact building energy use. Locating or maintaining existing evergreen vegetation on the north side of a building can block winter wind, reducing the need for additional heating. By the same token, deciduous material that shades buildings from the summer sun reduces the need for additional cooling. Energy savings are site-specific and vary according to micro-climate and region.

Building/Lot Energy Generation
On-site energy generation is energy generated for the use of a single building. Excess energy can feed back into the grid, but a connection to the grid is not necessary for individual production. Lower Transect Zones tend to be more conducive to on-site energy systems where their use will not impose on, or be impeded by, neighboring uses and buildings.

Wind Energy Generation
On-site wind energy consists of one large or several smaller turbines, either pole mounted on a lot or mounted on the roof of a building. As a means of achieving reduction of fossil fuel use, on-site energy generation is currently best suited for larger lots with ample wind levels and less demand. In the higher Transect Zones where there is more density, the amount of energy generated from wind is in limited proportion to the energy used by the high number of multiple users in the building. As technology improves, on-site wind energy generation may become a more significant factor in the T-5 and T-6 zones. See the Wind Power sub-module by Jaime Correa and Associates at www.smartcodecentral.org.

Solar Photovoltaic / Solar Thermal
Solar Photovoltaic energy systems require access to solar radiation and the roof area, to install enough panels for the building’s energy demands. This is most often the case in lower Transect Zones up to T-4. Solar Thermal for water heating does not require as many panels per user, and is therefore an option for some buildings with solar access and limited roof area, typically up to T-5.

Groundsource Heat Exchange (Geothermal)
A Groundsource Heat Exchange system or geothermal system uses the consistent temperatures below the earth’s surface to provide heating and cooling services. In winter, pipes buried in the ground near the building bring heat from the relatively warmer ground into the house. In summer, hot air from the house is pulled into the relatively cooler ground and reduces the amount of energy needed to cool the already cooler air. This type of system can be utilized in any Transect Zone.

Biomass
On-site biomass energy is produced by burning organic matter, such as a woodchip burning stove. Biomass production is an alternative for lower T-zones and is most effective by burning waste products. In higher T-zones, on-site biomass energy generation is much less efficient than other forms of energy or district biomass energy generation.

(continued)
District Energy systems produce thermal energy for heating, cooling and hot water at a central plant, for use in the immediately surrounding community. District Energy facilities, both renewable and non-renewable, have less carbon output because there is less energy loss due to shorter conveyance distances. District Energy systems typically consume 40% less fuel and produce 45% less air emissions than conventional energy generation. These systems can serve small developments or larger areas up to several miles; however, the energy demand must support the cost of construction and running the system. It is best utilized in higher T-zones where there are energy loads sufficient to justify the infrastructure installation, as well as both day and evening energy users.

Non-renewable Heat and Cool

Non-renewable fuels, such as natural gas, are the most common and traditional form of District Energy. As discussed above, the use of district generated heating and cooling, even non-renewable, significantly reduces energy consumption.

Combined Heat and Power

District Combined Heat and Power plants, also known as cogeneration plants, recover normally wasted heat from electrical generation processes to heat nearby buildings, doubling the efficiency of the facility. It is well suited to institutional, commercial, industrial, and large residential developments.

District Groundsource Heat Exchange (Geothermal)

A District Groundsource Heat Exchange system is similar to a building geothermal system, but serves more than one building or lot. A centrally located groundsource heat exchange system can serve several users. Other forms of geothermal energy, such as very deep wells tapping the hot rock or water below the earth’s surface, are typically larger in scale, but can be utilized for District Energy generation in some areas of the country.

Biomass

Biomass District Energy, produced from burning organic matter, is best used where a fuel source is readily available. The fuel is typically a waste product such as urban or industrial wood waste and agricultural residues. District biomass plants can provide better filtration of emissions than individual systems. Biogas plants use methane released from decomposing organic garbage or manure.

Other Renewable Sources

New options for renewable District Energy sources are growing, including solar and micro-hydro facilities. Technology improvements in small scale plants make these rapidly developing renewable energy sources accessible to businesses and communities. They should always be considered to achieve the goal of Net Zero Energy development.

Method: Long Term Contracting

Long term contracting is a method for purchasing renewable energy from a large energy provider, where the renewable energy is not for that particular building or development, but is fed into the entire energy grid. At the present time, it can be difficult for buildings, especially in the T-6 zone, to achieve Zero Net Energy through energy use reductions and energy generation. Therefore, long term contracting helps these buildings achieve their goals, while encouraging large energy providers to utilize renewable energy sources. The contract should be long term, ensuring utilization of the renewable energy into the future. Should the contract expire, new methods should be incorporated to make up for the loss of savings. This portion of the table is intended to require that no more than a certain percentage of the annual electricity from renewable sources should be credited by such a contract. Percentages are allocated by Transect Zone.

These annotations are advisory only. The SmartCode itself appears only on the right side of each spread.
TABLE SU2 - SURFACE TO VOLUME RATIO AND BUILDING ORIENTATION

Surface to Volume Ratio and Building Orientation are most applicable at the Building Scale. On the Community Scale, however, lot and even block orientation can result directly in a particular building orientation, particularly in combination with the SmartCode’s requirement for facades to be parallel to the thoroughfare in higher Transect Zones. In addition, lot dimensions combined with allowable numbers of stories and story heights can result in particular surface to volume ratios.

**Surface to Volume Ratio**

Surface to Volume Ratio is the amount of surface exposed to the outside per volume of building unit. Modeling performed by Alan Chalifoux has demonstrated that energy savings can be maximized by reducing the surface to volume ratio as much as possible. Energy use is decreased through each successive decrease in surface to volume ratio. Fewer exterior wall surfaces per unit, or smaller surface to volume ratios, minimizes heat gain in the summer and heat loss in the winter. A unit with two shared walls uses approximately 14-28% less energy (depending on the region) than a detached unit.

Building massing and stacking can reduce the number of exterior walls per unit; therefore, the multi-unit buildings in higher Transect Zones are typically more efficient than single-unit buildings. However, in high-rises the added systems such as elevators and water pumps may increase overall building energy use. This is one reason the model SmartCode caps T-6 at eight stories.

**Building Orientation**

Building orientation describes buildings sited for passive energy use. Typically, orienting the building or unit on an east-west axis provides smaller eastern and western exposures. The longer southern exposure allows passive heating in the winter, and shading the glazing from the higher summer sun reduces cooling needs.

Building orientation can reduce energy use by 15-30%. This method is most applicable in lower T-zones with larger lots and greater solar access, though orientation should be considered in all cases. New Community Plans should take thoroughfare and block orientation into account.
Table SU2: Surface to Volume Ratio and Building Orientation. This table shows the most basic building types and the level of their Surface to Volume Ratio and recommended orientation to achieve lowest energy use. The black lines on the building envelopes indicate shared walls. Each shared wall reduces a unit's surface-to-volume ratio.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building Type</th>
<th>T2</th>
<th>T3</th>
<th>T4</th>
<th>T5</th>
<th>T6</th>
<th>SD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Single-unit one story</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S/V Ratio: High</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orientation: E-W</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side-by-Side Units</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S/V Ratio: Medium</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orientation: N-S</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-unit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S/V Ratio: Low</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orientation: E-W</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-rise</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S/V Ratio: Low</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orientation: E-W</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Typically utilized in these Transect Zones.

Chart information for the single unit and townhouse building adapted from energy modeling performed by Alan Chalifoux.
TABLE SU3 - SHADING OF GLAZING

The table illustrates multiple methods for shading glazing. Shading should be utilized to prevent excess heat gain in summer months. Southern facing windows should be shaded during summer months. However, shading should not interfere with walkability in mixed use areas by blocking views into shopfronts nor should they compromise safety by removing “eyes on the street.” Shading techniques should be coordinated with Daylighting techniques so they do not conflict.

Trees
Mature deciduous trees, grown in favorable conditions, can shade glazing, especially for one to three story buildings that would occur in the lower Transect Zones. While trees can provide shading of lower stories of buildings in higher Transect Zones, their impact on reducing energy consumption in these taller buildings is minimal. In the higher zones, species should be selected with high canopies that do not block visual access to shopfronts nor interfere with “eyes on the street.” In the base SmartCode, very narrow urban thoroughfares in T-5 and T-6 are exempted from tree requirements, so conflicts should be avoided in calibration of the code with this Module. See Section 3.7.3 and Section 5.11 of the base code for Public Frontages and Landscape Standards.

Awnings
Awnings provide levels of shading similar to trees, in that they have more impact on energy use of shorter buildings. Awnings are particularly helpful for shopfronts, reducing reflections in the windows and providing shelter for window-shoppers. Some types of awnings can be retracted in winter months to provide daylighting. See Section 5.7 of the model SmartCode for awning standards.

Porch
Porches, galleries, and arcades provide significant shading of windows on the ground floor. Balconies and double galleries can provide shading for upper story glazing. See Table 7 Private Frontages in the model SmartCode for Gallery and Arcade frontages.

Roof Overhang
Providing an appropriate roof overhang is a common method for providing shading of glazing. In most climates, the overhang should be designed to shade the angle of the sun during summer months, while allowing the sun to penetrate the glass during the winter months.

Exterior Shade
Exterior shades can be utilized in extreme circumstances on the upper floors of the building. Use of exterior shades on lower floors can result in a hostile pedestrian environment. See options above for more appropriate lower floor shading devices. Louvered exterior shades can also be used to provide a friendlier facade.

Light Shelf
Interior and exterior light shelves can be utilized to divert the rays of the sun from penetrating the glazing directly, while providing indirect daylighting.

Deep Windows
Setting windows in deep frames is a traditional method for providing shading of glazing. The depth of the window can reduce the amount light penetrating the window in summer months, while permitting lower sun angles to light and warm the interior during colder months. Deep windows may also add to visual interest and three-dimensionality on a facade.

Double Skin
Double-skinned buildings are used more widely in Europe; however, use of a double skin can provide unique passive heating and cooling opportunities. The cavity between the two building skins allows for trapped, solar heated air to be circulated into the interior space during winter months. During summer months, the cavity provides protection from solar heat gain on the interior to reduce cooling needs. Additionally, windows on the interior can be open without exposure concerns, such as wind and rain, and for safe nighttime cooling. Use of responsive controls also can optimize the thermal performance of this system.
### TABLE SU3: Shading of Glazing

This table illustrates methods to achieve high levels of shading glazing within each Transect Zone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>T2</th>
<th>T3</th>
<th>T4</th>
<th>T5</th>
<th>T6</th>
<th>SD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tree</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Awning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof Overhang</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior Shade</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light Shelf</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deep Windows</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double Skin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PUBLIC DARKNESS

The Public Darkness table defines standards to maintain desired general ambient light levels across the Transect. Lighting standards protect against glare, preserve the night sky, and reduce unnecessary energy use from overlighting. Rural zones tend to be darker, while higher levels of outdoor lighting may be more suitable in mixed use urban zones. See Table 5 of the base SmartCode and the Lighting and Lighting Design Modules at www.transect.org.

Lighting is regulated by the type of lamp and the effective brightness, or lumens. A “full cutoff” luminaire does not allow light above a horizontal plane and directs light downward without allowing light to escape upwards where it is no longer useful. Dimmers and other similar methods of managing light output assist in reducing energy usage and lowering the impacts on the dark night sky.

“Initial lamp lumens” is a measure of how much light the lamp is emitting near the beginning of its life, as most high-efficiency light sources decline in light output over time. Shielded luminaires limit light trespass beyond the property line and prevent the lamp from being directly visible. A lighting curfew promotes a dark night sky by restricting commercial lighting during late-night non-business hours. This may occur after the official close of business to allow employees to leave the building safely.
TABLE SU4: Public Darkness. This table outlines standards for preserving public darkness. They apply to the Public Frontage and the Private Frontage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ambient Light Levels</th>
<th>T1</th>
<th>T2</th>
<th>T3</th>
<th>T4</th>
<th>T5</th>
<th>T6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>none</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>very low</td>
<td>very low</td>
<td>low</td>
<td>medium</td>
<td>high</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**STANDARDS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maximum Lighting Standards</th>
<th>Minimal electric lighting; should be turned off most of the time</th>
<th>Minimal lighting, all Full Cutoff, controlled with motion sensors</th>
<th>Minimal lighting, all Full Cutoff, controlled with motion sensors</th>
<th>Full Cutoff lighting, controlled with dimmers, time switch or motion sensors</th>
<th>Full Cutoff lighting, some low wattage, non-Full Cutoff lighting; controlled with dimmers, time switch or motion sensors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Allowed Initial Lamp Lumens/sf</td>
<td>1.25-1.6 lu/sf</td>
<td>2.5-3.2 lu/sf</td>
<td>2.5-3.2 lu/sf</td>
<td>3.3-4.2 lu/sf</td>
<td>7.6-9.7 lu/sf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Lamp Allowance (Lumens)</td>
<td>6500 lu</td>
<td>17,000 lu</td>
<td>17,000 lu</td>
<td>24,000 lu</td>
<td>44,000 lu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required Shielding</td>
<td>Fully shielded Luminaire with no uplight or better</td>
<td>Fully shielded Luminaire with no uplight or better</td>
<td>Fully shielded Luminaire with no uplight or better</td>
<td>Shielded Luminaire or better</td>
<td>Partially shielded Luminaire or better</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lighting Curfew for Non-Residential</td>
<td>8 pm or close of business, whichever is later</td>
<td>10 pm or close of business, whichever is later</td>
<td>10 pm or close of business, whichever is later</td>
<td>10 pm or close of business, whichever is later</td>
<td>12 am or close of business, whichever is later</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chart information compiled from: Model Lighting Ordinance (draft), Nancy Clanton, Clanton & Associates
TABLE SU5 - VEHICLE MILES TRAVELED
The 2030 Community Campaign provides a benchmark for reduction in Vehicle Miles Traveled (VMT). This table adapts that benchmark to each Transect Zone.

The 2030 Community Campaign is based on sustaining us as “a nation of neighborhoods.” The Intent section of the SmartCode spells this out. The average American family is dependent on cars to meet its daily needs, driving on average 21,500 miles a year. Vehicle miles traveled by Americans is expected to grow 2.5% per year, increasing energy consumption and carbon omissions contributing to climate change. Additionally, obesity and other side effects of inactive lifestyles are predicted to shorten life span as much as five years per American.

Base VMT to establish the percentage decrease should be calculated from local or regional community data from 2005. (National baseline from 2005 per the American Planning Association, the Environmental and Energy Study Institute, and the 2030 Community Campaign, is 8,000 VMT per person).

Methods recommended to achieve the goal are listed as more appropriate or more efficient for some Transect Zones, though many of the methods may be utilized across the Transect. Development patterns contribute to reducing VMT as do policies and strategies for Transportation Demand Management (TDM).

Methods: Built measures - Community Scale
(Article 2, Article 3, and Article 4)

Increase Transit and Provide Transit-Supportive Densities
Part of increasing mobility options is providing access to efficient public transportation. Each transit type requires some level of residential density to support an efficient, useful system. Appropriate “origin” Transect Zones are provided based on typical situations and industry studies, though their associated densities should be calibrated to the municipality. Local studies may take into account drivership or bus lines feeding to a rail station, but access from the pedestrian shed should be prioritized. A range of values is inclusive of varying levels of transit service. Though the table may designate a type of transit appropriate for the Transect Zone, in many cases other destination zones are required. For example, commuter rail is suitable at T-3 densities, but likely requires numerous stops and a T-6 destination. An origin station may also be a destination station if it is mixed use, thus changing the recommended densities. Commuter rail is even more difficult to prescribe by the Transect, as one rail line may stop in the T-5 zones of several towns and neighborhoods to collect riders for the ultimate destination. See the Transit Oriented Development (TOD) SmartCode Module at www.transect.org for more precise tools.

Create Walkable Neighborhoods
Small block sizes and high street connectivity, as defined by number of intersections in a square mile, are the basis for a walkable community. The number of intersections required per square mile should be calibrated by region and should be applied per quarter-section (160 acres) to correspond to SmartCode Community Unit sizes. Maximum block sizes are essential, because the Transect Zones are fine-grained and an average interpolated from a square mile may permit some overlong blocks. See Table 14c for model SmartCode maximums, to be locally calibrated if necessary, and see the Place Types in Comprehensive/General Lands Module for other baseline performance measures.

See Article 3 of the SmartCode and Appendix XI of the SmartCode v9 and Manual for additional information on block configuration.

A mix of daily uses for complete neighborhoods, such as corner stores and child care, supports a pedestrian lifestyle by reducing the need for trips outside the neighborhood. Commercial nodes should be provided every quarter mile to serve each pedestrian shed or quarter-section. Pedestrian oriented streetscape improvements increase the safety of pedestrians, contribute to a more pleasant walking environment, and encourage longer and more frequent trips on foot. The appropriate private frontages can provide transitional spaces between the public sidewalk and the private interior of the building. Buildings oriented to the pedestrian provide interest, accessibility, and “eyes on the street” for safety. See Table 7 Private Frontages, Section 5.6 Building Disposition, and Section 5.7 Building Configuration in the base code.

Transit-Oriented Development (TOD) is development located within a half mile of a rail or Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) station, typically with higher densities to support increased amounts of retail and services as well as ridership. Additionally, automobile parking should be significantly reduced, if not eliminated, in TODs. See Section 3.2 and Section 3.3.4 of the model SmartCode.
Table S5: Vehicle Miles Traveled. This table establishes goals for reducing vehicle miles traveled (VMT) as a percentage of current average VMT for the region. Additionally, the table provides methods to reduce trips per Transect Zone.

### 2030 COMMUNITY CAMPAIGN: VEHICLE MILES TRAVELED (VMT) REDUCTION GOALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>T2</th>
<th>T3</th>
<th>T4</th>
<th>T5</th>
<th>T6</th>
<th>SD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prior to 2010</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 2010</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 2015</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 2020</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 2025</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 2030</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**METHODS: BUILT MEASURES - REGIONAL SCALE (ARTICLE 2), COMMUNITY SCALE (ARTICLE 3 & ARTICLE 4)**

- Increase Transit & Provide Transit-Supportive Densities (origin stations shown)
  - Bus
  - Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) or Light Rail
  - Rapid Rail
  - Commuter Rail
- Create Walkable Neighborhoods
  - Block Perimeter (See Table 14)
  - Daily Uses within 1/4 Mile
  - Public Frontage (Streetscape) Improvements
  - Buildings Oriented to the Pedestrian
  - Transit Oriented Development
- Create Bikeable Neighborhoods
  - Bicycle System
  - Bicycle Amenities (locker, shower etc.)
  - Bicycle Parking
  - Bicycle Rental/Bicycle Share Program

**METHODS: TRANSPORTATION DEMAND MANAGEMENT POLICY - REGIONAL SCALE (ARTICLE 2), COMMUNITY SCALE (ARTICLE 3 & ARTICLE 4)**

- Transit Passes
- Carshare (per hour car rental)
- Taxi Service
- Permit Home Occupation Uses
- Shopping Parking Charges

**METHODS: TRANSPORTATION DEMAND MANAGEMENT POLICY - BUILDING SCALE (ARTICLE 5)**

- Provide Incentives for transit use
- Guaranteed Ride Home
- Convenient Park & Ride
- Support Ridesharing/Carpooling
  - Rideshare/Carpool Parking
  - Rideshare/Carpool Programs
- Reduce Trips
  - Compressed Work Week
  - Telework/Telelearning
- Manage & Reduce Parking
  - Car Free Housing
  - Inclusion of Street Parking Counts in Parking Minimum Requirements
  - Off Street Maximum Parking Requirements
  - Shared Parking Among Users (see Table 12)
  - Unbundle Parking from Rent
  - Workplace Parking Charges
Create Bikable Neighborhoods

Neighborhoods, especially in the higher Transect Zones, should incorporate a system of bicycle lanes, trails, or routes into the larger regional system. Standards for bicycle parking along with bicycle amenities create bicycle friendly environments. See the Cycling for Complete Streets Module for bicycle parking standards, based on dwelling units or number of employees, and the Complete Streets Module for thoroughfare types and lane widths appropriate for each Transect Zone.

Methods: TDM Policy - Community Scale

Transit passes can be issued by a company or agency to cover transit costs at a discounted rate and to make using multiple modes more convenient.

Carshare rental programs are similar to a standard car rental except that use is scheduled by hour and not by day, allowing rental on a per trip basis. Many successful carshare programs have been implemented in major cities, becoming very popular in the higher Transect Zones.

Improvements in taxi service availability and reliability support transit options. They can be used for Guaranteed Ride Home programs or in case of emergencies.

Home occupations reduce vehicular trips substantially by eliminating the commute to the office. The SmartCode permits a variety of home occupations even in the more residential zones. See Table 10 and Table 12 in the base code.

Pricing parking on its availability has been shown to reduce the need for construction of additional parking spaces, especially in shopping areas.

TDM Policy - Building Scale

Provide Incentives for Transit Use

Transit passes can be issued by a company or agency to cover transit costs at a discounted rate and to make using multiple modes more convenient.

Guaranteed ride home programs support alternative transit by providing an occasional subsidized ride in the case of an emergency or when normal transit options are unavailable. This provides peace of mind to employees who might otherwise not want to sacrifice the flexibility of an individual car.

Convenient Park and Ride locations are part of a commuter rail system. These facilities should be accessible for drivers, cyclists, and pedestrians.

Support Ridesharing/Carpooling

Several people going to the same location, or nearby, can ride together in one car. Buildings or companies can encourage this with preferred parking spaces or parking fee discounts to rideshare/carpool vehicles. A system for ridesharing can be set up at the destination, to help riders connect with drivers.

Reduce Trips

Several methods have been shown to reduce overall trips in a community and can work across the Transect. Many of these methods would be tied to the user of a development. A compressed work week means that employees work fewer but longer days to make up the 40 hour work week, reducing the number of days of commuting.

Telework/Telelearning uses phone, internet, and fax connections to substitute for face-to-face interaction. Jobs that are information-based are ideal for telework options. In a five-day work week, two days of telework reduces commuting trips by 40 percent.

Manage & Reduce Parking

Efficient use of parking reduces driving and helps to maintain and incentivize compact building patterns. Where other types of transportation are available, car-free housing that does not require parking should be permitted and encouraged, and provided in conjunction with other TDM practices, such as a carshare program.

On-street parking should be counted towards minimum parking requirements to reduce the need for off-street parking and to cut down on unnecessary impervious surface and lighting. Parking maximums are recommended to prevent excess parking in higher Transect Zones where transit is an option. Allowing shared parking reduces redundant parking spaces for users who park at different times. These strategies have financial benefits to property owners and improve walkability by reducing curb cuts and the degradation of urban spatial definition from surface lots. See Table 11 in the base code for the Shared Parking Matrix.

Pricing parking on its availability reduces the need for additional parking spaces. Unbundling parking fees from rental payments, especially in higher Transect Zones, exposes the real cost of the parking and allows the user to opt for no parking, possibly living car-free. Workplace and shopping parking charges are similar, in that they shift the cost of parking to the driver and relieve or reimburse non-drivers. Parking cash-out programs are one form of this strategy, in which employers reimburse employees who choose not to use employer subsidized parking.
TREES CANOPY COVER

This table provides a goal for minimum tree canopy cover by Transect Zone as well as methods to achieve these goals. Tree canopy cover cools the urban environment, traps air pollutants, absorbs carbon dioxide, and intercepts rainwater to reduce stormwater runoff. The minimum tree canopy coverage goals for each zone in this table have been developed as a benchmark for the local community. The amounts should be calibrated to the community, based on the climate. The methods are standards to achieve these goals and promote tree health and survival.

Methods:
Canopy cover is a measurement of total mature tree canopy within a Transect Zone from trees located on all private lots, parking lots, open space, and street rights-of-way. Existing trees may be utilized to meet the canopy requirements, and when existing trees do not fulfill the requirements, new trees should be planted. Tree canopy is measured at mature size, established by regional growth patterns. See Public Canopy Cover Standards - Community Scale (Article 2, Article 3 & Article 4).

Civic Space Minimum Canopy Cover
Public canopy requirements apply to civic open spaces and thoroughfares. Civic space often provides a large amount of tree canopy towards meeting the goal. The standards for these spaces are balanced to allow for sunny areas as well. See Table 13 of the model SmartCode for types of Civic Spaces.

Street Tree Requirements
Continuous street trees are an important component of the urban canopy. However, in the base SmartCode, very narrow urban thoroughfares in T-5 and T-6 are exempted from tree requirements, so conflicts should be avoided in calibration of the code with this Module. Visibility into shopfronts and “eyes on the street” should be considered when selecting tree species. See Section 3.7.3 and Section 5.11 of the base code for Public Frontages and Landscape Standards, and Table 5 Public Planting.

Private Canopy Cover Standards - Building Scale (Article 5)
Private Lot Minimum Canopy Cover
Each private lot shall also meet a minimum canopy cover requirement towards achieving the overall goal. The requirements are set to allow a balance between sun and shade on each parcel. The canopy requirements are for the lot as a whole and should be calibrated for each municipality. Tree canopy cover on green roofs may be utilized to meet this requirement, if mature canopy can be achieved by the planting method.

Street Tree Requirement
Parking lot canopy requirements are set to minimize the heat island effect of parking lots and shade a large portion of the paved area. On lots with buildings, yards, and parking lots, the parking lot should be calculated separately, per this section of the table.

Healthy Trees Standards
Canopy cover requirements are measured at mature growth, relying on a healthy planting method to achieve that maximum canopy size. While planting mix and pit size should be established based on local methods, two planting requirements are typically underutilized, especially in urban locations: permeable surface requirements and use of structural soil. See the Natural Drainage and Light Imprint Modules at www.smartcodecentral.org.

Minimum Permeable Surface per Tree
Permeable surfaces allow air and rainwater to permeate soils within the root zone of the tree. Permeable surface requirements have been set in the higher Transect Zones to accommodate trees in treewells with or without tree grates, though these levels are below the minimums to foster healthy urban tree growth. In T-4, the minimum of 270 square feet is the equivalent of a 9’ wide planting strip with medium or large trees planted 30’ on center. Highly permeable pavement adjacent to the tree well in walkways or on-street parking areas should be utilized in addition to both these areas, though not required in the table. In lower Transect Zones, where more space is available, the permeable surface required is equivalent to approximately 50% of the canopy area, or “drip zone,” the minimum for healthy large tree growth.

Structural Soil Requirement per Tree
With reduced permeable surfaces, structural soil adjacent to the tree well can improve the health of the tree by providing areas for tree roots to penetrate, especially below pavement. Recommended surface areas for structural soils are minimal and should be calibrated to the community. These amounts are in addition to the permeable surface area required. At a minimum, structural soil should be provided adjacent to trees in tree wells in T-5 and T-6, though the municipality may elect to increase the structural soil area to a percentage of the mature canopy area, between 50% and 100%. Structural soil can be utilized below any pavement surface.
Table SU6: Tree Canopy Cover. This table establishes a goal for minimum tree canopy cover per Transect Zone and established methods for providing adequate coverage, via minimum canopy requirements and healthy tree requirements.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GOAL</th>
<th>T1</th>
<th>T2</th>
<th>T3</th>
<th>T4</th>
<th>T5</th>
<th>T6</th>
<th>SD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tree Canopy Cover Goal by Zone</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>45%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>25%</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>40%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PUBLIC CANOPY COVER STANDARDS - COMMUNITY SCALE (ARTICLE 2, ARTICLE 3 &amp; ARTICLE 4)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civic Space Minimum Canopy Cover</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Street Tree Requirements</td>
<td>naturalistic</td>
<td>naturalistic</td>
<td>clustered</td>
<td>30’ o.c.</td>
<td>30’ o.c.</td>
<td>30’ o.c.</td>
<td>30’ o.c.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRIVATE CANOPY COVER STANDARDS - BUILDING SCALE (ARTICLE 5)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Private Lot Minimum Canopy Cover</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>1 per15,000 sf of Lot or 6%</td>
<td>1 per 10,000 sf of Lot or 10%</td>
<td>1 per 7500 sf of Lot or 12%</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>by Warrant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking Lot Minimum Canopy Cover</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>30%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEALTHY TREES STANDARDS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Permeable Surface per Tree</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>450 sf</td>
<td>450 sf</td>
<td>450 sf</td>
<td>270 sf</td>
<td>25 sf</td>
<td>25 sf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structural Soil Requirement per Tree</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>180 sf</td>
<td>250 sf</td>
<td>250 sf</td>
<td>by Warrant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For Healthy Urban Trees, refer to the Urban Horticulture Institute, Cornell University.
STORMWATER MANAGEMENT

This table establishes standards for managing rainwater as close to where it falls as is reasonable. Limiting the change in stormwater runoff volume, in addition to runoff release rates, is a fundamental practice to avoid overtaxing community and regional stormwater infrastructure and to preserve the health of waterways. Incorporating stormwater management features into the design of the city and its open spaces maximizes land use without the need for retention basins that are only utilized for holding water during a storm event.

Standards

The term “retain” refers to the permanent retention of water onsite, through reuse or infiltration. A certain amount of retention is necessary to avoid overtaxing both the municipal system and the watershed. The requirements are more lenient for the higher T-zones, with the understanding that these areas tend to have higher levels of imperviousness and less space for handling stormwater. This is compensated for in the stricter requirements for the lower T-zones. A development can always follow the standards of a lower Transect Zone, but can never follow the standards of a higher Transect Zone. For example, a T-6 zone may meet the standards of a T-4 zone, but not vice-versa.

Using “percentage of the change” as a standard takes into account the soil quality in any given locale. If the development occurred on soils with poor infiltration to begin with, the development would not be penalized for that. For example, if runoff volume measures 100 units before development and 120 units after, the percentage is taken from the 20-unit change.

For this submodule, the term “district” refers to the area served by the District Stormwater System. This district could be a series of lots and buildings in just one Transect Zone, or a Community Plan area or SmartCode District development containing two or more Transect Zones. If the District Stormwater System serves more than one Transect Zone, the standards for the Transect Zone that contains the most area shall be utilized.

District Stormwater System

When an entire district or neighborhood is planned at once, one stormwater management system may be developed to manage the whole development. Increased runoff in one area can be balanced by greater infiltration in another, through incorporation into a collective District Stormwater System. The standard on this portion of the table assumes that both the Lot Level standards and the District Stormwater System are being implemented. Release rates and runoff volumes apply to the entire district.

Lot Level with District Stormwater System

A lot development within an existing or simultaneously developed district development has standards for the lot that will assist in meeting the standards of the district as a whole. However, the Lot Level controls may be waived so that it is not necessary to measure release rates from the lots, as long as it is demonstrated that the District Development standard will be met without them.

Lot Level without District Stormwater System

When no District Stormwater System is present, each lot development is responsible for its own stormwater runoff volume and release rate. Standards for the Transect Zone apply to each lot separately. This is not the ideal scenario, especially for the release rates, but it accommodates the reality of existing urbanism where lots in the higher Transect Zones often don’t have room for retention or detention. Nor does the existing older hardscape on such lots have the ability to allow infiltration.

General Infiltration Methods

The methods included in this table are more generalized than the Light Imprint methods, intending only to introduce the types of methods that will be necessary to meet the standards. Light Imprint infiltration methods may be substituted for this list; however, Light Imprint conveyance methods should be utilized only for the Lot Level, with a District Stormwater System to convey the water to the district system management feature, such as a community-wide bioretention area.

Hard Surface Treatments

While applicable everywhere, hard surface treatments are very effective in higher T-zones where open space is limited. Permeable paving allows water to infiltrate even in frequently trafficked areas. Green roofs can reduce runoff by 20-90% depending on construction and season, while slowing peak discharge in storm events. Green roofs are especially relevant in higher T-zones and Special Districts (SD) where large flat roofs comprise a high percentage of the impervious surface area. See www.greenroofs.org.

Reuse of Rainwater

Rainwater for irrigation and use within a building is another management technique that is applicable even in higher Transect Zones, though currently it is most effective in the lower T-zones. Irrigation is a simple way to redirect collected rainwater to vegetated areas, eliminating the use of drinking water for irrigation. Methods can be as simple (continued)
Table SU7: Stormwater Management. This table provides methods for on-site stormwater management to minimize post-development increases in stormwater runoff.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>District Stormwater System</th>
<th>STANDARDS - REGIONAL SCALE (ARTICLE 2), COMMUNITY SCALE (ARTICLE 3 , ARTICLE 4) OR MULTIPLE BUILDINGS (ARTICLE 5)</th>
<th>T1</th>
<th>T2</th>
<th>T3</th>
<th>T4</th>
<th>T5</th>
<th>T6</th>
<th>SD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Development of a community or portion of a community with a centralized system.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Runoff Volume: retain this percentage of the change in runoff volume between post-development impervious surface and pre-development land surface for the 2 year event</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>by Warrant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Year Allowable Runoff Release Rate: as a percentage of the pre-development 2 year discharge rate</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>by Warrant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 Year Allowable Runoff Release Rate: as a percentage of the pre-development 100 year discharge rate</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>by Warrant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STANDARDS - BUILDING SCALE (ARTICLE 5)</th>
<th>Lot Level with District Stormwater System</th>
<th>Lot Level without District Stormwater System</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Runoff Volume: retain this percentage of the change in runoff volume between post-development impervious surface and pre-development land surface for the 2 year event</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Year Allowable Runoff Release Rate: as a percentage of the pre-development 2 year discharge rate</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 Year Allowable Runoff Release Rate: as a percentage of the pre-development 2 year discharge rate</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GENERAL INFILTRATION METHODS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hard Surface Treatment</th>
<th>Permeable Pavement</th>
<th>Green Roof</th>
<th>Reuse of Rainwater</th>
<th>Reuse, Irrigation</th>
<th>Reuse, Greywater</th>
<th>Linear Infiltration</th>
<th>Vegetated Swale (Bioswale)</th>
<th>Vegetated Stormwater Planters</th>
<th>Area Infiltration</th>
<th>Rain Garden</th>
<th>Retention Basin</th>
<th>District Methods</th>
<th>Retention Areas</th>
<th>Underground Gravel Storage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Chart information from Tom Price, Conservation Design Forum
as a rain barrel, or as complicated as an entire irrigation system. A Greywater system uses collected water for non-potable uses, such as flushing toilets. Some level of purification may be required by local building codes.

**Linear Infiltration**

These strategies allow water to infiltrate into the ground while moving overflow water to a final destination, which may be an infiltration area as part of a larger management plan or the municipal storm drain. These are most applicable along roads, lot lines, and in parking lot islands, to absorb runoff from the pavement and filter out pollutants. An open, vegetated swale (bioswale) is most appropriate in lower T-1 to T-4 zones. Hard-edged, vegetated planters are appropriate in the T-4 to T-6 zones. See also the basic Natural Drainage Module by PlanGreen, available in text form at www.smartcodecentral.org.

**Area Infiltration**

A rain garden is a small scale feature that collects and infiltrates rainwater on a lot by lot basis or as a culmination of a linear infiltration system. It may be an open, sloped area or a hard-edged planter. Rain gardens are extremely effective and easy to install in T-2 to T-4 zones and are also useful in parking lots in T-5. Retention basins are larger scale rain gardens that are typically large open grass areas, but may be planted similarly to a rain garden. For a Lot Level system, these are most appropriate in the lower Transect Zones because of the large land area required.

**District Stormwater System Methods**

Retention areas that are designed as part of a larger stormwater management plan are appropriate in lower T-zones (T-1 to T-4) when they are incorporated into public spaces and parks. Retention areas should always be functional as a recreational or environmental area, along with their stormwater management role. Retention areas should be shallow with shallow side slopes, covering a large area that may fill with water during a storm event. As the water infiltrates, the area becomes dry and is utilized as any other large landscape area.

Underground gravel storage areas can be utilized in all Transect Zones. In lower T-zones, they can be used under large pavement, such as a parking lot, or lawn areas in civic spaces for storage and infiltration of rainwater. In higher T-zones, underground gravel storage areas can be utilized under plazas or streets to store stormwater until it infiltrates or is reused.
These annotations are advisory only. The SmartCode itself appears only on the right side of each spread.
ARTICLE 7. DEFINITIONS OF TERMS - SUSTAINABLE URBANISM

Albedo: the amount of solar radiation reflected by a surface.
Biomass: fuel derived from living or recently dead organic material.
Building Envelope: collectively, all components of a building that enclose conditioned or unconditioned above-ground space, including foundation, roof, walls, doors and windows.
Carshare: a type of short term vehicle rental which can substitute for car ownership by providing cars parked within neighborhoods.
Combined Heat and Power: characterizing a District Energy plant that manages on-site energy generation to recover heat from electrical generation for use in industrial processes, or in heating and cooling systems.
Daylight Factor: a measurement for daylight in a building, calculated as a ratio of the unshaded exterior illuminance on a horizontal plane, under a fully overcast sky, over interior illuminance on a horizontal plane. The higher the daylight factor, the more natural light is available in the room.
District Energy: technology for energy production and distribution in which a central plant provides energy for multiple users.
District Stormwater System: a stormwater system that manages runoff from multiple Lots.
Double Skin: an additional external building Facade that allows air to circulate in the space between the two Facades, providing an extra layer of insulation and air flow.
Full Cutoff: a Luminaire type that does not allow any light to be emitted or reflected above a horizontal plane.
Green Roof: a building roof partially or completely covered with vegetation and soil, or a growing medium, over a waterproofing membrane. Green roofs may be categorized as Extensive, Semi-Intensive, or Intensive, depending on the depth of the planting medium and the amount of maintenance required. See Natural Drainage Standards Module. (Syn: eco-roof, living roof, greenroof)
Ground Source Heat Exchange: a process by which the relatively constant temperature below ground is used in building climate control systems as a heat source for heating, or a heat sink for cooling.
Initial Lumens: a measure of how much light a lamp is emitting near the beginning of its life.
Lamp: The source of illumination in a lighting fixture.
Light Shelf: a horizontal overhang placed in a window above eye level, which reflects daylight onto the ceiling and deeper into a room. The overhang of the shelf also provides shade near the window to reduce window glare.
Linear Infiltration: a method to allow water to infiltrate into the ground while moving overflow to a final destination.
Lumen: a measure of brightness.
Luminaire: a light unit or fixture including any bulb(s), tube(s), housing, reflective shield, lens and/or ballast.
These annotations are advisory only. The SmartCode itself appears only on the right side of each spread.
**One-hundred Year Storm Event**: a 24-hour rainstorm having a one percent chance of occurrence in any given year.

**Photovoltaic (PV)**: capable of producing voltage when exposed to radiant energy, especially light.

**Rideshare**: a transportation mode in which vehicles carry additional passengers. (Syn: carpooling.)

**Runoff Release Rate**: the quantity per unit of time at which stormwater runoff is released from upstream to downstream land.

**Solar Reflective Index (SRI)**: a measure of the constructed surface’s ability to reflect solar heat, as shown by a small temperature rise. Numerically, standard black is 0 and a standard white is 100.

**Stormwater Runoff Volume**: the volume of water that results from precipitation that is not absorbed by the soil, evaporated into the atmosphere, or entrapped by ground surface depressions and vegetation, and that flows over the ground surface.

**Structural Soil**: a load-bearing soil that resists compaction to allow for healthier tree root growth. Angular gravel within the soil mix allows air and water to permeate while supporting pavement loads.

**Surface to Volume Ratio (S/V Ratio)**: the amount of surface exposed to the outside per volume of building unit.

**Transportation Demand Management (TDM)**: policies and strategies that are the basis for decisions made related to transportation demand and choice of mode.

**Two Year Storm Event**: a 24-hour rainstorm having a fifty percent chance of occurrence in any given year.

**Zero Net Energy**: energy production of a building that is equal to or greater than what the building consumes.
TOOL FOR GENERATIVE HAMLET GROWTH

This tool grew out of the Salon des Refuses project. The tool has a table appended to coordinate T-zones and types of infrastructure. (Courtesy Paul Crabtree.)
TOWNSITE TOOL FOR
GENERATIVE HAMLET
GROWTH

Prepared By:
Paul Crabtree, P.E.
The Challenges.

1. Legacy ranchlands are being lost to piecemeal sprawl due to economic hardships (particularly estate taxes).

2. Vast areas of rural America are currently zoned for 2 to 5 acre development.

3. Ranchers strongly resist efforts by regional planners to eliminate or curtail existing vested development rights, and often mistrust the complexities of TDRs and PDRs.

4. Reducing the vested rights through rezoning can inhibit the use of conservation easements because the tax benefits of the conservation easement are reduced or eliminated.

5. Ranchers, when strapped, visit the local surveyor, carve out a few parcels, and sell them.
6. Efforts to reduce this sprawl, such as clustering and conservation land developments are improvements (triage, really); but still usually result in cocooned, auto-dependent, exclusive, monocultures lacking in community, connectivity, and sustainability. They usually do not create synergy with the local agriculture, but actually create conflicts with it.

7. Even a SmartCode-compliant Hamlet, when restricted to 30 to 80 acres will comprise only portions of a complete neighborhood.

The pattern of this form of rural sprawl is illustrated in a Google Earth image of the San Luis Valley in southern Colorado. The irrigation pivots have a radius of ¼ mile, or ½ mile diameter. The white line at the bottom of the image indicates a one mile long section line. Variants of residential subdivision lots are apparent including large lots located along quarter-section lines, and large lots on a cul-de-sac road.

**History and Background.** Many great traditional villages, towns and cities in America began as hamlets that were originally platted as complete townsites – many around a new railroad depot. See image below, from Reps’ *The Making of Urban America*. Buyers or builders would purchase lots and build structures and infrastructure as it became feasible to do so. The platted townsite provided the framework for generative growth, infill, infrastructure, and civic spaces. The first settlers could develop a home/business with a large garden or small farm located on several lots that could eventually be infilled with homes and/or businesses on each lot. “First and Main” was established at a central crossroads a block or two from the depot.

*Figure 233. The Illinois Central Associates Standard Town Plat*
Goals. A simple, generative antidote to the sprawl-inducing equity problem of the rancher in the form of hamlets that are not static, uncentered, exclusive, isolated, and/or vehicle-centric; but have good locations, modest beginnings, relevance to agriculture, and a long-term blueprint for eventual growth into complete neighborhoods.

“Ranch Hamlet” Idealized Example. A ranch family owns 640 acres (a 1 mile by 1 mile Jeffersonian section), and wants to keep ranching, but land equity is needed to pay a 25%-50% estate tax at each generation. The property has existing county roads at the perimeter, and has a 2 acre/unit vested right due to prior/existing conventional zoning. The conventional path for the rancher in financial straits is to visit the local surveyor, have him carve out a lot or two, and sell them to pay the bills. Then repeat as necessary.

See Appendix A for illustrations of a more sustainable process, which would consist of a long-range plan that would begin modestly but create a framework for generative growth into a complete neighborhood:

1. Establish the vested conventional zoning right for this particular property by netting out undevelopable lands, and laying out a development scenario for the property with 2 acre lots under the old/existing conventional zoning.
2. Catalogue and map the land that is not suitable for development or ranching, such as wetlands, steep slopes, forests, streams, lakes, etc. In this example, this consists of 7 quarter sections (280 acres).
3. Designate 40 acres (1320’ x 1320’) at one quadrant of an existing road junction for townsite platting. Ideally this location would eventually serve as one quadrant of a complete ped shed, would have 3 other ownerships at the intersection, has public transit, and could be considered a growth node for the region. The other three quadrants of the intersection would be suitable to develop and add to the TND in the future in similar fashions.
4. Design a long-range plan and plat for the townsite core, and immediate perimeter. Include the blocks, lots, thoroughfares, alleys, civic space and T-Zones on a “20-Year Regulating Plan” – that is, a long range plan for what the Hamlet will be expected to become in 20 years or so. In this example the Hamlet plan (including rural perimeter lots) yields nearly 245 lots. Using an idealized Aliquot parts platting procedure each block in the Hamlet core is 270’ x 270’ and the typical lot size is 30’ x 125’.
5. Plan progressively larger layers of T2 parcels around the Hamlet core. In this example there are T2 Villa (1/2 acre), T2 Garden (2.5 acre), T2 Orchard (5 acre), and T2 Ranch (40 acre) parcels.
6. File a Plat of the lots, blocks, parcels and thoroughfares of the “20-Year Regulating Plan”. (Review the local property tax implications to ensure that the property is taxed on actual use, not on the basis of platted lots.)
7. Establish a generative process of phasing from a very modest beginning, to a final succession to the 20-Year Regulating Plan, as follows:
   a. Generation One: The 280 acres of Open Space are zoned T1 and the rest is zoned T2. No new roads are built. Each new building site must front an existing road and consist of enough platted lots to accommodate onsite well and septic systems – in this example, about an acre. Street trees are planted on the existing roads and any necessary road and drainage repairs/upgrades are done. Upon sale of any lot a predetermined assessment goes into a Townbuilding Escrow Account that will be used to build streets and community water and sewer at Generation Four. The Regulating Plan and code will have to regulate the disposition of improvements in the early generations so that the ultimate
TOWNSITE TOOL FOR GENERATIVE HAMLET GROWTH

TND can be realized without major reconfigurations. Twenty building sites are available at this Generation.

b. Generation Two: After selling a number of lots, the rancher now has the funds to build two new gravel roads around the perimeter of the 40 acre Hamlet core, creating access to twenty-four more T2 parcels.

c. Generation Three: More new road segments will accommodate seventeen more settlers.

d. Generation Four: A central water and sewer system is built, financed by the Townbuilding Escrow Account, POA assessments and settler investments. Complete streets and alleys are built, and the pioneer settlers can sell their extra lots for infill. T-Zone upgrades to T3 and T4 take effect.

e. Generation Five: After a given threshold of buildout, or the growth of other adjacent Hamlets at the crossroads, the final zoning succession to T5 takes place per the 20-Year Regulating Plan. A total of 245 lots have been created.

SmartCode Application. The SmartCode calibration could work in this general fashion:

1. Prepare a Sector Map through public charrette visioning in accordance with Article 2.
2. Revise Article 3.3.1b to limit the gross size of a Hamlet to 30 to 80 acres at a ratio of 40 acres of T3+ per 640 acres (1:16), so that 600 acres will be preserved as T2 or T1 for every 40 acres of Hamlet. Another, or additional, approach could be that no new Hamlet shall be allowed within 2 miles of an existing Hamlet, center to center. The development application would have to involve between 480 and 1280 acres.
3. Require or incentivize that Hamlets be located at an existing crossroads, with all wedges of the crossroads under separate ownerships, and each appropriate for Hamlet development. These crossroads should, in fact, be designated on the Sector Map.
4. Add Sector Tables to the SmartCode that provide graphic examples of the framework for the generative succession.
5. Add additional Table 15’s for the various versions of T2 (Villa, Garden, Orchard, and Ranch). These would provide form-based standards for exemplary local versions of these rural typologies, as revealed by synoptic surveys and charrette stakeholders. Metrics would be types of building and structures and their forms and dispositions, fencing and crop arrangements, landscaping and access, etc.
6. This example could be called the “Ranch Hamlet Module”. Other modules could be done for “Wine Country”, “Grain Belt”, “Cotton Belt”, “Horse Country”, etc.

Observations. Typically, this example of Ranch Hamlets would have a minimum separation of 2 miles under a full regional build-out where the vested right is 2 acre lots. Larger separations, and greater rural to urban ratios would occur where the vested right is greater than 2 acres. The gross area of land to be converted to T3 and above in this example is about 6%, while over 90% becomes protected T2 and T1.

Paul Crabtree, PE, CNU
President
Crabtree Group, Inc.
Ranch Hamlet
20 Year Regulating Plan

Transect Zones

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Zone</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Open Space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Rural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Neighborhood Edge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Neighborhood General</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T5</td>
<td>Town Center</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Civic Reservations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reserve</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CS</td>
<td>Civic Space Reserve</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Legend

- Street Right-of-Way
- Alley Right-of-Way
- Section Line

SCALE 1" = 500'
Ranch Hamlet
20 Year Regulating Plan

Transect Zones
- T1 - Open Space
- T2 - Rural
- T3 - Neighborhood Edge
- T4 - Neighborhood General
- T5 - Town Center

Civic Reservations
- CS - Civic Space Reserve

Legend
- Street Right-of-Way
- Alley Right-of-Way
- Section Line
- T2-V (Rural) Villa
- T2-G (Rural) Garden
- T2-O (Rural) Orchard
- T2-R (Rural) Ranch/Farm
- AC - Acres
- TYP - Typical

SCALE 1" = 250'
TOWNSITE TOOL FOR GENERATIVE HAMLET GROWTH

Ranch Hamlet Core

Transect Zones

- T1 - Open Space
- T2 - Rural
- T3 - Neighborhood Edge
- T4 - Neighborhood General
- T5 - Town Center

Civic Reservations

- CS - Civic Space Reserve

Legend

- Street Right-of-Way
- Alley Right-of-Way
- Property Line
- New Building Site
- Existing Building Site
- Pedestrian Shed Limits
- New Gravel Road
- Existing Gravel Road
- New Paved Road
- Typical

Note Generation Five Scale

SCALE 1" = 500'
## GREEN INFRASTRUCTURE

### LOT AND BUILDING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ORIGINAL GREEN/PASSIVE SOLAR</th>
<th>T1</th>
<th>T2</th>
<th>T3</th>
<th>T4</th>
<th>T5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADAPT TO LOCAL CLIMATE AND RESOURCES VS DEFAULT TO GLOBAL SUPPLY CHAINS</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACCESSORY DWELLING UNIT</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOCALLY-SOURCED BUILDING MATERIALS</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUTDOOR LIVING (PAVILIONS, TERRACES, PORCHES)</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GREEN WALL</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YARD GARDENS</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROOF, BALCONY AND WINDOW GARDENS</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FISH POOL</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHICKEN COOP (NO ROOSTERS IN T4)</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMPOST DRUMS</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GARDENER SHED</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHADING OF GLAZING</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DARK SKY-COMPLIANT LIGHTING</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REAR LAUNDRY LINE (SUCH AS ROPE AND PULLEY IN T4)</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIKE RACK</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LONG NARROW BUILDING</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LONG SIDE FACES SOUTH</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOTS OF WINDOWS SOUTH, LESSER WINDOWS NORTH, WEST, EAST</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIGH ALBEDO ROOFS</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EARTH SHELTERING NORTH</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EAVES AND AWNINGS SOUTH, WEST, EAST</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TROMBE WALL, SUNSPACE, CONSERVATORY ON SOUTH SIDE</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THERMAL MASS</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAINWATER HARVESTING CISTERN OR POOL</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAIN GARDEN</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TREES</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOSWALE</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERVIOUS PAVING</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ENERGY CONSERVATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T1</th>
<th>T2</th>
<th>T3</th>
<th>T4</th>
<th>T5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LOW ENERGY APPLIANCES</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOW ENERGY LIGHTING</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOTION SENSOR LIGHTING</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUPER-INSULATION</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AIR-TIGHTNESS</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEAT/AIR EXCHANGER</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATTIC VENT FANS</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMART METERING</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TECHNO-GREEN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T1</th>
<th>T2</th>
<th>T3</th>
<th>T4</th>
<th>T5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SOLAR THERMAL HOT WATER</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOLAR PHOTOVOLTAICS</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROOF IS FLAT, OR HAS PITCH(ES) THAT MATCH LATITUDE FOR SOLAR PV (33 DEGREES = 7:12)</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GROUND, AIR OR WATER SOURCE HEAT PUMP</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABSORPTION COOLING AND HEATING WITH SOLAR HOT WATER</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIND TURBINE (VERTICAL AXIS IN T4 AND T5)</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMBINED COOLING, HEAT &amp; POWER TURBINES</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEAT EXCHANGERS TO UTILIZE DISTRICT HEATING</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECYCLED WATER FOR TOILETS AND LAUNDRY</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SITE IRRIGATION RAINWATER</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SITE IRRIGATION RECYCLED WATER</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GREEN ROOF</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOLAR/WIND POWERED EV CHARGING STATION</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BATTERY STORAGE, THERMAL SOLAR STORAGE, OR INTERTIE WITH GRID</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECOGNIZABLE ARCHITECTURAL THEME</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
<td>🟢</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See [http://www.transect.org/modules.html](http://www.transect.org/modules.html) for more details about incorporating sustainability into the community plan.
Paul Crabtree provided this presentation on Lean Infrastructure from 2013.
Lean Infrastructure

Lean Urbanism Council
Tenets. Lean Infrastructure:

Anticipates immediately foreseeable development, whereas conventional infrastructure often anticipates a massively increased level of urbanization and funding to match.

Remains nimble by banking the savings (or refraining from overburdening the tax base) for unforeseeable needs.

De-emphasizes economies of scale in favor of the economy of avoiding over-provision and the pragmatism of smaller-scale interventions.

Favors many manageable projects over a few grandiose ones, until the skill sets for maintenance and construction nearly converge.

Favors an economy of means, but also favors open extensibility over penny-pinching.
Concerns itself with life-cycle costs (not just capital costs), including the recognition that peaks followed by collapses in the extraction of finite resources at the planetary level will have local ramifications.

Fosters competency and depends on it, eschewing over-specification.

Remains visually and experientially accessible except for very good reasons.

Takes a cautionary stance towards proprietary or exotic products, or products or systems that are dependent on cheap oil.

Utilizes patterns that have a looser, parametric connotation than the strict standards of conventional public works manuals. Patterns are especially applicable to retrofits of conventional sprawl infrastructure.

Recognizes that intensifications of urbanization should be balanced with enhancements of nature.

Employs a declension of green to gray infrastructure that aligns with the rural-to-urban transect.
Examples:

Light Imprint drainage, the Sky Method of incremental subdivision, and Original Green infrastructure approaches that integrate natural, time-proven, and environmentally sound methodologies in support of normative human environments are models of Lean Infrastructure.

The ethos of Lean Infrastructure could in some ways be represented by the smaller projects of the Imperial and Royal Engineers of the turn-of-the-20th-century British Empire, and pay-as-you-go projects of the American settlement-building pioneers.
Roman - Massive Longstanding Infrastructure, Civilization Building.
British – Lean Infrastructure, Good Placemaking.
American – Gold-plated Infrastructure, Car-Centric, Terrible Placemaking.
Incremental Streets and Roads
Dirt Roads
Frugality in the Long-Term
Petroleum Production

World Oil Production 1900-2080
Rising Cost of Asphalt
A once-common practice no longer so viable.
Types of Unpaved Roads ("Art of Roadmaking" - 1910)
CHAPTER VII

EARTH, GRAVEL, SAND AND CLAY ROADS

Earth Roads

The term "Earth Roads" includes all those constructed of natural soil, whether loam, clay or sand, without a crust or other road covering. The earth road is the cheapest form of road as regards first cost, and is generally the pioneer in any new country. In its simplest form it consists of dirt from the sides, simply thrown up into the center, with little or no regard for the formation of a crown for the lateral shedding of rain-water. The bulk of the country roads of America are made of earth alone, and as a well-made earth road forms an excellent foundation for a graveled or a broken stone road, and its construction is in many cases preparatory to a more permanent improvement, the importance of scientific design and construction will be easily seen.

Fig. 79.—Earth Road With Flat Surface, as ordinarily constructed.
Gravel Roads

Gravel furnishes a very acceptable substitute for stone as a material for the construction of roads with a moderate amount of travel, and, when well constructed, a gravel road is a satisfactory one. It has to commend it its ease of laying and ease of repair, but it has not the durable qualities of a good broken-stone road when subjected to heavy travel.
Sandy Roads

There are many miles of sandy roads in different parts of the country, and the remarks as to drainage, shaping, etc., do not apply to them in their natural condition. The wetter they are kept the better they are. Sand, when confined, will support almost any weight, the objection to sand alone as a road material lying in the total absence of any binding or cementing qualities. Sandy roads are good only when damp. It is useless to form or crown sand roads, as they do not require drainage. They should be made either flat, or lower in the center than at the sides, and trees and undergrowth should be allowed to grow as near the road as possible, as they help to retain the moisture. For temporary improvement of sandy roads a layer of cut straw, hay, bark, sawdust or any material that will retain moisture and offer some resistance to benefit, but for a semi-permanent improvement be mixed with the sand in proper proportions with clay road.
Earth, Gravel, Sand, and Shell Roads

Construction and Maintenance of Oyster Shell Roads

By JOSHUA MILLER, County Engineer, Salem County, New Jersey

Oyster-shell roads have been in use in Salem county for about thirty years. They have given satisfaction for many years, but the time has come when the roads of this material makes it necessary for the road builders of today to look well into the merits, and to take advantage of those methods of construction which will give the best results. The method

—In fact, almost the only method of building a shell road in our section is to “grade” the road to the limit, and then place on top of this road as few shells as is possible, and allow time to “break them down.”

The shell road, as usually constructed, rarely has a depth of eight inches of loose shells, and seldom has a width of eight feet when first laid down. It is thought to be found that these are the extreme of depth and width used by our township officers on ordinary roads. The width usually increases slightly during the process of “breaking down.”

In fact, the same methods of construction and maintenance that have been followed for generations by township officers in constructing and repairing of ordinary roads have been and are still followed in the construction and maintenance of shell roads. When shells are first placed on a road, the traveling public will naturally use the sides of the road as long as possible, and it seems to me that I have known them to remain on the sides for a longer time than this, if such a condition can be corrected. In this time they are forced by necessity to drive on the roads. In the mean time they have “allied” at the edges of the shell bed, more or less, and have driven on the main body of shells for short distances here and there along the line of the road. This has naturally widened out the shell bed in places, and when the road is broken down into a really flat condition to travel on, there are places where the shell bed is considerably thin. These places are in most cases filled up immediately, and in three to six months after construction, depending on the time of year and the character of the shell on which it is built, the road is in a more or less flat condition to travel on with comfort. Shell roads, when once in good condition, are indefinitely more satisfactory to travel over both for horses and men, than the great majority of our roads. They are almost debtless, and seem to possess a resiliency that I have never seen equal to any material that can be considered by a rural road district.

Dampness will cause shells to become soft and useless for road purposes in a short time. A few years ago I removed some shells from the abutment of a bridge, where they had been used for filling in the dikes when shells were not at hand, for the railroad. They had been subjected to the sun and wind all the time for many years. When taken out, they were, to a degree, in almost the same condition as when placed there. The surfaces usually used for shells, but in this case they were utilized to resort to shells, because the roads were paved with shell so that they took some from the surface. These shells were then placed on the approach to the bridge, and in less than a year the road at that point was in almost the same condition as before. The shell road was as soft and had lost all the remaining qualities they possessed, and practically disappeared in that length of time. Shells possess the power of consolidation to a very great degree, and in this lie their chief value as a road material. They are not hard nor will they stand much wear, but when connected together they present a smooth, firm surface, and will then give an extraordinary amount of wear, when the natural softness of the material would lead to their condemnation by one who was ignorant of their other good qualities.

In 1836 our first shell road under the provisions of the State Act was laid down. It was in the township of Crosswicks, on a portion of the King’s Highway that was laid out from Salem to Burlington in 1819. This had always been considered one of the best roads in the country, it was a fairly heavy car road, which had been coaled with a sandy gravel many times that it was practically a road made when it was decided to improve it. The shell road on this road was laid ten feet wide and twelve inches deep, as have been all our shell roads built under State aid. A portion of this road was built with a shoulder, and this raised such a storm of protest that the balance of the road was built in the usual manner, by placing the shells on the prepared surface without backing them up. The first report in this road was made on the shoulder portion, and consisted of a thin coating of shells down the center of the shell road. This was done within the first two or three years after the construction of the road. The other portion of the road has since been treated from time to time. Four years ago I examined the shell on this road and found that the shells on the shoulder portion are mostly intact and a good number of the shells on the road were coaled back with loose shells; and that with the surface of the shell road is better than the rest of the road. The shell road was laid on the shoulder portion to fully one third deeper than those on the other portion of the road, with no appreciable difference in the quality and soundness of the shells. On this portion the shell was coaled back, and it was found that shells would benefit from the coaling more than it would the road. In the opinion of the officers of the road, both are comparatively soft, both have excellent mounting qualities, and both make a fine smooth road when at their best. Shell roads have been improved in Salem county by simply dumping shells on the surface wherever in the opinion of the official in charge, they are needed, and allowing travel to grit them into the road. In fact, op-
CHAPTER VIII

BROKEN-STONE ROADS

A broken-stone road is one built of small fragments of stone laid on a suitable earth foundation and compacted together into a solid mass. It is uncertain just when this system of road construction was invented, but as near as can be ascertained, the first systematic construction of broken-stone pavements was carried on in France in 1764 by M. Tresaguet, who built many miles of such pavements in the latter part of the eighteenth century. In the early part of the nineteenth century two systems were introduced into England, the first by Telford, the second by Macadam. From these two pioneers of good roads, modern engineers have drawn the principles upon which all present-day broken-stone roads are built. Such roads are generally known as “macadam” roads;
Broken-Stone Roads - Ancient Roman
Tresaguet's Method, 1764 (Fig. 113).—“The bottom of the foundation is to be parallel to the surface of the road. The first bed or foundation is to be placed on edge and not on the flat, in the form of a rough pavement, and consolidated by beating with a large hammer; but is unnecessary that the stones should be even one with the other. The second bed is to be equally placed by hand, layer by layer, and beaten and broken coarsely with a large hammer, so that the stones may no empty spaces remain. The last bed, thickness, is to be broken to about the size of a hammer, or a sort of anvil, and thrown in a shovel to form the curved surface. Care be given to choose the hardest stone for one is obliged to go to more distant quarry for the stone for the body of the road. The following is the method of laying the stone:

Trésaguet
- gravel or broken stone (1-inch layer)
- broken stone (2-inch layer)
- foundation layer (8 inches)

Telford
- gravel or broken stone (1-inch layer)
- broken stone (7-inch layer)
- foundation layer (7 inches)

McAdam
- gravel or broken stone (1-inch layer)
- broken stone (8-inch layer)
Broken-Stone Roads - Telford - 1824

Telford's Method, 1824 (Fig. 114).—"Upon the level bed prepared for the road materials a bottom course or layer of stones is to be set by hand in the form of a close, firm pavement. The stones set in the middle of the road are to be seven inches in depth; at nine feet from the center, five inches; at twelve feet from the center, four inches; and at fifteen feet from the center, three inches. They are to be set on their broadest edges lengthwise across the road, and the breadth of the upper edge is not to exceed four inches in any case. All the irregularities of the upper part of the said pavement are to be broken off by the hammer, and all the interstices to be filled with stone chips firmly wedged or packed by hand with a light hammer, so that when the whole pavement is finished there shall be a convexity of four inches in the breadth of fifteen feet from the center.

Fig. 114.—Telford’s Shrewsbury and Holyhead Road.

"The middle eighteen feet of pavement is to be composed of hard stones to the depth of six inches. Four of these inches to be first put on and worked in by carriages after care being taken to rake in the ruts until the surface is firm and consolidated, after the remaining two inches be put on.

"The paved spaces on each side of the middle eighteen feet are to be coated with broken stones or well-cleaned up to the footpath or other boundary of the road. This will make the whole convexity of the road six inches from the sides of it, and the whole of the materials covered with a binding of an inch and a half of gravel free from clay or earth."
Macadam's Method.—Macadam omitted the foundation of large stones, claiming that it was not only useless but injurious. He placed on the natural soil, a layer of stone broken into cubes of about one and a half inches in their greatest dimensions, and spread equally over the surface of the road, to a depth of ten or twelve inches.
Ancient Roman

Tresaguet – 1700’s

Telford – 1800’s

Macadam – 1800’s to Present

Broken-Stone Roads - Thickness Comparison
Tarmac - 1901

Stone Block

Cobblestone

Brick

Wood Block/Plank

Asphalt

Concrete

Concrete Pavers - Impervious and Pervious
Construction Cost Comparisons (FHWA 2005)

- National Average to Pave atop a Proper Gravel Road (FHWA):
  - $95,000

- National Average to Build a Proper Gravel Road (FHWA):
  - $115,000

- National Average to Build a Proper Paved Road (FHWA):
  - $211,000

- 2013 Philipstown "Paving" Project:
  - $263,000

- 450' lower OAPR Paving Project:
  - $1,600,000

Construction Cost per Mile
Maintenance Cost Comparisons

- 2010 MNDOT Average Paved Maintenance: $2,460
- 2012 Garrison "Paved" Maintenance: $4,708
- 2009 Garrison "Paved" Maintenance: $5,020
- 1996 Philipstown "Paved" Maintenance: $4,800
- 2010 MNDOT Average Gravel Maintenance: $4,160
- 2012 Garrison Unpaved Maintenance: $11,609
- 2009 Garrison Unpaved Maintenance: $8,600
- 1996 Philipstown Unpaved Maintenance: $4,900

Maintenance Cost per mile
Average Maintenance Costs Several MN Counties

Gravel $4,160/mile.

Paved $2,460/mile
(plus $131,000/mile every 20 years)

Figure 1. Gravel and HMA Maintenance Costs/Mile

Figure 7. Five-Year Average Four-County Surface-Related Maintenance Cost/Mile vs AADT
One important factor in pedestrian crashes is **SPEED**...

The probability of a pedestrian being severely injured and/or killed when struck by a vehicle increases as the motorist speed increases. Figure 1 shows the correlation of vehicle impact speed and pedestrian death rates. As vehicle speeds increase the ability of the driver to stop in time for crossing pedestrians also significantly decreases.

**Figure 1: Pedestrian's chances of death if hit by a motor vehicle**

(Ref. USDOT)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>County</th>
<th>State</th>
<th>Links</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Stutsman County     | North Dakota | http://online.wsj.com/article/SB10001424052748704913304575370950363737746.html  
                             |              | http://www.co.stutsman.nd.us/                                        |
| Coshocton County    | Ohio         | http://blog.cleveland.com/metro/2010/08/some_ohio_roads_reverting_to_g.html  
| Ashtabula County     | Ohio         | http://blog.cleveland.com/metro/2010/08/some_ohio_roads_reverting_to_g.html  
| Otter Tail County   | Minnesota    | http://www.starttribune.com/local/118713504.html?ref=y                 |
| Elkhart County      | Indiana      | http://www.abc57.com/home/top-stories/Road-funding-crisis-to-cause-paved-road-to-revert-to-gravel-165196456.html?m=y&utmobile=y |
| Vermillion County   | Indiana      | http://tribstar.com/news/x2029122906/Budget-squeeze-has-some-counties-returning-to-gravel-roads/print  
|                     |              | http://www.mnltap.umn.edu/publications/exchange/2012/spring/lowvolume.html |
|                     |              | http://www.mnttap.umn.edu/publications/exchange/2012/spring/lowvolume.html |
|                     |              | http://www.nxtbook.com/nxtbooks/naylor/NAPS0911/#/36  
| Calhoun County      | Michigan     | http://www.rrb.org/media/reports/trs1007.pdf  
| Benzie County       | Michigan     |                                                              |
| Iron County         | Michigan     |                                                              |
| Montcalm County     | Michigan     |                                                              |
| Alpena County       | Michigan     |                                                              |

FIG. 13. The Transect is a progression from rural to urban, as can be seen from this sequence entering a typical city (the drawings by Rustico Design of DBZ). It also has a temporal manifestation, as this series can also be understood as instances of a city maturing by becoming more urban over time. This is analogous to the "successional" concept in nature where grassland prairie gradually evolves to woodland, and then to a climax forest. In urbanism the climax would be the equivalent of an area designated for historic preservation.
Incremental Streets and Roads
Incremental Streets and Roads
Phoenix, AZ
East Van Buren Street at North 37th Street
Phoenix, AZ

East Van Buren Street at North 37th Street
Phoenix, AZ
East Van Buren Street at North 37th Street
Phoenix, AZ

East Van Buren Street at North 37th Street
Phoenix, AZ
East Van Buren Street at North 37th Street
Phoenix, AZ
East Van Buren Street at North 37th Street
Incremental Streets and Roads
Mulch on clay, to stone to pavers over 20+ year period
Green Infrastructure: Reduce Runoff: Slow It Down, Spread It Out, Soak It In

Conventional: Pave-Pipe-Dump
Many small ponds (instead of pave-pipe-and-dump) and pervious areas hold and infiltrate runoff in order to reduce peak runoff rates and runoff volume, and purify the runoff.

Examples: raingarden, pervious road, bioswale.

Green Infrastructure
# Green Infrastructure

## RAINWATER STRATEGY

**SARATOGA SPRINGS, UTAH**

**TYPICAL 660’ x 660’ BLOCK**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STORMWATER DECISION MATRIX</th>
<th>GREEN INFRASTRUCTURE</th>
<th>CONVENTIONAL INFRASTRUCTURE</th>
<th>LEGEND</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INITIAL CAPITAL COST</td>
<td>★★★★</td>
<td>★★</td>
<td>★★★★</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAINTENANCE COMPLEXITY</td>
<td>★★★★</td>
<td>★★</td>
<td>★★★★</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAND SAVINGS</td>
<td>★★★★</td>
<td>★★</td>
<td>★☆☆☆</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSTAINABILITY</td>
<td>★★★★</td>
<td>★★</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CONVENTIONAL PIPE AND POND COSTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITEM</th>
<th>UNIT</th>
<th>ESTIM. QNTY</th>
<th>UNIT COST</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New 38'' RCP Drainage Pipe</td>
<td>1f</td>
<td>1,460</td>
<td>$100.00</td>
<td>$146,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New 18'' RCP Drainage Pipe</td>
<td>1f</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>$60.00</td>
<td>$36,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drain Basin</td>
<td>ea.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>$2,000.00</td>
<td>$8,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Culvert Inlet</td>
<td>ea.</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>$8,000.00</td>
<td>$8,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drainage Manhole</td>
<td>ea.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>$2,400.00</td>
<td>$7,200.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detention Pond</td>
<td>ara.</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>$60,000.00</td>
<td>$60,000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soft Costs</td>
<td>%</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>$211,200.00</td>
<td>$31,680.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GRAND TOTAL** $243,000.00

### GREEN STREETS COST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITEM</th>
<th>UNIT</th>
<th>ESTIM. QNTY</th>
<th>UNIT COST</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bioswale Soil Amendments</td>
<td>a. f.</td>
<td>37,000</td>
<td>$50.00</td>
<td>$1,850.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soft Costs</td>
<td>%</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>$66,500.00</td>
<td>$8,325.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GRAND TOTAL** $64,000.00

### HYDROGRAPH FOR TYPICAL BLOCK USING GREEN STREETS

- Pre-Development 1-Year
- Post-Development 1-Year
- Pre-Development 10-Year
- Post-Development 10-Year
- Pre-Development 100-Year
- Post-Development 100-Year
Advantages of Permeable Roads

**Runoff Reduction**
Research has shown that permeable surfaces can significantly reduce runoff volumes, thereby reducing the erosive power of stormwater entering creeks. This helps to prevent down cutting of streams and loss of bank stability.

**Pollutant Removal**
Long term research on permeable roads shows their effective removal of pollutants such as total suspended solids, total phosphorous, total nitrogen, chemical oxygen demand, zinc, motor oil, and copper. In the void spaces, naturally occurring micro-organisms break down hydrocarbons and metals adhere.

**Groundwater Recharge**
In areas with suitable soils, permeable surfaces allow stormwater to enter the sub-soils, replicating the natural hydrological cycle by allowing for groundwater recharge.

**Heat Pollution Reduction**
Stormwater pools on the surface of conventional pavement, where it is heated by the sun and the hot pavement surface. By rapidly infiltrating rainfall, porous roads reduce the water’s exposure to sun and heat. Cool stream water is essential for the health of many aquatic organisms, including trout and salmon.
Block, Corridor, Neighborhood
Devastation – Port-au-Prince, Haiti
Scenario C - Block   $3,230,000
### Scenario Comparisons for Total Infrastructure $

#### INFRASSTRUCTURE COST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PHASE 1: COMMERCIAL ONLY 30 COMM. UNITS PER BLOCK. NO RESIDENTIAL</th>
<th>INCREMENT</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>STREET COST (INCREMENT)</th>
<th>PER CAPITA</th>
<th>PER COMMERCIAL UNIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CORE</td>
<td>$152,667,000</td>
<td>$152,667,000</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>$42,500</td>
<td>10,541</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CORRIDOR</td>
<td>$229,520,000</td>
<td>$229,520,000</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>$77,000</td>
<td>1,054</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HYBRID CORRIDOR</td>
<td>$93,388,490</td>
<td>$93,388,490</td>
<td>($93,388,490)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>6,448</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK</td>
<td>$2,992,000</td>
<td>$359,088,000</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>$99,700</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PHASE 2: COMMERCIAL FIRST FLOOR, ONE STORY RES. ABOVE (74 UNITS=370 PPL/BLOCK)</th>
<th>INCREMENT</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>STREET COST (INCREMENT)</th>
<th>PER CAPITA</th>
<th>PER RESIDENTIAL AND COMMERCIAL UNIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CORE</td>
<td>$175,105,000</td>
<td>$175,105,000</td>
<td>$3,900</td>
<td>$14,000</td>
<td>18,250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CORRIDOR</td>
<td>$271,194,000</td>
<td>$271,194,000</td>
<td>$6,100</td>
<td>$26,100</td>
<td>1,825</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HYBRID CORRIDOR</td>
<td>$107,114,121</td>
<td>$107,114,121</td>
<td>($93,388,490)</td>
<td>$15,400</td>
<td>11,164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK</td>
<td>$3,675,000</td>
<td>$441,000,000</td>
<td>$9,900</td>
<td>$35,300</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FULL BUILDOUT: COMMERCIAL FIRST FLOOR, THREE STORIES RES. ABOVE (239 UNITS=1150 PPL/BLOCK)</th>
<th>INCREMENT</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
<th>STREET COST (INCREMENT)</th>
<th>PER CAPITA</th>
<th>PER RESIDENTIAL AND COMMERCIAL UNIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CORE</td>
<td>$221,475,000</td>
<td>$221,475,000</td>
<td>$1,600</td>
<td>$7,100</td>
<td>34,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CORRIDOR</td>
<td>$359,940,000</td>
<td>$359,940,000</td>
<td>$2,600</td>
<td>$13,800</td>
<td>3,450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HYBRID CORRIDOR</td>
<td>$135,479,284</td>
<td>$135,479,284</td>
<td>($93,388,490)</td>
<td>$8,800</td>
<td>21,104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK</td>
<td>$5,275,000</td>
<td>$533,000,000</td>
<td>$4,600</td>
<td>$20,300</td>
<td>287</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Preferred Scenario
Mormon Block – Transect, Cost Estimating, Light Imprint

Block, Corridor, Neighborhood
**GENERAL BLOCK COST DETAIL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>streets</th>
<th>unit</th>
<th>units/block</th>
<th>unit cost</th>
<th>cost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rd-66-24</td>
<td>lin ft</td>
<td>660</td>
<td>$311</td>
<td>$205,260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>st-66-3-4</td>
<td>lin ft</td>
<td>660</td>
<td>$344</td>
<td>$227,040</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>st-44-26</td>
<td>lin ft</td>
<td>1800</td>
<td>$388</td>
<td>$691,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-22-12</td>
<td>lin ft</td>
<td>2024</td>
<td>$64</td>
<td>$1,309,996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>site work</td>
<td>cu yd</td>
<td>13,009</td>
<td>$10</td>
<td>$130,089</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rough grading</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>15,976</td>
<td>$2</td>
<td>$30,732</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>site - sod</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>$350</td>
<td>$1,750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sub-total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$162,588</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>culinary water</td>
<td>lin ft</td>
<td>2220</td>
<td>$31</td>
<td>$66,820</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water - 8” main</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>$2,000</td>
<td>$22,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water - 8” valve</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>7.56</td>
<td>$346</td>
<td>$2,584</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water - 12” valve</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>$2,600</td>
<td>$21,600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water - th assembly</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>$50</td>
<td>$250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water - service tap</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>$14</td>
<td>$1,568</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water - service line</td>
<td>lin ft</td>
<td>354</td>
<td></td>
<td>$223,992</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irrigation</td>
<td>lin ft</td>
<td>2946</td>
<td>$40</td>
<td>$117,640</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irrigation - 10” main</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>$680</td>
<td>$1,360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irrigation - 10” valve</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>$14</td>
<td>$1,568</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irrigation - service line</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>$40</td>
<td>$4,480</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irrigation - tap</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>112</td>
<td></td>
<td>$139,700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sewer</td>
<td>lin ft</td>
<td>1994</td>
<td>$18</td>
<td>$35,892</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sewer - 8” main</td>
<td>lin ft</td>
<td>726</td>
<td>$200</td>
<td>$144,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sewer - 16” main</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>$150</td>
<td>$1,650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sewer - manhole</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>$6</td>
<td>$676</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sewer - service line</td>
<td>lin ft</td>
<td>96</td>
<td></td>
<td>$124,178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dry utilities</td>
<td>lin ft</td>
<td>3120</td>
<td>$50</td>
<td>$156,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>electric line</td>
<td>lin ft</td>
<td>3120</td>
<td>$25</td>
<td>$78,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gas line</td>
<td>lin ft</td>
<td>3120</td>
<td>$45</td>
<td>$135,300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dlp &amp; micro-turbine*</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>$78,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dlp hot water service line</td>
<td>lin ft</td>
<td>3120</td>
<td>$25</td>
<td>$78,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phone line</td>
<td>lin ft</td>
<td>3120</td>
<td></td>
<td>$447,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tap fees**</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>$3,000</td>
<td>$336,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>culinary water tap fee</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>$1,600</td>
<td>$201,600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secondary water</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>$2,100</td>
<td>$231,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sewer tap fees</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>112</td>
<td></td>
<td>$739,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sub-total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$1,151,997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>misc</td>
<td>acre</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>$60,000</td>
<td>$726,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mobilization, permits, &amp; overhead</td>
<td>l.s.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$67,934</td>
<td>$67,934</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carrying cost (1 yr @ 10%)</td>
<td>l.s.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$36,093</td>
<td>$36,093</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sub-total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$1,151,997</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BLOCK METRICS**

- **dimensions CL - CL**: 
- **areas (acres)**: 
- **density**: 
- **number of units**:
  - commercial units per block: 0
  - office units per block: 112
- **total units per block**: 112

- **Total Building Frontage**: 3718 ft
- **Cost of Bidg Frontage**: $1,089 / $23,947

---

Mormon Block – Transect, Cost Estimating, Light Imprint

Block, Corridor, Neighborhood
Mormon Block – Transect, Cost Estimating, Light Imprint

Block, Corridor, Neighborhood
High Point - Traffic Circle

Cross-cutting Burons
High Point - Traffic Circle

Cross-cutting Burons
High Point - Traffic Circle

Cross-cutting Burons
HIGH COST OF FREE PARKING SLIDES

Slides from a Philadelphia presentation by Donald Shoup.
The High Cost of Free Parking

DONALD SHOUP
Bad parking policy and no parking technology
South Philadelphia
King of Prussia
Lawncrest
Metroplex
Survey of parking requirements for 660 land uses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ALL USES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
accessory dwelling unit

- 1 additional space, on the same zone lot (Greenville, N.C., p. 223-891)
- 1 per attached accessory dwelling unit, in addition to other required spaces (Warren County, N.Y., p. 336-480)
- 1 per bedroom (Reno, Nev., p. 180-480)
- 1 space (San Jose, Calif., p. 58-60-1)
- 1 space per unit (Palo Alto, Calif., p. 56-68-6)
- 2 spaces per unit; such space must have convenient access to a street (Smithfield, Va., p. 6-324)

administrative office (see office uses)

adult use

- 0.5 per seat, plus 0.5 per 1,000 square feet of gross floor area (Tampa, Fla., p. 303-447)
- 1 per 60 square feet (Henderson, Nev., 175.381)
- 10 per 1,000 square feet (Hickory, N.C., p. 37-222)
- 12 per 1,000 square feet (St. Mary’s County, Md., p. 86-221)

Minimum: 1 per 500 square feet above first 900 square feet
Maximum: 1 per 150 square feet (Pittsburgh, Pa., p. 334-362)

Minimum: 1 per 250 square feet of gross floor area
Maximum: 1 per 200 square feet of gross floor area (Greenville, N.Y., p. 223-891)

adult use, adult arcade

- 1 parking space shall be provided for every 2 occupants per the allowable occupant load as established by the city’s building official or fire marshal, whichever standard is greater. In addition, 1 parking space shall be provided for each employee or independent contractor on the maximum shift. (Santa Clarita, Calif., p. 157-88)

adult use, adult cabaret

- 1 parking space shall be provided for every 2 occupants per the allowable occupant load as established by the city’s building official or fire marshal, whichever standard is greater. In addition, 1 parking space shall be provided for each employee or independent contractor on the maximum shift. (Santa Clarita, Calif., p. 157-88)

- 1 space per 25 square feet of gross floor area (Garden Grove, Calif., p. 165-186)

adult use, adult motion picture theater

- 1 off-street parking space for each 10 seats or equivalent (Salt Lake City, Utha., p. 208-275)
- 10 per 1,000 square feet, but not less than 15 (Clark County, Nev., p. 1,375,365)

- 1 per 200 square feet (Fort Wayne, Ind., p. 208-275)
- 1 per 1,000 square feet, but not less than 15 (Clark County, Nev., p. 1,375,365)

- 1 per 200 square feet (Fort Wayne, Ind., p. 208-275)
- 10 per 1,000 square feet, but not less than 15 (Clark County, Nev., p. 1,375,365)

adult use, adult motion picture theater

- 1 parking space shall be provided for every 2 occupants per the allowable occupant load as established by the city’s building official or fire marshal, whichever standard is greater. In addition, 1 parking space shall be provided for each employee or independent contractor on the maximum shift. (Santa Clarita, Calif., p. 157-88)

- 1 space per 25 square feet of gross floor area (Garden Grove, Calif., p. 165-186)
## A parking requirement sampler

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Barber shop</td>
<td>2 spaces per barber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beauty shop</td>
<td>3 spaces per beautician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nunnery</td>
<td>1 space per 10 nuns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectory</td>
<td>3 spaces per 4 clergymen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sex novelty shop</td>
<td>3 spaces per 1,000 square feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gas station</td>
<td>1.5 spaces per fuel nozzle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swimming pool</td>
<td>1 space per 2,500 gallons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mausoleum</td>
<td>10 spaces per maximum number of interments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in a one-hour period</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
San José's minimum parking requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Facility</th>
<th>Building Area</th>
<th>Parking Area</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Restaurant</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>8,250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dance Hall</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>8,250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skating Rink</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>6,600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auction House</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>6,600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Animal Grooming</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>1,650</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Square feet of building and required parking**

- **Building area**
- **Parking area**
Minimum parking requirements in Upper Merrion

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Building Area</th>
<th>Parking Area</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sit-down restaurant</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>6,600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entertainment facility</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>6,600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convention Center</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>5,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Funeral home</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>3,300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bank</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>1,650</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Square feet of building and required parking

- Building area
- Parking area
San Jose’s off-street parking requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Minimum Parking Required</th>
<th>Applicable Sections</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>School, trade and vocational</td>
<td>1 per 3 students, plus 1 per staff</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entertainment and Recreation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arcade, amusement</td>
<td>1 per 200 sq. ft. of floor area</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Batting Cages</td>
<td>1 per station, plus 1 per employee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowling establishment</td>
<td>7 per lane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dancehall</td>
<td>1 per 40 sq. ft. open to public</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving range</td>
<td>1 per tee, plus 1 per employee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Golf course</td>
<td>6 per golf hole, plus 1 per employee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health club, gymnasium</td>
<td>1 per 80 sq. ft. recreational space</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miniature golf</td>
<td>1.25 per tee, plus 1 per employee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performing arts production per rehearsal space</td>
<td>1 per 150 sq. ft. of floor area</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poolroom</td>
<td>1 per 200 sq. ft. of floor area</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Private club or lodge</td>
<td>1 per 4 fixed seats on the premises, or 1 per 6 linear feet of seating, plus 1 per 200 square feet of area without seating but designed for meeting or assembly by guests, plus 1 per 500 sq. ft. of outdoor area developed for recreational purposes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recreation, Commercial (indoor)</td>
<td>1 per 80 sq. ft. of recreational area</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recreation, Commercial (outdoor)</td>
<td>20 per acre of site</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skating rink</td>
<td>1 per 50 sq. ft. of floor area</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swim and tennis club</td>
<td>1 per 500 sq. ft. of recreation area</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PERIODIC TABLE OF THE ELEMENTS

---

**GROUP I**
- **1. H (Hydrogen)**
- **2. He (Helium)**

**GROUP IA**
- **1. H (Hydrogen)**
- **2. Li (Lithium)**
- **3. Na (Sodium)**
- **4. K (Potassium)**
- **5. Rb (Rubidium)**
- **6. Cs (Cesium)**
- **7. Fr (Francium)**

**GROUP IIA**
- **1. Be (Boron)**
- **2. Mg (Magnesium)**
- **3. Ca (Calcium)**
- **4. Sr (Strontium)**
- **5. Ba (Barium)**
- **6. Ra (Radium)**

**GROUP IIB**
- **1. B (Boron)**
- **2. Al (Aluminum)**
- **3. Ga (Gallium)**
- **4. In (Indium)**
- **5. Tl (Thallium)**

**GROUP IIIA**
- **1. C (Carbon)**
- **2. Si (Silicon)**
- **3. Ge (Germanium)**
- **4. Sn (Tin)**
- **5. Pb (Lead)**

**GROUP IIIIB**
- **1. N (Nitrogen)**
- **2. P (Phosphorus)**
- **3. As (Arsenic)**
- **4. Sb (Antimony)**
- **5. Bi (Bismuth)**

**GROUP VIIIA**
- **1. Ne (Neon)**
- **2. Ar (Argon)**
- **3. Kr (Krypton)**
- **4. Xe (Xenon)**

---

**RELATIVE ATOMIC MASS (g/mol)**

---

**STANDARD STATE (25 °C, 101 kPa)**
- **Na** - gas
- **K** - solid
- **Ga** - liquid

---

**LANthanide**
- **La** (Lanthanum)
- **Ce** (Cerium)
- **Pr** (Praseodymium)
- **Nd** (Neodymium)
- **Pm** (Promethium)
- **Sm** (Samarium)
- **Eu** (Europium)
- **Gd** (Gadolinium)
- ** Tb** (Terbium)
- **Dy** (Dysprosium)
- **Ho** (Holmium)
- **Er** (Erbium)
- **Tm** (Thulium)
- **Yb** (Ytterbium)
- **Lu** (Lutetium)

**ACTINIDE**
- **Ac** (Actinium)
- **Th** (Thorium)
- **Pa** (Protactinium)
- **U** (Uranium)
- **Np** (Neptunium)
- **Pu** (Plutonium)
- **Am** (Americium)
- **Cm** (Curium)
- **Bk** (Berkelium)
- **Cf** (Californium)
- **Es** (Einsteinium)
- **Fm** (Fermium)
- **Md** (Mendelevium)
- **No** (Nobelium)
- **Lr** (Lawrencium)

---

**Editor:** Adysea Vaneche (vadine@telnet.hr)
Planners who set minimum parking requirements:

Don’t know how much the required parking spaces cost.
Don’t know how much the parking requirements increase the cost of housing and everything else.
Don’t know how the parking requirements affect urban design.
Don’t know how the parking requirements affect congestion.
Don’t know how the parking requirements affect air pollution.
Don’t know how the parking requirements affect fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions.
Have no training in how to set a parking requirement.

*Are governmentalizing what should remain private decisions.*
Two Mistakes in Parking Policy

1. Keep curb parking free or cheap
2. Require lots of off-street parking
Table 1. The Construction Cost of a Parking Space

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>City</th>
<th>Underground</th>
<th>Aboveground</th>
<th>Construction Cost per Square Foot</th>
<th>Construction Cost per Space</th>
<th>Underground</th>
<th>Aboveground</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$/sq ft</td>
<td>$/sq ft</td>
<td>$/space</td>
<td>$/space</td>
<td>$/space</td>
<td>$/space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>(3)=(1)x330</td>
<td>(4)=(2)x330</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boston</td>
<td>$95</td>
<td>$75</td>
<td>$31,000</td>
<td>$25,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chicago</td>
<td>$110</td>
<td>$88</td>
<td>$36,000</td>
<td>$29,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denver</td>
<td>$78</td>
<td>$55</td>
<td>$26,000</td>
<td>$18,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honolulu</td>
<td>$145</td>
<td>$75</td>
<td>$48,000</td>
<td>$25,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Las Vegas</td>
<td>$105</td>
<td>$68</td>
<td>$35,000</td>
<td>$22,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Los Angeles</td>
<td>$108</td>
<td>$83</td>
<td>$35,000</td>
<td>$27,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New York</td>
<td>$105</td>
<td>$85</td>
<td>$35,000</td>
<td>$28,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phoenix</td>
<td>$80</td>
<td>$53</td>
<td>$26,000</td>
<td>$17,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portland</td>
<td>$105</td>
<td>$78</td>
<td>$35,000</td>
<td>$26,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td>$115</td>
<td>$88</td>
<td>$38,000</td>
<td>$29,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seattle</td>
<td>$105</td>
<td>$75</td>
<td>$35,000</td>
<td>$25,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washington, DC</td>
<td>$88</td>
<td>$68</td>
<td>$29,000</td>
<td>$22,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average</td>
<td>$103</td>
<td>$74</td>
<td>$34,000</td>
<td>$24,000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Rider Levett Bucknall, Quarterly Construction Cost Report, Fourth Quarter 2012
One structured parking space costs more than the entire net worth of many families.

Median Net Worth of US Households, 2011

- All Households: $68,828
- White: $89,537
- Hispanic: $7,683
- Black: $6,314
Median Net Worth (Excluding Home Equity)

- All Households: $16,942
- White: $24,044
- Hispanic: $4,010
- Black: $2,124
Percentage of US households with zero or negative net worth

- Overall: 18%
- White: 16%
- Hispanic: 29%
- Black: 34%
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nation</th>
<th>Median Wealth</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>$225,337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belgium</td>
<td>$172,947</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iceland</td>
<td>$164,193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luxembourg</td>
<td>$156,267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>$142,296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>$140,638</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td>$130,590</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>$112,998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singapore</td>
<td>$109,250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>$106,887</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>$98,756</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Netherlands</td>
<td>$93,116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finland</td>
<td>$88,130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norway</td>
<td>$86,953</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Zealand</td>
<td>$82,610</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>$66,752</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taiwan</td>
<td>$65,375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweden</td>
<td>$63,376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malta</td>
<td>$63,271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qatar</td>
<td>$56,969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>$54,090</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>$53,365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States</td>
<td>$53,352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Israel</td>
<td>$51,346</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Credit Suisse Global Wealth
Databook, 2014
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Median</th>
<th>Mean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>$106,887</td>
<td>$580,666</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>$225,337</td>
<td>$430,777</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Iceland</td>
<td>$164,193</td>
<td>$362,982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Norway</td>
<td>$86,953</td>
<td>$358,655</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>United States</td>
<td>$53,352</td>
<td>$347,845</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Luxembourg</td>
<td>$156,267</td>
<td>$340,836</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Sweden</td>
<td>$63,376</td>
<td>$332,616</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>France</td>
<td>$140,638</td>
<td>$317,292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Belgium</td>
<td>$172,947</td>
<td>$300,850</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td>$130,590</td>
<td>$292,621</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Singapore</td>
<td>$109,250</td>
<td>$289,902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>$98,756</td>
<td>$274,543</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>$142,296</td>
<td>$255,880</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>$112,998</td>
<td>$222,150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>$54,090</td>
<td>$211,049</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Netherlands</td>
<td>$93,116</td>
<td>$210,233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>New Zealand</td>
<td>$82,610</td>
<td>$204,401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Finland</td>
<td>$88,130</td>
<td>$196,621</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Taiwan</td>
<td>$65,375</td>
<td>$182,756</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Israel</td>
<td>$51,346</td>
<td>$169,064</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Qatar</td>
<td>$56,969</td>
<td>$156,096</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>$66,752</td>
<td>$134,824</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Malta</td>
<td>$63,271</td>
<td>$113,724</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>$53,365</td>
<td>$111,405</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Credit Suisse Global Wealth Databook, 2014
## Median and Mean Wealth per Adult

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nation</th>
<th>Median</th>
<th>Mean</th>
<th>Ratio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>United States</td>
<td>$53,352</td>
<td>$347,845</td>
<td>6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>$106,887</td>
<td>$580,666</td>
<td>5.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweden</td>
<td>$63,376</td>
<td>$332,616</td>
<td>5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norway</td>
<td>$86,953</td>
<td>$358,655</td>
<td>4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>$54,090</td>
<td>$211,049</td>
<td>3.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Israel</td>
<td>$51,346</td>
<td>$169,064</td>
<td>3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taiwan</td>
<td>$65,375</td>
<td>$182,756</td>
<td>2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>$98,756</td>
<td>$274,543</td>
<td>2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qatar</td>
<td>$56,969</td>
<td>$156,096</td>
<td>2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singapore</td>
<td>$109,250</td>
<td>$289,902</td>
<td>2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Zealand</td>
<td>$82,610</td>
<td>$204,401</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Netherlands</td>
<td>$93,116</td>
<td>$210,233</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>$140,638</td>
<td>$317,292</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td>$130,590</td>
<td>$292,621</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finland</td>
<td>$88,130</td>
<td>$196,621</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iceland</td>
<td>$164,193</td>
<td>$362,982</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luxembourg</td>
<td>$156,267</td>
<td>$340,836</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>$53,365</td>
<td>$111,405</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>$66,752</td>
<td>$134,824</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>$112,998</td>
<td>$222,150</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>$225,337</td>
<td>$430,777</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>$142,296</td>
<td>$255,880</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malta</td>
<td>$63,271</td>
<td>$113,724</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belgium</td>
<td>$172,947</td>
<td>$300,850</td>
<td>1.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Credit Suisse Global Wealth Databook, 2014
Three Reforms in Parking Policy

1. Charge the right price for curb parking.
   The lowest price that will leave one or two vacant spaces on each block—demand-based pricing

2. Establish Parking Benefit Districts to spend the meter revenue in the neighborhoods that generate it.
   Revenue return will make demand-based prices for curb parking politically popular.

3. Reduce or remove off-street parking requirements. Do not require additional parking when a building’s use changes.
   Freedom from parking requirements will allow higher density and new uses for old buildings.
1. Demand-based Parking Prices

Demand-based prices adjust over time to maintain a few vacant spaces.

The goal is to keep about 85 percent of the parking spaces occupied all the time.

The lowest price a city can charge and still leave one or two open spaces on every block.

If one curb space are open on each side of each block, everyone will see that convenient parking is available everywhere.

The only thing worse than paying for parking is having no parking.
Before SFpark

Block A - Central Business District Location - 0 Open Spots

Block B - Nearby Location - 3 Open Spots

After SFpark

Block A - Central Business District Location - 1 Open Spot

Block B - Nearby Location - 2 Open Spots
SFpark:
Putting Theory Into Practice
Post-launch implementation summary and lessons learned
Parking prices and occupancy rates
Share of SFpark Blocks in Each Occupancy Range
Parking prices in April 2013, 3 pm to 6 pm
Average meter prices *declined* with SFpark

After the 10th rate change in April 2013, only 9 blocks had reached the $6 per hour cap, and 179 had fallen to the $0.25 per hour minimum. Many blocks had been overpriced in the morning. Parking should be free if many spaces remain empty at the zero price. Performance pricing leads to higher prices only if prices are so low that no spaces are open.
STOP THE PARKING METER HIKE!

Make the rich pay, not the workers!
Don’t squeeze workers and small business.

An attack is underway, in San Francisco to push the burden of the economic crisis onto the workers. Transportation officials are attempting to extend metered parking to midnight and Sundays.

In Oakland, a popular movement of small business owners and workers stopped the city’s plans to raise parking rates. We can fight back and win!

With this proposal, for almost 24-hours a day your car will be subject to heavy fines. Parking tickets are already astronomical.

THIS IS A TAX ON THE PEOPLE!
It’s time to organize and defeat the parking meter robbery!

Join the campaign! Call the ANSWER Coalition at 415-821-6545
www.ANSWERsf.org • ANSWER@answersf.org

¡ALTO AL AUMENTO DE LOS PARQUIMETROS!

¡Hagan que los ricos paguen, no los trabajadores!
¡No aprieten a los trabajadores y negocios familiares!

Un ataque está ocurriendo en San Francisco, para poner al peso de la crisis económica sobre los trabajadores. Oficiales de transporte están intentando extender las horas de los parquimetros hasta medianoche y los domingos.

En Oakland, un movimiento popular de las comunidades, de los trabajadores y de los negocios pequeños detuvieron gran parte de los planes de esa ciudad para aumentar las tarifas de los parquimetros. ¡Si podemos luchar y ganar!

Con esta propuesta, por casi 24-horas al día su coche será sujeto a tarifas alérgicas. Multas ya son astronómicas.

¡ESTO ES UN IMPUESTO ILEGAL A LA GENTE!
¡Es la hora para organizarnos y derrotar el robo por los parquimetros!

¡Únete a la campaña! Llame a la Coalición ANSWER al 415.821.6545
www.ANSWERsf.org • ANSWER@answersf.org
STOP THE WAR IN AFGHANISTAN NOW!
Protest U.S./NATO War in Afghanistan on 9th Anniversary of Invasion

As the U.S./NATO war in Afghanistan enters its tenth year, casualties on both sides are at an all-time high. Spending on the war in Afghanistan alone is over $2.5 billion per week—that’s $2,500,000,000 every week—at a time when tens of millions of people have lost their jobs, housing, healthcare and pensions here, and most Afghani people live in extreme poverty.

Join us on Oct. 6 to say NO to war, racism and all bigotry, and YES to meeting the needs of the people!

They oppose foreign wars for oil but demand free parking at home.
Average cruising time before parking declined by 43%
Daily cruising travel per meter declined by 30%

**Daily VMT per meter**
- Weekdays, 9am to 6pm
- SFpark pilot and control areas
- Before vs after

![Graph showing daily VMT per meter](image_url)
Total vehicle travel for cruising declined by about 2,400 miles per day in the pilot area.
Vehicle travel and greenhouse gas emissions declined by 30%
Number of parking tickets declined by 23%
Double parking declined

Double parking vs. occupancy
Pilot and control areas, 2010-2013

Number of observations

Occupancy

- Observed double-parked vehicles

Double-parked vehicles increased as occupancy increased
Change in sales tax revenue, FY2006–2013
Food product, general retail and miscellaneous; chain stores excluded
Will charging for curb parking hurt poor people?

Drivers have to pay for their cars and fuel and tires and maintenance and repairs and insurance and registration fees, but I haven’t heard anyone argue that those should all be free because charging for them would hurt the poor.
PAY • BY • SPACE

PAY BY:
CREDIT CARD

CASH
EXACT BILLS REQUIRED $1, $5 ONLY

REMEMBER
NO IN AND OUT PRIVILEGES
NOT TRANSFERABLE
PAY STATION TICKETS ARE ONLY VALID IN DESIGNATED PAY STATION AREAS
MUST DISPLAY PAY STATION PASS ON DASHBOARD AT ALL TIMES
VIOLATORS ARE SUBJECT TO CITATION 21113A CVC
Stall: 05769
Press Number on Keypad to Select Options:

1) 2 Hours $7.00
2) 1 Hr 30 Min $5.00
3) 1 Hour $3.00
4) 40 Minutes $2.00
5) 20 Minutes $1.00

www.digitalpaytech.com
Parking is well used but readily available

Number of open spaces

0% 0% 0% 0% 0% 0% 0% 0% 0%

Percentage of observations

0% 10% 20% 30% 40% 50% 60% 70%

0% 7% 60% 27% 7% 0% 0% 0% 0%
The right price
Should the price be higher?
Should the price be lower?
The Goldilocks principle of parking prices.
“I know it when I see it.”
Cruising for Parking
Off-street: $20/hour  On-street: $1/hour

New York City
Cruising for underpriced curb parking

Suppose you want to park for one hour while visiting this location. Parking in the garage for one hour costs $20. Parking on the street for one hour costs $1.

Finding a curb space will save you $19. Would you be willing to cruise for a few minutes to save $19?

For example, if you cruise 6 minutes (1/10 of an hour) before finding a curb space you will earn money at a rate of $190/hour.

The city sets the prices for the parking meters, and the city is telling you to cruise for parking.

This does not mean that curb parking should cost $20/hour.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>City</th>
<th>Share of traffic cruising (percent)</th>
<th>Average search time (minutes)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1927</td>
<td>Detroit</td>
<td>19%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1927</td>
<td>Detroit</td>
<td>34%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1934</td>
<td>Washington</td>
<td></td>
<td>8.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1962</td>
<td>New Haven</td>
<td>17%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1965</td>
<td>London</td>
<td></td>
<td>6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1966</td>
<td>London</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1966</td>
<td>London</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1977</td>
<td>Freiburg</td>
<td>74%</td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1984</td>
<td>Jerusalem</td>
<td></td>
<td>9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1985</td>
<td>Cambridge</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1993</td>
<td>Cape Town</td>
<td></td>
<td>12.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1993</td>
<td>New York</td>
<td>8%</td>
<td>7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1993</td>
<td>New York</td>
<td></td>
<td>10.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1993</td>
<td>New York</td>
<td></td>
<td>13.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1997</td>
<td>San Francisco</td>
<td></td>
<td>6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2001</td>
<td>Sydney</td>
<td></td>
<td>6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2005</td>
<td>Los Angeles</td>
<td>68%</td>
<td>3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2007</td>
<td>New York</td>
<td>28%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2007</td>
<td>New York</td>
<td>45%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2008</td>
<td>New York</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2011</td>
<td>Barcelona</td>
<td>18%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Average</strong></td>
<td><strong>34%</strong></td>
<td><strong>7.5</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ROUTES OF CERTAIN CRUISING VEHICLES IN THE VICINITY OF CICERO, MILWAUKEE, AND IRVING PARK CONSTRUCTED FROM OBSERVATIONS MADE ON THE SIX APPROACHES TO THE INTERSECTION OF THESE STREETS
7:00 PM TO 9:30 PM - THURSDAY, MARCH 30, 1939

OBSERVED 6 TIMES

OBSERVED 7 TIMES

OBSERVED 9 TIMES

Legend: $\bullet$ Point of Observation

From the Report: "A Plan to Relieve Traffic Congestion in the Portage Park Retail Shopping Center." A Survey by City of Chicago, Chicago Motor Club, Chicago Surface Lines, April 1939

FIGURE 4—Observed Routes of Cruising Vehicles
Probability of finding parking space

- Car in front of you: 100%
- You: 0%
- Car behind you: 100%
Key–in-the-door technique to measure cruising for parking

Choose a street where all the curb spaces are occupied and traffic is congested.
Walk to the driver-side door of a car parked at the curb with a key in your hand.
If the first driver who sees you stops to wait for “your” space, much of the traffic is probably cruising for curb parking.
2. Parking Benefit Districts
“Take away a few more parking spaces.”
1978 Plan for Old Pasadena

“The area’s been going downhill for years.”
“It’s a bunch of dirty old buildings.”
“It’s filthy.”
“It’s Pasadena’s sick child.”
“The area is unsafe.”
Old Pasadena Now

[Image of a street scene in Old Pasadena]
Parking meters with revenue return

• City of Pasadena offered to return all parking meter revenue to Old Pasadena
• Merchants and property owners immediately agreed to install meters
• 690 meters operate until midnight, and on Sunday
• Meters yield $1.2 million a year for Old Pasadena’s 15 blocks, about $80,000 per block.
Old Pasadena. We’ve come a long way. This might seem silly to some people, but if not for our parking meters, it’s hard to imagine that we’d have the kind of success we’re enjoying. They’ve made a huge difference. At first it was a struggle to get people to agree with the meters. But when we figured out that the money would stay here, that the money would be used to improve the amenities, it was an easy sell.”

Marilyn Buchanan, Chair, Old Pasadena Parking Meter Zone Advisory Board
Turning Small Change into Big Changes
Downtown Merchants Support the Parking Meters!

Downtown Ventura, May 5, 2011 - The overwhelming consensus downtown is that the meters are working! Downtown business owners were interviewed and business surveys were conducted over the past two weeks along Main Street in downtown Ventura. The downtown merchants gave the managed parking system a thumbs up with 83% surveyed in support of the meters, 13% neutral, and 4% not in support the meters.

In addition, the revenue generated from the meters is being reinvested into the downtown. The funds help pay for a dedicated police officer and nine police cadets. This has resulted in an overall decrease in crime by 40% and a 15% decrease in calls for service. Funds are also used for new improvements like additional lighting for parking lots, new planters and plant materials, and a cross-the-street banner planned for installation this summer.

Free Wi-Fi is yet another benefit made possible by the meters. Residents and visitors can stay “connected” through the outdoor network provided by the Downtown Parking Management program.
Parking Benefit Districts

Transportation management tool.
- Reduces traffic congestion, air pollution, and fuel consumption.

Economic development tool.
- Makes curb parking available, increases sales and property tax revenue, and employs people.
3. Remove Off-street Parking Requirements
The solution is in the site.
Effects of removing parking requirements and building job-adjacent housing on former parking lots

Create jobs
Increase the housing supply
Reduce time spent commuting
Reduce spending on cars and fuel
Reduce traffic congestion and air pollution
Increase the demand for smart parking technology
Slow climate change
Pan-Ideological Support for Market-Priced Curb Parking

BEAR LEFT

KEEP RIGHT
Political support for market-priced curb parking, parking benefit districts, and no off-street parking requirements

Liberals will see that it increases public spending.
Conservatives will see that it relies on markets and reduces government regulation.
Environmentalists will see that it reduces energy consumption, air pollution, and carbon emissions.
Businesses will see that it unburdens enterprise.
New Urbanists will see that it improves urban design and enables people to live at high density without being overrun by cars.
Libertarians will see that it increases the opportunities for individual choice.

Property-rights advocates will see that it reduces regulations on land use.

Developers will see that it reduces building costs.

Residents will see that it pays for neighborhood public improvements.

Affordable housing advocates will see that it reduces the cost of building new housing.

Neighborhood activists will see that it devolves public decisions to the local level.

Local elected officials will see that it reduces traffic congestion, encourages infill redevelopment, and pays for local public services without raising taxes.
All of us, if we are reasonably comfortable, healthy and safe, owe immense debts to the past.

There is no way, of course, to repay the past. We can only repay those debts by making gifts to the future.

Jane Jacobs
We--you and I, and our government--must avoid the impulse to live only for today, plundering, for our own ease and convenience, the precious resources of tomorrow.

Dwight Eisenhower
As our case is new, so must we think anew, and act anew.

Abraham Lincoln
Reform depends on leadership from all of you.
AGRICULTURE ON A 50-FOOT LOT

A drawing of small agriculture on a 50-foot lot. See Agriculture on a 50 foot lot. (Courtesy Sandy Sorlien.).
DIAGRAM OF 50-FOOT LOT

How to make the most of a lot 50 x 145 feet, as planned by Prof. C. L. Schufeldt. An acre is nearly six times as large.

KEY
1. Chickens.
2. Rabbits, two or more stories.
3. Plums.
4. Tool and Feed House.
5. Apricots.
6. Camphors.
7. Fig.
8. Walnut.
11. Avocado.
13. Orange.
15. Lemon.
17. Blackberries, Loganberries, and Raspberries.
18. Grape-covered Pergola.
20. Cement walk.
22. Rosebushes (rose garden).
24. Geraniums.
25. Pyrethrum Aurea (hedge).
27. Hydrangea.
28. Poinsettia.
29. Fuchsia.
30. Hibiscus.
32. Grevillea thomanniana.
33. Ceprosma.
34. Olive.
35. Mahonia aquifolium.
36. Pittosporum eugenioides.
37. Climbing rose.
38. Vegetable gardens.
40. Clothes lines.
41. Hot bed and cold frame.
42. Compost hole.
43. Ferns.
44. Grapevine over garage.
45. Kumquat.

One-half the living expense for a family of five persons may be obtained from a lot 50 x 145.

Author: C. L. Schufeldt, 1124 West 18th St. Los Angeles, Cal.

Drawn by S. L. Berry, 1303 West Pico St., Los Angeles, Cal.
FOOD MOVEMENT OF LEAN COMMUNITIES

From Ann Daigle, a draft white paper on hyper-local food (and “slow food”).
The Food Movement of Lean Communities
Ann B. Daigle

Executive Summary

The Cottage Food movement, which exemplifies aspects of Lean Urbanism at every step along the food chain, is a highly prolific economic and cultural trend in America winning small, local battles against corporate food - the most highly consolidated industry in the world. Entrepreneurs of the “farm to fork” trend are working locally and collaboratively to wrestle control over food access and community health and revolutionize the food culture in their regions. Strict health regulations and challenges from the established food industry can be overcome if groups work together to change state legislation and local codes, join existing networks for education, marketing and distribution and learn from successful campaigns that take advantage of citizens’ support for growing and eating local. Importantly, lessons from the food movement can apply to other industries.

Statement of Need – “Food Is Power”

The current system of centralized food inspection, industrial production and consolidated cheap-food purchasing has not eradicated worldwide hunger as touted. Rather it has replaced malnourishment with high-sugar, high-fat, high-carbohydrate, low-value calories. It has narrowed food choices in much of the industrialized world, is inhibiting self-sufficiency in developing countries and has lead to the highest incidence of obesity, child diabetes and diet-related diseases ever.

“Food is Power.” Food is a basic need of every healthy community food and is integral to a Lean Urbanism. The food industry employs the most under-privileged segments of the community who are overwhelmingly young, poor, immigrant and women. Yet these groups can be empowered by the vast number of diverse food-related opportunities without reliance on outside assistance. Local food is healthier, better tasting and contributes to local economies at every point in the farm to fork chain, making it one of the most powerful opportunities for self-sufficiency in a Lean Urban region.

Today, agribusiness monopolies, processors, packagers and distribution operations dominate the world food industry. Nearly 80 percent of Farm Bill subsidies go to the largest 10 percent of farms in America. The five largest grocery chains control one-half the entire grocery market, and Walmart uses an unsustainable “trucking culture” to capture one quarter of every dollar Americans spend on groceries.

Agricultural patents are abused by a handful of biotechnology corporations and one-third of the world’s seeds are controlled by four companies. Farmers’ share of profits has continued to decline while corporate power has grown and prices for consumers have risen. Customers see filled mega stores and think they are getting increased choice. In actuality conglomerates package their products under different brand names, decreasing real choice and falsely presenting an appearance of fair competition.

The “farm to fork” movement is fighting back and well underway in communities all around the world. It arguably started as “Slow Food” in Italy by a mayor disgruntled with the loss of
the traditional, pleasurable cooking and dining experience.

Today there are over 150,000 more farms in America than there were a dozen years ago. The number of farmers' markets has tripled. Although locally produced food only accounts for four percent of the grocery market (2012 figure), it is rapidly trending upward. More than 1,400 new grocers have recently opened in the U.S. selling primarily local specialty items. To compete for customer preferences, more conventional grocers are stocking local products. Restaurants and food trucks featuring regional fare and the home-based cottage food industries are thriving, having overcome many recent hurdles.

The local food production industry is an eclectic movement that includes various-sized growers, a whole system of food "gatherers and marketers" and food outlets. Entrepreneurs are successfully redefining food culture and finding new ways to generate income in ways that enhance all aspects of Lean Urbanism. Many are connected to educational networks, wellness care and nutritional programs, and are growing support spinoff businesses for warehousing and delivery as well as improving individual and community economies.

Included are restaurants, caterers, food trucks and popup cafés, home canners and bakers, shared kitchens and Mom and Pop co-operatives. Retired school teachers are making a living off their grandmother’s cookie recipes, young entrepreneurs are using Spin Farming to maximize profits from minimal space and nutrition professionals and social activists are improving school lunches.

The road to success has been challenging, with hurdles from zoning codes to state and local health regulations to legal opposition by organized consolidators, grocers and restaurant associations.

**Farming**

Sustainable farms require more workers so create more jobs, and are less highly leveraged financially. They do a better job of feeding people on smaller plots of land than their industrialized counterparts. While per-acre increases in productivity have stagnated in industrial farms, sustainable practices have increased productivity by up to 90 percent.

According to the National Restaurant Association (http://www.restaurant.org/News-Research/Research/What-s-Hot) the biggest long-term trend in the food movement is knowing where one’s food comes from and understanding its nutritional value. This is great news for Lean Urbanism and for farmers who increasingly provide restaurant chefs, conventional groceries, specialty stores and meat markets with high-quality local food.

A 2012 U.S. Department of Agriculture Census of Agriculture (http://www.agcensus.usda.gov/Newsroom/2014/05_02_2014.php) shows that young, beginning principal operators are up 12 percent in 5 years - up 21 percent for Hispanics - and more likely to be women. Farms using renewable energy have doubled and sustainable practices are likewise up. Internet use has jumped sharply and farmers are increasingly selling directly to their customers, omitting expensive middlemen and improving the foods’ freshness and health benefits.
Every size and variety of farm and garden that can enhance Lean Urbanism along the entire rural-to-urban Transect is now represented within cities - traditional family farms and groves, urban farms, commercial gardens, plots, edible co-ops, CSAs, community gardens, civic fruit trees on public ROW, greenhouses, small lean-tos and backyard raised gardens. Regionally, seed exchanges and heirloom varieties of fruits and vegetables are surging, as are free-range, humanely raised chickens, ducks, rabbits and grazing animals such as cattle, goats and lamb. Local dairy products - milk, cheese and yogurt - feature regional specialties produced using rediscovered traditional techniques.

Most serious farmers still choose traditional rural locations, protecting land from potential sprawl. Zoning and Homeowners Associations have presented the most opposition to urban and suburban food growing, but are losing battles as citizens demand the ability to raise tomatoes and edible gardens in their front yards and to host coops and chicken runs.

An extensive report by the Turner Environmental Law Clinic for the City of Atlanta (http://www.law.emory.edu/about-emory-law/news-article/article/turner-environmental-clinic-reports-on-urban-agriculture-in-16-us-metros.html) looked at regulations nationwide and found no single approach. However, most cities do incorporate provisions in their zoning ordinances for urban agriculture, sales of produce and keeping animals (primarily chickens, small livestock and bees), and address issues such as aesthetics and upkeep, setbacks and buffers, water access, impacts to property values, runoff and pesticides.

**Food Preparation**

Preparing food to sell has proved more of a challenge, for obvious health and sanitation reasons. The cottage food industry involves food prepared from home kitchens. Larger efforts involve shared commercial kitchens, co-ops and food industry incubators for small scale packaged operations and restaurants. Its diverse formats offer great potential to reform physical space and opportunities and access for people in Lean Urbanism.

During the previous decade the packaged food industry mounted a campaign against the threat of home producers. Cities began inhibiting small locals. In response to the resulting public outcry and backed by a nationwide organized effort, all but four states have enacted legislation allowing individuals who bake, jar and can from home to sell their products at fairs, farmers markets or directly to the customer. Most limit the products and unfortunately the dollar amount that can be sold, and allow no second-party resale. CottageFoods.org (http://cottagefoods.org/laws/) is a nonprofit that organizes information nationwide and rates the effectiveness of each state’s legislation. Approximately one half of U.S. states have “good” legislation while another third have regulations rated “poor or restrictive.”

Shared commercial kitchens have opened in many places for small producers desiring low-cost entry to cook and cater or package and sell foodstuffs on grocery shelves, an excellent opportunity for Lean Urbanism. Aside from large restaurant equipment, most also boast expensive packaging mechanisms, loading docks, networks of suppliers and end users, and provide professional and educational services for things like labeling requirements, bar code and packaging information, business plan development, marketing assistance and other support resources. Kitchens primarily offer tenants regular fixed leases or hourly rates and insurance coverage. New Orleans’ based Edible Enterprises is
A highly successful public/private collaboration being replicated in cities nationwide and is a model for Lean Urban food education and enterprise. It now has three full commercial kitchens, classroom space and over 60 small local-food clients. ([http://www.edibleenterprises.org](http://www.edibleenterprises.org))

Some incubators expand locals’ ability to grow food-based businesses and eventually require “graduation” to their own spaces. Others focus on all aspects of the restaurant industry and are NGOs planted at mixed-use corners in neighborhoods to increase skills and opportunities for underserved residents. Others grow production and packaging startups intended for grocery shelves. Some are highly connected to educational and professional chef networks, or health programs in universities and hospitals – a great way to expand community-building in Lean Urbanism projects.

For example, the ReFresh Project ([http://broadcommunityconnections.org/projects/refresh](http://broadcommunityconnections.org/projects/refresh)) is an outgrowth of the Broad Street Main Street program in New Orleans in collaboration with Holly Grove Farm, the Tulane Teaching Kitchen and Goldring Center for Culinary Medicine, the nonprofit restaurant training facility Liberty Kitchens, and Whole Foods. They are committed to handling locally grown products, expanding food industries and access to them, and training medical students and the public about healthy cooking and eating. ([http://tulane.edu/news/releases/pr05012013.cfm](http://tulane.edu/news/releases/pr05012013.cfm))

**Market & Distribution Networks**

Developing markets for local farmers and producers is the most critical part of a successful local food chain, the most difficult to grow, and among the most creative being organized using Lean Urbanism strategies and tactics. Entrepreneurs are experimenting with models of organization, locations of permanent and temporary markets, sales and delivery options and primarily negotiating outside the conventional food service networks - many as socially conscious nonprofits. By establishing and nourishing networks, they are maximizing self-reliance, the percentage of profits that go to the farmer/producer and value accrued to the customer.

Aside from the traditional farmers markets are CSAs (Community Supported Agriculture) and Co Ops that offer regular memberships for weekly baskets of fresh food. Startup distribution companies partner with local producers to creatively organize sales online and offer customers regular home delivery or pickup at central warehouses.

Food trucks are organizing around the country to alter what are probably the most stringent regulations and organized opposition in the food industry. Consistent health codes are an issue, but more important are zoning and other city codes that address where they can locate and the hours they can operate. Primary opposition is from the powerful restaurant and hospitality industry, which sees mobile food trucks as a threat to brick and mortar businesses.

Many places like Portland have good operating codes, but severely limit locations and hours of food truck operation. After a protracted fight, New Orleans adopted one of the most progressive ordinances in the U.S., allowing trucks to utilize public ROW and locate
virtually anywhere without restricting time of day hours except to limit them. Despite controversy, studies show that food trucks are a great, Lean Urban strategy to uncover market demand and identify successful locations for permanent business - which some food trucks have accomplished.

Restaurants are the second largest employers in the nation. They command an impressive 62 percent of the U.S. employee workforce who are prominently women, immigrants and the poor. The conventional brick and mortar model is a tough and expensive industry to break into, however, so testing vendors’ and chefs’ concepts and food translates into a smart, lean business practice. One Lean Urbanism solution is the pop-up café, which is a temporary setup, often in a larger commercial or civic space, that connects and markets to its target customers primarily via social media.

Recommendation

Communities should pay attention to local food trends and the people involved, and empower all aspects of the agriculture and cottage food movement to make it a key enabler of Lean Urbanism – from farming to gathering to producing and marketing. Given the strong jobs track record and health impacts of the food industry, it has the potential to redefine the physical, cultural, social and economic condition of blocks and neighborhoods, towns, cities and regions.

This is natural for immigrants and especially women, who have always been involved in the nurturing aspects of food growing, cooking and sharing to preserve and mingle their traditions with others, make people happy and create local specialties. African Americans, Vietnamese and Hispanics are responsible for more recent changes in America as the Irish, English, French and Italian were before them. Their impact is visible in both urban and suburban locations, from urban main streets to residential back yards.

The local food movement is Lean Urbanism at its most basic and its most valuable - its most sustainable, sensuous and spiritual.

_____________

GREAT QUOTES

Food is the strongest thread in the fabric of our day."
~ Ann Daigle 😊

“Food to a large extent is what holds a society together and eating is linked to deep spiritual experiences.”
~ Peter Farbes & George Armelagos, “Consuming Passions"

Laughter is brightest where food is best.”
~ Old Irish Proverb

“You don’t need a silver fork to eat good food.”
~ Chef Paul Prudhomme
“If you really want to make a friend, go to someone’s house and eat with him… the people who give you their food give you their heart.”
~ Cesar Chavez

“Food should be fun.”
~ Thomas Keller

“Food is our common ground, a universal experience.”
~ James Beard

“Maybe a person’s time would be as well spent raising food as raising money to buy food.”
~ Frank A. Clark
ADAPTIVE AGRICULTURAL REUSE

(Courtesy Steve Coyle.).
Because we don't think about future generations, they will never forget us.

Henrik Tikkanen
ARTICLE 3. NEW COMMUNITY SCALE PLANS

The text on the right-hand page is available to activate Table AAR-1 as regulatory.

ARTICLE 3. NEW COMMUNITY SCALE PLANS

The first program consists of growing trees for carbon sequestration; the second, cultivating dedicated, non-food energy crops in marginal agriculture, pasture, and abandoned lands instead of prime arable land. Both provide benefits to the soil, the economy, the environment, and the city or town.

These programs may be administered by municipalities, counties, townships, state, or other governmental agencies, and/or by private and non-profit organizations. The planting and maintenance of tree stands for carbon sequestration, and the cultivation and harvesting of cellulosic biofuels, may occur on public or private land.

Carbon Sequestration through Reforestation and Afforestation

Carbon sequestration through reforestation and afforestation (developing new forests) consists of the long-term absorption and storage of carbon dioxide or other forms of carbon through tree planting. Besides mitigating climate change effects, planting or replanting of trees on marginal crop and pasture lands can create greenbelts around and between urban areas, and transfers CO2 from the atmosphere to the new biomass. Applications may include linear tree stands at urban edges, tree farms and/or productive fruit and nut orchards that sequester carbon during the healthy life of the tree.

Cellulosic Biofuels Grown on Marginal Crop and Pasture Lands

Cellulosic Biofuels are non-food crops or inedible waste energy fuels produced from wood, grasses, or the non-edible parts of plants. Food prices and land use are not likely to be negatively affected by the growing of new sources of cellulosic biofuels and biomass on marginal crop and pasture lands, nor by converting the crop into fuel through bioenergy technologies. Examples range from sustainably farmed switchgrass, a native perennial grass capable of producing high yields on otherwise non-forested, fallow land, to willow, planted and sustainably managed on marginal land without irrigation or fertilizer.

CIVIC ZONES

Some examples of Carbon Sequestration Areas used as Civic Space are groves, forests, orchards, and meadows where hiking and birdwatching is permitted, or forested/planted greenways that include bikeways. A comprehensive approach to community planning should include attention to multi-function spaces. Biofuel production and Carbon Sequestration Areas may certainly occur outside planned Community Units, preferably as part of a Transfer of Development Rights (TDR) program. See Section 2.4.3 of the base code. However, if these areas are not within walking distance of the residents of the Community Unit, they cannot be counted as part of the SmartCode’s Civic Space allocation for that pedestrian shed.

The Consolidated Agrarian Settlement (CAS) and Clustered Land Development (CLD) Community Units are especially appropriate for DACS and Cellulosic Biofuels programs as described on the following pages, because of their rural character. See Section 3.3. of the base code for Community Unit types.

(Article 10 of the SmartCode.)

ARTICLE 5. BUILDING & LOT SCALE PLANS

5.X BUILDING FUNCTION

x. Cellulosic biofuel farming of wood, grasses, or non-food plants shall meet or exceed the latest 2010 draft of the Council on Sustainable Biomass Production (CSBP) Standards for dedicated energy products.

5.X SPECIFIC TO ZONES T1, T2

x. Cellulosic biofuel farming of wood, grasses, or non-food plants shall meet or exceed the latest 2010 draft of the Council on Sustainable Biomass Production (CSBP) Standards for dedicated energy products.

ARTICLE 7. DEFINITIONS OF TERMS

Biofuel: energy derived from a renewable biological source
Cellulosic: comprised of plant material
CO2e: the unit of measurement used to compare the relative climate impact of the different greenhouse gases. The CO2e quantity of any greenhouse gas is the amount of carbon dioxide that would produce the equivalent global warming potential.
Specific SmartCode annotated

**Table AAR-1: Biofuels & Carbon Sequestration**

This table may be advisory only, or activated as regulatory by the text on the preceding page.

**Cellulosic Biofuels Grown on Marginal Crop and Pasture Lands**

1. The program consists of market and/or regulatory incentives for the cultivation of dedicated, non-food energy crops in marginal agriculture, pasture, and abandoned public and private land.

2. While biomass energy can be derived from garbage, wood, waste, landfill gases, and alcohol fuels, this program is limited to plants approved, recommended, and/or certified by the Council on Sustainable Biomass Production (CSBP) Standards for dedicated energy products. These may include miscanthus, switchgrass, hemp, poplar, and willow, though the first two contain the highest potential for conversion into a biofuel or biodiesel. The program should not include biomass sources primarily used for the generation of heat, especially those that emit significant amounts of carbon dioxide, methane or nitrous oxide.

3. The program anticipates that, over the next ten years, Cellulosic biofuels will become standard facilities for producing biologically-active chemicals and materials from biomass. Biorefineries will become chemical production facilities in the ecological value of the land and protection from built development.

4. The program can implement a TDR program to help preserve existing and potential biofuel crop lands.

5. Cellulosic biofuels reduce CO2e, the unit of measurement used to compare the relative climate impact of the different greenhouse gases. (The CO2e quantity of any greenhouse gas is the amount of carbon dioxide that would produce the equivalent global warming potential.) On February 3, 2010, the EPA finalized new regulations for the National Renewable Fuel Standard Program for 2010 and beyond. This program will increase the required volumes of renewable fuel to 36 billion gallons per year by 2022.

**Carbon Sequestration Program Components**

1. The program consists of methodology for sequestering carbon through tree planting on public and private land.

2. The program requires that the landowner construct a bioenergy facility that integrates cellulose/biomass conversion processes and equipment to produce fuels, power, and value-added chemicals from biomass. Biorefineries will become standard facilities for producing biologically-active chemicals and materials from biomass. The jurisdiction may employ zoning and economic development funding as incentives for the facility, and to create a market for local biofuel crop yields.

3. The jurisdiction can implement a TDR program to help preserve existing and potential biofuel crop lands.

4. The jurisdiction can implement a TDR program to help preserve existing and potential biofuel crop lands.

5. Each agreement requires that the landowner plant and maintain tree stands on a designated parcel or parcels approved by the jurisdiction. Each transaction benefits both parties: the landowner receives a revenue stream from the jurisdiction based on the monetized carbon market value of the permanent carbon sequestration, in total CO2e metric tons. Additional benefits include an increase in the ecological value of the land and protection from built development.

6. Each agreement requires that the landowner plant and maintain tree stands on a designated parcel or parcels approved by the jurisdiction. Each transaction benefits both parties: the landowner receives a revenue stream from the jurisdiction based on the monetized carbon market value of the permanent carbon sequestration, in total CO2e metric tons. Additional benefits include an increase in the ecological value of the land and protection from built development.

**Table AAR-1: Biofuels & Carbon Sequestration**

This table provides ways of incorporating Cellulosic Biofuel production and Carbon Sequestration orchards and tree farms along the Transect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Municipality</th>
<th>TABLE AAR-1: BIOFUELS &amp; CARBON SEQUESTRATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cellulosic Biofuels</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Circular Crop Plan</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Row Crop Plan</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Segmentation Orchard Plan</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Segmentation Green Belt Plan</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

*BY RIGHT*  
*BY WARRANT*
• Donate/No Harvest: Landowner or jurisdiction's agent plants trees. Landowner donates land in Year 5 to a qualified land management agency or non-profit; jurisdiction retains carbon rights for 99 years, renewable.

• Donate/Thin: Landowner or jurisdiction's agent plants trees. Landowner donates land in Year 5 to a qualified land management agency or non-profit; jurisdiction retains carbon rights at least 99 years, renewable.

• Lease/Harvest: Jurisdiction's agent leases land for 99 years usage; plants trees and retains responsibility for crop maintenance up to 99 years with a guarantee of no timber harvest. Jurisdiction retains carbon rights up to 99 years. Forest is harvested between Year 71-100.

• For landowner of forest land, the “exercise price” for each of these options is the present value of the discounted capital costs associated with conducting the specific activity. The “donate” option only can be exercised in Project Year 5. The “Thin” option only can be exercised in Year 50 at the earliest.

5. The jurisdiction may develop a local mechanism to secure the carbon credits derived from the sequestration. For example, the city could develop a local “carbon bank” for the sale, purchase, and transfer of carbon credits.

6. Transfer of Development Rights (TDR) may be considered to redirect urban growth away from sequestration or “sending” areas and toward “receiving areas” appropriate for sustainable development. The sending area landowners receive compensation for preserving the sequestration land, and receiving area owners or developers experience greater profits; the jurisdiction implements its sequestration goals using little or no community funds.

7. The program requires, for each target region, an estimate of the lands both suitable and available for long-term carbon storage in trees and receiving area owners or developers experience compensation for preserving the sequestration values.

8. A minimum land area threshold of about 20 acres per contract is recommended for accounting purposes, though smaller parcels may be aggregated into larger, single holdings. Tree stands may be grown in linear configurations sufficiently wide to maintain a functional wind break, habitat needs, visual screening, or “blow-over” protection from shallow root species such as Douglas fir.

9. The program requires verification and reporting protocols to assess the continued health and growth or productivity of each eco-parcel and certify periodic estimates of sequestration values.

10. Besides a formal program, trees can be “infilled” or planted along public rights-of-way as part of its urban forest program.

Additional Program Considerations
1. Both programs require customization, beginning with the research of and adaptation to the environmental, economic, political, and social context. They require initial research in biogeochemistry, soil science, range management science, plant ecology and ecosystem ecology to determine the best approach for long-term carbon storage in trees and soil, and for the production of periodic cellulosic biofuel wood, grasses, or non-food plants.

2. The programs can result in the creation and sustaining of multi-function, biologically diverse greenbelts, croplands, orchards, and forests around cities and within counties, while incentivizing the reclamation, enhancement, and protection of marginal agriculture, pasture, and abandoned lands. The sequestration of carbon and the production of non-food biofuels will reduce atmospheric CO2e, while the growing of cellulosic biofuels offers farmers a local rotational or dedicated non-till crop. Combined with the development of a local biorefinery, the program can provide a marketable biofuel product, and/or a source of clean community energy.

3. As a first step, a small demonstration project is recommended to implement a program with minimal risk.

Estimated CO2e Metric Tons Sequestration Values
The values below represent general benefits from each program, and should be locally calibrated for each specific application of this Module. This Appendix is advisory only.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>UNIT</th>
<th>Mean Annual Seq, CO2e - metric tons per acre per year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vineyard/orchard</td>
<td>per acre</td>
<td>0.59 to 1.66 [1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oak woodlands</td>
<td>per acre</td>
<td>3.71 [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coniferous forest</td>
<td>per acre</td>
<td>8.89 [2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grasslands/shrub</td>
<td>per acre</td>
<td>unknown [3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urban</td>
<td>per tree</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[2] Source: Baldacci et al. (unpublished)
[3] not quantified (no factor) and offset by grazing emissions

EROEI (Energy Return on Energy Invested)

- biodiesel: 3:1
- coal: 1.1 to 10:1
- ethanol: 1:2:1
- natural gas: 1.1 to 10:1
- hydropower: 10:1
- hydrogen: 0.5:1
- nuclear: 4:1
- oil: 1.1 to 100:1
- oil sands: 2:1
- solar PV: 3:1 to 20:1
- wind: 3:1 to 20:1

Source: Dana Visalli, 2006
www.energybulletin.net/node/14745

Cellulosic Biofuel vs. Conventional Fuel Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUEL SOURCE</th>
<th>EROEI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>biodiesel</td>
<td>3:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coal</td>
<td>1.1 to 10:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ethanol</td>
<td>1:2:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>natural gas</td>
<td>1.1 to 10:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydropower</td>
<td>10:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hydrogen</td>
<td>0.5:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nuclear</td>
<td>4:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oil</td>
<td>1.1 to 100:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oil sands</td>
<td>2:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solar PV</td>
<td>3:1 to 20:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wind</td>
<td>3:1 to 20:1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Dana Visalli, 2006
www.energybulletin.net/node/14745
AFFORDABLE HOUSING INCENTIVES MODULE
By Munsun Park, Sandy Sorlien, and Emily Talen, PhD.
Exclusionary, discriminatory, and unnecessary regulations constitute formidable barriers to affordable housing, raising costs by 20% to 35% in some communities.

Jack Kemp
The Affordable Housing Incentives Module is regulatory. It is written with "shall" language to be inserted into the Base Code with little or no modification. The extent to which this content may be implemented is subject to state law and local political support. If the municipality is unable to mandate these standards, they may be changed to "should" language, especially where "shall" appears in colored text, or included in a separate set of design guidelines.

1.X AFFORDABLE HOUSING INCENTIVES

See also the notes for the Incentives Module, subsections 1.X.1a, g & h. Other incentives may be added particular to the local situation. For example, if there are oversized lots in an area where the community supports adding affordable housing, a subdivision incentive may be possible, whereby a property owner can create a substandard lot if it is dedicated to a deed-restricted affordable unit. Municipalities may want to specify a percentage of affordable housing after which the incentives would apply. It is important to design affordable units so that there is no discernable outward difference between them and nearby market rate units. For more detailed policy provisions, see the Affordable Housing Policy Guide at www.transect.org.
ARTICLE 1. GENERAL TO ALL PLANS
1.X  AFFORDABLE HOUSING INCENTIVES
1.X.1  To encourage the provision of Affordable Housing, the Legislative Body grants the following incentives:
   a. Applications containing Affordable Housing that meets this Code shall be processed administratively by the CRC. Others shall be processed by Variance.
   b. Applications containing Affordable Housing shall be processed with priority over others, including those with earlier filing dates, providing that other applications are not pushed past their deadlines.
   c. Highest priority for processing and for approval shall be given to applications involving partnership with a community land trust or other non-profit organization responsible for ensuring the long-term retention of the Affordable Housing.
   d. The municipality shall waive or reduce review fees for applications containing Affordable Housing.
   e. The municipality may increase Density for projects containing Affordable Housing.
   f. The municipality may waive or reduce parking requirements for Affordable Housing units located within a quarter mile of a transit stop.
   g. The municipality shall provide a property tax exemption for Affordable Housing units meeting established criteria.
The article, *Subsidiarity: (Our Localism): A Fundamental Principle Catholic Social Teaching* by Brother David Andrews, CSC. Published in Catholic Rural Life. (Courtesy Christopher (Kip) Bergstrom.)
Brother David Andrews, CSC

Subsidiarity: (Our Localism)
A Fundamental Principle in Catholic Social Teaching

In February of the year 2000, Pope John Paul II spoke on democracy to the Holy See’s Academy of Social Sciences and reminded his audience that the health of a political community is measured to a large extent with the thermometer of the citizens’ participation in public life. Keeping the present phenomenon of globalization in mind, at the social level this means that “smaller social units – whether nations themselves, communities, ethnic or religious groups, families or individuals – must not be namelessly absorbed into a greater conglomeration, thus losing their identity and having their prerogatives usurped.”

The Holy Father asserted that “this is nothing other than the principle of subsidiarity, which requires that a community of a higher order should not interfere in the internal life of a community of a lower order, depriving the latter of its rightful functions; instead the higher order should support the lower order and help it to coordinate its activity with that of the rest of society, always with a view to serving the common good. Public opinion needs to be educated in the importance of the principle of subsidiarity for the survival of a truly democratic society.”

Abraham Lincoln also understood the principle of subsidiarity:

The legitimate object of government is to do for a community of people whatever they need to have done but cannot do at all, or cannot so well do for themselves in their separate and individual capacities. In all that the people can individualistically do as well for themselves, government ought not to interfere.

Subsidiarity has been recognized by many writers and is one of the seven major principles of Catholic social teaching. It is usually defined by a quote from Pope Pius XI, in Quadragesimo Anno: (1931)

Still the most weighty principle, which cannot be set aside or changed, remains fixed and unshaken in social philosophy. Just as it is gravely wrong to take from individuals what they can accomplish by their own initiative and industry and give it to the community, so also it is an injustice and at the same time a grave evil and disturbance of right order to assign a greater and higher association what lesser and subordinate organizations can do. For every social activity ought of its very nature to furnish help (subsidium) to the members of the body social, and never destroy and absorb them.

In common experience subsidiarity can be compared to parents teaching their children to walk. At times you have to let go, so that the child can take steps on her/his own. You don’t do for others what they can do for themselves! So too, with communities, higher level communities, states to towns, nations to states, should not subvert or substitute themselves and their decisions for the decision making that can and should take place at the lower level. When higher levels intervene, it should be a matter of co-operation and co-ordination rather than in power grabs.

The term subsidiarity means “help” not destruction or absorption. Subsidiarity stands for the proposition that action to accomplish a legitimate government objective should in principle be taken at the lowest level of government effectively capable of addressing the
problem. (Pope Pius XI, Quadragesimo Anno, sec.79, 1931) Thus, subsidiarity is a bias toward the local.

Like federalism, subsidiarity seeks to ensure that when political entities unite in order to serve better their common ends (be they military, economic, or any other) they nevertheless retain sufficient decisional authority on the relevant subjects so that their subcommunities and populations enjoy in substantial measure the benefits of localism, respect, consideration, as much autonomy as possible. Virtues of self-determination, of flexibility, of preservation of local identities, diversity are part of the notion of subsidiarity.

Subsidiarity implies both a difficult factual inquiry and a delicate exercise in judgment.

Look at the facts:

1. Does a problem exist?
2. Does the government have the means to address it?
3. Does the local or state government have the capacity to deal with it?

Political judgment is the called for tool, considering the efficacy of state action, tolerableness of the situation in which localities are relied upon to act and fail to do so adequately, costs of variations in performance from state to state and so on.

The principle of subsidiarity can be applied to congregations, municipalities, towns, and villages, to smaller communities of every kind. It can be applied to issues relating counties to states, small rural schools within a regional school system, to county and township ordinances and regulation making. In all these circumstances it tends to give a bias toward the local communities and local constituents having significant voice in decisions impacting the local communities. It is a fundamental principle, linked to other principles of Catholic Social Teaching. It is a practical application of the belief that each human being has dignity. As such, their dignity needs to be respected when the person is part of a community whose boundaries are smaller or whose capacity for initiative is limited by scale or circumstances. Small is beautiful and deserving of respect, of being treated with dignity.

The principle of subsidiarity should rightly be invoked in support of local control and home rule, of respecting the right of communities to zone, to site, to regulate land use, to enforce police powers ensuring communities health and well being. When states and federal powers limit the capacities of towns, villages, counties and municipalities of self-governance, they frequently violate the right order of things. They violate the principle of subsidiarity.

The same is true for corporations organized under civil laws and provided a right to organize by the state or federal powers. We have become well aware of the enervating effects that flow from over-reliance on state institutions. So that state power can be relied upon too much limiting the power of local people to act. Over reliance on “private” institutions produces the same effects. The character of dependence does not change because that dependence is upon a corporate body rather than the state. As the social writer Alexis de Toqueville so clearly understood, individuals and society alike become self governing only by regularly and repeatedly engaging in acts of self-determination. It is the habit that sustains the condition. Alexis de Toqueville celebrated subsidiarity in the local governments of the early republic. For Alexis de Toqueville, small local political communities were seen as essential to a vital democracy:

Local institutions are to liberty what primary schools are to science; they put it within the people’s reach; they teach people to appreciate its peaceful enjoyment and accustom them to make use of it. Without local institutions a nation may give itself a free government, but it has not got the spirit of liberty.

As corporations become increasingly independent of the state, as the power of initiative becomes more and more theirs, subsidiarity should become more and more a concern. The biggest danger today is that modern capitalism will overwhelm and dissolve the concrete, the local, and the particular, grass roots institutions, small-scale economies, local economies. A big power can drain small ponds and deconstruct what the British social thinker, Edmund Burke, called “the little platoons” of social life.

Hierarchical, top down schemes ultimately suggest that administrative specialists and organizational planners, experts, can anticipate not only what people’s ideas, needs, and desires will be but when they will have them. We are denied opportunities for self-determination; we are stripped of the conditions through which we actuate our human potential. We become objects of administration, instead of persons free and encouraged to engage in successively more significant acts of self-realization.

Subsidiarity:

- requires that social arrangements be ordered to enable individuals to assume personal responsibility
- condemns libertarian individualism that denies human social character
- denounces submergence of individuals into the “mass”
- rejects the notion that places “power” as the pivot in human relationships.
In recognition of the natural sociality of the human being, it can be used to encourage the revivification of small groups and mediating bodies where citizens learn self rule and respect for others.

Individuals and societies become self-governing only by repeatedly and regularly participating in acts of self-government. It is the habit that sustains the condition. Likewise we actuate our human potential through reflection and choice about the concrete details of life. As we become what we do, so are we stunted by our failure or lack of opportunity to assume personal responsibility.

The principle is an organizational norm applicable to institutions of every description, from town government and the other organizations of day-to-day life to transnational schemes like the European Economic Community. Subsidiarity applies as well to educational institutions and programs, social-welfare schemes, health care, and policies that bear on the well being of the foundational institution of civic and political life, the family.

In every context, the lesson is the same: since all rightly ordered societies exist for the individual, the emphasis in establishing any sort of social order must be on setting the conditions that will enhance opportunities for individuals to deliberate, choose, and act for themselves. Orders that fail to do so, because they are inconsistent with human character, eventually will collapse. To be authentically responsible, social and political orders must be structured in a way that permits individuals the maximum opportunity to act responsibly.

Persons, not institutions, are the ends of any society worthy of the name. If we are to avoid the iron cage that results from seeing bureaucracies or the market as our sole alternatives, subsidiarity stands as our guide.

There are several helpful resources for thinking about subsidiarity as a principle of social organization and economic life. I am listing several for your consideration below.


---

**SIGN UP FOR OUR WEEKLY E-BULLETIN**

The National Catholic Rural Life Conference sends out an e-bulletin about once a week with news about rural life and environmental justice issues. Mostly these are brief news items with links to more information on various websites. We also send out occasional action alerts, mainly about federal legislation on agriculture, environmental and energy issues.

Just send us your e-mail and we'll include you in our next e-mailing. We welcome anyone who wishes to receive these bulletins, and you can unsubscribe at any time.

**Please send your request to join to Tim Kautza at ncrlcck@mchsi.com**

(It is helpful to include your name, city and state; your organization and position title is also helpful, but not necessary.)

**Thank you for your interest in our work!**

---

**Read from headlines like...**

- World Conservationists Link Global Poverty with the Environment
- NAFTA Report on GMO Corn in Mexico Refuted By U.S.
- Hundreds Sign Prayer Petition for Elected Officials to Protect Creation
- Help Shape the Catholic Response to Global Climate Change
- World Bank Encourages Privatization and Cost Recovery
INSTITUTE FOR MARKET TRANSFORMATION CHECKLIST

A generalized checklist produced by the Institute for Market Transformation.
Successful strategies for improving compliance with building energy codes
Streamlining is the practice of improving building regulatory processes to remove overlap and duplication and create more efficient administrative procedures. When implemented properly, this report argues, it not only makes building departments more efficient and effective at enforcing construction code requirements, but also improves customer service and provides financial savings for the local government, its citizens, and private industry. This report examines how streamlining can improve compliance with building energy codes.

**Strategy Overview**

In this compliance model, governments analyze their building regulatory process, gather input from stakeholders, identify strengths and weaknesses, and determine how to make their process more efficient or “streamlined.” After burdensome and duplicative regulatory requirements are removed, local governments can focus on improving their administrative procedures to reduce the time it takes for a new building or building renovation to move through the regulatory process. Areas for improvement often include permit application processing, plan submission and review, and scheduling and conducting inspections. The application of information technology (IT) is a common way for local governments to streamline their process.

**Why Streamline?**

Burdensome and complicated regulatory processes can drive business out of town. A study published by the U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development states:

In the early 1990s, jurisdictions in the San Jose/Silicon Valley region were surprised when several large information technology firms moved their operations to Austin, Texas. Leadership flew to Austin to learn why. One of the major factors contributing to attracting firms to Austin was a streamlined building codes administration and enforcement program that reduced the amount of time (and cost) for processing permits, gaining plan reviews and conducting inspections.
According to the Alliance for Building Regulatory Reform in the Digital Age, “it is about increasing the efficiency of modern construction codes, rules and regulations and reducing the amount of time it takes to move a new building or building renovation through the regulatory process by as much as 80% annually, saving both the private and public sectors tens of billions of dollars.”

A response to a survey conducted by the National Conference of States on Building Codes and Standards (NCSBCS) and the Alliance provides evidence that streamlining worked in Ventura County, Calif. Ventura County noted that for its investment of $160,000 for a permits and inspections software package, the county had saved over $1,000,000 in costs over a six-year period, even as their staff shrank by three people and their workload increased by 80%. Furthermore, the final report from the survey stated:

Jurisdictions of all sizes ranging from Los Angeles, CA (population 3,649,000) to Cobleskill, NY (population 4,533) provided data documenting reductions in processing time from 20% to 80% with the application of information technology to one or more codes administration and enforcement processes. Jurisdictions also reported marked improvements in their relationships with their clients/stakeholders (the construction industry, citizens, and their elected officials).

Streamlining is one way for local governments to cut costs while improving services, but it can also have an impact on economic development.

**Streamlining and Economic Development**

As shown above in the example of the San Jose/Silicon Valley region, streamlining can impact economic development. A 2010 report from the National League of Cities and the International Economic Development Council, “The Role of Local Elected Officials in Economic Development: 10 Things You Should Know,” identifies the regulatory environment as one area to consider in a local economic development strategy. The report states: “For business leaders, time is money; they want to know that the regulatory process provides for timely, reliable and transparent resolution of key issues. If your city’s regulatory policies are riddled with delays, confusing and redundant steps and multiple approval processes, a prospective business may very well choose to locate or expand in another commu-
nity.” The report also suggests that elected officials should consider going through the process themselves as a new business or a developer would, to gain firsthand experience of the time, cost, hassles, and clarity of the process.

**Beginning the Streamlining Process**

**Regulatory Review**

The first step in the streamlining process is to determine what regulatory barriers may exist in a jurisdiction's code administration and enforcement program. This should include both an internal review, as well as soliciting input from clients and other stakeholders. A complete mapping (flow chart) of the regulatory process, across all agencies/departments involved, is essential to identifying areas for improvement. A few examples of burdensome or inefficient processes include:

- Excessive plan review time
- Lack of communication among departments involved in plan approval and/or having departments spread out across different buildings
- Lengthy and complicated process from permit application to certificate of occupancy
- Lengthy or confusing appeals/variance process
- Multiple applications/forms across departments
- Having mostly single-discipline inspectors and/or plan reviewers
- Multiple public hearings

Following the review of the regulatory process, a jurisdiction must identify the strengths and weaknesses, determine the “low-hanging fruit,” and prioritize needed changes. This should include a plan for working with the local governing body if changes to a regulation/ordinance or existing government structure are required to implement a more efficient process. For example, one area of weakness may be that each of the departments involved in the approval process is located in a separate building, leading to longer review times. Often consolidating these departments...
in one building will significantly improve the efficiency of the approval process, but this is likely to require approval of the local governing body. Alternatively, an investment in software can significantly enhance the efficiency of the approval process without the consolidation of departments, though it is still likely to require approval of the governing body. In Gillette, Wyo., an investment in electronic plan review software allows all city departments, as well as the county fire marshal and utilities involved in the plan review process, to receive all documents electronically.

**Identifying Areas to Streamline**

After inefficiencies in the regulatory framework have been fixed, it is time to determine what administrative areas are appropriate for streamlining. All cost-effective improvements that will enhance the compliance process can be targeted, including:

- **External Communication**
  
  Is the regulatory process (from start to finish) clearly described, including what applications need to be submitted and to where, who is responsible for approval, what is required for submission, what the anticipated time frame is, and what the appeals process is? Is it clear what codes are in effect? Are there printed and electronic materials that help convey the regulatory process?

- **Internal Communication**
  
  How do various offices/agencies/departments involved in the regulatory review process communicate? Is there a central tracking system? Is there one point person responsible for seeing a project through from start to finish? Who has decision-making authority?

- **Permit Applications**
  
  How are permit applications submitted (online, in-person, email)? What are the requirements for submission? How quickly are they processed? How are they tracked? Are pre-application meetings required for larger projects?
Streamlining Compliance Processes

• Plan Review
  How are plans submitted (electronic, paper copies), and to whom? What are the submittal requirements? How are they tracked throughout the review process? What is the average turnaround time?

• Inspections
  How are inspections scheduled (online, in-person, automated phone system)? Are inspectors “multi-discipline” so they can conduct multiple inspections in one site visit? Are inspections grouped by proximity to one another? How are inspection results tracked? How are inspections conducted (paper checklist, electronic checklist)?

• Staff Qualifications and Training
  Do staff have the appropriate qualifications/certifications for their area of responsibility? Are there continuing education requirements? Are staff encouraged/reimbursed or otherwise incentivized to pursue additional certifications?

• Code Compliance Through Education
  What is the inspection failure rate? Are the most common code infractions communicated to stakeholders (i.e., posted on the web or printed and given out)? Is there a training program or are there other educational materials for builders and design professionals to educate them on the building code and code compliance process? Proactive education can reduce inspection times and the number of code violations.

After a thorough review of potential areas to streamline, officials should determine techniques for streamlining those areas identified as the most promising for process improvement. The next section will explore techniques that have proved successful.

Strategies for Streamlining

Many governments across the United States have implemented streamlining to improve their code compliance processes. Information technology is a common and effective way to improve many of the areas listed above. When implementing a streamlining strategy, it is best to start slow, addressing one or two areas of weakness at a time and building upon success. Starting slow and obtaining successful results prevents resistance to future streamlining efforts.
External Communication

How well information is communicated to a local government’s customers (i.e., citizens, designers, builders, and developers) has a major impact on their impression of the services they receive. A clearly articulated web page, brochure, or checklist containing all the necessary information for various types of projects, permits, and approvals is key to understanding the regulatory process. Not only does this information assist the customer with understanding the building regulatory process, it helps to eliminate countless phone calls and emails with questions and needless disapprovals due to a lack of information. Fairfax County, Va., provides excellent information on its website, which clearly articulates all steps in the building regulatory process. For example, the publication on residential additions contains all the necessary steps from the pre-permit phase through the final inspection. Soliciting input from stakeholders is an easy and effective way to obtain valuable feedback on areas that need improvement.

Internal Communication

Internal communication is as much about organization as it is about proximity. An organized and cohesive system across all departments involved in the building regulatory process allows for ease in tracking projects and clear communication among all the players. In addition, having all the players under one roof facilitates better communication and provides the convenience of a “one-stop shop” for customers. The City of Savannah, Ga., has set up a “one-stop shop” called the Development Services Department, which consolidates all of the city’s engineering, inspections, and design and construction staff into one building. The use of software can also greatly enhance internal communication by providing ease of project tracking and status updates.

Permit Applications

A permit application is often the first official document submitted to begin the regulatory compliance process. A clearly written and easy to under-
stand permit application accompanied by a checklist of items required to be submitted with it, is an excellent way to reduce questions and frustration with processing incomplete applications. The City of Gillette, Wyo., provides a straightforward permit application that can be submitted as a hard copy or electronically and also provides a residential and commercial plan submittal checklist to ensure that plans submitted with the permit application contain the correct information.

Ventura County, Calif., provides a one-stop permitting webpage that provides step-by-step guidance to individuals seeking land use permits for residential, commercial, and industrial projects, including links to the permitting requirements and forms for all county and state departments involved in the permitting process. It is important to note that where software is used to process permit applications, it should be compatible with any electronic plan review software, which is discussed in the next section.

**Plan Review**

The plan review and approval process is one of the most complaint-ridden areas of the regulatory compliance process because it usually takes the longest. It is important that the plan review and approval process be clearly communicated from start to finish. Designers must know what codes they need to comply with and any specific local requirements. Local building departments need an effective way to track plans and revisions upon submission and to determine a plan’s status in the regulatory review process.

The City of Dallas, Texas, provides an application checklist and a list of required documents, as well as providing online access for design professionals and contractors to review the comments on their plan reviews. As mentioned earlier, Gillette, Wyo., also has an electronic plan review process that incorporates all responsible parties and gives customers “near real-time” online tracking of plans as they move through the review process. It is important to note that moving solely to an electronic plan review process may require a
change in state statutes allowing architects and engineers to electronically seal their plans. State elected officials should make this change, where necessary, to enable this very effective streamlining measure.

**Inspections**

Inspections are a major part of the regulatory compliance process. When not handled efficiently, they can be a logistical nightmare and lead to wasted time and money. An effective system for scheduling inspections is one key area for consideration in streamlining. A central system that allows for online as well as automated phone scheduling can reduce the administrative burden on office staff and add efficiency to the process. Scheduling inspections based on their proximity to one another can greatly reduce travel time, while employing multi-discipline inspectors can reduce the number of trips to one building site. The City of Coppell, Texas, requires all building inspections to be scheduled using either their online or automated phone scheduling system.

**Staff Qualifications and Training**

Having qualified staff and providing adequate training allows work to be done more efficiently. Building codes are continuously revised and updated, so it is imperative that code officials stay current as the codes are updated in their jurisdiction. Requiring certifications, such as those offered through the International Code Council (ICC) ([www.iccsafe.org](http://www.iccsafe.org)), is a great way of ensuring that local inspectors and plan reviewers have a minimum level of code knowledge. Requiring ICC Certifications (especially at the state level) allows for consistency across jurisdictions in establishing minimum qualifications for inspectors and code officials. Elected officials should encourage or require training for building department staff by providing funding for training and reimbursement for the cost of achieving certifications. Colleges and universities should explore the development of degree programs for inspectors and code officials. Pennsylvania requires any person engaged in the enforcement of the state’s Uniform Construction Code to be a Certified Code Official in each area of work they perform.
Code Compliance Through Education

Education is an effective strategy for improving code compliance rates and can help reduce inspection and plan review times. By educating local builders, tradesmen, and design professionals on code requirements, future violations can be reduced. Education can take many forms, including: printed brochures, online courses, classroom training, in-the-field training, and the publication of the most commonly found code infractions. Having local code officials conduct the training allows them to be seen as educators rather than just a policing authority. Code officials can also work through their local chapters of the ICC to provide this training.

Technology

As some of the examples above demonstrate, technology—including software, internet-based applications, mobile devices, electronic seals and signatures, and electronic storage—all have the potential to improve the efficiencies of various code compliance processes. Most jurisdictions across the U.S. have implemented some type of electronic process in place of a less efficient paper version. As technology continues to advance and become more affordable, and as stakeholders continue to request and expect internet-based solutions, the trend of electronic processes replacing paper will increase.

When local officials look to implement new software to enhance their existing processes, it is important that their decision consider how a new software program will interact with and be compatible with their existing programs and devices. For example, a jurisdiction should consider whether new electronic plan review software is compatible with existing electronic permitting, zoning, or finance software. Additionally, jurisdictions should consider their IT policies regarding the download of programs that may be required to view plans electronically. Many jurisdictions prohibit their staff from downloading any programs to their computers without approval from the administrator. Jurisdictions must ensure that their staff are equipped with the appropriate programs to view electronic plans.
Often, adopting new electronic tools is well suited for an overall streamlining initiative because it requires a close look at current processes when determining how to transfer them to electronic means. For example, Boca Raton, Fla., reduced its application types from more than 150 to 90 and its permit types from 130 to 12 during its process of moving to a new software program.

What Can Streamlining Do for Energy Efficiency?

The national model building energy codes have increased energy saving potential by nearly 30% from 2006 to 2012. Unfortunately, anecdotal evidence suggests that compliance rates with building energy codes are around 50%. Lack of enforcement is one reason for such low compliance rates. The reasons for inadequate enforcement include: (1) lack of funding for additional inspections, (2) lack of knowledge/understanding of building energy codes (qualified staff), and (3) building energy codes are seen as secondary to fire and life safety codes.

By improving the efficiency of regulatory and administrative processes, reasons (1) and (2) above can largely be mitigated. As shown in the Ventura County, Calif., example cited earlier, streamlining can provide substantial savings while improving services. Financial savings can be used to invest in new staff with energy code knowledge and/or certifications, to train and certify existing staff on energy codes, or to contract with a third party to provide energy code services. Improved efficiencies may also allow existing staff to provide more thorough plan review and inspections for building energy code requirements. By providing solutions for reasons (1) and (2), local building departments can treat building energy codes with the same attention as fire and life safety codes.

Conclusion

Streamlining building regulatory processes is a sensible “win-win” approach for government and industry. Improving regulatory and administrative efficiencies can save both time and money for the public and
private sectors while not de-regulating or compromising appropriate oversight and safety. When undertaking streamlining initiatives, jurisdictions should consider improvements to their enforcement of building energy code requirements. Building owners, home owners, and tenants who spend less money on their energy costs have more money to invest in the local economy (restaurants, shops, etc.).

Acknowledgements

IMT is grateful for the information provided by Jim Brown, Deputy Building Official, Gillette, Wyo.

ii. Alliance for Building Regulatory Reform in the Digital Age
iii. National Conference of States on Building Codes and Standards
iv. The Role of Local Elected Officials in Economic Development
v. Fairfax County, Virginia Building Permits Web Page
vi. Savannah, Georgia Development Services Department
vii. Gillette, WY Engineering and Development Services
viii. Ventura County, California One-Stop Permitting Webpage
ix. Dallas, TX Building Inspection Office
x. Coppell, TX Building Inspections
xi. Pennsylvania Dept. of Labor and Industry
xii. Avolve Software Corp.
ixiii. International Energy Conservation Code and ASHRAE Standard 90.1
About the Institute for Market Transformation

The Institute for Market Transformation (IMT), founded in 1996, is a Washington, D.C.-based 501(c)(3) nonprofit organization promoting energy efficiency, green building, and environmental protection in the United States and abroad. The prevailing focus of IMT’s work is energy efficiency in buildings. In particular, IMT aims to strengthen market recognition of the link between building energy efficiency and financial value. Our activities include technical and market research, policy and program development, and promotion of best practices and knowledge exchange. IMT is the U.S. hub of the Global Buildings Performance Network. For more information, visit www.imt.org.

About the Global Buildings Performance Network

The Global Buildings Performance Network (GBPN) has a mission to significantly reduce greenhouse gas emissions associated with building energy use by

- Promoting best practices in building energy efficiency and performance
- Offering world class energy efficiency expertise to policymakers and business leaders
- Advancing policies and programs that promote low carbon, energy-efficient buildings worldwide

The GBPN operates in the United States, Europe, China, and India with its global center in Paris. For more information, visit www.globalbuildings.org.
CITY OF PHILADELPHIA
PEDESTRIAN PLAZA
GUIDELINES & APPLICATION

FEBRUARY 2016
Introduction

The City of Philadelphia is pleased to partner with community groups, non-profits, and businesses to convert underutilized street segments into pedestrian plazas. Pedestrian plazas can dramatically improve the vitality of city public space and reinvigorate our streets, while calming traffic and clarifying intersection geometry.

Pedestrian plazas are permitted by the City of Philadelphia through its Streets Department. Pedestrian plaza hosts receive a one-year Pedestrian Enhancement Permit that is renewable for up to three years. To receive a Pedestrian Enhancement Permit, submit an application (see pages 7 – 13) demonstrating that the pedestrian plaza is consistent with the guidelines established in this document (see pages 4 – 6).

Questions should be directed to the Pedestrian Plaza Program Manager at:

Office of Transportation & Infrastructure Systems
1401 JFK Boulevard, Suite 1430
Philadelphia PA, 19102

Phone: 215-686-9001
Email: completestreets@phila.gov
# Table of Contents

- **Introduction** ......................................................................................................................................1
- **Placement Guidelines** ........................................................................................................................3
- **Design Guidelines** ..............................................................................................................................4
- **Guidelines for Operation** ..................................................................................................................6
- **Initial Pedestrian Enhancement Permit Application Process (Year 1)** ............................................7
- **Pedestrian Enhancement Permit Renewal (Years 2 & 3) and Replication Process (Year 4)** ......10
- **Pedestrian Plaza Application - I** .....................................................................................................11
- **Permit Special Conditions** ..............................................................................................................12
- **Sample Letter Of Support** ..............................................................................................................16
- **Insurance Requirements** .................................................................................................................17
- **Application Checklist** .....................................................................................................................19
Placement Guidelines

Pedestrian plaza locations are subject to review by the City’s Chief Traffic Engineer. The guidance listed below is subject to the Chief Traffic Engineer’s discretion and may be waived if the engineer feels the location and placement is appropriate.

Placement within the Neighborhood

- Pedestrian plazas should utilize excess roadway that does not play an integral role in circulation. Streets that cut diagonally across the grid or have redundant turning areas are especially good candidates for pedestrian plazas.
- Adjacent streets should have posted speed limits of no more than 25 MPH.
- Pedestrian plazas should be located near commercial activity or other uses that generate significant volumes of pedestrian activity.

Placement in Relation to Other Street Elements

- Pedestrian plazas should:
  - Not limit access to fire hydrants;
  - Not interfere with SEPTA.

Maintaining Access to Utilities

- The pedestrian plaza must block not access to utilities, including:
  - Manholes
  - Sewer grates/storm drains
  - Storm drain cleanouts
  - Water shutoff valves
  - Gas shutoff valves
  - Electric meters
  - Telephone switch boxes
Design Guidelines

Each pedestrian plaza is different, but, in general, the following design guidelines must be met:

**General**
- Pedestrian plaza elements (planters, tables, chairs, umbrellas, benches, etc.) must be removable by the Permittee.
- Reconstruction or alteration of the street should not be required.
- Paint can be applied to the plazas to mark new pedestrian areas.
- Applicants should consider what balance of open space, seating, and other elements is appropriate for the area.
- Applicants should consider the flexibility of the design for events, seasons, and age groups.

**Dimensions**
- The Streets Department does not have set requirements for the size of pedestrian plazas or for the size or weight of pedestrian plaza elements, such as planters, tables, chairs, and benches.
- Planters should be large enough to create a sense of enclosure in the space, and to provide an effective buffer between pedestrians and automobiles.
- During its review, Streets Department staff will consider whether, in context, pedestrian plaza elements will create a nighttime security hazard.

**Maintaining Pedestrian Access**
- Intrusions onto the sidewalk must be limited.
- Pedestrian access to and from the plaza via existing crosswalks should be maintained to accommodate individuals with disabilities as well as pedestrians with strollers, carts, etc.
- Existing pedestrian pathways on the perimeter of plazas should be maintained or improved.

**Visibility to Drivers**
- Pedestrian plaza elements near the street should contain lightly colored or reflective materials to aid nighttime visibility.
- Planters, umbrellas, and other elements are encouraged to ensure visibility to passing vehicles. These elements should not obscure driver, cyclist, or pedestrian visibility to the detriment of safety.
- Where pedestrian plaza elements lead to the narrowing or an unexpected change in roadway width, the Streets Department may require that reflective strips be placed on some elements.

**Protection from Vehicles**
- Pedestrian plaza designs may feature reflective hit posts to delineate new pedestrian spaces.
- Wheel stops may be required by the Chief Traffic Engineer. Wheel stops are used to protect the
pedestrian plaza from turning movements associated with parking cars.

**Pedestrian Plaza Elements**

- Pedestrian elements should generally durable and resistant to weather, changes in temperature, and rust.
- Applicants interested in overhead structures, banners, fabric sails (excluding umbrellas) or other architectural features that may catch wind must provide proof that the structures have the ability to withstand wind loads specified by the Streets Department. Applicants must prove that said structures and canopies pose no risk to the surrounding neighborhood during storms or other instances of severe weather conditions. The Streets Department may require overhead structures like canopies to be sealed by an engineer to ensure they are designed in accordance with building code wind load criteria.
- Any signage that contains a corporate logo shall be considered “Accessory Signage” and must receive Art Commission approval.
- Pedestrian plaza elements (such as benches or planter boxes) must be located at least 18” away from the curb to enable the drivers and passengers of vehicles parked adjacent to the plaza to safely open vehicle doors.

**Other**

- Bicycle parking can be incorporated into pedestrian plaza design. The design must ensure that parked bicycles do not extend beyond the plaza.
Guidelines for Operations

General Guidelines
- Cleaning and maintaining pedestrian plazas is the responsibility of the permittee. The permittee’s responsibilities are detailed in a set of permit special conditions.
- Permittees should keep a copy of their permit and attached special conditions on hand. The permit need not be displayed outside on the pedestrian plaza.
- Any electrical connections intended to provide power to the pedestrian plaza must be approved by the appropriate engineers and may require separate operations and insurance agreements.

Using the Pedestrian Plaza
- Permittees are welcome and encouraged to host events at the pedestrian plaza, so long as events are open to the public, do not create a nuisance in the neighborhood, and comply with all existing regulations.
- Alcohol may not be served in pedestrian plazas.
- Table service is not allowed in pedestrian plazas.
- Pedestrian plazas are public spaces, and should contain a sign that says “Public Plaza | All seating open to the public.”
Initial Pedestrian Enhancement Permit Application Process (Year One)

Who can apply for a Pedestrian Enhancement Permit?

Organizations with the capacity to install, clean and maintain a pedestrian plaza can apply. Partnerships are encouraged. Note that the official pedestrian plaza permittee must be the same entity that holds required insurance.

When must I apply?

The City will review pedestrian plaza applications on a rolling basis; there is no fixed deadline. The application process will take at least several months, and may entail multiple meetings with City staff to review the proposed plans and discuss required changes.

What does the application process entail?

1. Contact the Pedestrian Plaza Program Manager
   a. Write to completestreets@phila.gov or call 215-686-9001 to discuss your application, ask any questions, and learn about program updates.
2. Submit an Pedestrian Plaza Application
   a. Submit an application form with required signatures (page 11).
   b. Submit the following attachments:
      i. At least two pictures of the area of the proposed closure;
      ii. A map of the proposed pedestrian plaza location, which should include:
         1. The proposed street closure;
         2. The street numbers of all buildings on the block;
         3. The direction of traffic;
         4. The presence and location of: vacant lots or buildings, driveways, fire hydrants, man-holes, storm water inlets, bike parking, utilities (including, but not limited to tree grates, valves, covers, manholes, junction boxes, signs, lights, and poles), street furniture (including but not limited to bus shelters, honor boxes, and benches), and cafe seating;
      iii. Letters of support from abutting property owners and commercial tenants (see sample on page 16). The City’s Pedestrian Enhancement Ordinance requires “support, in writing, from two-thirds (2/3) of the owners and commercial tenants of properties abutting the Pedestrian Enhancement if there are three or fewer abutting properties, and three-fourths (3/4) of the owners and commercial tenants of properties abutting the Pedestrian Enhancement if there are four or more abutting properties.”
   c. Applicants are encouraged, but not required, to provide a letter of support from their district council member.
3. **Location review**
   a. Streets Department staff will review the proposed pedestrian plaza location to ensure it is consistent with the City’s guidelines, will not conflict with public works or construction, and will not create conflicts with area public transportation.
   
   b. The Streets Department may request traffic counts or a traffic study to make this determination, and require documented approval from affected parties (e.g., SEPTA).

4. **Gather Evidence of Community Support (Concurrent to #5)**
   a. Once Applicants receive location approval from the Streets Department, they must demonstrate community support for the project. Please contact the Pedestrian Plaza Program Manager to discuss options for demonstrating this, which can include a public meeting featuring notice of area residents and property owners. Another option is to submit a petition signed by a representative of at least one-half of the addresses which are both within 75’ of the proposed pedestrian plaza and on proposed plaza’s same block face or and opposite lock face. Representatives include: owner, tenant, or property manager of either residential or commercial properties. Special circumstances—such as vacant buildings, active construction projects, and/or unconventional numbering, etc., can be accommodated.
   
   b. Applicants are encouraged to submit detailed plans to the program manager while finalizing community support.

5. **Plan Review (Concurrent to #4)**
   a. The plan approval process often consists of two meetings (an initial review and a follow-up meeting to review revisions); this process can take several months.
   
   b. Pedestrian plaza plans do not need to be designed or drawn by a licensed architect or engineer, however generally expedites review.
   
   c. Plans must include:
      i. Proposed street closure;
      ii. Dimensions showing, if applicable, how the pedestrian plaza will change the widths of pathways available to pedestrians, to demonstrate ADA compliance.
      iii. Location and size of proposed plaza elements (planters, chairs, etc);
      iv. The direction of traffic;
      v. The presence and location of: vacant lots or buildings, driveways, fire hydrants, man-holes, storm water inlets, bike parking, utilities (including, but not limited to tree grates, valves, covers, manholes, junction boxes, signs, lights, and poles), street furniture (including but not limited to bus shelters, honor boxes, and benches), and cafe seating;
   
   d. Plans should document proposed changes, if any, to parking regulations (e.g., handicap parking, loading zones, and metered parking).
   
   e. Each plaza is different, and the approval of plans may require coordination with other government departments and entities, such as the Philadelphia Parking Authority.
6. **Submit Temporary Street Closure: Pedestrian Enhancement Permit Application**
   b. Prepare an application fee of $125 to cover the cost of review and inspection. Methods of payment include check (made payable to “City of Philadelphia”), money order, cash, and Epay.
   c. Submit your street closure application (as a PDF) along with your application fee to the Pedestrian Plaza Program Manager as soon as possible and no later than 15 business days prior to planned installation.

7. **Provide Proof of Insurance**
   a. The City’s Risk Management Office requires permittees to submit proof of adequate insurance. The City’s insurance requirements are considered industry standards for non-profits and small businesses; it is not intended for these requirements to necessitate the purchase of additional insurance. If you do not believe that your organization meets the specified requirements, please contact the Pedestrian Plaza Program Manager to see if you are covered sufficiently by other components of your insurance policy. The City’s requirements are detailed on page 17.

8. **Submit Evidence of Community Support**
   a. Before a permit may be issued, applicants must submit the documentation described in #4 above.

Submit all application materials in PDF form to the Pedestrian Plaza Program Manager at:

Office of Transportation & Infrastructure Systems
1401 JFK Boulevard, Suite 1430

Phone: 215-686-9001
Email: completestreets@phila.gov
Pedestrian Enhancement Permit Renewal (Years 2 & 3) and Reapplication Process (Year 4)

Pedestrian Enhancement Permit Renewal (Years 2 & 3)
Each Pedestrian Enhancement Permit is good for one year. The Permit is renewable for up to three years total. The City will fail to renew a pedestrian plaza permit if the pedestrian plaza poses a safety hazard or if the Permittee has not complied with City guidelines.

To renew a pedestrian plaza permit for another year, follow the steps below:

   a. The name of the applicant must match that of the organization that holds required insurance.
   b. Indicate that “Pedestrian Enhancement – Pedestrian Plaza” is the purpose for the requested street closure.
   c. In the upper left-hand corner, check “extend existing permit” and enter your permit number, which is indicated on the previous season’s permit.

2. Submit a certificate of insurance demonstrating that the Permittee maintains required insurance (see page 19).

Pedestrian Enhancement Permit Reapplication (Starting Year 4)
The City of Philadelphia Pedestrian Enhancement Ordinance states that Pedestrian Enhancement Permits are renewable for up to three years. After three years, follow the application process described on pages 7 and 8, submitting one final plan for the plaza.

Please note that you may resubmit materials used previously (such as maps, photos, etc.) so long as they are still current, with the exception of (a) your initial application form with required signatures (b) letters of support from property owners abutting the pedestrian plaza (c) a petition of support for the pedestrian plaza (d) letter of support from your local council person (recommended, not required).
Pedestrian Plaza Application – I

Complete this form and submit it to the Pedestrian Plaza Program Manager. The proposed Permittee must hold requisite insurance.

Permittee Information

Name and address of business or organization requesting the permit (proposed Permittee):
______________________________________________________________________________________
______________________________________________________________________________________
Name of contact person for requesting organization: ____________________________________________
Phone # _____________________  Email _____________________________________________

Location Information

Please describe the proposed pedestrian plaza location, indicating as applicable the address(es) of property immediately adjacent to pedestrian plaza:
______________________________________________________________________________________
______________________________________________________________________________________
______________________________________________________________________________________

Requested Start Date of Permit

________________________________________

Returning Pedestrian Plaza?

If so, write your permit number below and indicate whether changes to the plaza are proposed.

______________________________________________________________________________________

Signatures

Application is hereby made to the Philadelphia Streets Department for a revocable permit to install a pedestrian plaza. Applicant acknowledges and agrees that applicant has read and understands the Pedestrian Plaza Permit Special Conditions (pages 12 – 15) and agrees to be bound by the terms thereof upon receipt of a permit to install and operate a pedestrian plaza.

Proposed Permittee, Chairperson/Owner

__________________________________ (Name)
__________________________________ (Signature)   _________________ (Date)
Permit Special Conditions

PEDESTRIAN ENHANCEMENT PERMIT
EXHIBIT 1- SPECIAL CONDITIONS FOR PEDESTRIAN PLAZAS

The City has established a Pedestrian Plaza Program to temporarily place a Pedestrian Plaza in one or more parking spaces in accordance with the City’s Pedestrian Plaza Guidelines. Any Permittee desiring to establish, operate and maintain a Pedestrian Plaza shall agree to be bound by the special conditions contained in this Exhibit.

1. **Title, As-Is Condition of Pedestrian Plaza Location.**
   
   A. At all times, the Pedestrian Plaza Location shall remain a public right-of-way. No legal title or any other interest in real estate shall be deemed or construed to have been created by anything contained in this Agreement.
   
   B. Permittee acknowledges and agrees that they accept this Permit to enter the Pedestrian Plaza Location in its “AS IS, WHERE-IS, AND WITH ALL FAULTS” condition, including all defects known or unknown, and the City makes no representation or warranty, express or implied, as to (a) any encumbrances, restrictions and conditions which may affect the Pedestrian Plaza Location, (b) the nature or condition of the Pedestrian Plaza Location for installation and operation of the Pedestrian Plaza, and (c) compliance of the Pedestrian Plaza with Applicable Law (defined below). Permittee is relying on its own independent investigation of the condition of the Pedestrian Plaza Location in entering this Agreement.

2. **Maintenance Obligations, Use Restrictions, Approvals.**
   
   A. **Permittee’s Maintenance Obligations.** Permittee hereby covenants and agrees, for itself, its successors, and assigns to be fully responsible for the costs of installing, operating and maintaining the Pedestrian Plaza as set forth in this Agreement. Permittee shall use and maintain the Pedestrian Plaza in a wholly safe condition; shall maintain any and all stands, tables, chairs, and other structures, and the grounds adjacent thereto in a clean and trim fashion, free of all waste, rubbish, accumulation of garbage, papers, and debris; shall provide and maintain adequate and proper drainage and not permit any drainage to fall or flow across the footways or roadways; shall permit free and unobstructed ingress and egress to, from, and around the Pedestrian Plaza for the protection or facilitation of pedestrian traffic; shall properly store and dispose of all waste matter and trash in accordance with the City’s Recycling and Sanitation regulations and keep the Pedestrian Plaza and adjacent sidewalk free and clear of rubbish, trash and waste materials; and, except as approved in accordance with this Agreement or Applicable Law, shall not permit encroachments upon or obstructions of the streets.

   B. **City’s Maintenance Obligations.** The City shall not be required to furnish any services or facilities to the Pedestrian Plaza, or to make any repairs or alterations to the Pedestrian Plaza. The City shall not be responsible for any loss or damage to personal property on the Pedestrian Plaza. Permittee assumes sole responsibility for the operation, maintenance and management of the Pedestrian Plaza.

   C. **Use Restrictions.** Permittee agrees that it shall not: permit any use of the Pedestrian Plaza except as specified in this Agreement; permit anything unlawful on the Pedestrian Plaza; permit a public or private nuisance on the Pedestrian Plaza; permit any Hazardous Substances (defined below) on the Pedestrian Plaza; permit an implied dedication of the Pedestrian Plaza; permit anything that disturbs or damages the surrounding properties; permit commercial advertising of any kind, or non-commercial advertising of any kind without the advance written approval of the Department; permit any structures on the Pedestrian Plaza unless specifically permitted by this Agreement; permit illegal drugs on the Pedestrian Plaza Location; permit fires on the Pedestrian Plaza; permit personal property to be stored on the Pedestrian Plaza unless specifically permitted by this Agreement; or permit standing water to accumulate on the Pedestrian Plaza Area.

   D. **Approvals by City.** Unless otherwise stated in this Agreement or in accordance with Applicable Law, any review, approval, permission, or consent that Permittee is required to obtain from the City under this Agreement shall not be valid or effective unless obtained from the Commissioner of the Department of Streets.
or the Commissioner's designee (the “Commissioner”). The review, approval, or consent by the Commissioner of any plans, specifications, work or materials submitted or performed by Permittee under this Agreement does not constitute any representation, warranty, or guarantee by the City as to the quality or substance of the matter reviewed or approved or its compliance with Applicable Laws. Permittee must use its own independent judgment as to the accuracy and quality of all such matters and its compliance with Applicable Laws. Review, approval, or consent by the Commissioner under this Agreement does not constitute any review, approval, consent, Permit or permit otherwise required under Applicable Laws by any City department, board, commission, or official.

3. **Compliance with Applicable Laws, Hazardous Substances.**

   A. **Applicable Laws.** “Applicable Laws” shall mean all applicable present and future Federal, State and City laws, ordinances, orders, rules, regulations, guidelines and requirements.

   B. **Hazardous Substances.** “Hazardous Substance” shall mean: (a) asbestos, flammables, volatile hydrocarbons, industrial solvents, explosives, chemicals, radioactive material, petroleum, petroleum products and by-products, natural gas, synthetic gas, and shall include but not be limited to, substances defined as "hazardous substances”, “hazardous wastes”, “toxic substances”, “pollutants” or “contaminants” as those terms are defined in any of the Applicable Laws; and (b) any and all other materials or substances that any government entity shall determine from time to time are harmful, toxic, or dangerous.

4. **Entry on Pedestrian Plaza Location By City; City Inspection.** The City may enter the Pedestrian Plaza at any time, for any reason, including inspecting the Pedestrian Plaza and/or Pedestrian Plaza Area. Nothing contained in this Section shall create a duty on the City to make any repairs or do any work on the Pedestrian Plaza Location. City inspections shall not be a representation, guaranty, or warranty by the City to Permittee, as to Permittee’s compliance with the terms of this Agreement or Applicable Laws.

5. **Insurance.** At all times during the Term of this Agreement, the Permittee shall maintain procure and maintain insurance in the types and amounts as specified below.

   Permittee shall, at its sole cost and expense, procure and maintain in full force and effect, for the Term of the Permit Agreement, covering its obligations under this Agreement, the types and minimum limits of insurance specified below. All insurance shall be procured from reputable insurers authorized to do business in the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania and acceptable to the City. All insurance required herein shall be written on an “occurrence” basis and not a “claims-made” basis.

   (i) **WORKERS COMPENSATION AND EMPLOYERS LIABILITY**

      (a) Workers Compensation: Statutory limits

      (b) Employers Liability: $100,000 each Accident - Bodily Injury by Accident; $100,000 Each Employee - Bodily Injury by Disease; and $500,000 Policy Limit -Bodily Injury by Disease.All States coverage and Pennsylvania Endorsement.

   (ii) **GENERAL LIABILITY INSURANCE**

      (a) Limit of liability: $1,000,000 per occurrence combined single limit for bodily injury (including death) and property damage liability;

      (b) Coverage: Premises operations; blanket contractual liability; personal injury liability (employee exclusion deleted); products and completed operations; independent contractors; employees and volunteers as insureds; cross liability; and broad form property damage (including loss of use) liability.

   (iii) **AUTOMOBILE LIABILITY INSURANCE**
(a) Limit of Liability: $1,000,000 per occurrence combined single limit for bodily injury (including death) and property damage liability.

(b) Coverage: Owned, hired and non-owned vehicles.

The City of Philadelphia, its officers, employees, and agents, shall be named as additional insureds on the General Liability Insurance Policy. Also, an endorsement is required stating that the coverage afforded the City and its officers, employees and agents as additional insureds will be primary to any coverage available to them. The City reserves the right to require Permittee to furnish certified copies of the original policies of all insurance required hereunder at any time upon ten (10) days prior written notice to Permittee. All such policies shall include an endorsement stating that the coverage afforded to these parties as additional insureds will be primary to any other coverage available to them.

Certificates of insurance evidencing the required coverage shall be submitted to the City of Philadelphia, 1515 Arch Street, 14th Floor, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania 19102. Permittee shall furnish certified copies of the original policies of all insurance required under this Agreement, at any time, within ten (10) days after written request by the City.

All insurance policies shall provide for at least thirty (30) days prior written notice to be given to the City in the event coverage is materially changed, cancelled, or not renewed. At least ten (10) days prior to the expiration of each policy, Permittee shall deliver to the City a Certificate of Insurance evidencing a replacement policy to become effective immediately upon the termination of the previous policy.

The insurance requirements set forth herein shall in no way be intended to modify, limit or reduce the indemnifications made in this Agreement by Permittee to City, its officers, employees, and agents, or to limit Permittee’s liability under this Agreement to the limits of the policies of insurance required to be maintained by Permittee hereunder.

6. **Indemnification; Release.**

A. Permittee agrees to defend, indemnify, and hold harmless the City, its departments, commissions, boards, officers, employees or agents, from and against all actions, causes, suits, demands, losses, and liabilities, including the cost of litigation and attorneys fees, by reason of injury (including death) to persons and damage to property in any way arising in connection with this Agreement or rights granted to Permittee hereunder; provided that nothing herein contained shall be deemed to confer upon any third person any right against City, or to vest in said third person any cause of action against City, or to authorize any such person to institute any such suit or suits against City, its departments, commissions, boards, officers, employees or agents. Permittee is not obligated to indemnify, defend, and hold harmless the City against losses, costs, claims, suits, actions, damages, liabilities, and expenses that arise exclusively from the gross negligence or willful misconduct of the City. This Section 8 shall survive the expiration or earlier termination of this Agreement.

B. In consideration of the Permit extended to Permittee by this Agreement, Permittee, and for Permittee's its contractors, and invitees and all persons claiming through any of them (collectively, including Permittee the “Releasing Parties”) do hereby remise, quitclaim, release and forever discharge, the City, its departments, commissions, boards, officers, employees or agents, from any and all, and all manner of, actions and causes of action, suits, claims, and demands whatsoever in law or in equity which the Releasing Parties may have against the City its departments, commissions, boards, officers, employees or agents, relating in any way whatsoever to any condition on the Pedestrian Plaza Location, or relating in any way to Permittee’s entry onto the Pedestrian Plaza Location, or Permittee's use of the Pedestrian Plaza Location. Permittee voluntarily assumes all risk of loss, damage, or injury, including death that may be sustained by the Permittee, its contractors, or invitees, while in, on or about the Permitted Property. This Section 8 shall survive the expiration or earlier termination of this Agreement.
7. **Relocation; Termination of this Agreement.**

   **A. Relocation.** Permittee understands and agrees that it shall, upon request of the City, remove the Pedestrian Plaza Location, property including chairs, tables, or other structures, either publicly or privately owned, and that Permittee will absorb all costs and expenses necessary for the performance of such relocation work.

   **B. Termination.**

      i. Both the City and Permittee may terminate this Agreement upon thirty (30) days written notice to the non-terminating party at any time, with or without cause. Permittee shall further agree that upon receipt of such notice from the City, Permittee shall vacate the Pedestrian Plaza and leave it in a clean condition, clear of all property and debris and restore the Pedestrian Plaza Area to the satisfaction and approval of the City within thirty (30) days after receiving such notice. The City shall not be liable to Permittee for any compensation, reimbursement or other expenses related to this Agreement.

      ii. Permittee agrees that in the event the Pedestrian Plaza is not removed from the Pedestrian Plaza Area and/or if the Pedestrian Plaza Area is not restored to its original condition, the City shall have the right and privilege, at its option, of removing said Pedestrian Plaza, and restoring the footway to its original condition and in event of the City so doing, Permittee shall pay to the City, within thirty (30) days written notice or demand, the costs expended by the City in such removal and/or restoration.

8. **Miscellaneous.**

   **A. Governing Law.** This Agreement shall be governed in accordance with the laws of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania. The parties to this Agreement agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the courts, whether federal or state, located in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.

   **B. Assignment.** Permittee must not transfer, assign, hypothecate, or sub-permit all or any part of its interest under this Agreement without the prior written consent of the City. Subject to the preceding sentence, this Agreement will be binding upon and inure to the benefit of the parties hereto and their respective successors and assigns. Nothing in this Agreement may be construed to mean that the City gives its consent to Permittee to sub-permit this Agreement to another party.

   **C. Amendment.** This Agreement may only be amended, modified or supplemented by an agreement in writing signed by City and Permittee.

   **D. Headings.** The headings in this Agreement are for convenience only and are not a part of this Agreement. The headings do not in any way define, limit, describe or amplify the provisions of this Agreement or the scope or intent thereof.

   **E. Survival.** Any and all agreements set forth in this Agreement which, by its or their nature, would reasonably be expected to be performed after the expiration or earlier termination of this Agreement shall survive and be enforceable after the expiration or earlier termination of this Agreement. Any and all liabilities, actual or contingent, which shall have arisen during the Term, shall survive any termination of this Agreement.
Sample Letter of Support

The following represents a sample letter of support from an adjacent property owner. Applicants are not required to use the exact language below.

Date

Office of Transportation & Infrastructure Systems
Suite 1430
1401 JFK Blvd
Philadelphia, PA 19102

To Whom It May Concern:

I am the owner of ______________________________ [address and/or entity] and I am writing this letter in support of the pedestrian plaza proposed for ____________________.

I have met with ___________________ [proposed permittee] and understand the rules and special conditions governing the placement and operation of pedestrian plazas in Philadelphia.

I am excited to see a pedestrian plaza appear in my neighborhood. If you have any questions, please contact me at___________________.

Sincerely,

__________________
Insurance Requirements

The City’s Risk Management Office requires permittees to maintain adequate insurance for pedestrian plazas. The City’s insurance requirements, listed below as an excerpt from the Permit Special Conditions, are considered to be industry standards for non-profits and small businesses. It is not intended for these requirements to necessitate the purchase of additional insurance. If you are unsure whether your policy meets the precise specifications below, please contact the Pedestrian Plaza Program Manager to see if you are covered sufficiently by other components of your insurance policy.

When submitting a certificate of insurance, make sure that:

- The certificate is issued to the City of Philadelphia (1515 Arch Street 14th Floor, Philadelphia 19102);
- The name of the insured matches the name of the Permittee;
- The certificate states that the pedestrian plaza, clearly identified by its location, is covered by the policy;
- The certificate states that the City of Philadelphia, its officers, employees, and agents are named as additional insureds on the General Liability Insurance Policy, and that such coverage afforded the City and its officers, employees and agents as additional insureds will be primary to any coverage available to them (see below).

If you have any questions, or would like to see a sample certificate of insurance filled out to required specifications, please contact the pedestrian plaza program manager.

The following is excerpted from the City’s Pedestrian Plaza Special Conditions:

***

5. Insurance. At all times during the Term of this Agreement, the Permittee shall maintain procure and maintain insurance in the types and amounts as specified below.

Permittee shall, at its sole cost and expense, procure and maintain in full force and effect, for the Term of the Permit Agreement, covering its obligations under this Agreement, the types and minimum limits of insurance specified below. All insurance shall be procured from reputable insurers authorized to do business in the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania and acceptable to the City. All insurance required herein shall be written on an “occurrence” basis and not a “claims-made” basis.

(i) WORKERS COMPENSATION AND EMPLOYERS LIABILITY

(a) Workers Compensation: Statutory limits

(b) Employers Liability: $100,000 each Accident - Bodily Injury by Accident; $100,000 Each Employee - Bodily Injury by Disease; and
$500,000 Policy Limit - Bodily Injury by Disease. All States coverage and Pennsylvania Endorsement.

(ii) GENERAL LIABILITY INSURANCE

(a) Limit of liability: $1,000,000 per occurrence combined single limit for bodily injury (including death) and property damage liability;

(b) Coverage: Premises operations; blanket contractual liability; personal injury liability (employee exclusion deleted); products and completed operations; independent contractors; employees and volunteers as insureds; cross liability; and broad form property damage (including loss of use) liability.

(iii) AUTOMOBILE LIABILITY INSURANCE

(a) Limit of Liability: $1,000,000 per occurrence combined single limit for bodily injury (including death) and property damage liability.

(b) Coverage: Owned, hired and non-owned vehicles.

The City of Philadelphia, its officers, employees, and agents, shall be named as additional insureds on the General Liability Insurance Policy. Also, an endorsement is required stating that the coverage afforded the City and its officers, employees and agents as additional insureds will be primary to any coverage available to them. The City reserves the right to require Permittee to furnish certified copies of the original policies of all insurance required hereunder at any time upon ten (10) days prior written notice to Permittee. All such policies shall include an endorsement stating that the coverage afforded to these parties as additional insureds will be primary to any other coverage available to them.

Certificates of insurance evidencing the required coverage shall be submitted to the City of Philadelphia, 1515 Arch Street, 14th Floor, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania 19102. Permittee shall furnish certified copies of the original policies of all insurance required under this Agreement, at any time, within ten (10) days after written request by the City.

All insurance policies shall provide for a least thirty (30) days prior written notice to be given to the City in the event coverage is materially changed, cancelled, or not renewed. At least ten (10) days prior to the expiration of each policy, Permittee shall deliver to the City a Certificate of Insurance evidencing a replacement policy to become effective immediately upon the termination of the previous policy.

The insurance requirements set forth herein shall in no way be intended to modify, limit or reduce the indemnifications made in this Agreement by Permittee to City, its officers, employees, and agents, or to limit Permittee’s liability under this Agreement to the limits of the policies of insurance required to be maintained by Permittee hereunder.

***
Pedestrian Plaza Application Checklist

Location Approval

- Pedestrian Plaza Application Form
- Site Map
- Site Photographs
- Letters of Support: Adjacent Property Owners

Design Approval

- Pedestrian Plaza Designs

Community Support

- Letter of Support: District Councilperson (optional)
- Petition or Demonstration of Community Support

Final Approvals

- Certificate of Insurance
- Street Closure Permit Application
CANAL URBANISM MODULE

A guide and SmartCode module on how to build adjacent to canals, by Dan Bartman.
(More modules are available.)
Where the conflicting influences of man and nature meet a harmonious silence reigns - perceived in the water's surface reflecting the vertical and horizontal lines it seems to support.

Umberto Franzoi
ARTICLE 1. GENERAL TO ALL PLANS

1.4 PROCESS

1.4.X Waterside projects adjacent to Canals may be subject to supplementary review by the appropriate Local, State or Federal Water Authority.

ARTICLE 3. NEW COMMUNITY SCALE PLANS

3.2 SEQUENCE OF COMMUNITY DESIGN

3.2.X Canal standards shall be laid out according to Section 3.X.

3.5 CIVIC ZONES

3.5.3 Civic Space (CS) Specific to T3-T6 Zones

f. Each Civic Space shall have a minimum of 50% of its perimeter confronting a Thoroughfare or Canal, except for playgrounds.

3.5.X Waterside Civic Zones

3.5.X.a.i Waterside Civic Zones should always include Waterside Civic Frontage along the entire extent of a canal. When this frontage type is used as part of a coordinated system, a canal will function as part of the pedestrian network of an urban or rural area.

3.5.X.b.i Waterside Civic Frontage, a type of Public Frontage, is civic in nature because the adjacent waterbody attracts pedestrian activity, provides civic views of the city and can in most cases be used for recreational activities. It can be understood as the interface between two environments, one urban and one aquatic.

3.5.X.b.iii Waterside Civic Frontage normally features some type of wood, metal or stone railing, parapet, columns or bollards, or change in pavement type along the Bulkhead or embankment of a Canal that allows for the encroachment of urban features while taking into consideration the safety of pedestrians.

3.5.X.d.iii It is common for businesses or even residents to place cafe table and chairs in the walkway of Waterside Civic Frontage. This should not be discouraged, yet permitted only where appropriate. A 5’ sidewalk cannot support cafe seating while at the same time accommodating movement along the water.

3.5.X Waterside Civic Zones

3.5.3 Civic Space (CS) Specific to T3-T6 Zones

f. Each Civic Space shall have a minimum of 50% of its perimeter confronting a Thoroughfare or Canal, except for playgrounds.

3.5.X Waterside Civic Zones

3.5.X.a.i Waterside Civic Zones should always include Waterside Civic Frontage along the entire extent of a canal. When this frontage type is used as part of a coordinated system, a canal will function as part of the pedestrian network of an urban or rural area.

3.5.X.b.i Waterside Civic Frontage, a type of Public Frontage, is civic in nature because the adjacent waterbody attracts pedestrian activity, provides civic views of the city and can in most cases be used for recreational activities. It can be understood as the interface between two environments, one urban and one aquatic.

3.5.X.b.iii Waterside Civic Frontage normally features some type of wood, metal or stone railing, parapet, columns or bollards, or change in pavement type along the Bulkhead or embankment of a Canal that allows for the encroachment of urban features while taking into consideration the safety of pedestrians.

3.5.X.d.iii It is common for businesses or even residents to place cafe table and chairs in the walkway of Waterside Civic Frontage. This should not be discouraged, yet permitted only where appropriate. A 5’ sidewalk cannot support cafe seating while at the same time accommodating movement along the water.
3.5.X.d.vi
If a railing, wall or similar feature is provided as a safety feature in the Waterside Frontage, it may be designed without a flat surface at its top to prevent people and objects from being knocked into the water. This decision should be locally calibrated.

3.7.1 THOROUGHFARE STANDARDS
3.7.1.f
Thoroughfares that terminate at canals must be carefully designed. While they provide views of the canal or waterway for certain lots, the lack of a bridge crossing would create a dead end unless connection to a Waterside Thoroughfare is also supplied.

3.7.1.g
This permits three options for the disposition of private lots along canals. Lots may either directly enfront a canal, Waterside Civic Frontage, or a Thoroughfare. Lots enfronting Waterside Civic Frontage recreate examples from Venice, Italy; San Antonio, Texas, and Los Angeles, California. An appropriately scaled thoroughfare may be disposed between the canal and private lots, recreating the urban form of Amsterdam: New Town St. Charles, Missouri, and St. Petersburg, Russia. Finally, lots may be disposed so as to directly enfront an canal, although this is not recommended practice.

3.7.1.k
The percolation of water behind a canal Bulkhead or embankment threatens the structural integrity of the canal.

3.7.3 PUBLIC FRONTAGES
3.7.3.a.iv
When a Thoroughfare is adjacent to the embankment or bulkhead of a canal, its Public Frontage adjacent to the canal is considered part of the Waterside Civic Frontage and held to the same standards.

3.X CANAL STANDARDS
3.X.1.a
“Variable” is used here in place of the multiple types of canals that exist. The term should be replaced by a locally calibrated identification. Most canal types will support urban activity along their banks, save for irrigation canals and canals used for heavy shipping and ocean-scaled vessels. These two types are identified as Class 2 and Class 3 Canals, and would have separate regulations. Standards in the calibrated code must not conflict with them.

ii. Obstructions to movement that reduce the clear width of the Sidewalk shall be approved by Warrant.
iv. In the absence of a Waterside Buffer or Tree Lawn, the Sidewalk shall have a slight grade away from the Waterside edge to direct storm water away from the Canal.
v. Within the Waterside Civic Frontage, the prescribed types of Public Planting and Public Lighting shall be shown in Table 4a. Spacing may be adjusted by Warrant to accommodate specific site conditions.
vi. The top of any railing should be at a constant elevation for the length of the Waterside Frontage.
vii. If called for by Table 4a Waterside Civic Frontage or Table 13 Waterside Civic Space, landscape and tree plantings within the Waterside Civic Frontage shall conform to the standards of Section 3.7.3.
viii. Waterside Civic Frontage may function as a quay or dock with the provision of boat or ship mooring infrastructure as part of the Waterside Frontage, bulkhead or embankment.

e. Waterside Civic Space (CS) General to all Zones T1, T2, T3, T4, T5, T6
i. Waterside Civic Spaces shall be generally designed as described in Table 13a.
ii. Where it does not feature its own design for the waterfront, Waterside Civic Space shall carry the design of adjacent Waterside Civic Frontage across its extent.

3.7 THOROUGHFARE STANDARDS
3.7.1 General
f. All Thoroughfares shall terminate at other Thoroughfares, forming a network. Internal Thoroughfares shall connect wherever possible to those on adjacent sites. Thoroughfares terminating at a Canal and Cul-de-sacs shall be subject to approval by Warrant to accommodate specific site conditions only.
g. Each Lot shall Enfront a vehicular Thoroughfare, Waterside Frontage or Canal, except that 20% of the lots within each Transect Zone may Enfront a Passage.
h. Drainage Swales along Waterside Thoroughfares are permitted by Warrant.

3.7.3 Public Frontages
a. General to all Zones T1, T2, T3, T4, T5, T6
iv. The Public Frontage of Waterside Thoroughfares that Enfront a Canal shall be considered Waterside Civic Frontage subject to the prescriptions of Section 3.5.x.

3.X CANAL STANDARDS
3.X.1 General to all Zones T1, T2, T3, T4, T5, T6
a. There shall be three classes of Canals: Class 1 Variable, Class 2 Irrigation, and Class 3 Shipping.
i. The Waterside Frontage along Class 2 Irrigation Canals shall be set back the distance of any utility or maintenance Easement maintained by Water Authority.
ii. The utility or maintenance Easement of Class 2 Irrigation Canals may be used for authorized pedestrian activities by Variance only.
ii. Class 3 Shipping Canals shall have a 150 foot wide Buffer on each side.
5.7 BUILDING CONFIGURATION

5.7.1.x The best example of lots in this situation is along the Riverwalk in San Antonio, Texas. The more formalized Primary Frontages of buildings face the street, while the more 'natural' and informal Secondary Frontages face the Riverwalk.

5.7.1.x The Waterside Civic Frontage is often at a different elevation from the Public Frontage of corner Lots that enfront both a Thoroughfare and a Canal. This condition is present when, for example, the Waterside Civic Frontage continues under a bridge that crosses over a Canal. This provision ensures a connection between the two public walkways and is required even when a Thoroughfare terminates at the Canal. Along the San Antonio Riverwalk, this connection is either an elevator or a ramp.

5.X WATERSIDE PRIVATE FRONTAGE DESIGN STANDARDS

Additional design standards may be added to this section as desired. Some of the descriptions from Table 7 of this Module may be adapted or expanded to become regulatory.

5.X.1.b This statement is advisory. It is intended to create active facades along the canal waterfront.

ARTICLE 5. BUILDING SCALE PLANS

5.7 BUILDING CONFIGURATION

5.7.1 GENERAL TO ZONES T2, T3, T4, T5, T6

x. The Private Frontage of buildings on Waterside Lots and Lots adjacent to Watersides should conform to and be allocated in accordance with Table 7a, Table 14j, and Section 5.x: Waterside Private Frontage Design Standards.

x. Waterside Lots disposed between a Thoroughfare and Waterside Civic Frontage shall have a Principal Frontage facing the Thoroughfare and a Secondary Frontage facing the water, as shown in Table 17x.

x. Corner Lots Enfronting both a Thoroughfare and a Canal shall provide a handicapped accessible pedestrian connection from the Public Frontage of the Thoroughfare to the Waterside Civic Frontage along the Canal.

5.X WATERSIDE PRIVATE FRONTAGE DESIGN STANDARDS

5.X.1 SPECIFIC TO ZONES T4, T5, T6

a. A secondary entrance shall be provided for all buildings with a Waterside Secondary Frontage.

b. Waterside Private Frontage and building Facades should emphasize spatial connections among the building, the Waterside Civic Frontage, and the Canal.
TABLE 4A: Waterside Civic Frontage (adjacent to Lots). Waterside Civic Frontage is the area between the private Lot line and the edge of a Canal. The diagrams of this table are only illustrative; specific designs would be prepared in accordance with individual sites. The text describes the general character of the type. It may be adapted as either Definitions or regulatory standards if desired.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLAN</th>
<th>LOT</th>
<th>CANAL FLOW</th>
<th>PRIVATE FRONTAGE</th>
<th>WATERFRONT FRONTAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>T4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Waterside Path: a beaten path, cinder trail, or paved walkway. May consist of natural vegetation in simple planter strips or a significant Waterside Buffer along the water.

b. Boardwalk: characterized by wooden or similarly styled planking, often on pilings or floating on pontoons. A standard boardwalk is built on land with railings on one or both sides of the walkway and is generally positioned above a Bulkhead or embankment, but occasionally may extend over the water.

c. Waterside Planter: features a Sidewalk and individual or continuous Waterside Planters and a metal, wood or stone railing, parapet, columns or bollards, and/or a change in pavement along the water. Landscaping consists of trees of a single or alternating species aligned in a regularly spaced Allee.

d. Frontage Line Planter: features a Sidewalk, individual or continuous planters along the Frontage Line, and a metal or stone railing, parapet, columns or bollards, and/or a change in pavement along the water. Landscaping consists of trees of a single or alternating species aligned in a regularly spaced Allee, sometimes with other plantings.

e. Waterside Tree Wells: features a Sidewalk, Waterside Tree Wells, and a metal or stone railing, parapet, columns or bollards, and/or a change in pavement along the water. Landscaping consists of trees of a single or alternating species aligned in a regularly spaced Allee.

f. Canalwalk: features a wide to very wide Sidewalk and a metal, wood or stone railing, parapet, columns or bollards, and/or a change in pavement along the water. May be combined with a Gallery or Arcade Private Frontage.
### TABLE 4A - WATERSIDE CIVIC FRONTAGE (ADJACENT TO THOROUGHFARES)

This table indicates parking on the side of the thoroughfare opposite the Waterside Civic Frontage (WCF). In lower Transect Zones and where the WCF is relatively narrow, parking will mainly serve the residents of the block and is thereby more useful on the building side. In addition, when the side along the WCF is free of parked cars, the view to the water is more accessible for those passing by, whether by car, transit, bicycle, or foot. To retrofit an oversize thoroughfare, a bikeway may occupy a portion of the vehicular lane along the WCF. Onstreet parking on both sides, with or without a bikeway, facilitates traffic calming if justified by the housing density.

In higher T-zones, especially T-5 and T-6, the Waterside Civic Frontage is more likely to serve as a Common Destination, attracting visitors from outside the neighborhood and region, for recreation and events. In some cases, the WCF (or Waterside Civic Space as shown on Table 13A) may face a one-sided mixed-use shopping street, or larger mixed-use zone, where onstreet parking is important to serve multiple uses.

For more complex combinations of travel modes in combination with Public Frontages, refer to the Complete Thoroughfares, Transit-Oriented Development, and Bicycling Modules at www.transect.org.

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>9. Buffer</strong></td>
<td>a vegetative Waterside Civic Frontage acting as a Buffer between a Thoroughfare, Lots, or Open Spaces and the Bulkhead or embankment of the Canal. Landscaping consists of trees of single or alternating species aligned in a regularly spaced allee or arranged in naturalistic clusters in more rural conditions. May include a metal, wood or stone railing, parapet, and/or columns or bollards. Onstreet parking is usually opposite the Waterside Frontage, on the building side.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>10. Double Planter</strong></td>
<td>features a central Walkway, a continuous Planter along the Curb, a continuous Waterside Planter, and a metal, wood or stone railing, parapet, columns or bollards, and/or a change in pavement along the water. Landscaping consists of street trees of a single or alternating species aligned in a regularly spaced Allee. Onstreet parking is usually opposite the Waterside Civic Frontage, on the building side.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>11. Curbside Planter</strong></td>
<td>features a Sidewalk, a continuous Planter along the Curb, and a metal or stone railing, parapet, columns or bollards, and/or a change in pavement along the water. Landscaping consists of street trees of a single or alternating species aligned in a regularly spaced Allee. Onstreet parking is usually opposite the Waterside Civic Frontage, on the building side.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>12. Curbside Tree Wells</strong></td>
<td>features a Sidewalk, Tree Wells along the Curb, and a metal or stone railing, parapet, columns or bollards, and/or a change in pavement along the water. Landscaping consists of street trees of a single or alternating species aligned in a regularly spaced Allee. Onstreet parking may be one-sided or two-sided in higher Transect Zones.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>13. Canalwalk</strong></td>
<td>features a wide to very wide Sidewalk and a metal or stone railing, parapet, columns or bollards, and/or a change in pavement along the water. Onstreet parking may be one-sided or two-sided in higher Transect Zones.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**These annotations are advisory only. The SmartCode itself appears only on the right side of each spread.**
TABLE 7A: Waterside Private Frontages. The Private Frontage is the area between the building Facades and the Lot lines. The diagrams of this table are only illustrative; specific designs would be prepared in accordance with individual sites. The text is explanatory only. It may be adapted as either definitions or regulatory standards if desired.

a. Yard & Private Dock: a planted Frontage wherein the Facade is set back from the Frontage Line with an attached porch permitted to encroach. In the presence of adjacent yards, the front yard remains unfenced and is visually continuous with the adjacent yards, supporting a common landscape. A private dock provides space for the mooring of boats and may be parallel or perpendicular to the shoreline.

b. Waterside Yard & Fence: a planted Frontage wherein the Facade is set back from the Frontage Line to provide a yard and is separated from the Sidewalk with a short wall, fence or shrub row that provides spatial definition to the Waterside Frontage.

c. Waterside Patio & Fence: the Facade is set back from the Frontage Line to provide a patio and is separated from the Sidewalk with a short wall, fence or shrub row that provides spatial definition to the Waterside Frontage.

d. Waterside Terrace: the Facade is set back from the Frontage Line by an elevated Terrace. This type buffers Residential use from urban Sidewalks, and removes the private yard from public encroachment. A short wall, fence or shrub row may be present to provide spatial definition to the Waterside Frontage. The Terrace type is suitable for conversion to outdoor cafes.

e. Direct Stoop: the Facade is aligned directly along the Frontage Line, adjacent to the shoreline of a Canal. The entrance to the building is accessed by exterior steps and/or a landing or dock encroaching into the water.

f. Zaguan: the Facade is aligned directly along the Frontage Line, adjacent to the shoreline of a Canal. A private passage leads into the building providing access to internal doors and/or a Thoroughfare, Alley, Passage on the opposite side of the building or a Courtyard internal to the Block. The entrance to the building is accessed by exterior steps and/or a landing or dock encroaching into the water.

g. Private Portal: a colonnade-supported habitable space that overlaps the Setback of the Facade of the First Story, which remains behind the Frontage Line. The portal is accessed by exterior steps encroaching into the water.
TABLE 13A: Waterside Civic Space. The intended types of Waterside Civic Space are diagrammed and described in this Table. The diagrams are only illustrative; specific designs should be prepared in accordance with individual sites. The text describes the general character of the type. It may be adapted as either definitions or regulatory standards if desired.

a. Civic Basin: an Open Space available for unstructured recreation and Civic purposes. A Civic Basin is organized around a Canal Basin and defined spatially by buildings and/or landscaping. Water features or public art are often located at the center of the basin.

b. Waterside Square: an open space available for unstructured recreation and Civic purposes. A Waterside Square is normally defined on two sides by building Frontages. Its landscape shall consist of paths, lawns, and trees, formally disposed. Waterside Square disposition serves to provide pedestrian connectivity between the Public Frontage of a nearby Thoroughfare and the Waterside Frontage along a Canal. Public art is located at the center, most likely a water feature.

c. Cross Water Odeon: an open space available for unstructured recreation and Civic purposes. A Cross Water Odeon utilizes both banks of a Canal and is spatially defined by buildings or landscape and vegetation. An audience side of terraced seating directs pedestrian attention toward a stage or civic building across the water. Landscape shall consist primarily of pavement. The stage side functions as performance space and may encroach over the water 20% of the width of the water body.

d. Waterside Plaza: an open space available for Civic Purposes and commercial activities. A Waterside Plaza is normally defined on two sides by building Frontages. Its landscape shall consist primarily of pavement. Waterside Plaza disposition serves to provide pedestrian connectivity between the Public Frontage of a nearby Thoroughfare and the Waterside Frontage along a Canal. Public art is located at the center, most likely a water feature.

e. Waterside Staircase: a space designed to facilitate pedestrian movement from one elevation to another. Civic Staircases always face the water and pedestrians should not be prevented from using the steps as seating space for unstructured recreation. Well-designed staircases provide steps and landings for sitting and steps for traffic flow. Waterside Staircases serve to connect the Waterside Frontage along a Canal or the edge of the water to adjacent Civic Spaces or Lots found at a different elevation.
### TABLE 13: Waterside Civic Space

The intended types of Waterside Civic Space are diagrammed and described in this Table. The diagrams are only illustrative; specific designs should be prepared in accordance with individual sites. The text describes the general character of the type. It may be adapted as either definitions or regulatory standards if desired.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>f. Waterside Greenway</td>
<td>A linear Civic Space enfronting a Canal or other waterbody, available for unstructured recreation and spatially defined by landscape rather than building Frontages. Usually includes shared-use Paths and a Buffer along the Bulkhead or embankment. It may connect with more urban Promenades or Esplanades, and may feature periodic Viewing Stations for overlooking the water.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g. Promenade</td>
<td>A controlled pedestrian sequence designed to be an aesthetic experience. A Promenade is sometimes covered or screened from the sun and may feature periodic Viewing Stations for overlooking the water. Design elements are formally disposed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h. Esplanade</td>
<td>A controlled pedestrian sequence similar in function to a Promenade that features adjacent or integrated Plazas, Squares, Bikeways and/or in rare cases a vehicular Thoroughfare. Esplanades are more significant in design and width than Promenades. See Promenade.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural Zone</td>
<td>Rural Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waterside Greengrocery</td>
<td>permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civic Basin</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waterside Square</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Promenade</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esplanade</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green Water Oasis</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waterside Plaza</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waterside Staircase</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civic Spaces (see Table 13)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waterside Greenway</td>
<td>permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Civic Basin</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waterside Square</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Promenade</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esplanade</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green Water Oasis</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waterside Plaza</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waterside Staircase</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waterside Path</td>
<td>permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buffer</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double Planter</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waterside Planter</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boardwalk</td>
<td>permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frontage Line Planter</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curbside Tree Wells</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waterside Tree Wells</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Private Frontages (see Table 7)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yard &amp; Private Dock</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walled or Fenced Yard</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patio &amp; Fence</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Terrace</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waterside Stoop</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waterside Zaguan</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Private Portal</td>
<td>not permitted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE 17 DEFINITIONS ILLUSTRATED
A. Lot Layers and Frontages
ii. Lots Enfronting Waterside Civic Frontage and a Thoroughfare
Lots disposed between a Thoroughfare and Waterside Civic Frontage feature a Principal Frontage of higher pedestrian importance toward the Thoroughfare and a Secondary Frontage of lesser pedestrian importance toward the waterbody. In the base SmartCode, parking is permitted in the second and third layers of most Transect Zones; this may require further regulation in the calibration if parking visible from the Waterside Civic Frontage compromises the civic experience.

B. Waterside Civic Frontage Sections
i. Lots Enfronting Waterside Thoroughfares
On occasion the civic nature of the waterbody attracts so much attention and use that adjacent thoroughfares can be temporarily claimed as Civic Space themselves, blocked off for festivals, races, or just car-free zones. For example, MLK Drive along Philadelphia’s Schuylkill River is closed to automobile traffic for a 4-mile stretch every weekend most of the year. Such temporary Civic Space should not count toward the Civic Space minimum in Article 3.
### ARTICLE 7. DEFINITIONS OF TERMS

- **Basin:** An area alongside or at the end of a Canal, wider than the general width of the Canal, designed for the mooring or turning of boats without impeding the progress of other water traffic.
- **Bulkhead:** A retaining wall or riprap revetment constructed along a shoreline to control scour, water and ice erosion.
- **Buffer:** A vegetated area, including trees, shrubs, and/or other herbaceous vegetation, that exists or is established to protect a stream system, lake, reservoir, coastal-estuarine area or Canal.
- **Canal:** An artificial linear waterway or artificially improved river used for travel, recreation, shipping, or irrigation that is between 20 and 300 feet in width.
- **Civic Basin:** A Civic Space type for unstructured recreation, enfroniting a Basin.
- **Cross Water Odeon:** A Civic Space type enfroniting both banks of a Canal for Civic purposes and public theatrical productions.
- **Esplanade:** A controlled pedestrian sequence designed to be an aesthetic experience. Esplanades are more significant in design and width than Promenades. See Promenade.
- **Frontage, Principal:** The Frontage facing the public space such as a Thoroughfare or Canal that is of lesser pedestrian importance.
- **Frontage, Secondary:** The Frontage facing the public space such as a Thoroughfare or Canal that is of lesser pedestrian importance.
- **Frontage Line:** A lot line bordering a Public Frontage, Waterside Frontage, or Canal. Facades facing Frontage Lines define the public realm and are therefore more regulated than the Elevations facing other lot lines. See Table 17.
- **Promenade:** A controlled pedestrian sequence designed to be an aesthetic experience.
- **Public Mooring Area:** A publicly accessible embankment or Bulkhead for the mooring or anchoring of boats.
- **Viewing Station:** A platform, deck or bumpout for scenic viewing.
- **Waterside:** Adjacent to a Canal or other waterbody.
- **Waterside Civic Frontage:** The area dedicated for public use between the Curb of a Vehicular Lane and the Bulkhead or embankment of a Canal, or between a Frontage Line and the Bulkhead or embankment of a Canal.
- **Waterside Civic Space:** Open Space dedicated as a publicly accessible waterfront including a Canal or other waterbody.
- **Waterside Greenway:** A linear Civic Space type enfroniting a Canal or other waterbody, available for unstructured recreation and non-vehicular commuting.
- **Waterside Staircase:** A Civic Space type enfroniting a Canal or other waterbody that provides pedestrian movement from one elevation to another, unstructured recreation, and/or audience seating on steps.
- **Zaguan:** A Private Frontage featuring an entryway passage leading to internal doorways for one or more private residences.
FIRE MITIGATION IN WILDLANDS

A SmartCode module for community fire breaks, courtesy of Martin Dreiling.
To study fire is to inquire into one of the informing processes of the earth. To manage fire is to perform one of the defining acts of human beings. That, distilled, is the sufficient and necessary reason to understand fire.

Steve Pyne
1996
### GENERAL TO ALL PLANS

**Municipality**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>X</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Municipal Ordinances</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>County Ordinances</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State Ordinances</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Municipal Codes</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>County Codes</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State Codes</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Building Codes</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire Protection Codes</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### FIRE HAZARD ASSESSMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>X</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hazard Assessment</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risk Assessment</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mitigation Plan</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### FIRE HAZARD MITIGATION MEASURES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>X</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mitigation Measures</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emission Controls</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emission Standards</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Education and Training</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Training and Outreach</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### REGIONAL SCALE PLANS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>X</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Regional Mitigation Plan</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regional Emission Controls</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regional Training and Outreach</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SET ASIDE LANDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>X</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Set Aside Lands</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SECTOR DESIGNATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>X</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sector Designations</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMMUNITY SCALE PLANS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>X</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Community Mitigation Plan</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Emission Controls</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Training and Outreach</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Designations</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SET ASIDE LANDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>X</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Set Aside Lands</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COMMUNITY UNIT TYPE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>X</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Community Unit Type</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TRANSECT ZONES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>X</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transect Zones</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### THOROUGHFARE STANDARDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>X</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thoroughfare Standards</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### BUILDING SCALE PLANS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>X</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Building Disposition</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Building Function</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>X</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FM-2. Common Zone of Defense: Community Scale Patterns</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FM-3. Conversion of the WUI to AUI</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### DEFINITIONS OF TERMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
<th>X</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Definitions of Terms</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SMARTCODE ANNOTATED

These annotations are advisory only. The SmartCode itself appears only on the right side of each spread.

FIRE MITIGATION IN THE WILDLAND URBAN INTERFACE

This Module should be used for any planning area that includes Fire Hazard Severity Zones or equivalent. Such zones should be identified for each state. The information should be available from state or local agencies that deal with fire protection. The term “Fire Hazard Severity Zone” should be changed to the terminology used by the regulating body. Many local jurisdictions already require a Fire Hazard Mitigation Plan or equivalent when development is proposed in a Fire Hazard Severity Zone. This Module is intended to modify some of the requirements normally stipulated for those plans that are in conflict with principles of good urban design. The primary tool introduced is the Common Zone of Defense. This Module, therefore, should be used not only to address actual plan proposals or desirable outcomes, but to tactically address fire mitigation issues that may be embedded in current codes, policies or simply local practice.

ZONES OF DEFENSE

The purpose of a Zone of Defense is to prevent fire from moving easily from one fuel type to another, or to otherwise modify the fire type to one of lower intensity. For example, an active crown fire may shift to a ground fire. Zones of Defense can be effective simply by reducing the intensity of vegetation such that a fire is substantially modified as it crosses into a Zone of Defense. Zones of Defense are typically covered by state and local codes. Care should be taken when reviewing these codes to ensure that their Zones of Defense do not force extreme separation of buildings or the creation of landscape areas that are largely devoid of plants. Local interpretations of these codes can result in removal of all substantial vegetation. In some cases, such as Brush / Scrubland, such clearing is warranted, and agricultural uses should be considered in these areas. But many Fuel Models can achieve adequate treatment simply by restoring conditions that allow natural fires to manage the fuels.

SMARTCODE MODULE

MUNICIPALITY

ARTICLE 1. GENERAL TO ALL PLANS
FIRE MITIGATION IN THE WILDLAND URBAN INTERFACE

1.X FIRE HAZARD ASSESSMENT

Each plan submitted under this code that includes lands listed by state or local agencies as Fire Hazard Severity Zones (FHSSZ) shall include an assessment of specific fire hazard elements present. Assessment shall include the following:

b. Identification of historic weather patterns affecting fire behavior, including most likely direction of fire origination and propagation.
c. Identification of the fire history pertinent to the plan area, including location and age of prior burns and Fuel Treatments.
d. Identification of appropriate Fire Hazard Mitigation Measures for the specific design elements of the plan.

1.X FIRE HAZARD MITIGATION MEASURES

All plans submitted under this code that include lands within a Fire Hazard Severity Zone shall provide Fire Hazard Mitigation Measures. They shall include specific actions within the plan as well as the set aside of lands on which development may not occur due to high fire hazard. Fire Hazard Mitigation Measures shall include, as a minimum, the following:

1.X.1 ZONES OF DEFENSE

a. Zones of Defense shall be located between natural areas that are prone to wildfire and buildings and related development.
b. Zones of Defense shall be configured in direct response to the adjacent Fuel Models present and shall reflect appropriate treatments and dimensions for those models.
c. Zones of Defense shall not be required to be devoid of vegetation or forest cover. Vegetation shall be reduced or otherwise managed such that approaching fires are adequately stopped or stalled such that structures within the ZD do not ignite, and such that firefighters can work safely to fight fires that may enter the Zone of Defense and approach structures.
d. Dimensions for Zones of Defense shall be provided as follows, such that fire encroachment will be restricted for the existing Fuel Model.

i. The width of a standard Zone of Defense shall be 100 feet minimum and shall include a Reduced Fuel Zone of 70 feet minimum and a Critical Defense Zone of 30 feet minimum.
ii. Reduced Fuel Zones shall include Fuel Treatments that reduce the native Fuels while maintaining native landscape character.
iii. Critical Zones shall include Fuel treatment or removal such that advancing fires are stopped.
iv. Zones of Defense should be decreased or increased in response to specific local conditions of Fuels, topography and weather.
v. Zones of Defense may include noncombustible architectural elements, such as walls, both to increase defensive capability and to reduce or modify the overall dimension of the zone, where the adjacent Fuel Model permits.
COMMON ZONE OF DEFENSE
This section introduces “Common Zone of Defense,” a new term for the concept of collective Zones of Defense around a cluster of structures such as a hamlet (CLD in the SmartCode). Rather than have numerous redundant Zones of Defense generating sprawl patterns, a Common Zone will address the same fire modification and fire fighting issues as a standard Zone of Defense, while facilitating more compact development.

It is important to understand that clustered buildings will necessarily be more fire resistant due to other requirements of standard building codes and, therefore, support the goals of wildfire mitigation.

There will likely be resistance to this from firefighters who will still require space between buildings for fire fighting.

Since a Common Zone of Defense offers greater social and environmental benefits to a community, while generating more efficient development patterns, calibrators can offer these larger zones of defense as a means to mitigate concerns over clustered buildings, and better isolate CLD from wildfire environments.

FUEL MODELS
Fuel Models refer to the particular collection of plant species and plant residual materials that are relevant in a given area. Fuel Models have been identified for most fire-prone areas of the U.S., in accordance with several accepted systems of modeling. The most common is the 1978 NFDRS Fuel Model System; however, other systems have been developed and may be in use by local agencies.

Assignment of local Fuel Models may be determined by State or local agencies. Alternately, Fuel Models present in a planning area can be determined according to USDA Guidelines, per USDA Technical Report INT-122, Anderson 1982.

For some plans, simplified Fuel Models may be adequate for calibration. In such cases simplified Fuel Models as listed herein should be clearly identified and acceptance by local agencies should be verified. However, if Fuel Models have not been assigned at a fine enough scale to be useful in the development of the plan, it may be necessary to further refine the assignment according to these categories, or by using one of the accepted models in use that includes more diverse categories.

1.X.2 COMMON ZONE OF DEFENSE
a. For all Fire Hazard Severity Zones, any planned development patterns shall include a Common Zone of Defense as the primary means to isolate developed areas from high fire risk conditions in the surrounding landscape.

b. A Common Zone of Defense shall protect multiple buildings, compounds, TND edges adjacent to wildlands, and the Urbanized areas of CLD Community Units.

c. A Common Zone of Defense shall be required for any development within or immediately adjacent to a FHSZ and shall generally comply with state and local regulations regarding standard Zones of Defense for individual buildings, but shall be designed to isolate groups of multiple buildings from adjacent fire hazard areas.

d. The Common Zone of Defense shall serve multiple purposes beyond the purpose of Fire Modification, including the following:
   i. Agricultural uses that substantially reduce the risk of fire spreading from native Fuel types to Fuel types within the area of development.
   ii. Recreational or other natural area that includes a Fuel type modified for low risk.
   iii. Natural Zones of Defense treated for Fuel reduction such that approaching fires would either reduce in intensity or cease progress when the Zone of Defense is encountered.

e. The Common Zone of Defense shall include adequate access for fire fighting equipment within the proposed Thoroughfare system.

f. Individual Zones of Defense around isolated buildings shall be utilized where isolated buildings are permitted by this Code. Such individual Zones of Defense shall be designed per state and local requirements and shall be contiguous with public Thoroughfares.

1.X.3 SPECIFIC RESPONSE TO FUEL MODELS PRESENT
a. Development shall be directly responsive to the Fuel Models present in the plan area. Fuel Models present shall be identified as part of the Fire Hazard Mitigation Measures.

b. When Fuel Models have not been assigned as part of a FHSZ, or via other mechanisms by local or regional jurisdictions, development areas shall be differentiated among the following three Fuel types as a minimum:
   i. Grassland
   ii. Brush / Scrubland
   iii. Forest Lands

c. Fuel Treatment shall be designed to respond directly to the Fuel Models present. All Fuel Treatment shall be designed to isolate development areas from areas where wildfire may occur. Fuel treatment shall also be designed to reduce risk of wildfire ignition caused by escaping structure fires.

d. Fuel Treatment shall not require the full removal of natural vegetation, landscape materials or agricultural planting in or near the development area or within the Zone of Defense, except as may be required for a specific Fuel type as provided in Section 1.X.4 below.
1.X.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR BASIC FUEL TYPES

Grassland Fuel Models
Grassland fires are usually easier to fight than other fuel types. Development in areas of grassland fuels shall anticipate fast-moving ground fires with lower height and lower risk of spotting. Fires may recur at high frequency and development shall anticipate regular recurring fire at the scale of seasons.

a. ii This may require multiple treatments per season as growth recurs.

Brush / Scrubland Fuel Models
Development in areas of brush / scrubland pose the highest fire threat as these lands burn often based on quick fuel growth. Brushlands can burn very hot and frequently; brushland species often regenerate quickly and fuel loads can accumulate rapidly. There may be greater effects from topography including rapid and random fire spread, high frequency of spotting and high energy release. Expect high annual fuel accumulation, ongoing and frequent Fuel Treatment and high difficulty for fire fighting.

b. ii This may require multiple treatments per season as growth recurs.

a. Grassland Fuel Models: General Requirements
i. Development should include a low to moderate level of isolation between development areas and areas prone to wildfire.
ii. Development shall anticipate horizontally advancing fires and shall utilize Fuel Treatment as the primary mitigation of threat to structures. Fuel Treatment shall occur as often as needed to remove or reduce natural grass regeneration.
iii. Fuel Treatment shall not require full removal of vegetation, but shall reduce plant material via mowing to levels that will not allow wildfire to progress or develop high heat.
iv. Agricultural operations are permitted, provided that adequate firebreaks occur between grasslands and agricultural installations, and between agricultural areas and development areas. Agricultural planting shall not add to the Fuel Load in the treatment areas and shall include diverse species exhibiting different Fuel characteristics, including seasonal maturation that does not coincide with the likely fire season.
v. Development shall anticipate the possibility of light airborne ash and sparks, and shall include Fuel Treatments internal to the development areas adjacent to grasslands.
vi. Development shall include roof and material selections designed to reduce risk of structure fire from low temperature ash.

b. Brush / Scrubland Fuel Models: General Requirements
i. Development should include a high level of isolation between development areas and areas prone to wildfire.
ii. Development shall anticipate fast moving, horizontally advancing fires of high heat and shall include Fuel Treatment as the primary mitigation of threat to structures. Fuel Treatment shall occur as often as needed to remove or reduce natural brush / scrub regeneration.
iii. Development shall anticipate that fires will recur frequently in the same area, possibly on an annual basis, and shall require frequent and ongoing Fuel Treatment appropriate to the Fuels present.
iv. Fuel Treatment shall require full removal of brush and scrub in critical portions of the treatment area to ensure that fire spread does not approach development areas. Replacement by grasses and low landscaping shall be permitted provided regular treatment occurs, and provided that landscape materials are highly varied and carry low risk of ignition.
v. Agricultural operations are permitted, provided that adequate firebreaks occur between brushlands and agricultural installations, and between agricultural areas and development areas. Agricultural planting shall not add to the Fuel Load in the treatment areas and shall include diverse species exhibiting different Fuel characteristics, including seasonal maturation that does not coincide with the likely fire season.
Forest Land Fuel Models

Forests lands present the most complex fire management challenges because fire has been suppressed for so long that fuel accumulations are large and unbalanced with any natural fire resistance capabilities. In fire adapted landscapes, fire typically manages the understory fuel loads on a regular basis in such a way that intense fires rarely ignite and older trees can generally resist fire damage.

Crown Fires are the most devastating in a forest setting. Fuel Treatments will seek to reduce Crown Fires by eliminating Ladder Fuels and to modify an existing Crown Fire so that it drops back down to the ground (by reducing understory fuels).

a. Steep slopes
b. Draws and canyons where convection can generate extreme drafts coupled with high radiant heat from constrained geography

c. Forest Land Fuel models: General Requirements
i. Development should include a moderate level of isolation between development areas and areas prone to wildfire, coupled with Fuel Treatment and wider areas of Fuel reduction. When appropriate, wide area Fuel Treatment as part of a forest stewardship program shall be included in the plan area.

ii. Development shall anticipate horizontally advancing fires and shall utilize Fuel Treatment as the primary mitigation of threat to structures. Development in Forest Lands shall assume fire threats from all types of fire, including Crown Fires, Ground Fires, Spotting and Firebrands. Fuel Treatment shall occur as often as needed to remove or reduce Understory materials and Ladder Fuels.

Development shall anticipate intermittent fires with long spans of time between fire events and shall include a mechanism for ongoing Fuel Treatment and Fuels Maintenance spanning seasons and possibly decades.

iv. Fuel treatment shall not require the full removal of plant materials. Materials shall be removed or reduced such that forest character is maintained, yet Fuel Loads are reduced such that a fire would be adequately modified to reduce or eliminate threat to development.

v. Agricultural operations are permitted provided adequate Fuel Treatment occurs in adjacent Forest Lands to modify an advancing fire to one of lower intensity, or to prevent advance into areas of differing Fuels.

vi. Development shall anticipate the possibility of light to heavy airborne ash and sparks of moderate to high temperatures, and shall include Fuel Treatments internal to the development areas adjacent to brush / scrubland areas.

Development shall include roof and material selections designed to reduce risk of structure fire from high temperature ash.

b. Ground Fires, spotting and Firebrands. Fuel Treatment shall occur as often as needed to remove or reduce Understory materials and Ladder Fuels.

Development shall anticipate intermittent fires with long spans of time between fire events and shall include a mechanism for ongoing Fuel Treatment and Fuels Maintenance spanning seasons and possibly decades.

iv. Fuel treatment shall not require the full removal of plant materials. Materials shall be removed or reduced such that forest character is maintained, yet Fuel Loads are reduced such that a fire would be adequately modified to reduce or eliminate threat to development.

v. Agricultural operations are permitted provided adequate Fuel Treatment occurs in adjacent Forest Lands to modify an advancing fire to one of lower intensity, or to prevent advance into areas of differing Fuels.

vi. Development shall anticipate the possibility of light to heavy airborne ash and sparks of moderate to high temperatures, and shall include Fuel Treatments internal to the development areas adjacent to brush / scrubland areas.

Development shall include roof and material selections designed to reduce risk of structure fire from high temperature ash.

c. Forest Land Fuel models: General Requirements
i. Development should include a moderate level of isolation between development areas and areas prone to wildfire, coupled with Fuel Treatment and wider areas of Fuel reduction. When appropriate, wide area Fuel Treatment as part of a forest stewardship program shall be included in the plan area.

ii. Development shall anticipate horizontally advancing fires and shall utilize Fuel Treatment as the primary mitigation of threat to structures. Development in Forest Lands shall assume fire threats from all types of fire, including Crown Fires, Ground Fires, Spotting and Firebrands. Fuel Treatment shall occur as often as needed to remove or reduce Understory materials and Ladder Fuels.

iii. Development should include a moderate level of isolation between development areas and areas prone to wildfire, coupled with Fuel Treatment and wider areas of Fuel reduction. When appropriate, wide area Fuel Treatment as part of a forest stewardship program shall be included in the plan area.

Development shall anticipate the possibility of light to heavy airborne ash and sparks of moderate to high temperatures, and shall include Fuel Treatments internal to the development areas adjacent to brush / scrubland areas.

Development shall include roof and material selections designed to reduce risk of structure fire from high temperature ash.

c. Forest Land Fuel models: General Requirements
i. Development should include a moderate level of isolation between development areas and areas prone to wildfire, coupled with Fuel Treatment and wider areas of Fuel reduction. When appropriate, wide area Fuel Treatment as part of a forest stewardship program shall be included in the plan area.

ii. Development shall anticipate horizontally advancing fires and shall utilize Fuel Treatment as the primary mitigation of threat to structures. Development in Forest Lands shall assume fire threats from all types of fire, including Crown Fires, Ground Fires, Spotting and Firebrands. Fuel Treatment shall occur as often as needed to remove or reduce Understory materials and Ladder Fuels.

Development shall anticipate intermittent fires with long spans of time between fire events and shall include a mechanism for ongoing Fuel Treatment and Fuels Maintenance spanning seasons and possibly decades.

iv. Fuel treatment shall not require the full removal of plant materials. Materials shall be removed or reduced such that forest character is maintained, yet Fuel Loads are reduced such that a fire would be adequately modified to reduce or eliminate threat to development.

v. Agricultural operations are permitted provided adequate Fuel Treatment occurs in adjacent Forest Lands to modify an advancing fire to one of lower intensity, or to prevent advance into areas of differing Fuels.

vi. Development shall anticipate the possibility of light to heavy airborne ash and sparks of moderate to high temperatures, and shall include Fuel Treatments internal to the development areas adjacent to brush / scrubland areas.

Development shall include roof and material selections designed to reduce risk of structure fire from high temperature ash.

c. Forest Land Fuel models: General Requirements
i. Development should include a moderate level of isolation between development areas and areas prone to wildfire, coupled with Fuel Treatment and wider areas of Fuel reduction. When appropriate, wide area Fuel Treatment as part of a forest stewardship program shall be included in the plan area.

ii. Development shall anticipate horizontally advancing fires and shall utilize Fuel Treatment as the primary mitigation of threat to structures. Development in Forest Lands shall assume fire threats from all types of fire, including Crown Fires, Ground Fires, Spotting and Firebrands. Fuel Treatment shall occur as often as needed to remove or reduce Understory materials and Ladder Fuels.

Development shall anticipate intermittent fires with long spans of time between fire events and shall include a mechanism for ongoing Fuel Treatment and Fuels Maintenance spanning seasons and possibly decades.

iv. Fuel treatment shall not require the full removal of plant materials. Materials shall be removed or reduced such that forest character is maintained, yet Fuel Loads are reduced such that a fire would be adequately modified to reduce or eliminate threat to development.

v. Agricultural operations are permitted provided adequate Fuel Treatment occurs in adjacent Forest Lands to modify an advancing fire to one of lower intensity, or to prevent advance into areas of differing Fuels.

vi. Development shall anticipate the possibility of light to heavy airborne ash and sparks of moderate to high temperatures, and shall include Fuel Treatments internal to the development areas adjacent to brush / scrubland areas.

Development shall include roof and material selections designed to reduce risk of structure fire from high temperature ash.

c. Forest Land Fuel models: General Requirements
i. Development should include a moderate level of isolation between development areas and areas prone to wildfire, coupled with Fuel Treatment and wider areas of Fuel reduction. When appropriate, wide area Fuel Treatment as part of a forest stewardship program shall be included in the plan area.

ii. Development shall anticipate horizontally advancing fires and shall utilize Fuel Treatment as the primary mitigation of threat to structures. Development in Forest Lands shall assume fire threats from all types of fire, including Crown Fires, Ground Fires, Spotting and Firebrands. Fuel Treatment shall occur as often as needed to remove or reduce Understory materials and Ladder Fuels.

Development shall anticipate intermittent fires with long spans of time between fire events and shall include a mechanism for ongoing Fuel Treatment and Fuels Maintenance spanning seasons and possibly decades.

iv. Fuel treatment shall not require the full removal of plant materials. Materials shall be removed or reduced such that forest character is maintained, yet Fuel Loads are reduced such that a fire would be adequately modified to reduce or eliminate threat to development.

v. Agricultural operations are permitted provided adequate Fuel Treatment occurs in adjacent Forest Lands to modify an advancing fire to one of lower intensity, or to prevent advance into areas of differing Fuels.

vi. Development shall anticipate the possibility of light to heavy airborne ash and sparks of moderate to high temperatures, and shall include Fuel Treatments internal to the development areas adjacent to brush / scrubland areas.

Development shall include roof and material selections designed to reduce risk of structure fire from high temperature ash.

1.X.5 TOPOGRAPHY

Restrictions based on topography will likely harmonize with other environmental concerns including stormwater, geotechnical considerations and seismic considerations. Many places that offer high risks for wildfire also offer high risks for at least one of these other concerns.

Additionally, in certain locations recurring wildfire is often coupled with landslides caused by removal of vegetation. This is typical for scrublands where thin soils may be present and underlying stability is low.

The primary focus for topography should be on fires that can move upslope rapidly. This concern increases as slope increases, and mitigation should increase in severity concomitantly, to the limit that no development should occur on, or at the top of, steep slopes, draws, or canyons.

1.X.6 WEATHER PATTERNS

Consideration of weather patterns requires fine grained observation of specific sites and will not necessarily generate regional-scaled information. Specific weather events, such as lightning strikes, are hard to predict, particularly when the weather at the moment of the event may be highly variable. In general, site planning consideration for weather will address other issues such as stormwater, flooding, and/or high winds as they affect structures and access. Appropriate response to these items will generally deliver an adequate response to fire as well.

These annotations are advisory only. The SmartCode itself appears only on the right side of each spread.
FUEL TREATMENT

Fuel Treatment requirements for landowners will be covered by other local or regional regulations. These codes should be reviewed for potential conflicts with the development goals of this code and addressed as part of this calibration. Specific attention should be paid to local codes that favor non-native landscaping or irrigated turf.

While not necessarily addressed by local codes, Fuel Treatments should be aimed at returning existing landscapes to a condition that mimics natural conditions, where fire has not been suppressed but has been allowed. Moisture of Extinction is a value specific not only to each fuel type but to the arrangement of the fuel. In typical wildfire regulations, for each fuel model there will be a defined Moisture of Extinction above which fire safety goes up. Local climate and weather patterns play a part. This is how the fire severity signs are set, such as “Fire Hazard Today: Low.”

1.X.7 INITIAL FUEL TREATMENT

Initial Fuel Treatments, prior to development, may be required and the limits of those treatments will likely be the subject of negotiation. For non-conventional development patterns like those supported by transect-based codes, the extent and pattern of Fuel Treatments may pose conflicts with regard to resource and habitat preservation in adjacent areas, as well as the general landscape qualities sought for the plan area. Fuel Treatments proposed should be finely tuned to the specific Fuel Models and the local climate, such that over-treatment does not occur.

O-1 PRESERVED OPEN SECTOR

This section allows for Fuel Treatment activities that may be sensible or required in otherwise preserved lands. In many cases, strategic Fuel Treatments may make sense some distance away from an area of development to prevent fire from moving into certain higher risk topographic settings. This is an issue of overall wildland fire management, but may occur within a plan area.

At a finer scale, this section also addresses the problem of difficulties arising with Fuel Treatment on public and private lands adjacent to development. This should be calibrated, depending on the nature of the plan, to require access to adjacent lands, even if already developed, for Fuel Treatment from a systems point of view. This suggests that each private property within a plan area shall provide access for Fuel Treatments when subsequent development, as identified in the plan, occurs. It essentially establishes “treatment rights” for all development identified in the plan. It also reduces the ability of adjacent land owners to limit planned development based on refusal to allow fuels treatment. However, inclusion of this section requires careful definition of “Treatment” in the adopted code such that environmental, cultural and social values are preserved.

O-2 RESERVED OPEN SECTOR

This section provides for Fuel Treatment as part of stewardship activities that can return lands to a condition of natural fire management as a means to protect the WUI as well as restore particular lands to natural performance. The O-2 Sector is intended for lands that should be preserved, but are privately owned and not yet preserved. It is typically a temporary designation. It may be reasigned to O-1 or G-1 during the course of a planning charrette or over a series of revised plans, or years later.

O-1 Preserved Open Sector

This section assumes that within the WUI there will be lands identified as part of the Fire Hazard Assessment that are not suitable for development specifically due to wildfire considerations.

SET ASIDE LANDS

This section provides for Fuel Treatment as part of stewardship activities that can return lands to a condition of natural fire management as a means to protect the WUI as well as restore particular lands to natural performance. The O-2 Sector is intended for lands that should be preserved, but are privately owned and not yet preserved. It is typically a temporary designation. It may be reasigned to O-1 or G-1 during the course of a planning charrette or over a series of revised plans, or years later.

2.X. SET ASIDE LANDS

a. Lands in a Fire Hazard Severity Zone that are set aside for the purpose of fire hazard mitigation, and that are not designated for agricultural uses or currently in private ownership for agricultural uses, shall be permanently assigned to the O-1 Preserved Open Sector. Such lands in private ownership shall be assigned O-2 Reserved Open Space Sector for intended reassignment to O-1 through Transfer of Development Rights or other compensatory actions, or to the G-1 Restricted Growth Sector, allowing only CLD development in the future.

2.X.1 O-1 PRESERVED OPEN SECTOR

a. Lands in Fire Hazard Severity Zones designated O-1 may include Fuel Treatments at Sector boundaries adjacent to other Sectors where structures may be present, and in other locations where Fuel Treatments provide a strategic advantage for fire hazard mitigation for existing and proposed development and for general stewardship purposes.

b. Lands in Fire Hazard Severity Zones designated O-1 may include agricultural production and structures, timber production and structures, and parklands facilities and structures by warrant.

2.X.2 O-2 RESERVED OPEN SECTOR

a. Fuel Treatment in O-2 and O-1 shall return undeveloped lands within the Sector to a condition in which naturally occurring fires generate ongoing Fuels Maintenance.

2.X.3 G-1 RESTRICTED GROWTH SECTOR AND G-2 CONTROLLED GROWTH SECTOR

a. Lands in Fire Hazard Severity Zones designated G-1 or G-2 may include agricultural production and related structures.
These annotations are advisory only. The SmartCode itself appears only on the right side of each spread.

3.4 SPECIFIC TO ZONE T-2

This section is intended for Community Scale Plans where O-2 and G-1 Sectors or T-2 agricultural and stewardship zones are identified and development potential is present. While T-2 lots may be very large (20 acres minimum in the model SmartCode), in the FHSZ, buildings are disposed near public thoroughfares. This satisfies much of the fire fighting concern because the structures are readily accessible. Additionally, it seeks to establish individual property patterns in traditional ways such that, should development intensify, these T-2 patterns closely associated with patterns in traditional ways such that, should develop-

3.4 SPECIFIC TO ZONE T-3

In most communities developed and protected under this Code, T-3 will be the primary development zone associated with the WUI. The T-3 zone, if protected by a Common Zone of Defense on the outer edges, is effectively a transition between wildland fire risks and the more intensely developed T-4 zone where wildland fire is likely to be irrelevant and urban fire fighting tech-

3.4.X TRANSECT ZONES

3.4.X SPECIFIC TO ZONE T-2 WITHIN A FIRE HAZARD SEVERITY ZONE

a. Individual structures permitted by this Code that are justified within the FHSZ in support of land management, stewardship, agricultural production, and related residential and industrial structures shall include individual Zones of Defense and shall be located adjacent to public roads for ease of access for fire fighting.

b. Multiple structures comprising a compound shall utilize a Common Zone of Defense such that clusters of buildings are isolated from adjacent fire hazards as a group. The Common Zone of Defense may be increased in dimension to ensure isolation and to protect structures without requiring individual Zones of Defense.

c. Multiple, but separate, individual structures or compounds that may be permitted by this Code (such as farmsteads) shall be located in close proximity to each other such that Zones of Defense or Common Zones of Defense overlap or occur directly across roadways as a means to facilitate fire fighting and discourage a pattern of sprawl. See Table FM-2.

3.4.X SPECIFIC TO ZONE T-3 WITHIN OR ADJACENT TO A FIRE HAZARD SEVERITY ZONE

a. Any T-3 zone at the edge of a TND shall be located such that a Common Zone of Defense occurs between the T-3 zone and any T-2 zone, T-1 zone or O-1 Preserved Open Sector.

b. The Common Zone of Defense shall separate the wildlands from the edge of T-3 and eliminate the need for special consideration of T-3 with regard to wildfire.
ARTICLE 5: BUILDING SCALE PLANS
Rather than develop a full set of slightly varied requirements for individual buildings (or specifically combat those required by standard codes), the Module uses the Common Zone of Defense method to make the case that buildings in the development area are, as a clustered unit, sufficiently separate (and easily protected) from severe wildfire risks. This requires careful delineation of the Common Zones of Defense so that they are, in fact, defensible when reviewed by fire protection officials.

Emphasis on conversion of the WUI to an AUI (or equivalent) is intended to shift the conversation from incidental fire protection of development to intentional modification of fuel types such that fire does not approach development in a threatening manner. However, in the T-2 zone, or T-1 or Civic Space (CS) by Warrant or Variance, there may be isolated buildings that are permitted by the SmartCode within a Community Plan, but which would require individual Zones of Defense. Ideally, advance planning with careful placement (disposition) of such buildings and facilities would allow normal T-2 development within a Common Zone of Defense, though this is not always possible. See Table FM-2 and Table FM-3.

The Common Zone of Defense rationale should establish that the resulting buffer is somewhat larger (community scaled) than a typical Zone of Defense, and thus provides far better fire protection and access for whatever fire fighting may be necessary.

BUILDING DISPOSITION
SPECIFIC TO ZONES T1, T-2, CZ
This section expands relevant issues for T-2 partly to support specific development patterns and partly to defend against other codes that encourage sprawl.

It reinforces street friendly locations for development partly to support fire fighting efforts and partly to reinforce the natural succession of Transect Zones for future intensification, following the traditional settlement patterns of Article 3 and Article 4 of the base SmartCode.

ARTICLE 5. LOT AND BUILDING SCALE PLANS
5.X BUILDING DISPOSITION
5.X.1 GENERAL TO ALL ZONES
a. Buildings that are protected by a Common Zone of Defense shall not require individual Zones of Defense.
b. Buildings shall be disposed such that they can be easily accessed for fire fighting and shall favor site locations adjacent to streets, roads or other public Thoroughfares.

5.X.2 FUEL TREATMENT AND FIRE RESISTANCE
a. Fuel Treatment as required on Lots shall extend to the public Thoroughfare. See Table FM-1.
b. Individual buildings shall be designed per the applicable building codes for fire resistance. Clustered buildings shall be designed for fire resistance to the extent required by the applicable building codes for buildings in close proximity to each other that are not within a Fire Hazard Hazard Zone.

5.X.3 SPECIFIC TO ZONES T1, T2, CZ
a. Individual structures permitted by this Code, by Right or by Warrant, that are not part of a CLD Community Unit and that are justified in support of land management, stewardship, agricultural production, related residential and industrial structures, etc. shall require individual Zones of Defense.
b. Multiple structures comprising a compound shall be clustered so that a Common Zone of Defense may protect all structures.

5.X BUILDING FUNCTION
5.X.1 SPECIFIC TO ZONE T2
a. Marshalling yards, animal and product handling and other agricultural uses may occupy portions of the Common Zone of Defense.

3.7 THOROUGHFARE STANDARDS
3.7.X GENERAL TO DEVELOPMENT WITHIN OR ADJACENT TO FIRE HAZARD SEVERITY ZONES
a. In Fire Hazard Severity Zones, public Thoroughfares shall be the primary means of accessing private Lots for fire fighting access.
b. Common Zones of Defense that protect CLD and TND Community Unit types shall include access and connectivity per the Intent of this Code, Section 1.3.
TABLE FM-1
COMMON ZONE OF DEFENSE
FUEL TREATMENTS

Zones of Defense should be explicitly tuned to the fuel types present in the plan area, as different fuel types will result in somewhat different fire patterns. As fire moves through a landscape and encounters different fuel types, its character changes. The goal of wildland fire suppression is not necessarily to extinguish a fire, but to modify it such that its intensity matches the natural fire resistance (and adaptation) of the subject landscape.

Fuel includes living trees and plant material, dead and decaying material on the ground including duff and slash, buildings and appurtenances, vehicles, chemicals, agricultural products, etc.

All Zones of Defense, whether Common or not, should be calibrated to each plan area, and should address the existing codes regarding dimensions as well as desirable dimensions.

The language in this table is regulatory. It may be modified to be advisory (“should” instead of “shall”) as local politics require.

**Slope Issues / Climate Issues**

Responses to topographic and climate/weather issues are highly sensitive to local conditions and are best informed by fire history in the plan area. Code elements addressing these items should focus on development/no development settings, as there are minimal responses available to better suit development for these circumstances. The primary tool is expansion of the Zone of Defense (a de facto “no-development” response).

### Table FM-1: Common Zone of Defense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fire Hazard Severity Area</th>
<th>Development Area</th>
<th>Reduced Fuel Zone</th>
<th>Critical Zone</th>
<th>Common Zone of Defense (Dimension)</th>
<th>Reduced Fuel Zone</th>
<th>Critical Zone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Forest Land Fuel Types</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tree reduction throughout the Zone of Defense</td>
<td>Fire Hazard Severity Area</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
<td>Common Zone of Defense (Dimension)</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tree reduction or removal in the Critical Zone</td>
<td>Fire Hazard Severity Area</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
<td>Common Zone of Defense (Dimension)</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion to agriculture in the Critical Zone</td>
<td>Fire Hazard Severity Area</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
<td>Common Zone of Defense (Dimension)</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trees shall be permitted in the Critical Zone and within the development area when Ladder Fuels are managed</td>
<td>Fire Hazard Severity Area</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
<td>Common Zone of Defense (Dimension)</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scrub / Brushland Fuel Type</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel reduction throughout the Zone of Defense</td>
<td>Fire Hazard Severity Area</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
<td>Common Zone of Defense (Dimension)</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion to agriculture in the Critical Zone</td>
<td>Fire Hazard Severity Area</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
<td>Common Zone of Defense (Dimension)</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trees shall be prohibited in the Critical Zone</td>
<td>Fire Hazard Severity Area</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
<td>Common Zone of Defense (Dimension)</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trees shall be permitted within the development area when Ladder Fuels and Crown Fuels are managed</td>
<td>Fire Hazard Severity Area</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
<td>Common Zone of Defense (Dimension)</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Grassland Fuel Type</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Reduction and Fuel Management throughout Zone of Defense</td>
<td>Fire Hazard Severity Area</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
<td>Common Zone of Defense (Dimension)</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion to agriculture in the Critical Zone</td>
<td>Fire Hazard Severity Area</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
<td>Common Zone of Defense (Dimension)</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trees shall be permitted in the Critical Zone and within the development area when Ladder Fuels are managed</td>
<td>Fire Hazard Severity Area</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
<td>Common Zone of Defense (Dimension)</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical Zone may be reduced by Warrant via inclusion of walls, grade breaks, and other barriers</td>
<td>Fire Hazard Severity Area</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
<td>Common Zone of Defense (Dimension)</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Slope Issues</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where topography includes slopes, draws, canyons and other features that focus wind effects, the Zone of Defense shall be increased</td>
<td>Fire Hazard Severity Area</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
<td>Common Zone of Defense (Dimension)</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Development shall be prohibited on slopes, and limited to benches, ridges and other locations where fire fighting in the Critical Zone is facilitated</td>
<td>Fire Hazard Severity Area</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
<td>Common Zone of Defense (Dimension)</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Within development, Fuel sources shall be reduced at edges adjacent to increased Zone of Defense</td>
<td>Fire Hazard Severity Area</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
<td>Common Zone of Defense (Dimension)</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Climate Issues</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where prevailing winds (during fire season) coincide with wildland Fuel sources, the Zone of Defense shall be increased</td>
<td>Fire Hazard Severity Area</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
<td>Common Zone of Defense (Dimension)</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The reduced Fuel zone shall be limited to grasses or agrarian production</td>
<td>Fire Hazard Severity Area</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
<td>Common Zone of Defense (Dimension)</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Within development, Fuel sources shall be reduced at edges adjacent to the increased Zone of Defense (see diagram)</td>
<td>Fire Hazard Severity Area</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
<td>Common Zone of Defense (Dimension)</td>
<td>Reduced Fuel Zone</td>
<td>Critical Zone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE FM-2
COMMUNITY SCALE PATTERNS

This table provides a basic sampling of plan types in which Common Zones of Defense are relevant. It contrasts a small cluster where each building has its own Zone of Defense with a small ag compound pattern that would enable a Common Zone of Defense. Larger clusters and CLD (hamlets) should use this pattern as well. The edge of a TND is also appropriate for a Common Zone of Defense.

A basic review of the literature on both fire mitigation and fire behavior is recommended before entering into a discussion of the specific use of, and dimensions for, the Common Zone of Defense for each group of buildings or full neighborhood.

All Zones of Defense, whether Common or not, should be calibrated to each plan area, and should address the existing codes regarding dimensions as well as desirable dimensions.

The language in this table is regulatory. It may be modified to be advisory ("should" instead of "shall") as local politics require.

a. Prohibited Pattern: Conventional Sprawl

- Conventional sprawl patterns shall not be permitted that generate redundant Zones of Defense, increased building spacing, and/or complex fire fighting situations.

b. Individual Buildings, Compounds, Farmsteads, Agricultural / Stewardship, Proto-Hamlets:

- Zones of Defense shall be provided around single structures.
- Multiple structures shall be clustered per this Table, items b, c, and d.
- Common Zones of Defense shall be provided around clusters of multiple structures.
- Structures shall be located close enough to public Thoroughfares for direct fire fighting access.
- Zones of Defense shall be contiguous with public Thoroughfares.
- Multiple buildings and compounds under separate ownership shall be located in close proximity to each other to reduce the total quantity of individual Zones of Defense and to initiate development patterns that favor emergent CLD development. In such cases, Zones of Defense may overlap.

c. CLD with Common Zone of Defense:

- For CLD Community Unit types, Common Zones of Defense shall be provided to isolate development from Fire Hazard Severity Zones. See Section 3.3.X.
- Common Zones of Defense shall provide adequate isolation from likely wildfire threats via distance, Fuel Treatment, and fire fighting access, such that resulting development shall be regulated by this Code and the local Building Codes and shall not require more restrictive regulation in response to proximity to Fire Hazard Severity Area.

d. Common Zone of Defense at Edge of TND, Agrarian Urban Interface (AUI):

- For TND Community Unit types, Common Zones of Defense shall isolate development from Fire Hazard Severity Zones.
- Common Zones of Defense shall extend between relevant edges of TND and the Fire Hazard Severity Zone.
- AUI shall be converted to AUI, thus separating wildland fire fighting requirements from urban fire fighting requirements.
- Farmsteads and related agrarian compounds may occur within the Agrarian Urban Interface per item b. above.
TABLE FM-3
WUI CONVERSION TO AUI

This table provides a diagram of the interrelated aspects of some basic development types that may occur within a plan area. It contrasts recent conventional scattered “suburban” development with older patterns that traditionally separated development and wildfire risks.

Table FM-2 and Table FM-3 both reflect the overall intent of this Module, which is to separate development from fire risk at the scale of the community rather than the scale of the building.

a. Prohibited Pattern:
• Dispersed development that requires numerous and redundant Zones of Defense and increases the extent of the WUI shall not be permitted.

b. Permitted Pattern:
• Conversion of the WUI to AUI at the edge of existing or planned development shall be permitted.
• For isolated development, compounds with Common Zones of Defense located adjacent to public Thoroughfares shall be permitted.
• For CLD and other clustered development, as well as the edges of TNO, Common Zones of Defense that convert WUI to AUI shall be permitted.

TABLE FM-3
WUI CONVERSION TO AUI

This table provides a diagram of the interrelated aspects of some basic development types that may occur within a plan area. It contrasts recent conventional scattered “suburban” development with older patterns that traditionally separated development and wildfire risks.

Table FM-2 and Table FM-3 both reflect the overall intent of this Module, which is to separate development from fire risk at the scale of the community rather than the scale of the building.
ARTICLE 7. DEFINITIONS OF TERMS

Fire fighting and fire management activities utilize a number of terms not commonly used in other areas of land management. Since the application of this module will likely require debate with fire officials regarding appropriate mitigation methods, some terms have been selected specifically to harmonize with the language that will likely be used in coordination with these officials. While these may seem counterintuitive, or there may be lay terms available, this Module, when used in a code, will likely be scrutinized heavily by groups that speak this language.

agrarian urban interface (aui): the geographic area where urban development, even at low intensities, interfaces directly with low fuel agricultural lands. It includes former wildlands in a Fire Severity Hazard Zone that have been modified to reduce fire risk by supporting agriculture, i.e., crop lands, grazing lands and support facilities. The AUI buffers wildlands from development such that a Wildland Urban Interface no longer exists.

brush / scrubland fuel: areas of short to tall brush, chaparral and/or loosely spaced small trees accompanied with other brushland shrubs.

common zone of defense: a zone of Defense surrounding a collection of buildings rather than only one building.

critical zone: the designated portion of the Zone of Defense closest to development. See Table FM-1.

crown fire: fire that moves through the crown of trees in a continuous tree canopy, whether supported by heat from a Surface Fire below or a fire that is expanding solely via the crown.

crown fuel: combustible plant material in the tree canopy.

FHSZ: see Fire Hazard Severity Zone.

firebrand: rolling or falling debris already burning.

fire extinction: the complete extinguishing of a fire via elimination of Fuel, changes in weather or actual suppression.

fire hazard severity zone (FHSZ): specific area designated by state or local agencies as prone to severe fire occurrence and related risks. The designation results from prior federal and state fire hazard assessment and planning, and calibrates specific areas to applicable codes.

fire modification: the changing of a fire type, usually from an intense type to one of lower intensity, either by direct suppression, or by Fuel Treatment along the course of a fire.

forest lands fuel: any woodlands, from small deciduous trees to thick conifer climax forests.

fuel: any material, natural or human-made, that is combustible during a wildfire event.

fuel load: the quantification of Fuel in a particular area.

fuel maintenance: the regular cutting, thinning, trimming and removal of Fuels on a repeated basis as a means to implement long-term Fuel Management

fuel management: the cutting, thinning or removal of Fuels as a means to reduce the spread of a wildfire or modify its particular characteristics.

fuel model: a description of a particular collection of varied Fuels that occur in specific geographic areas. Fuel Models can describe regional scale or very localized conditions depending on the nature of the subject area and the variability of Fuels within the area. Fuel Models typically have a relationship to the type of fire that can be expected, and are used to describe geographic conditions for the purpose of Fire Modification.
Fuel Reduction: the removal of accumulated Fuels to reduce the spread of wildfire or modify an approaching fire to a lower level of intensity.

Fuel Treatment: the task of reducing, maintaining or otherwise modifying the Fuel Loads in a given area.

Grassland Fuel: Fuel characterized by grasslands and intermittent shrub areas with isolated trees or wooded areas. Grassland Fuel types can burn often with relatively low long-term damage.

Ground Fire: fire that progresses at or below the ground surface via combustion of duff, debris, deep slash or peat.

Initial Treatment, Initial Fuel Treatment: the first Fuel Treatment to occur in conjunction with a development area, usually done before any construction begins.

Ladder Fuels: Fuels that allow a Surface Fire to climb up through the tree canopy and possibly generate a Crown Fire.

Moisture of Extinction: the Fuel moisture content at which a fire will not spread, or spreads only sporadically and predictably.

Reduced Fuel Zone: the designated portion of the Zone of Defense between wildlands and the Critical Zone. See Table FM-1.

Spotting, Spot Fires: fires that are started as a result of airborne ash and sparks from a nearby fire front, or from Firebrands.

Surface Fire: fire that moves along the ground surface via combustion of grasses, shrubs and slash.

Understory: Shrubs, grasses, and young trees that grow below established trees in older forests.

Urbanized: developed at the intensity of the T-3 zone or higher.

Wildland Urban Interface (WUI): the geographic area where urban development, even at low intensities, interfaces directly with wildlands. It includes areas where older traditional development has approached the edge of wildlands, but particularly where more recent suburban and exurban development has penetrated into wildlands that were not previously utilized for agriculture or some other form of human settlement.

Zone of Defense: an area of substantial or complete Fuel Treatment, creating a fire break between buildings and approaching fires and a safe zone in which fire fighters may operate. See Common Zone of Defense.
1944 CIA SABOTAGE TOOLKIT

A PDF scan of the toolkit, intended for wartime use.
Per guidance from the Chief/DRRB CIA Declassification Center, you may consider the document declassified... If you use an exact copy of the document in your presentations, please draw a line through the classification markings to prevent confusion. Use the information as you see fit.

4/2/2008
Office of Strategic Services

Washington, D. C.

17 January 1944

This Simple Sabotage Field Manual — Strategic Services (Provisional) — is published for the information and guidance of all concerned and will be used as the basic doctrine for Strategic Services training for this subject.

The contents of this Manual should be carefully controlled and should not be allowed to come into unauthorized hands.

The instructions may be placed in separate pamphlets or leaflets according to categories of operations but should be distributed with care and not broadly. They should be used as a basis of radio broadcasts only for local and special cases and as directed by the theater commander.

AR 380-5, pertaining to handling of secret documents, will be complied with in the handling of this Manual.

William J. Donovan

Director
CONTENTS

1. INTRODUCTION ............................................. 1
2. POSSIBLE EFFECTS ......................................... 2
3. MOTIVATING THE SABOTEUR .............................. 2
4. TOOLS, TARGETS, AND TIMING .......................... 6
5. SPECIFIC SUGGESTIONS FOR SIMPLE SABOTAGE ........ 8
SIMPLE SABOTAGE

1. INTRODUCTION

a. The purpose of this paper is to characterize simple sabotage, to outline its possible effects, and to present suggestions for inciting and executing it.

b. Sabotage varies from highly technical coup de main acts that require detailed planning and the use of specially trained operatives, to innumerable simple acts which the ordinary individual citizen-saboteur can perform. This paper is primarily concerned with the latter type. Simple sabotage does not require specially prepared tools or equipment; it is executed by an ordinary citizen who may or may not act individually and without the necessity for active connection with an organized group; and it is carried out in such a way as to involve a minimum danger of injury, detection, and reprisal.

c. Where destruction is involved, the weapons of the citizen-saboteur are salt, nails, candles, pebbles, thread, or any other materials he might normally be expected to possess as a householder or as a worker in his particular occupation. His arsenal is the kitchen shelf, the trash pile, his own usual kit of tools and supplies. The targets of his sabotage are usually objects to which he has normal and inconspicuous access in everyday life.

d. A second type of simple sabotage requires no destructive tools whatsoever and produces physical damage, if any, by highly indirect means. It is based on universal opportunities to make faulty decisions, to adopt a non-cooperative attitude, and to induce others to follow suit. Making a faulty decision may be simply a matter of placing tools in one spot instead of another. A non-cooperative attitude may involve nothing more than creating an unpleasant situation among one's fellow workers, engaging in bickerings, or displaying surlieness and stupidity.

e. This type of activity, sometimes referred to as the "human element," is frequently responsible for accidents, delays, and general obstruction even under normal conditions. The potential saboteur should discover what types
of faulty decisions and non-cooperation are normally found in his kind of work and should then devise his sabotage so as to enlarge that "margin for error."

2. POSSIBLE EFFECTS

a. Acts of simple sabotage are occurring throughout Europe. An effort should be made to add to their efficiency, lessen their detectability, and increase their number. Acts of simple sabotage, multiplied by thousands of citizen-saboteurs, can be an effective weapon against the enemy. Slashimg tires, draining fuel tanks, starting fires, starting arguments, acting stupidly, short-circuiting electric systems, abrading machine parts will waste materials, manpower, and time. Occurring on a wide scale, simple sabotage will be a constant and tangible drag on the war effort of the enemy.

b. Simple sabotage may also have secondary results of more or less value. Widespread practice of simple sabotage will harass and demoralize enemy administrators and police. Further, success may embolden the citizen-saboteur eventually to find colleagues who can assist him in sabotage of greater dimensions. Finally, the very practice of simple sabotage by natives in enemy or occupied territory may make these individuals identify themselves actively with the United Nations war effort, and encourage them to assist openly in periods of Allied invasion and occupation.

3. MOTIVATING THE SABOTEUR

a. To incite the citizen to the active practice of simple sabotage and to keep him practicing that sabotage over sustained periods is a special problem.

b. Simple sabotage is often an act which the citizen performs according to his own initiative and inclination. Acts of destruction do not bring him any personal gain and may be completely foreign to his habitually conservationist attitude toward materials and tools. Purposeful stupidity is contrary to human nature. He frequently needs pressure, stimulation or assurance, and information and suggestions regarding feasible methods of simple sabotage.

(1) Personal Motives

(a) The ordinary citizen very probably has no immediate personal motive for committing simple sabotage. Instead, he must be made to anticipate indirect personal gain, such as might come with enemy evacuation or destruction of the ruling government group. Gains should be stated as specifically as possible for the area addressed: simple sabotage will hasten the day when Commissioner X and his deputies Y and Z will be thrown out, when particularly obnoxious decrees and restrictions will be abolished, when food will arrive, and so on. Abstract verbalizations about personal liberty, freedom of the press, and so on, will not be convincing in most parts of the world. In many areas they will not even be comprehensible.

(b) Since the effect of his own acts is limited, the saboteur may become discouraged unless he feels that he is a member of a large, though unseen, group of saboteurs operating against the enemy or the government of his own country and elsewhere. This can be conveyed indirectly: suggestions which he reads and hears can include observations that a particular technique has been successful in this or that district. Even if the technique is not applicable to his surroundings, another's success will encourage him to attempt similar acts. It also can be conveyed directly: statements praising the effectiveness of simple sabotage can be contrived which will be published by white radio, freedom stations, and the subversive press. Estimates of the proportion of the population engaged in sabotage can be disseminated. Instances of successful sabotage already are being broadcast by white radio and freedom stations, and this should be continued and expanded where compatible with security.

(c) More important than (a) or (b) would be to create a situation in which the citizen-saboteur acquires a sense of responsibility and begins to educate others in simple sabotage.
(2) Encouraging Destructiveness

It should be pointed out to the saboteur where the circumstances are suitable, that he is acting in self-defense against the enemy, or retaliating against the enemy for other acts of destruction. A reasonable amount of humor in the presentation of suggestions for simple sabotage will relax tension of fear.

(a) The saboteur may have to reverse his thinking, and he should be told this in so many words. Where he formerly thought of keeping his tools sharp, he should now let them grow dull; surfaces that formerly were lubricated now should be sanded; normally diligent, he should now be lazy and careless; and so on. Once he is encouraged to think backwards about himself and the objects of his everyday life, the saboteur will see many opportunities in his immediate environment which cannot possibly be seen from a distance. A state of mind should be encouraged that anything can be sabotaged.

(b) Among the potential citizen-saboteurs who are to engage in physical destruction, two extreme types may be distinguished. On the one hand, there is the man who is not technically trained and employed. This man needs specific suggestions as to what he can and should destroy as well as details regarding the tools by means of which destruction is accomplished.

(c) At the other extreme is the man who is a technician, such as a lathe operator or an automobile mechanic. Presumably this man would be able to devise methods of simple sabotage which would be appropriate to his own facilities. However, this man needs to be stimulated to re-orient his thinking in the direction of destruction. Specific examples, which need not be from his own field, should accomplish this.

(d) Various media may be used to disseminate suggestions and information regarding simple sabotage. Among the media which may be used, as the immediate situation dictates, are: freedom stations or radio, false or official leaflets. Broadcasts or leaflets may be directed toward specific geographic or occupational areas, or they may be general in scope. Finally, agents may be trained in the art of simple sabotage, in anticipation of a time when they may be able to communicate this information directly.

(3) Safety Measures

(a) The amount of activity carried on by the saboteur will be governed not only by the number of opportunities he sees, but also by the amount of danger he feels. Bad news travels fast, and simple sabotage will be discouraged if too many simple saboteurs are arrested.

(b) It should not be difficult to prepare leaflets and other media for the saboteur about the choice of weapons, time, and targets which will insure the saboteur against detection and retaliation. Among such suggestions might be the following:

(1) Use materials which appear to be innocent. A knife or a nail file can be carried normally on your person; either is a multi-purpose instrument for creating damage. Matches, pebbles, hair, salt, nails, and dozens of other destructive agents can be carried or kept in your living quarters without exciting any suspicion whatever. If you are a worker in a particular trade or industry you can easily carry and keep such things as wrenches, hammers, emery paper, and the like.

(2) Try to commit acts for which large numbers of people could be responsible. For instance, if you blow the wiring in a factory at a central fire box, almost anyone could have done it. On-the-street sabotage after dark, such as you might be able to carry out against a military car or truck, is another example of an act for which it would be impossible to blame you.

(3) Do not be afraid to commit acts for which you might be blamed directly, so long as you do so rarely, and as long as you have a
plausible excuse: you dropped your wrench across an electric circuit because an air raid had kept you up the night before and you were half-doing at work. Always be profuse in your apologies. Frequently you can "get away" with such acts under the cover of pretending stupidity, ignorance, over-caution, fear of being suspected of sabotage, or weakness and dullness due to undernourishment.

(4) After you have committed an act of easy sabotage, resist any temptation to wait around and see what happens. Loiterers arouse suspicion. Of course, there are circumstances when it would be suspicious for you to leave. If you commit sabotage on your job, you should naturally stay at your work.

4. TOOLS, TARGETS, AND TIMING

a. The citizen-saboteur cannot be closely controlled. Nor is it reasonable to expect that simple sabotage can be precisely concentrated on specific types of targets according to the requirements of a concrete military situation. Attempts to control simple sabotage according to developing military factors, moreover, might provide the enemy with intelligence of more or less value in anticipating the date and area of notably intensified or notably slackened military activity.

b. Sabotage suggestions, of course, should be adapted to fit the area where they are to be practiced. Target priorities for general types of situations likewise can be specified, for emphasis at the proper time by the underground press, freedom stations, and cooperating propaganda.

(1) Under General Conditions

(a) Simple sabotage is more than malicious mischief, and it should always consist of acts whose results will be detrimental to the materials and manpower of the enemy.

(b) The saboteur should be ingenious in using his every-day equipment. All sorts of weapons will present themselves if he looks at his surroundings in a different light. For example, emery dust—a powerful weapon—may at first seem unobtainable, but if the saboteur were to pulverize an emery knife sharpener or emery wheel with a hammer, he would find himself with a plentiful supply.

(c) The saboteur should never attack targets beyond his capacity or the capacity of his instruments. An inexperienced person should not, for example, attempt to use explosives, but should confine himself to the use of matches or other familiar weapons.

(d) The saboteur should try to damage only objects and materials known to be in use by the enemy or to be destined for early use by the enemy. It will be safe for him to assume that almost any product of heavy industry is destined for enemy use, and that the most efficient fuels and lubricants also are destined for enemy use. Without special knowledge, however, it would be undesirable for him to attempt destruction of food crops or food products.

(e) Although the citizen-saboteur may rarely have access to military objects, he should give these preference above all others.

(2) Prior to a Military Offensive

During periods which are quiescent in a military sense, such emphasis as can be given to simple sabotage might well center on industrial production, to lessen the flow of materials and equipment to the enemy. Slashing a rubber tire on an Army truck may be an act of value; spoiling a batch of rubber in the production plant is an act of still more value.

(3) During a Military Offensive

(a) Most significant sabotage for an area which is, or is soon destined to be, a theater of combat operations is that whose effects will be direct and immediate. Even if the effects are relatively minor and localized, this type of sabotage is to be preferred to activities whose effects, while widespread, are indirect and delayed.

(1) The saboteur should be encouraged to attack transportation facilities of all kinds.
Among such facilities are roads, railroads, automobiles, trucks, motor-cycles, bicycles, trains, and trams.

(2) Any communications facilities which can be used by the authorities to transmit instructions or morale material should be the objects of simple sabotage. These include telephone, telegraph and power systems, radio, newspapers, placards, and public notices.

(3) Critical materials, valuable in themselves or necessary to the efficient functioning of transportation and communication, also should become targets for the citizen-saboteur. These may include oil, gasoline, tires, food, and water.

5. SPECIFIC SUGGESTIONS FOR SIMPLE SABOTAGE

a. It will not be possible to evaluate the desirability of simple sabotage in an area without having in mind rather specifically what individual acts and results are embraced by the definition of simple sabotage.

b. A listing of specific acts follows, classified according to types of target. This list is presented as a growing rather than a complete outline of the methods of simple sabotage. As new techniques are developed, or new fields explored, it will be elaborated and expanded.

(1) Buildings

Warehouses, barracks, offices, hotels, and factory buildings are outstanding targets for simple sabotage. They are extremely susceptible to damage, especially by fire; they offer opportunities to such untrained people as janitors, charwomen, and casual visitors; and, when damaged, they present a relatively large handicap to the enemy.

(a) Fires can be started wherever there is an accumulation of inflammable material. Warehouses are obviously the most promising targets but incendiary sabotage need not be confined to them alone.

(1) Whenever possible, arrange to have the fire start after you have gone away. Use a candle and paper combination, setting it as close as possible to the inflammable material you want to burn: From a sheet of paper, tear a strip three or four centimeters wide and wrap it around the base of the candle two or three times. Twist more sheets of paper into loose ropes and place them around the base of the candle. When the candle flame reaches the encircling strip, it will be ignited and in turn will ignite the surrounding paper. The size, heat, and duration of the resulting flame will depend on how much paper you use and how much of it you can cramp in a small space.

(2) With a flame of this kind, do not attempt to ignite any but rather inflammable materials, such as cotton sacking. To light more resistant materials, use a candle plus tightly rolled or twisted paper which has been soaked in gasoline. To create a briefer but even hotter flame, put celluloid such as you might find in an old comb, into a nest of plain or saturated paper which is to be fired by a candle.

(3) To make another type of simple fuse, soak one end of a piece of string in grease. Rub a generous pinch of gunpowder over the inch of string where greasy string meets clean string. Then ignite the clean end of the string. It will burn slowly without a flame (in much the same way that a cigarette burns) until it reaches the grease and gunpowder; it will then flare up suddenly. The grease-treated string will then burn with a flame. The same effect may be achieved by using matches instead of the grease and gunpowder. Run the string over the match heads, taking care that the string is not pressed or knotted. They too will produce a sudden flame. The advantage of this type of fuse is that string burns at a set speed. You can time your fire by the length and thickness of the string you chose.
(4) Use a fuse such as the ones suggested above to start a fire in an office after hours. The destruction of records and other types of documents would be a serious handicap to the enemy.

(5) In basements where waste is kept, janitors should accumulate oily and greasy waste. Such waste sometimes ignites spontaneously, but it can easily be lit with a cigarette or match. If you are a janitor on night duty, you can be the first to report the fire, but don’t report it too soon.

(6) A clean factory is not susceptible to fire, but a dirty one is. Workers should be careless with refuse and janitors should be inefficient in cleaning. If enough dirt and trash can be accumulated an otherwise fireproof building will become inflammable.

(7) Where illuminating gas is used in a room which is vacant at night, shut the windows tightly, turn on the gas, and leave a candle burning in the room, closing the door tightly behind you. After a time, the gas will explode, and a fire may or may not follow.

(b) Water and miscellaneous

(1) Ruin warehouse stock by setting the automatic sprinkler system to work. You can do this by tapping the sprinkler heads sharply with a hammer or by holding a match under them.

(2) Forget to provide paper in toilets; put tightly rolled paper, hair, and other obstructions in the W. C. Saturate a sponge with a thick starch or sugar solution. Squeeze it tightly into a ball, wrap it with string, and dry. Remove the string when fully dried. The sponge will be in the form of a tight hard ball. Flush down a W. C. or otherwise introduce into a sewer line. The sponge will gradually expand to its normal size and plug the sewage system.

(3) Put a coin beneath a bulb in a public building during the daytime, so that fuses will blow out when lights are turned on at night. The fuses themselves may be rendered ineffective by putting a coin behind them or loading them with heavy wire. Then a short-circuit may either start a fire, damage transformers, or blow out a central fuse which will interrupt distribution of electricity to a large area.

(4) Jam paper, bits of wood, hairpins, and anything else that will fit, into the locks of all unguarded entrances to public buildings.

(2) Industrial Production: Manufacturing

(a) Tools

(1) Let cutting tools grow dull. They will be inefficient, will slow down production, and may damage the materials and parts you use them on.

(2) Leave saws slightly twisted when you are not using them. After a while, they will break when used.

(3) Using a very rapid stroke will wear out a file before its time. So will dragging a file in slow strokes under heavy pressure. Exert pressure on the backward stroke as well as the forward stroke.

(4) Clean files by knocking them against the vise or the workpiece; they are easily broken this way.

(5) Bits and drills will snap under heavy pressure.

(6) You can put a press punch out of order by putting in it more material than it is adjusted for—two blanks instead of one, for example.

(7) Power-driven tools like pneumatic drills, riveters, and so on, are never efficient when dirty. Lubrication points and electric contacts can easily be fouled by normal accumulations of dirt or the insertion of foreign matter.
(b) Oil and lubrication systems are not only vulnerable to easy sabotage, but are critical in every machine with moving parts. Sabotage of oil and lubrication will slow production or stop work entirely at strategic points in industrial processes.

(1) Put metal dust or filings, fine sand, ground glass, emery dust (get it by pounding up an emery knife sharpener) and similar hard, gritty substances directly into lubrication systems. They will scour smooth surfaces, ruining pistons, cylinder walls, shafts, and bearings. They will overheat and stop motors which will need overhauling, new parts, and extensive repairs. Such materials, if they are used, should be introduced into lubrication systems past any filters which otherwise would strain them out.

(2) You can cause wear on any machine by uncovering a filter system, poking a pencil or any other sharp object through the filter mesh, then covering it up again. Or, if you can dispose of it quickly, simply remove the filter.

(3) If you cannot get at the lubrication system or filter directly, you may be able to lessen the effectiveness of oil by diluting it in storage. In this case, almost any liquid will do which will thin the oil. A small amount of sulphuric acid, varnish, water-glass, or linseed oil will be especially effective.

(4) Using a thin oil where a heavy oil is prescribed will break down a machine or heat up a moving shaft so that it will "freeze" and stop.

(5) Put any clogging substance into lubrication systems or, if it will float, into storage oil. Twisted combings of human hair, pieces of string, dead insects, and many other common objects will be effective in stopping or hindering the flow of oil through feed lines and filters.

(6) Under some circumstances, you may be able to destroy oil outright rather than interfere with its effectiveness, by removing stop-puts from lubricating systems or by puncturing the drums and cans in which it is stored.

(c) Cooling Systems

(1) A water cooling system can be put out of commission in a fairly short time, with considerable damage to an engine or motor, if you put into it several pinches of hard grain, such as rice or wheat. They will swell up and choke the circulation of water, and the cooling system will have to be torn down to remove the obstruction. Sawdust or hair may also be used to clog a water cooling system.

(2) If very cold water is quickly introduced into the cooling system of an overheated motor, contraction and considerable strain on the engine housing will result. If you can repeat the treatment a few times, cracking and serious damage will result.

(3) You can ruin the effectiveness of an air cooling system by plugging dirt and waste into intake or exhaust valves. If a belt-run fan is used in the system, make a jagged cut at least half way through the belt; it will slip and finally part under strain and the motor will overheat.

(d) Gasoline and Oil Fuel

Tanks and fueling engines usually are accessible and easy to open. They afford a very vulnerable target for simple sabotage activities.

(1) Put several pinches of sawdust or hard grain, such as rice or wheat, into the fuel tank of a gasoline engine. The particles will choke a feed line so that the engine will stop. Some time will be required to discover the source of the trouble. Although they will be hard to get, crumbs of natural rubber, such as you might find in old rubber bands and pencil erasers, are also effective.

(2) If you can accumulate sugar, put it in
the fuel tank of a gasoline engine. As it burns together with the gasoline, it will turn into a sticky mess which will completely mire the engine and necessitate extensive cleaning and repair. Honey and molasses are as good as sugar. Try to use about 75-100 grams for each 10 gallons of gasoline.

(3) Other impurities which you can introduce into gasoline will cause rapid engine wear and eventual breakdown. Fine particles of pumice, sand, ground glass, and metal dust can easily be introduced into a gasoline tank. Be sure that the particles are very fine, so that they will be able to pass through the carburetor jet.

(4) Water, urine, wine, or any other simple liquid you can get in reasonably large quantities will dilute gasoline fuel to a point where no combustion will occur in the cylinder and the engine will not move. One pint to 20 gallons of gasoline is sufficient. If salt water is used, it will cause corrosion and permanent motor damage.

(5) In the case of Diesel engines, put low flashpoint oil into the fuel tank; the engine will not move. If there already is proper oil in the tank when the wrong kind is added, the engine will only limp and sputter along.

(6) Fuel lines to gasoline and oil engines frequently pass over the exhaust pipe. When the machine is at rest, you can stab a small hole in the fuel line and plug the hole with wax. As the engine runs and the exhaust tube becomes hot, the wax will be melted; fuel will drip onto the exhaust and a blaze will start.

(7) If you have access to a room where gasoline is stored, remember that gas vapor accumulating in a closed room will explode after a time if you leave a candle burning in the room. A good deal of evaporation, however, must occur from the gasoline tins into the air of the room. If removal of the tops of the tins does not expose enough gasoline to the air to ensure copious evaporation, you can open lightly constructed tins further with a knife, ice pick or sharpened nail file. Or puncture a tiny hole in the tank which will permit gasoline to leak out on the floor. This will greatly increase the rate of evaporation. Before you light your candle, be sure that windows are closed and the room is as air-tight as you can make it. If you can see that windows in a neighboring room are opened wide, you have a chance of setting a large fire which will not only destroy the gasoline but anything else nearby; when the gasoline explodes, the doors of the storage room will be blown open, a draft to the neighboring windows will be created which will whip up a fine conflagration.

(e) Electric Motors

Electric motors (including dynamos) are more restricted than the targets so far discussed. They cannot be sabotaged easily or without risk of injury by unskilled persons who may otherwise have good opportunities for destruction.

(1) Set the rheostat to a high point of resistance in all types of electric motors. They will overheat and catch fire.

(2) Adjust the overload relay to a very high value beyond the capacity of the motor. Then overload the motor to a point where it will overheat and break down.

(3) Remember that dust, dirt, and moisture are enemies of electrical equipment. Spill dust and dirt onto the points where the wires in electric motors connect with terminals, and onto insulating parts. Inefficient transmission of current and, in some cases, short circuits will result. Wet generator motors to produce short circuits.

(4) "Accidentally" bruise the insulation on wire, loosen nuts on connections, make faulty splices and faulty connections in wiring, to waste electric current and reduce the power of electric motors.
(5) Damage to commutators can reduce the power output or cause short circuiting in direct-current motors. Loosen or remove commutator holding rings. Sprinkle carbon, graphite, or metal dust on commutators. Put a little grease or oil at the contact points of commutators. Where commutator bars are close together bridge the gaps between them with metal dust, or sawtooth their edges with a chisel so that the teeth on adjoining bars meet or nearly meet and current can pass from one to the other.

(6) Put a piece of finely grained emery paper half the size of a postage stamp in a place where it will wear away rotating brushes. The emery paper—and the motor—will be destroyed in the resulting fire.

(7) Sprinkle carbon, graphite or metal dust on slip-rings so that the current will leak or short circuits will occur. When a motor is idle, nick the slip-rings with a chisel.

(8) Cause motor stoppage or inefficiency by applying dust mixed with grease to the face of the armature so that it will not make proper contact.

(9) To overheat electric motors, mix sand with heavy grease and smear it between the stator and rotor, or wedge thin metal pieces between them. To prevent the efficient generation of current, put floor sweepings, oil, tar, or paint between them.

(10) In motors using three-phase current, deeply nick one of the lead-in wires with a knife or file when the machine is at rest, or replace one of the three fuses with a blown-out fuse. In the first case, the motor will stop after running awhile, and in the second, it will not start.

(f) Transformers

(1) Transformers of the oil-filled type can be put out of commission if you pour water, saltwater, machine-tool coolant, or kerosene into the oil tank.

(2) In air-cooled transformers, block the ventilation by piling debris around the transformer.

(3) In all types of transformers, throw carbon, graphite or metal dust over the outside bushings and other exposed electrical parts.

(g) Turbines for the most part are heavily built, stoutly housed, and difficult of access. Their vulnerability to simple sabotage is very low.

(1) After inspecting or repairing a hydro turbine, fasten the cover insecurely so that it will blow off and flood the plant with water. A loose cover on a steam turbine will cause it to leak and slow down.

(2) In water turbines, insert a large piece of scrap iron in the head of the penstock, just beyond the screening, so that water will carry the damaging material down to the plant equipment.

(3) When the steam line to a turbine is opened for repair, put pieces of scrap iron into it, to be blasted into the turbine machinery when steam is up again.

(4) Create a leak in the line feeding oil to the turbine, so that oil will fall on the hot steam pipe and cause a fire.

(h) Boilers

(1) Reduce the efficiency of steam boilers any way you can. Put too much water in them to make them slow-starting, or keep the fire under them low to keep them inefficient. Let them dry and turn the fire up; they will crack and be ruined. An especially good trick is to keep putting limestone or water containing lime in the boiler; it will deposit lime on the bottom and sides. This deposit will provide very good insulation against heat; after enough of it has collected, the boiler will be completely worthless.
(3) **Production: Metals**

(a) **Iron and Steel**

(1) Keep blast furnaces in a condition where they must be frequently shut down for repair. In making fire-proof bricks for the inner lining of blast furnaces, put in an extra proportion of tar so that they will wear out quickly and necessitate constant re-lining.

(2) Make cores for casting so that they are filled with air bubbles and an imperfect cast results.

(3) See that the core in a mold is not properly supported, so that the core gives way or the casting is spoiled because of the incorrect position of the core.

(4) In tempering steel or iron, apply too much heat, so that the resulting bars and ingots are of poor quality.

(b) **Other Metals**

No suggestions available.

(4) **Production: Mining and Mineral Extraction**

(a) **Coal**

(1) A slight blow against your Davy oil lamp will extinguish it, and to light it again you will have to find a place where there is no fire damp. Take a long time looking for the place.

(2) Blacksmiths who make pneumatic picks should not harden them properly, so that they will quickly grow dull.

(3) You can easily put your pneumatic pick out of order. Pour a small amount of water through the oil lever and your pick will stop working. Coal dust and improper lubrication will also put it out of order.

(4) Weaken the chain that pulls the bucket conveyers carrying coal. A deep dent in the chain made with blows of a pick or shovel will cause it to part under normal strain. Once a chain breaks, normally or otherwise, take your time about reporting the damage; be slow about taking the chain up for repairs and bringing it back down after repairs.

(5) Derail mine cars by putting obstructions on the rails and in switch points. If possible, pick a gallery where coal cars have to pass each other, so that traffic will be snarled up.

(6) Send up quantities of rock and other useless material with the coal.

(5) **Production: Agriculture**

(a) **Machinery**

(1) See par. 5 b. (2) (c), (d), (e).

(b) Crops and livestock probably will be destroyed only in areas where there are large food surpluses or where the enemy (regime) is known to be requisitioning food.

(1) Feed crops to livestock. Let crops harvest too early or too late. Spoil stores of grain, fruit and vegetables by soaking them in water so that they will rot. Spoil fruit and vegetables by leaving them in the sun.

(6) **Transportation: Railways**

(a) **Passengers**

(1) Make train travel as inconvenient as possible for enemy personnel. Make mistakes in issuing train tickets, leaving portions of the journey uncovered by the ticket book; issue two tickets for the same seat in the train, so that an interesting argument will result; near train time, instead of issuing printed tickets write them out slowly by hand, prolonging the process until the train is nearly ready to leave or has left the station. On station bulletin boards announcing train arrivals and departures, see that false and misleading information is given about trains bound for enemy destinations.

(2) In trains bound for enemy destinations, attendants should make life as uncomfortable
as possible for passengers. See that the food is especially bad, take up tickets after midnight, call all station stops very loudly during the night, handle baggage as noisily as possible during the night, and so on.

(3) See that the luggage of enemy personnel is mislaid or unloaded at the wrong stations. Switch address labels on enemy baggage.

(4) Engineers should see that trains run slow or make unscheduled stops for plausible reasons.

(b) Switches, Signals and Routing

(1) Exchange wires in switchboards containing signals and switches, so that they connect to the wrong terminals.

(2) Loosen push-rods so that signal arms do not work; break signal lights; exchange the colored lenses on red and green lights.

(3) Spread and spike switch points in the track so that they will not move, or place rocks or close-packed dirt between the switch points.

(4) Sprinkle rock salt or ordinary salt profusely over the electrical connections of switch points and on the ground nearby. When it rains, the switch will be short-circuited.

(5) See that cars are put on the wrong trains. Remove the labels from cars needing repair and put them on cars in good order. Leave couplings between cars as loose as possible.

(c) Road-beds and Open Track

(1) On a curve, take the bolts out of the tie-plates connecting to sections of the outside rail, and scoop away the gravel, cinders, or dirt for a few feet on each side of the connecting joint.

(2) If by disconnecting the tie-plate at a joint and loosening sleeper nails on each side of the joint, it becomes possible to move a section of rail, spread two sections of rail and drive a spike vertically between them.

(d) Oil and Lubrication

(1) See 5 b (2) (b).

(2) Squeeze lubricating pipes with pincers or dent them with hammers, so that the flow of oil is obstructed.

(e) Cooling Systems

(1) See 5 b (2) (c).

(f) Gasoline and Oil Fuel

(1) See 5 b (2) (d).

(g) Electric Motors

(1) See 5 b (2) (e) and (f).

(h) Boilers

(1) See 5 b (2) (h).

(2) After inspection put heavy oil or tar in the engines' boilers, or put half a kilogram of soft soap into the water in the tender.

(i) Brakes and Miscellaneous

(1) Engines should run at high speeds and use brakes excessively at curves and on downhill grades.

(2) Punch holes in air-brake valves or water supply pipes.

(3) In the last car of a passenger train or a front car of a freight, remove the wadding from a journal box and replace it with oily rags.

(7) Transportation: Automotive

(a) Roads. Damage to roads [(3) below] is slow, and therefore impractical as a D-day or near D-day activity.

(1) Change sign posts at intersections and forks; the enemy will go the wrong way and it may be miles before he discovers his mistakes. In areas where traffic is composed primarily of enemy autos, trucks, and motor convoys of
various kinds, remove danger signals from curves and intersections.

(2) When the enemy asks for directions, give him wrong information. Especially when enemy convoys are in the neighborhood, truck drivers can spread rumors and give false information about bridges being out, ferries closed, and detours lying ahead.

(3) If you can start damage to a heavily traveled road, passing traffic and the elements will do the rest. Construction gangs can see that too much sand or water is put in concrete or that the road foundation has soft spots. Anyone can scoop ruts in asphalt and macadam roads which turn soft in hot weather; passing trucks will accentuate the ruts to a point where substantial repair will be needed. Dirt roads also can be scooped out. If you are a road laborer, it will be only a few minutes work to divert a small stream from a sluice so that it runs over and eats away the road.

(4) Distribute broken glass, nails, and sharp rocks on roads to puncture tires.

(b) Passengers

(1) Bus-driver can go past the stop where the enemy wants to get off. Taxi drivers can waste the enemy’s time and make extra money by driving the longest possible route to his destination.

(c) Oil and Lubrication

(1) See 5 b. (2) (b).

(2) Disconnect the oil pump; this will burn out the main bearings in less than 50 miles of normal driving.

(d) Radiator

(1) See 5 b. (2) (c).

(e) Fuel

(1) See 5 b. (2) (d).

(f) Battery and Ignition

(1) Jam bits of wood into the ignition lock; loosen or exchange connections behind the switchboard; put dirt in spark plugs; damage distributor points.

(2) Turn on the lights in parked cars so that the battery will run down.

(3) Mechanics can ruin batteries in a number of undetectable ways: Take the valve cap off a cell, and drive a screwdriver slantwise into the exposed water vent, shattering the plates of the cell; no damage will show when you put the cap back on. Iron or copper filings put into the cells i.e., dropped into the acid, will greatly shorten its life. Copper coins or a few pieces of iron will accomplish the same and more slowly. One hundred to 150 cubic centimeters of vinegar in each cell greatly reduces the life of the battery, but the odor of the vinegar may reveal what has happened.

(g) Gears

(1) Remove the lubricant from or put too light a lubricant in the transmission and other gears.

(2) In trucks, tractors, and other machines with heavy gears, fix the gear case insecurely, putting bolts in only half the bolt holes. The gears will be badly jolted in use and will soon need repairs.

(h) Tires

(1) Slash or puncture tires of unguarded vehicles. Put a nail inside a match box or other small box, and set it vertically in front of the back tire of a stationary car; when the car starts off, the nail will go neatly through the tire.

(2) It is easy to damage a tire in a tire repair shop: In fixing flats, spill glass, benzine, caustic soda, or other material inside the casing which will puncture or corrode the tube. If you put a gummy substance inside the tube, the next flat will stick the tube to the casing and make
it unusable. Or, when you fix a flat tire, you can simply leave between the tube and the casing the object which caused the flat in the first place.

(3) In assembling a tire after repair, pump the tube up as fast as you can. Instead of filling out smoothly, it may crease, in which case it will wear out quickly. Or, as you put a tire together, see if you can pinch the tube between the rim of the tire and the rim of the wheel, so that a blow-out will result.

(4) In putting air into tires, see that they are kept below normal pressure, so that more than an ordinary amount of wear will result. In filling tires on double wheels, inflate the inner tire to a much higher pressure than the outer one; both will wear out more quickly this way. Badly aligned wheels also wear tires out quickly; you can leave wheels out of alignment, or you can spring them out of true with a strong kick, or by driving the car slowly and diagonally into a curb.

(5) If you have access to stocks of tires, you can rot them by spilling oil, gasoline, caustic acid, or benzine on them. Synthetic rubber, however, is less susceptible to these chemicals.

(8) Transportation: Water

(a) Navigation

(1) Barge and river boat personnel should spread false rumors about the navigability and conditions of the waterways they travel. Tell other barge and boat captains to follow channels that will take extra time, or cause them to make canal detours.

(2) Barge and river boat captains should navigate with exceeding caution near locks and bridges, to waste their time and to waste the time of other craft which may have to wait on them. If you don't pump the bilges of ships and barges often enough, they will be slower and

harder to navigate. Barges "accidentally" run aground are an efficient time waster too.

(3) Attendants on swing, draw, or bascule bridges can delay traffic over the bridge or in the waterway underneath by being slow. Boat captains can leave unattended draw bridges open in order to hold up road traffic.

(4) Add or subtract compensating magnets to the compass on cargo ships. Demagnetize the compass or maladjust it by concealing a large bar of steel or iron near to it.

(b) Cargo

(1) While loading or unloading, handle cargo carelessly in order to cause damage. Arrange the cargo so that the weakest and lightest crates and boxes will be at the bottom of the hold, while the heaviest ones are on top of them. Put hatch covers and tarpaulins on sloppily, so that rain and deck wash will injure the cargo. Tie float valves open so that storage tanks will overflow on perishable goods.

(9) Communications

(a) Telephone

(1) At office, hotel and exchange switchboards delay putting enemy calls through, give them wrong numbers, cut them off "accidentally," or forget to disconnect them so that the line cannot be used again.

(2) Hamper official and especially military business by making at least one telephone call a day to an enemy headquarters; when you get them, tell them you have the wrong number. Call military or police offices and make anonymous false reports of fires, air raids, bombs.

(3) In offices and buildings used by the enemy, unscrew the earphone of telephone receivers and remove the diaphragm. Electricians and telephone repair men can make poor connections and damage insulation so that cross-
talk and other kinds of electrical interference will make conversations hard or impossible to understand.

(4) Put the batteries under automatic switchboards out of commission by dropping nails, metal filings, or coins into the cells. If you can treat half the batteries in this way, the switchboard will stop working. A whole telephone system can be disrupted if you can put 10 percent of the cells in half the batteries of the central battery room out of order.

(b) Telegraph

(1) Delay the transmission and delivery of telegrams to enemy destinations.

(2) Garble telegrams to enemy destinations so that another telegram will have to be sent or a long distance call will have to be made. Sometimes it will be possible to do this by changing a single letter in a word—for example, changing "minimum" to "miximum," so that the person receiving the telegram will not know whether "minimum" or "maximum" is meant.

(c) Transportation Lines

(1) Cut telephone and telegraph transmission lines. Damage insulation on power lines to cause interference.

(d) Mail

(1) Post office employees can see to it that enemy mail is always delayed by one day or more, that it is put in wrong sacks, and so on.

(e) Motion Pictures

(1) Projector operators can ruin newsreels and other enemy propaganda films by bad focusing, speeding up or slowing down the film and by causing frequent breakage in the film.

(2) Audiences can ruin enemy propaganda films by applauding to drown the words of the speaker, by coughing loudly, and by talking.

(3) Anyone can break up a showing of an enemy propaganda film by putting two or three dozen large moths in a paper bag. Take the bag to the movies with you, put it on the floor in an empty section of the theater as you go in and leave it open. The moths will fly out and climb into the projector beam, so that the film will be obscured by fluttering shadows.

(1) Radio

(1) Station engineers will find it quite easy to overmodulate transmissions of talks by persons giving enemy propaganda or instructions, so that they will sound as if they were talking through a heavy cotton blanket with a mouth full of marbles.

(2) In your own apartment building, you can interfere with radio reception at times when the enemy wants everybody to listen. Take an electric light plug off the end of an electric light cord; take some wire out of the cord and tie it across two terminals of a two-prong plug or three terminals of a four-prong plug. Then take it around and put it into as many wall and floor outlets as you can find. Each time you insert the plug into a new circuit, you will blow out a fuse and silence all radios running on power from that circuit until a new fuse is put in.

(3) Damaging insulation on any electrical equipment tends to create radio interference in the immediate neighborhood, particularly on large generators, neon signs, fluorescent lighting, X-ray machines, and power lines. If workmen can damage insulation on a high tension line near an enemy airfield, they will make ground-to-plane radio communications difficult and perhaps impossible during long periods of the day.

(10) Electric Power

(a) Turbines, Electric Motors, Transformers

(1) See 5 b. (2) (e), (f), and (g).

(b) Transmission Lines

(1) Linesmen can loosen and dirty insula-
tors to cause power leakage. It will be quite easy, too, for them to tie a piece of very heavy string several times back and forth between two parallel transmission lines, winding it several turns around the wire each time. Beforehand, the string should be heavily saturated with salt and then dried. When it rains, the string becomes a conductor, and a short-circuit will result.

(11) General Interference with Organizations and Production

(a) Organizations and Conferences

(1) Insist on doing everything through "channels." Never permit short-cuts to be taken in order to expedite decisions.

(2) Make "speeches." Talk as frequently as possible and at great length. Illustrate your "points" by long anecdotes and accounts of personal experiences. Never hesitate to make a few appropriate "patriotic" comments.

(3) When possible, refer all matters to committees, for "further study and consideration." Attempt to make the committees as large as possible — never less than five.

(4) Bring up irrelevant issues as frequently as possible.

(5) Haggle over precise wordings of communications, minutes, resolutions.

(6) Refer back to matters decided upon at the last meeting and attempt to re-open the question of the advisability of that decision.

(7) Advocate "caution." Be "reasonable" and urge your fellow-conferencees to be "reasonable" and avoid haste which might result in embarrassments or difficulties later on.

(8) Be worried about the propriety of any decision — raise the question of whether such action as is contemplated lies within the jurisdiction of the group or whether it might conflict with the policy of some higher echelon.

(b) Managers and Supervisors

(1) Demand written orders.

(2) "Misunderstand" orders. Ask endless questions or engage in long correspondence about such orders. Quibble over them when you can.

(3) Do everything possible to delay the delivery of orders. Even though parts of an order may be ready beforehand, don't deliver it until it is completely ready.

(4) Don't order new working materials until your current stocks have been virtually exhausted, so that the slightest delay in filling your order will mean a shutdown.

(5) Order high-quality materials which are hard to get. If you don't get them argue about it. Warn that inferior materials will mean inferior work.

(6) In making work assignments, always sign out the unimportant jobs first. See that the important jobs are assigned to inefficient workers of poor machines.

(7) Insist on perfect work in relatively unimportant products; send back for refinishing those which have the least flaw. Approve other defective parts whose flaws are not visible to the naked eye.

(8) Make mistakes in routing so that parts and materials will be sent to the wrong place in the plant.

(9) When training new workers, give incomplete or misleading instructions.

(10) To lower morale and with it, production, be pleasant to inefficient workers; give them undeserved promotions. Discriminate against efficient workers; complain unjustly about their work.

(11) Hold conferences when there is more critical work to be done.
(12) Multiply paper work in plausible ways. Start duplicate files.

(13) Multiply the procedures and clearances involved in issuing instructions, pay checks, and so on. See that three people have to approve everything where one would do.

(14) Apply all regulations to the last letter.

(c) Office Workers

(1) Make mistakes in quantities of material when you are copying orders. Confuse similar names. Use wrong addresses.

(2) Prolong correspondence with government bureaus.

(3) Misfile essential documents.

(4) In making carbon copies, make one too few, so that an extra copying job will have to be done.

(5) Tell important callers the boss is busy or talking on another telephone.

(6) Hold up mail until the next collection.

(7) Spread disturbing rumors that sound like inside dope.

(d) Employees

(1) Work slowly. Think out ways to increase the number of movements necessary on your job: use a light hammer instead of a heavy one, try to make a small wrench do when a big one is necessary, use little force where considerable force is needed, and so on.

(2) Contrive as many interruptions to your work as you can: when changing the material on which you are working, as you would on a lathe or punch, take needless time to do it. If you are cutting, shaping or doing other measured work, measure dimensions twice as often as you need to. When you go to the lavatory, spend a longer time there than is necessary. Forget tools so that you will have to go back after them.

(3) Even if you understand the language, pretend not to understand instructions in a foreign tongue.

(4) Pretend that instructions are hard to understand, and ask to have them repeated more than once. Or pretend that you are particularly anxious to do your work, and pester the foreman with unnecessary questions.

(5) Do your work poorly and blame it on bad tools, machinery, or equipment. Complain that these things are preventing you from doing your job right.

(6) Never pass on your skill and experience to a new or less skillful worker.

(7) Snarl up administration in every possible way. Fill out forms illegibly so that they will have to be done over; make mistakes or omit requested information in forms.

(8) If possible, join or help organize a group for presenting employee problems to the management. See that the procedures adopted are as inconvenient as possible for the management, involving the presence of a large number of employees at each presentation, entailing more than one meeting for each grievance, bringing up problems which are largely imaginary, and so on.

(9) Misroute materials.

(10) Mix good parts with unusable scrap and rejected parts.

(12) General Devices for Lowering Morale and Creating Confusion

(a) Give lengthy and incomprehensible explanations when questioned.

(b) Report imaginary spies or danger to the Gestapo or police.

(c) Act stupid.

(d) Be as irritable and quarrelsome as possible without getting yourself into trouble.
(e) Misunderstand all sorts of regulations concerning such matters as rationing, transportation, traffic regulations.

(f) Complain against ersatz materials.

(g) In public treat axis nationals or quislings coldly.

(h) Stop all conversation when axis nationals or quislings enter a cafe.

(i) Cry and sob hysterically at every occasion, especially when confronted by government clerks.

(j) Boycott all movies, entertainments, concerts, newspapers which are in any way connected with the quisling authorities.

(k) Do not cooperate in salvage schemes.
POCKET CODE
This code features building types prominently, and its frontages, signs, thoroughfares, and civic spaces should be understood as type-based. (Courtesy Sandy Sorlien.)
THE POCKET CODE

SECTION I. Intent
To protect and encourage walkable neighborhoods, including downtowns. The Intent is further expressed in the Transect Zone descriptions below, locally customized to the character and goals of the community, and in the CNU Charter at www.cnu.org/charter.

NEIGHBORHOOD TRANSECT ZONES
T3: a quiet mostly residential area of larger lots and detached and/or semi-detached dwellings, within walking distance of higher Transect Zones.
T4: a more populated, mostly residential area of smaller lots and several dwelling types and corner stores.
T5: a well-populated Main Street area with a full mix of uses within the zone and potentially within buildings.
T6: the most populated, most urban part of a major downtown. This zone is reserved for cities that are regional transit hubs with region-serving civic and cultural institutions in their core. Otherwise, T5 usually suffices for the center of town.

SECTION II. Rules for Private Lots & Buildings
This section applies where Transect Zones have been mapped.

BUILDING TYPES
Frontages: Porch, Yard/Garden, Fence/Wall
Frontages for House: Porch, Yard/Garden, Stoop, Fence/Wall
Frontages for Corner Store: Shopfront, Gallery, Cafe Patio, Dooryard, Fence/Wall
Frontages: same as Detached T4
Frontages for Rowhouse: Porch, Stoop, Terrace, Dooryard, Fence/Wall
Frontages for Corner Store: Shopfront, Gallery
Frontages: Stoop, Terrace, Dooryard, Fence/Wall, Shopfront, Corner Gallery, Corner Arcade
Frontages: Yard/Garden, Stoop, Dooryard, Fence/Wall, Corner Shopfront, Corner Gallery, Fence/Wall
Frontages: Stoop, Dooryard, Shopfront, Gallery, Arcade, Fence/Wall

©Sandy Sorlien 2013 based on the DPZ Neighborhood Transect
www.smartcodelocal.com
FRONTAGE DESIGN

• Upon development or redevelopment of a lot, the property owner shall improve the public frontage as needed to conform with the thoroughfare type as mapped per Section II.

• A balcony, stoop, bay window, or open porch may encroach the front setback. A gallery, arcade, or stoop may encroach onto the public sidewalk. Public frontage lines may move if public easement is preferred.

• Glazing on [mandatory shopfronts, if so designated] shall be clear and cover at least [50%] of the facade portion between [2 to 12] ft above the sidewalk.

• Awnings on shopfronts, if any, shall be minimum [4] ft deep. Adjustable roll-up awnings are encouraged.

• Cafe patios are permitted only where a cafe use is permitted.

• Fences and walls along the public way shall be [4] ft or lower. Chain link fencing is prohibited on frontages.

• T3, T4: the private frontage shall not be paved, with the exception of driveways, cafe patios, and terraces where permitted.

• T5, T6: Buildings shall occupy 100% of their lot width, except for passages up to [10] ft wide.

• T5, T6: Store displays, window signs, or curtains on the ground floor shall not obstruct views in or out of any business.

SIGNS

• T3, T4: Signs for home businesses shall be limited to unlighted projecting signs or nameplates on the facade, no larger than [4] sf.

• T4: Signs for retail businesses shall be limited to one projecting sign per entrance, each no larger than [4] sf, and one signband any length on the facade, no higher than [3] ft; or one yard sign no larger than [6] sf on a post no higher than [6] ft. Signs may be externally lighted.

• T5, T6: Same as T4 retail but projecting signs may be [6] sf.

• T4, T5, T6: Lettering on awnings shall be limited to the valance area. No exterior signs may be lighted internally or generated digitally.

PARKING

• There are no parking minimums.

• T3, T4 parking shall be at least [20] ft behind the facade.

• T5, T6 parking shall be behind the buildings, invisible from adjacent sidewalks.

• Parking garages shall have liner shopfronts at the ground floor and liner offices or apartments above. Parking floors should be level with ramps in the center.

• Parking shall be generally permitted on-street in all zones (T3-T6).

• T3, T4 driveways shall be a maximum [10] ft wide to the facade.

• T5, T6 driveways shall be a maximum [20] ft wide where visible.

BUILDING USE

If a use table is desired, refer to Table 4E and Table 4F of the Neighborhood Conservation Code, available at www.smartcodelocal.com. Otherwise, use intensity is constrained by form. Community or block associations may be created to negotiate local use conflicts.
SECTION III. Rules for Neighborhood / Downtown Planning

If further large-scale planning is anticipated, this section may be included in the adopted code.

RECOMMENDED TRANSECT ZONES FOR COMMUNITY UNIT TYPES

* per planned or identified 1/4 mi radius walkshed

Hamlet / Pocket Village: T3+T4
Full Village / Town: T3+T4+T5
Pocket Neighborhood: T3+T4, or just T4
Full Neighborhood: T4+T5, or T3+T4+T5
Downtown: T4+T5, or T5+T6, or T4+T5+T6

- Land not mapped as Transect Zones or Civic areas remains regulated under the existing ordinance.
- The Community Unit (CU) may be larger or smaller than the walkshed. Each walkshed associated with the CU shall contain two or more Transect Zones (which may be outside the actual coded area).
- Walksheds should have no more than [60%] T3 by land area.

THOROUGHFARES

- Thoroughfares may be customized and allocated from the Complete Thoroughfares, Bicycling, or Transit Modules according to their Transect Zone context. Existing Thoroughfares should be identified by type and measurements and marked on the Transect Zoning Map, along with intended types if different.
- Vehicular thoroughfares that are not safe for pedestrians to share shall have continuous sidewalks.

LOT WIDTH MAXIMUMS

- T3 - 120 ft.  T4 - 60 ft.  T5 - 180 ft.  T6 - length of block.
- Flag lots are permitted if front doors of rear dwellings are visible from the sidewalk.

CIVIC SPACE RESERVE

- Reserve Civic Spaces on the Transect Zoning Map to comprise at least [5%] of the walkshed associated with the planned Community Unit (CU). Each must border a thoroughfare. Existing Civic Spaces that comport with the standards below may be counted. See Glossary for definitions of these types.
  - Pocket Parks shall be no more than 1/2 acre.
  - Greens shall be 1/2 acre to 8 acres.
  - Squares shall be 1/2 acre to 5 acres and bounded on at least [2] sides by a street with buildings.
  - Plazas shall be 1/2 acre to 2 acres and bounded on at least [2] sides by a street with buildings.
  - Playgrounds should be placed so there is one within [800] ft of each dwelling in the CU.
- Large parks, playing fields, and greenways require separate plans.

CIVIC BUILDING RESERVE

- Reserve sites on the Transect Zoning map, with or without a Civic Space. Standards for Civic Buildings may be determined by the community in a public process. Civic uses may also be accommodated in any T5 or T6 building.
- Each CU should have a meeting hall within walking distance, inside or outside the mapped area.
SECTION IV. Glossary

Accessory Unit: apartment sharing ownership and utility connections with a principal building, either inside it or in an outbuilding.

Arcade: arched or columnated frontage supporting habitable space that overlaps the sidewalk.

Attached Building: one of three or more buildings in a row attached at side lot lines, yard in rear.

Bungalow: small detached dwelling with porch or stoop frontage. Variant: Cottage.

Bungalow Court: area containing several bungalows of the same style. Variant: Cottage Court.

Cafe Patio: a paved, masonry, or boardwalk terrace for cafe tables.

Civic: pertaining to not-for-profit organizations and public places dedicated to arts, culture, education, recreation, religion, government, or transit.

Community Unit: a planned or regulated settlement containing Transect Zones.

Detached Building: freestanding building, yards in back and one or both sides and usually in front.

Dooryard: private frontage with low fence/wall at lot lines and small front garden, with zero-step entry.

Flag Lot: a lot behind another lot, accessed from a thoroughfare by easement across the front lot.

Gallery: attached cantilevered shed or lightweight colonnade overlapping the sidewalk.

Green: informal multi-use planted outdoor space.

Multi-Unit Building: large building under single ownership or condo agreement containing multiple dwelling units, offices, and/or shops.

Outbuilding: small building behind and subordinate to the principal building on a lot.

Pocket Park: small but usable green or paved outdoor space.

Porch: roofed outdoor extension of a dwelling, large enough for group seating.

Plaza: formal multi-use paved outdoor space.

Principal Building: the main building on a lot.

Private Frontage: the private land and built extensions between the facade and the frontage line, or attached to the facade overlapping the sidewalk.

Public Frontage: the portion of a thoroughfare between the private lot line and the curb.

Semi-Detached Building: building attached to another at side lot line, yards in back and one side.

Shopfront: partially or fully glazed first story suitable for retail, often with an awning.

Square: formal multi-use planted and paved outdoor space.

Stoop: private frontage consisting of a step or steps overlapping or near the sidewalk.

Thoroughfare: a public way for use by vehicular, pedestrian and/or bicycle traffic.

Transect: a cross-section or path through the environment, used to analyze a range of habitats.

Transect Zone: a habitat with distinctive character, customized for zoning the human environment.

Waiver: administrative approval of a minor deviation from a measurable standard of this Code.
SECTION V. Legal

AUTHORITY

• The action of [Municipality, State] in the adoption of this Code is authorized under [Charter of the Municipality, Section X] and [Local and State Statutes, Section X].

• This Code was adopted to support the civic purposes of the [Municipal Comprehensive/General Plan]. It promotes the health, safety, and general welfare of [Municipality, State] and its citizens.

• This Code was adopted and may be amended by vote of the [Planning Commission] and [Legislative Body or Town Meeting].

APPLICABILITY

• The rules of Section II of this Code apply to all lots and buildings within the area known as [Walkable Neighborhood District]. See Transect Zoning Map attached. For this area, this Code replaces the [Existing Zoning Ordinance] in its entirety. The [Local Health and Safety Codes] remain in effect. Rules with “should” are optional but recommended.

• The planning rules of Section III are available by right for any developer with a parcel of [5 acres] or more, or for the [Municipality] to extend the coverage of Section II.

ADMINISTRATION

• Applications for individual projects adhering to Section II (Lots & Buildings) shall be approved administratively, including any Waivers.

• Applications for Community Unit plans using Section III (Neighborhood/Downtown Planning) are subject to public review. They may be prioritized over conventional plans submitted under the existing zoning ordinance, or otherwise fast-tracked or incentivized. Rules for such expediting should be listed here.

• Administrative Waivers may be granted for variations from explicit (measurable) standards when they do not undermine the Intent of this Code. See Section I.

• Conventional variance and appeals procedures are otherwise compatible with this Code.
LEAN CODE TOOL

Lean Code Tool, by Susan Henderson and Matthew Lambert with Bill Spikowski.
LEAN CODE TOOL

Incremental Code Reform

Susan Henderson
Matt Lambert
with Bill Spikowski

The Project for Lean Urbanism is managed by the Center for Applied Transect Studies and has received support from the John S. and James L. Knight Foundation.
Writing a new zoning code is time-consuming, politically fraught with landmines, and in most places, unlikely to happen. But many zoning codes can be adapted to allow Lean Urbanism and improve or create walkable, livable environments, with a limited number of strategic revisions. This tool outlines a Lean process that non-experts can use to revise their codes for incremental code reform.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

6 Decision Points
- Identify how to use this tool for the local context

8 Procedural Strategies
- Changes that will most effectively implement a predictable, Lean process

20 Urban Form
- Incremental improvements to walkability within the Lean context

28 Site Development
- Attainable reform associated with lean site plans

34 Parking Strategies
- Parking may produce barriers to walkability and economically viable development

42 Use Strategies
- Segregated uses limit redevelopment and vibrant, mixed-use environments

50 Sign Strategies
- Strategies to reduce the complications of sign ordinances

52 Transportation Strategies
- The single greatest impact on walkability and redevelopment
The focus of this tool is on the small number of issues that are most important over a variety of contexts while overcoming multiple barriers to redevelopment. It begins with a series of decision points that help the reader select the best strategies for incremental code reform.

1. Does your comprehensive plan support infill and walkable urban places?
   - YES PROCEED
   - NO SEE LEAN COMPREHENSIVE PLAN TOOL

2. Are there political support, community buy-in, and staff capacity in place to implement significant Lean code reform? This system tags strategies as:
   - S: Minimal political support + staff capacity
   - M: Significant political support + staff capacity
   - L: Moderate political support + staff capacity
   - XL: Extreme political support + staff capacity

The tool also organizes changes by urban context. There are different requirements for areas trying to incentivize urban infill and adaptive reuse versus those hoping to implement sprawl repair. Some strategies are appropriate for both situations. All strategies are tagged with the icon for the relevant context:

- [Ui] Urban Infill
- [Sr] Sprawl Repair

Finally, each strategy identifies the barrier that it is responding to:

- FINANCIAL BARRIER
- REGULATORY BARRIER
- WALKABILITY BARRIER

“If we have learned nothing else from the 20th century, we should at least have grasped that the more perfect the answer, the more terrifying its consequences. Incremental improvements upon unsatisfactory circumstances are the best that we can hope for, and probably all we should seek.”

~ Tony Judt
1.0 PROCEDURAL STRATEGIES

Regulatory procedures are the single greatest barrier to Lean Urbanism and code reform. This section focuses on changes that will most effectively implement Lean Urbanism + walkability at the process level.

1.1 Adjust regulations for nonconforming buildings and uses.

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

**[Ui]**

**SITUATIONS:**
- Standards for nonconforming buildings or uses can be unnecessarily burdensome.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Rewrite the nonconforming section of the zoning code to remain strict on nuisances but more lenient on improvements and adaptive re-use.

**DISCUSSION:**
When zoning regulations or districts are changed, existing buildings may not meet the new standards. Most codes don’t require immediate changes for those buildings, but over time their new nonconforming status becomes a burden. These buildings often cannot be expanded or their uses cannot be changed without coming into full compliance with the new standards. In other cases, expansions are limited to an arbitrary dollar amount or percentage of value.

Existing buildings are an important resource to any community. Zoning regulations that govern ‘nonconformities’ often do unwitting damage to this resource. These regulations should be written to minimize the effects of nonconformity except where buildings or their uses are offensive or true nuisances. Simple strategies include increasing the amount of allowable improvements to nonconforming buildings and providing clear criteria that authorize further improvements if they would bring buildings closer into compliance.
1.2 City Provided Design Assistance

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

[Su] [Sr]

**SITUATIONS:**
- Regulations may not explain the City’s goals for new buildings.
- The application process is complicated for applicants.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Trained staff or an on-call urban designer could assist applicants in understanding how the City’s code and vision could apply to their property.
- Applicants who use these services could be rewarded with expedited permitting.

**DISCUSSION:**
A City’s goals are often not apparent from reading detailed code documents. Infill and redevelopment can be complicated. Where these are important priorities, a City can provide formal or informal design services. Developers who use these services may qualify for expedited processing of their applications. Reducing missteps can save time and money for all parties while assisting in the realization of the municipality’s vision.

1.3 Improve Review Process

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

[Su] [Sr]

**SITUATIONS:**
- There is no interdepartmental review process.
- Review process is not described graphically.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Establish a cross-departmental review process.
- Provide a graphic representation of the application review process including submittals, departments, review periods, fees, and approval process.

**DISCUSSION:**
Many cities put applicants in awkward positions when different departments have separate review processes. Sometimes city departments disagree on an application; in other cases, one department may not review applications on a timely basis. Cross-departmental review committees can resolve these problems. Applicants should not be expected to mediate interdepartmental disputes or face unnecessary delays after submitting applications.

Application review processes are often complicated and unclear. Complicated processes are a burden to applicants who must invest additional time and money into the review process rather than in the development project.

1.4 Adopt the International Existing Building Code [IEBC]

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

[Su] [Sr]

**SITUATIONS:**
- Older buildings can become a liability rather than an asset when building codes designed for new construction are retroactively applied to renovations of older buildings.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Adopt the International Existing Building Code (IEBC).
- Amend the IEBC to reduce barrier when changing uses.

**DISCUSSION:**
When renovating existing buildings, requirements of the International Building Code often cause unnecessary financial barriers because of code requirements that cannot physically be met. To address the special needs of older (but not necessarily truly historic) buildings, the
1.5 Right-Size Application Fees

International Existing Building Code can be adopted. This simple option is often overlooked even in communities that need it the most.

During the adoption process, cities can adjust the definition of buildings of historic value to address their own situation. For instance, if adaptive reuse of mid-century buildings is desired, buildings of historic value could include all structures built prior to 1970.

Adjustments can also be made to ease changes in use; adaptive re-use is often the saving grace for older buildings.

REFERENCES:
- International Codes Council: http://www.iccsafe.org/
- City of Phoenix Adaptive Reuse Code: https://www.phoenix.gov/pddsite/Pages/pddarp.aspx

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

**SITUATIONS:**
- Application fees are separated by department, trade, or other means that do not provide a single fee.
- Fees do not vary by project size.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Combine all department-specific fees into a single fee per application.
- Scale application fees by project size.

**DISCUSSION:**
Application review and permitting fees should be clear and easily accessible, however they are often difficult to find and obscure in their organization. All fees should be made available in a single location that is well organized and publicly accessible. Where possible, fees should be flat and common fees should be combined. Fees should be adjusted to reflect the policies of the community. If infill and suburban retrofit is a priority, fees in those environments should be less.
1.6 Clear and objective standards

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

[S] [S]

**SITUATIONS:**
- Code provisions are written in paragraph format.
- Details of code provisions are not listed in numeric or bulleted lists.
- Multiple regulations are combined in complex requirements.
- Regulations and guidelines are mixed in regulatory documents.
- Regulations require judgment from municipal officials.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Consider following Federal Plain Language Guidelines in re-writing regulatory documents.
- Rewrite regulations based upon objective criteria.

**DISCUSSION:**
Complex and obscure regulations narrow the field of developers to those very familiar with the local process and code. Applicants unfamiliar with the codes are unable to easily determine what can be built without spending time and money interpreting difficult code language. Similarly, subjective standards make the development process unclear and unpredictable.

Achieving clear and objective standards may be difficult in places where power is derived through obscurity and subjective judgment. However these discretionary decisions stifle development and perpetuate the current condition.

**REFERENCES:**


1.7 Eliminate subjectivity in design review guidelines

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

[S] [S]

**SITUATIONS:**
- Applicants are subject to zoning and development regulations as well as design guidelines addressing style, specific site conditions, and other conditions not directly regulated by zoning.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Eliminate subjectivity in design review guidelines. While design guidelines may be appropriate in some situations, such as historic districts, the requirements should be clear and objective.

**DISCUSSION:**
Because state enabling legislation limits municipal power in zoning, many places rely upon guidelines as part of design review processes. Due to the discretionary nature of most guidelines, they tend to create an unpredictable development environment. Complexity and unpredictability are major burdens and limit the development community to those players who have experience in the system and political connections. Any requirements should be clear, concise, and not exposed to negotiation.
1.8 Lot splits | small subdivisions

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

[Sr] [Ui]

**SITUATIONS:**
- State legislation permits abbreviated processes for small subdivisions but the City’s subdivision processes do not provide an abbreviated path.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Amend subdivision regulations to provide an abbreviated subdivision process in coordination with state legislation.

**DISCUSSION:**
Some state legislation permits the subdivision of small properties or a limited number of lots through an abbreviated process. Where this is available, the process should be included in municipal subdivision ordinances and those ordinances simplified for urban conditions.

1.9 Walkable mixed-use district subdivision standards

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

[Sr] [Ui]

**SITUATIONS:**
- Subdivision regulations do not differentiate between suburban districts and rural, urban or mixed-use districts.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Create a separate set of subdivision requirements for compact, walkable zoning districts.

**DISCUSSION:**
Subdivision requirements often introduce unintended complications in compact, walkable conditions because they are written for suburban contexts. When subdividing property in mixed-use districts, applicants may be confronted with suburban street requirements, utility requirements, buffering, and other inappropriate standards.

1.10 Set development thresholds

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

[Sr] [Ui]

**SITUATIONS:**
- Development and redevelopment is subject to one set of standards regardless of scale or scope.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Provide relief for small-scale redevelopment and adaptive reuse.

**DISCUSSION:**
Regulations tend to be oriented toward new development on large sites, not reuse and small site development. Standards are setup primarily for the impacts of large development. Thresholds of development should be established to clarify which standards apply to small lots and which apply to large developments.

Determine minimum thresholds where expensive standards may be set aside, for example adaptive reuse conditions may be permitted by right. This strategy requires inter-departmental coordination for determination of threshold standards and adjustments.

Thresholds are a central theme of Lean Urbanism. One-size-fits-all standards disadvantage small projects because they must account for
NO APPROVAL REQUIRED: Very small projects such as interior changes, changes in use within the same category, and small, unheated projects like decks that are well within the permitted setbacks and lot coverage.

BUILDING PERMIT ONLY: No zoning review required, if in compliance with all lot requirements.

ADMINISTRATIVE REVIEW: Staff review required if application is within 5% [locally calibrated] of the by-right lot standards.

1.12 Revise impact fees
[system development charges]

REFERENCES:
http://www.scholarsstrategynetwork.org/sites/default/files/ssn_basic_facts_troper_and_burge_on_mitigating_urban_sprawl1.pdf

1.11 By-right standards

REFERENCES:
- Tigard Triangle Lean Code: http://www.tigard-or.gov/tigard_triangle, php#leanCode

DISCUSSION:
In most jurisdictions impact fees are based upon a suburban model with a perpetual growth scenario. Many systems are tied to numbers of residential units, and greatly disincentivize high-density development. Impact fees should be realigned to reflect location and transit access.

REFERENCES:
Tigard Triangle Lean Code: http://www.tigard-or.gov/tigard_triangle, php#leanCode

SITUATIONS:
- Planning boards and elected officials comment on and negotiate over by-right standards with applicants.

STRATEGIES:
- Develop criteria for clear and objective by-right standards with levels of required review.

DISCUSSION:
There’s an assumption in many local governments that by-right development still has a certain amount of discretion and the administrative procedures can be a challenge. Develop by-right thresholds that include:

- NO APPROVAL REQUIRED: Very small projects such as interior changes, changes in use within the same category, and small, unheated projects like decks that are well within the permitted setbacks and lot coverage.
- BUILDING PERMIT ONLY: No zoning review required, if in compliance with all lot requirements.
- ADMINISTRATIVE REVIEW: Staff review required if application is within 5% [locally calibrated] of the by-right lot standards.

REFERENCES:
http://www.scholarsstrategynetwork.org/sites/default/files/ssn_basic_facts_troper_and_burge_on_mitigating_urban_sprawl1.pdf
2.0 URBAN FORM

This tool’s purpose is not to advocate for a form-based code, but rather to address the small steps that improve urban form. It can build local capacity that may result in more substantial code reform over time.

2.1 Do not require a minimum number of stories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BARRIER</th>
<th>CAPACITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONTEXT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[Ui]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Sr]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SITUATIONS:**
- Zoning code requires a minimum number of stories for buildings in a zone. This is common with pre-recession form-based codes for main street environments.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Remove minimum stories for buildings.

**DISCUSSION:**
Many form-based codes and urban planners required height minimums to ensure walkability and street enclosure, particularly in a main street condition. While this is aspirational, it is no longer considered a best practice post-recession. Successional growth dictates that single story structures will be redeveloped once there is sufficient market demand. Requiring multistory structures where there is not sufficient market demand burdens landowner and may restrict development.
2.2 Front setback regulations

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

**SITUATIONS:**
- Front setbacks often specify minimums only; on large parcels, buildings can be any distance from the street, encouraging parking lots in front of buildings.
- In urban contexts, small front setbacks are sometimes permitted but setback ranges or maximums are not specified.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Amend front setback regulations to specify setback ranges instead just minimums.

**DISCUSSION:**
A minimum setback alone allows buildings to be unrelated to sidewalk and street activity. Setback ranges or maximum setbacks can ensure interaction between sidewalks and ground floor uses.

Especially in walkable neighborhoods, buildings should be close to sidewalks to provide a relatively consistent street enclosure. This is especially important for mixed-use and commercial buildings. In walkable urban contexts, maximum front setbacks are often 12’ (not applying to forecourts or terraces), but local observations should be used to set regionally appropriate maximums.

Even in non-pedestrian areas, maximum setbacks ensure that buildings have at least minimal relations with street activity.

---

2.3 Parking lot location matters

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

**SITUATIONS:**
- Parking lots routinely separate buildings from sidewalks and streets.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Establish parking location criteria that prohibit large parking lots between urban buildings and the street, and limit parking between suburban buildings and the street.
- Where alleys do not exist, consider permitting parking at the side of building with a short wall or hedge to screen parked cars from the street.

**DISCUSSION:**
This is a critical strategy in suburban retrofit situations.
Many urban areas have borrowed suburban zoning codes that allow or even require large front setbacks; the result is often a parking lot between a new building and the street, even in historically, walkable neighborhoods.

In either case, these locational strategies are fairly simple to draft and implement.

2.4 Convert height restrictions to stories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BARRIER</th>
<th>CAPACITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONTEXT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[Ui]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SITUATIONS:
- Height is measured in feet

STRATEGIES:
- Regulate height in stories

DISCUSSION:
There are many reasons to convert height regulation from feet into stories, and most of them are environmental and economic. If the applicant is able to build taller ceilings and thus taller windows, they may effectively daylight spaces and increase natural ventilation. Taller ceilings also make spaces more desirable and easier to keep occupied.

When height is limited by feet, the developer will fit as much program into the envelope as possible, often resulting in lower ceilings. Additionally the streetscape that results tends to be made up by buildings exactly as tall as the height limit, and therefore a consistent and flat facade that lacks variety.

Regulating height in terms of stories allows the developer to choose the story height according to market demands. Ground floor height may be permitted to be up to 20 feet for nonresidential uses and upper stories are permitted up to 14 feet, floor to ceiling. The structural and mechanical space should not be regulated as it varies by construction type and use.

2.5 Reform FAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BARRIER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CAPACITY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONTEXT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[Ui]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SITUATIONS:
- Building area is restricted by Floor Area Ratio.

STRATEGIES:
- OPTION 1: Remove FAR restrictions. Building area should be regulated by a combination of lot coverage, height, and setbacks.
- OPTION 2: Right-size FAR by studying the desired building mass per district.
  2.A: Where FAR does not include structured parking in high-density districts, revise FAR to include the area of structures.

DISCUSSION:
Many zoning codes restrict the area of buildings according to Floor Area Ratio (FAR), which is related to the total area of a lot. For example, a FAR of 2.5 on a 10,000 sf lot permits a building with a total area of 25,000 sf. While this seems to make sense, there is no clear connection between the building area permitted and the desired character for the district. Often FAR restrictions are out of scale with district character, permitting far less building than could be accommodated. Because lot coverage, height, and setbacks are all regulated, building size is controlled without the unnecessary complication of FAR.

Because this issue can be contentious, a first step may be to reform FAR. In order to determine appropriate FAR for different districts, the lot coverage, setback, and height restrictions for the zone should be tested on a series of sites to determine the FAR associated with the desired character.

REFERENCES:
FAR was a contentious topic in the Miami21 process. The solution was to right-sized FAR by aligning it more closely with the height, setback, and lot coverage restrictions of real sites.
2.6 Implement a pedestrian/access street grid (A/B)

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

[Situations:
- All streets in an urban mixed-use district are held to a very high standard. This is more likely to occur in a form-based code because it prioritizes the design of frontages.

**Strategies:**
- Regulate pedestrian and access streets with two sets of standards. Pedestrian streets, or the A-grid, have the highest walkability standards, and access streets, or the B-grid, are permitted to accommodate access, deliveries, larger vehicles, and less urban formats.
- B-grid regulations should:
  - Reduce frontage buildout requirements
  - Reduce, but not remove, glazing requirements
  - Permit parking at the frontage with a wall or hedge
  - Maintain the pedestrian street standard for the first 50’ of the access street to protect the quality of the intersection.

**Discussion:**
Many codes that promote walkability and urban infill require a high standard for frontages along every street. This is critical for the success of the walkable environment, however, consideration must also be given for access, deliveries, garbage collection, etc. In infill situations and existing downtowns, block and lot sizes are often not coordinated with the reality of automobile access. Adding a grid of service, or access streets, alleviates the barrier of creating a high-quality streetscapes everywhere. New development doesn’t often require such a system because automobile and delivery access can be coordinated through the design of place. Where A-B grids are implemented, they provide for a targeted high-quality street network. Once this network has been achieved, the B-streets may be reconsidered.
3.0 SITE DEVELOPMENT

Many site plan requirements limit the potential for lean, walkable development. This section will address both the most critical and the most attainable issues associated with site plan regulations.

3.1 Eliminate or right-size minimum lot size requirements

**BARRIER**
- Minimum lot size requirements are regulated.

**CAPACITY**
- Minimum lot size is greater than 1,500 square feet in mixed-use, mainstreet, or downtown areas.

**CONTEXT**

**SITUATIONS:**
- Minimum lot size requirements are regulated.
- Minimum lot size is greater than 1,500 square feet in mixed-use, mainstreet, or downtown areas.

**STRATEGIES:**
- **OPTION 1:** Eliminate minimum lot size requirements. The building code, lot coverage, and setbacks provide sufficient constraints to ensure lots are buildable.
- **OPTION 2:** Right-size minimum lot sizes in mixed-use areas, main streets, and downtowns.

**DISCUSSION:**
Often lot size minimums are regulated according to the suburban context. Compact, walkable, mixed-use areas usually include a wide variety of lot sizes. Small lots are essential to variety and vibrancy in these areas.

The simplest solution is to eliminate lot size minimums altogether. This is not as controversial as it may seem. In absence of lot size minimums, a developer creating new lots is still subject to a series of constraints. Because resulting units must be marketable, the following indirectly regulate minimum lot size:

- **MARKET:** building sizes, unit sizes, and tenant spaces must meet minimum marketable floor areas.
- **BUILDING CODE:** the building code includes minimum sizes for dwelling units, bedrooms, and other spaces.
- **HEIGHT AND SETBACKS:** building height and lot setbacks limit the extent of the building.
- **LOT COVERAGE:** lot coverage further restricts the building envelope beyond lot setbacks.

Another option is to right-size for the context. Townhouse lots may be as small as 1,000 square feet. Small lot single family often occupies lots of 3,000 - 4,500 square feet. Small mixed-use buildings may be as small as 3,000 square feet. This must be locally calibrated to the desired context.
3.2 Eliminate buffer requirements in mixed-use districts

SITUATIONS:
- Buffer requirements exist between uses or lots in mixed-use districts.

STRATEGIES:
- Eliminate buffer requirements within mixed-use districts.

DISCUSSION:
Buffering between uses is carried over from conventional suburban development where each use category is tightly controlled and separated from others. While it may be necessary to buffer between mixed-use districts and areas remaining suburban in character, buffer requirements are not compatible within mixed-use areas. Mixed-use relies upon the direct adjacency of multiple uses, and buffering restricts these relationships.

There may be a need for transitions between intensities of mixed-use, but this is best handled through height and step backs rather than buffers.

3.3 Reform vehicular site access standards

SITUATIONS:
- Driveways may exceed 24 feet in width in mixed-use areas.
- Curb cuts are permitted more frequently than every 100 feet.

STRATEGIES:
- Limit the maximum width of driveways to 24 feet for two-way travel and 12 feet for one-way travel.
- Encourage off street parking areas to connect between properties and share access points.
- OPTION 1: Where alleys exist, restrict vehicular access to sites to alleys and side streets only.
- OPTION 2: Where alleys do not exist, restrict vehicular access to one point per site except where life safety requires separate ingress and egress.

DISCUSSION:
Excessive curb cuts increase the number of pedestrian and vehicle conflicts. Site access should be limited where possible. Each driveway and curb cut along a main street deteriorates walkability. Access and parking areas should be shared between lots, with access provided from side streets and alleys where they exist.
3.4 Regulate minimum connectivity standards

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

[Sr]

**SITUATIONS:**
- Existing blocks exceed 2,400 feet in perimeter length in areas identified for suburban retrofit.
- Gated subdivisions are permitted and common.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Restrict new blocks in mixed-use areas to a maximum of 2,400 feet in perimeter length.
- Add connectivity standards for new streets when large parcels, 3 acres or greater, are subdivided.
  - Where a large lot is redeveloped and the block it is within exceeds 2,000 feet in perimeter, require a new street and connections to adjacent parcels or streets.
- Regulate connections to adjacent properties, and streets. If the connection cannot be made, stub-outs should be provided for future connections.

**DISCUSSION:**
Small blocks are necessary for walkability. When suburban areas are retrofitted to walkable urban development, 600 feet is a common metric used as a maximum block length for walkable districts. Long blocks provide pedestrians and cyclists with fewer route choices, reducing overall walkability.

Adding streets can be difficult in retrofit situations, both from a right-of-way acquisition standpoint and funding. However if a district is in the process of redevelopment or is not yet redeveloping, right-of-way should be reserved or acquired early before acquisition becomes cost prohibitive.

**STRATEGIES:**
- **OPTION 1:** Identify locations where new streets may be added with the least impact on existing properties, resulting in blocks close to or less than 2,000 feet in perimeter length.
  - 1.A: Acquire the right-of-way required for the new street and construct the street.
  - 1.B: Map the right-of-way and require dedication from affected properties as they redevelop. Construct the street once the right-of-way is assembled.
- **OPTION 2:** Add requirements for new streets within superblocks, 6 acres or greater.
- **OPTION 3:** Where full streets cannot be added, mid-block pedestrian paths may be inserted to increase walkability.

**DISCUSSION:**
In the urban context, 500 feet is a common metric used as a maximum block length for walkable districts. Although 350 feet is closer to ideal. Where blocks consistently exceed 500 feet, they tend to perform poorly for ground floor commercial. Additionally, long blocks provide pedestrians and cyclists with fewer route choices, reducing overall walkability.

3.5 Regulate maximum block sizes

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

[Ui]

**SITUATIONS:**
- Block size maximums are not regulated in urban areas.
- Existing blocks exceed 2,000 feet in perimeter length in areas identified for urban infill.

Superblocks are permitted and vacation of street and alley right-of-way is possible.

**STRATEGIES:**
- **OPTION 1:** Identify locations where new streets may be added with the least impact on existing properties, resulting in blocks close to or less than 2,000 feet in perimeter length.
  - 1.A: Acquire the right-of-way required for the new street and construct the street.
  - 1.B: Map the right-of-way and require dedication from affected properties as they redevelop. Construct the street once the right-of-way is assembled.
- **OPTION 2:** Add requirements for new streets within superblocks, 6 acres or greater.
- **OPTION 3:** Where full streets cannot be added, mid-block pedestrian paths may be inserted to increase walkability.
4.0 PARKING STRATEGIES

Conventional parking standards create a tremendous economic burden to redevelopment while also single-handedly creating one of the greatest barriers to walkability in the 20th and 21st centuries.

4.1 Reduce parking stall and aisle sizes

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

[Sr] [Ui]

**SITUATIONS:**
- Minimum off-street parking aisle and stall sizes are larger than commonly accepted standards. For 90-degree parking, this is a total of 60 feet for a bay of two parking rows and a two-way aisle.
- On-street parking spaces are required to be larger than 7 feet wide and 22 feet long.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Revise the minimum off-street parking aisle and stall sizes to match commonly accepted minimum standards.
- Revise the minimum on-street parking space to 7 feet wide by 22 feet long.

**DISCUSSION:**
Efficient parking lot design provides more buildable area on a site. Where minimum off-street parking design standards require larger than normal stalls and aisles, building area or pervious surface is reduced. While eliminating minimum requirements is not likely in most municipalities, the dimensional requirements should be sized to reduce excessive impervious surface.

On-street parking is also often required to be larger than necessary. This results in wider and more expensive streets and may limit its availability. On-street parking space minimums should be 7 feet wide by 22 feet long.
4.2 Enable shared parking

**BARRIER**
- 

**CAPACITY**
- M

**CONTEXT**
- [Ui]

**SITUATIONS:**
- Shared parking between multiple uses is not permitted.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Adopt a shared parking strategy and revise regulations.

**DISCUSSION:**
A significant number of uses only require parking during limited periods of time. Religious facilities are a good example, with peaks on one or two days a week. Outside of these times, any dedicated parking spaces are empty. Residential parking in urban areas is similar; it is in demand primarily in the evening but less so during the day. Regulations should allow multiple nearby uses to share their parking, reducing the total number of spaces while not affecting the demand.

Shared parking strategies have been widely implemented, proving the concept. APA has studied and published a shared parking schedule worksheet that determines overlapping demand for parking shared between multiple uses. This table should be integrated into parking requirements, enabling the reduction of spaces on a single lot with multiple uses.

---

**REFERENCES:**

**STRATEGIES:**
- Adopt reduced parking requirements for affordable housing. The reduction depends upon the region, the urban/suburban context, and public transportation access.

**DISCUSSION:**
While parking for multi-family housing is often a contentious issue, affordable multi-family housing frequently requires less parking than market rate housing. Car ownership is an expensive proposition and many families are only able to afford one vehicle, if that. When affordable housing is required to provide market rate parking spaces, many spaces sit unused and represent a waste of public funding.

- If access to transit is nearby, affordable housing may only require 0.5 spaces per unit.
- Where public transportation is not available, parking may be required at 0.75-1 space per unit. Requirements above this are usually excessive and wasteful.

**REFERENCES:**

Center for Neighborhood Technology parking demand estimating and database tools from various regions:
- [http://www.rightsizeparking.org](http://www.rightsizeparking.org)
- [http://www.transformca.org/landing-page/greentrip](http://www.transformca.org/landing-page/greentrip)

---

4.3 Reduce parking requirements for affordable housing

**BARRIER**
- 

**CAPACITY**
- M

**CONTEXT**
- [Ui] [Sr]

**SITUATIONS:**
- Affordable housing requires the same number of parking spaces as market rate housing.
4.4 Count on-street parking

SITUATIONS:
- On-street parking does not count toward the required parking by adjacent lots.

STRATEGIES:
- Permit on-street parking along lot frontages to count toward required parking for the lot.

DISCUSSION:
Parking requirements are often excessive and burdensome, particularly in infill situations, and may limit opportunities for redevelopment. Where on-street parking is provided, it can account for a significant number of parking spaces for every block. Because parking spaces cost approximately $9,550 for surface spaces and $19,050 for structured spaces, including land, construction and design costs, but excluding the cost of operations. (Victoria Transport Policy Institute, 2016) This poses a serious financial barrier to development and redevelopment.

Additionally, each space consumes approximately 300 square feet of usable site area. Adaptive reuse situations are extremely sensitive to parking where changes in use may require more parking than can be provided on the lot. In order to equitably share on-street spaces, they should count only for the lots that are directly adjacent to the space.

4.5 Reduce minimum parking requirements

SITUATIONS:
- Minimum on-site parking counts are regulated.

STRATEGIES:
- Reduce minimum parking requirements in mixed-use and walkable urban districts.

DISCUSSION:
Most minimum parking requirements are derived from the Institute of Transportation Engineers (ITE) studies and trip generation related to use categories. However, the ITE studies were performed in conventional suburban places. A recent study by the University of California in Davis shows that mixed-use districts generate approximately 40% fewer vehicle trips on average than the numbers estimated by ITE’s methodologies. Parking ratios are overestimated by the same amounts as they are also based upon estimated vehicle trips. Prior to the UC Davis study, an early 2000’s study of mixed-use developments showed a 30% reduction, however they used poorly selected examples.

Requiring more parking than is necessary is a financial barrier to development, wastes site area for parking, and increases impervious surface and stormwater management issues. Minimum parking, if used at all, should be conservative. A good starting point is the parking ratios published by Metro, the Portland, Oregon region Metropolitan Planning Organization. These numbers represent the highest minimum parking requirements that a municipality can set for mixed-use districts.

REFERENCES:
Oregon Metro parking, see table 3.08-3: http://www.oregonmetro.gov/sites/default/files/chap308.pdf
4.6 Reevaluate off-street parking requirements

SITUATIONS:
- Off-street parking is required for every parcel and often for every use on a parcel, with the number of spaces specified without any local analysis of demand.

STRATEGIES:
- Reevaluate whether off-street parking should be required in all districts.

DISCUSSION:
Minimum off-street parking requirements have been a mainstay of zoning codes for decades. In recent years, their negative effects have been widely documented, including the validity of the data upon which most were established, the high costs imposed on new construction, and the negative effects of oversized parking lots on our communities and the environment.

There is significant merit to removing minimum parking requirements altogether. In some areas, apartments cannot be rented without two spaces per unit while in others the absence of parking (and the attendant lower rent) may be more valuable than even one space. A restaurant may require 30 spaces in a drive-to location and no spaces at all in a walk-to location.

Financiers may require a minimum number of off-street spaces in order to finance a project, and developers may foresee advantages to providing abundant parking at their full expense because buildings with limited parking may have fewer potential users over time. Parking is so regulated by market demand and financing requirements, that to regulate minimums in a zoning ordinance is redundant.

REFERENCE:
- Seattle economic development strategy: http://council.seattle.gov/2012/06/10/removing-minimum-parking-requirements-where-unneeded/
- The true cost of minimum parking requirements for housing, office and retail: http://shoup.bol.ucla.edu/HighCost.pdf
- Why minimum parking requirements are bad business: http://shoup.bol.ucla.edu/Trouble.pdf
- Market-based parking requirements: http://www.uctc.net/access/42/access42_almanac.pdf
5.0 USE STRATEGIES

Most zoning ordinances are explicit in the segregation of use and density. This section considers strategies to lighten this regulation to encourage economic development within the evolving city.

Since contemporary zoning was introduced in the United States in the early 20th century, ordinances have become more and more rigorous in the control of land use. Use has been the regulatory tool of choice over the last century to exclude specific activities, and potentially types of people, from a community.

As uses and densities have become more and more explicit, regulations have limited a municipality’s ability of nimbly respond to markets, trends, and consumer demand. Suburbia has been the most unfortunate products of this high degree of separation.

5.1 Permit residential uses on ground floors in urban districts.

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

[SITUATIONS:
- Ground floor residential is not permitted in urban districts.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Permit ground floor residential uses.

**DISCUSSION:**
Zoning codes often require ground floor commercial uses in mixed-use and urban districts. While main streets should be primarily commercial at the ground floor, requiring commercial use can limit economic development. Often an excessive amount of commercial space required that the market is not able to support. As a result developers may be forced to build commercial space that sits vacant, which is a drain on finances, neighborhood vibrancy, and hinders walkability.

Restricting ground floor residential may also eliminate the ability of small developers to develop mixed-use buildings that rely upon ground floor units to meet ADA requirements. Many mixed-use districts consist of a mix of uses horizontally along a street, not vertically. In some markets vertical mixed-use can be difficult to achieve. And in markets where it is common, it should not be required. The local market should determine the use composition, and apartment buildings along a main street can still add vibrancy.


### 5.2 Permit, but do not require mixed use in urban districts

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

[SU] [Sr]

**SITUATIONS:**
- Mixed-use is required in a zoning district
- Mixed-use is not permitted in any district.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Permit mixed-use, but do not require it.

**DISCUSSION:**
Mixed-use is critical to neighborhood vibrancy, ensuring a high degree of activity. Where main streets, downtowns, and urban neighborhoods exist or are desired, mixed-use must be permitted.

Mixed-use should be an available option, not a requirement. Successful mixed-use districts are not usually entirely mixed-use, rather they include some single-use buildings, residential and commercial, alongside buildings that are mixed-use. The mix should be flexible and determined by the market.

### 5.3 Permit non-hazardous, small-scale manufacturing and light industrial in mixed-use districts.

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

[SU] [Sr]

**SITUATIONS:**
- Small-scale manufacturing and light industrial are not permitted in urban, or mixed-use districts.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Permit non-hazardous, small manufacturing and light industrial in urban or mixed-use districts.
- Control types of development with the following regulations:
  - Limit building footprint
  - Limit building width
  - Control environmental impacts including glare, noise, fumes, and combustion.

**DISCUSSION:**
Historically, manufacturing and industrial uses have been restricted from proximity to housing due to the noxious nature of those uses: their noise, smell, and effect on air and water quality. Contemporary small-scale manufacturing and light industrial, however, are not incompatible with residential or mixed-use neighbors provided there are some basic constraints.

Maintaining workspace in urban districts assists in economic diversity and increases the supply of local jobs. Workspace is critical to successful, 24-hour mixed-use districts, and the character of workspace is diversifying. The widest set of uses should be permitted in mixed-use districts, restricting only those that are socially and physically noxious.
5.4 Simplify how the code describes allowable uses of land

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

[Sr]  

**SITUATIONS:**
- The zoning code provides a separate list of uses for each zoning district.
- The zoning code consolidates uses into a single use table, but the table is extremely lengthy and complex.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Remove unnecessary distinctions between uses that have similar impacts.
- Consolidate zoning districts where the distinctions between districts are minor.
- Eliminate district-by-district lists of uses and replace them with a matrix that shows uses and zoning districts.
- Simplify overly complex matrices.

**DISCUSSION:**
Collapse similar uses. A specific use does not require its own category unless it is to be excluded in more than one district. Many zoning codes suffer from overly specific use designations that may unintentionally limit beneficial, unforeseen uses and add unnecessary complexity. The prohibited if not permitted clause can be very detrimental to new use development.

Ideally, uses should be specified according to the broadest category possible, such as Residential, Office, Service, Retail, Manufacturing, Industrial, and Food Service, with as few specific distinctions as possible. In reality there are few outward differences between specific use sub-categories, and those that are regulated by the building code. This strategy enables easier change of uses, keeps buildings occupied, and assists with a robust economy.

5.5 Expand home occupation and live/work allowances

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

[Sr]

**SITUATIONS:**
- Home occupations are not allowed or are heavily restricted.
- Live/work units are not allowed or are allowed only in very limited areas.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Permit home occupations in all residential zoning districts.
- Expand allowances for home occupation square footage, visitation and employees.
- Permit live/work units in most, if not all, zoning districts.

**DISCUSSION:**
Home-based businesses expand the local economy. Permitting home-based businesses also contributes to home affordability and may assist in the costs of childcare. Some level of home occupation should be permitted in all zoning districts.

In mixed-use districts and more urban neighborhoods, restrictions to size, allowances for employees, and the ability of customers to come to the business location should be expanded or eliminated. Often residential use is prohibited or restricted in commercial or mixed-use districts, excluding the opportunity to develop live/work units. These should be permitted in most, if not all zoning districts. Live/works tend toward small office or service uses and have minimal traffic and parking demands. While some single-family areas may resist their inclusion, they have a very low impact on a neighborhood. At a minimum they should be permitted in all zones except low-density single-family and industrial.
5.6 Reduce requirements for change of use

SITUATIONS:
- Change of use often results in nonconforming situations, significant impact fee assessments, increases in parking, and older buildings remaining empty and suffering from disinvestment.

STRATEGIES:
- Simplify the process for change of use to avoid unnecessary financial and regulatory barriers.

DISCUSSION:
Mixed-use districts rely upon the ability of space to change use over time to remain vibrant. As market demands shift, use should be able to adapt. However, many codes and ordinances present significant financial and regulatory barriers to adapting use by the imposition of higher parking requirements, unattainable stormwater infrastructure in an infill condition, nonconforming conditions, and assessment of impact fees.

Together concurrency, new parking, and impact fees could cost a coffee shop conversion $50,000 on top of their hard costs in some municipalities. (City of Tigard, OR) The results are vacant storefronts, reduced walkability, and negative impacts to the street or neighborhood. Imposing harsh concurrency standards for change of use hampers economic development. Change of use within an existing building should be permitted with as few requirements as possible. When buildings are redeveloped, they may be assessed for concurrency.

5.7 Coordinate zoning use categories with the International Building Code (IBC)

SITUATIONS:
- Zoning use categories do not align with the use categories in the IBC.

STRATEGIES:
- Revise zoning use categories to align with the larger use categories within the International Building Code.

DISCUSSION:
Both zoning and building codes regulate use and often the two sets of categories have little to do with each other. This requires applicants to reconcile differences between the two codes. While both codes types were developed independently, building codes are heavily based upon use to determine standards of safety while zoning addresses use to avoid general nuisance.

Zoning uses also address differences in explicit uses that affect issues such as parking demand, traffic generation, and noise, but may be revised to match the larger set of IBC uses with conditions or restrictions as necessary to control environmental impact. The result is a tighter coordination between zoning and building regulation, and a much simpler process for applicants.
6.0 SIGN STRATEGIES

Sign regulations can be some of the most complex standards in a zoning ordinance. This short section focuses on the simplification of permit requirements and physical standards.

6.1 Permit signs by right.

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

[Sr] [Sr]

**SITUATIONS:**
- Sign regulations require conditional permits or excessive specifications even for the most routine types of signs.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Permit common signs by right.

**DISCUSSION:**
Sign permits are difficult for most businesses to acquire and maintain, yet restrictions do little to control quality and visual pollution. Many complex sign codes result in conditions that are not significantly different from suburban commercial strips. Sign standards should be simple and all common signs should be permitted with minimal requirements from businesses and developers.

6.2 Simplify sign requirements.

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

[Sr] [Sr]

**SITUATIONS:**
- Sign standards are lengthy and complicated.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Simplify sign restrictions and permit requirements.

**DISCUSSION:**
Reed v. Gilbert probably requires changes to most sign codes, and provides the opportunity to improve them at the same time. Obviously, all sign code changes must be very conscious of First Amendment conflicts and require legal counsel.

Signage standards are some of the most convoluted requirements in most zoning documents, and permit requirements are unnecessarily complicated. Most restrictions are common across sign types but often are unnecessarily repeated.

Permit requirements are frequently excessive. Signage standards should be simple, concise, and aimed at predictability and permit expediency.
7.0 TRANSPORTATION STRATEGIES

Transportation strategies consistently address all the barriers in more categories than any single other topic.

7.1 Reduce minimum parking and travel land widths

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

| Ui | Sr |

**SITUATIONS:**
- Vehicular travel lane minimums exceed 10 feet in width.
- Parallel parking lane minimums exceed 7 feet in width.

**STRATEGIES:**
- Adopt a vehicular travel lane of 10 feet for walkable districts.
- Adopt a parallel parking lane of 7 feet for walkable districts.

**DISCUSSION:**
Roadway width is the primary determinant of vehicle speed, and vehicle speed is a determinant of pedestrian safety in walkable districts. In order to increase pedestrian safety, vehicles must be slowed. The most effective means of slowing vehicles is to right-size the roadway.

Public works standards frequently include minimum travel lane and parallel parking lane widths that encourage high-speed conditions. In many municipalities, these can be as high as 12 and 9 feet respectively. Every inch of width over the bare minimum increases vehicle speed and decreases pedestrian and cyclist safety. Vehicular travel lanes should be permitted at 10 feet generally and 9 feet in residential portions of walkable districts. Provisions may be provided for 10.5 feet along bus routes to address mirror conflicts. Parallel parking lanes should be permitted at 7 feet generally, which accommodates the widest private vehicles.

7.2 Use Effective Turning Radius

**BARRIER**

**CAPACITY**

**CONTEXT**

| Ui | Sr |

**SITUATIONS:**
- Minimum curb return radius in mixed-use districts is greater than 15 feet.

**STRATEGIES:**
- **OPTION 1:** Adopt a new series of curb return radii for mixed-use streets, by street type.
- **OPTION 2:** Adopt reductions to curb return radii to account for on-street parking and bicycle facilities. Curb return radius may be reduced by the combined width of bicycle and parking facilities to a minimum of 10 feet.

**DISCUSSION:**
Curb radii at intersections control the speed at which vehicles turn. Most municipalities use a standard set of curb return radii by functional classification of roadway, often with 25 feet as the smallest radius. These suburban standards are dangerous in walkable districts. Drivers that turn at high speeds are less likely to notice...
TRANSPORTATION STRATEGIES

7.3 Revise clear sight triangles in urban conditions

BARRIER

CAPACITY

CONTEXT

[Sr] [Ui]

SITUATIONS:
- A single sight triangle standard is applied in all contexts – rural, suburban, and compact urban.
- Sidewalks and adjacent planters are greater than 8 feet wide.

STRATEGIES:
- Exempt private property from requirements imposed by sight triangles in a compact urban context.
- Revise sight triangle standards according to the width of public frontage (sidewalk + planter) and the presence of parking lanes.

DISCUSSION:
Sight triangles are imposed at intersections in order to ensure drivers can see oncoming traffic on intersecting streets. They often restrict planting, buildings, furniture, and parking near the intersection to provide a clear view for drivers.

The intent of sight triangle regulations is sound, however they are often imposed without regard for context. Where there are wide sidewalks, planters, and parallel parking, drivers are further from the right-of-way edge than they are in suburban conditions. Technically sight triangles should be measured from the point of view of drivers, and therefore account for distance from right-of-way and curbs, see the illustration above from the Institute of Transportation Engineers’ Context Sensitive Solutions. In practice, sight triangle regulations usually specify a distance from the property line, assuming a standard condition for position of curb relative to the right-of-way and position of driver relative to the curb.

In most compact urban environments, every intersection is controlled through signals or stop signs. This control decreases the hazards associated with limited view.

Applying rural and suburban sight triangle requirements to urban contexts results in unbuildable lot areas at corners. Urban character relies on buildings at the majority of lot corners and non-contextual sight triangles can inadvertently erode urban character.

REFERENCES:
ITE Context Sensitive Solutions urban sight triangles: http://library.ite.org/pub/e1e4f43c-2354-a71d-51e9-d82e39d4e0af

7.4 Reduce traffic impact study requirements

BARRIER

CAPACITY

CONTEXT

[Sr] [Ui]

SITUATIONS:
- Traffic impact studies are required for most projects including change of use, adaptive reuse, expansion, redevelopment, and new development.

STRATEGIES:
- Determine a threshold below which projects may be exempted from providing traffic impact studies.
- Adjust existing code language to reflect the threshold exemption.

DISCUSSION:
Traffic impact studies are generally needed for a suburban condition where all new uses generate new vehicle trips, without significant trip chaining, multi-modal access, or park-once opportunities. Additionally, the suburban context includes transportation systems with limited connectivity and the built-in inefficiencies of functional classification. In these conditions new construction, redevelopment, and changes in use can result in significant traffic increases. These traffic increases may require additional roadway lane miles, turning lanes, and other similar system modifications.
TRANSPORTATION STRATEGIES

STRATEGIES:

- **BASELINE**: Adopt the UC Davis Trip Generation methodology, for use in walkable, mixed-use districts.
  - **OPTION 1**: Provide for a blanket 40% reduction in trip generation estimates over the numbers estimated by the ITE Trip Generation Manual.
  - **OPTION 2**: Following the UC Davis Trip Generation methodology, study actual local trip generation in mixed-use areas and publish the results as the standard trip estimates for use in mixed-use areas.

DISCUSSION:
The Institute of Transportation Engineer’s (ITE) Trip Generation Manual has been adopted in most municipalities as the standard methodology for estimating vehicle trips. The manual and methodology were created solely for suburban contexts, yet it is applied equally to urban contexts. A series of studies have proven that the manual overestimates vehicle trips for walkable, mixed-use areas, rural areas, and areas served by transit or with a large population of cyclists. Trip generation is often tied to off-site transportation improvements that developers may be required to provide as part of a development agreement, costing tens of thousands to millions of dollars to complete.

The traffic impact assessment model is built to augment suburban transportation system funding where maintenance and upgrades aren’t supported by adjacent tax revenues. In urban, mixed-use areas, the adjacent tax base is able to fund transportation system upgrades and maintenance. Additionally, by trip chaining, park-once, walking, and biking, transportation system impacts are lower for most uses.

7.5 Adopt the UC Davis Modified Trip Generation Standards for mixed-use areas

BARRIER

CAPACITY

XL

CONTEXT

[Ui] [Sr]

SITUATIONS:

- One or more walkable, mixed-use districts exist or are allowed.
- Transportation impact is considered in determining fees, off site improvements, on site facilities, or other aspects of development.

As a minimum step towards correcting this issue, a blanket 40% reduction of the numbers stated within the ITE trip generation manual may be used, following the results of UC Davis’s study. The Metropolitan Planning Organization for the Portland, Oregon – Metro has employed a similar strategy. Metro permits a blanket 30% reduction of the numbers stated within the ITE trip generation manual for areas identified as centers and main streets, essentially mixed-use areas. This methodology was developed prior to the UC Davis study.

REFERENCES:

While the aspirational, XL version of zoning reform is a form-based code, until the capacity and budget exists to develop one, many incremental steps are available to local government that will support Lean development while improving walkability.
ADAPTIVE CODE
The Adaptive Code by Andrew Burleson.
THE ADAPTIVE CODE
an idea under construction

What
The Adaptive Code is a concept for a new way of regulating real estate development in cities. The code is meant to be simple and minimalistic, while providing a framework for a city to thrive in all four environments.

Why?
We need a lightweight, straightforward, foolproof form-based code that can be understood and implemented by *anyone*. The code needs to make sense to people of all political leanings, and it needs to work for 100+ years without being recalibrated.

For a longer explanation of why we should bother with an Adaptive Code, feel free to read our introductory paper, which explains the problems with the current system and more of the rationale behind the proposed code.

Download the Introduction [PDF 142kb]

Inspired by Nature
Cities are messy and chaotic, so how do we best manage them? If we look to nature for inspiration we can find many examples of city-like systems that function quite well.
Consider the termite mound. Individual termites have no intelligence, but by following a few simple behavioral rules they create incredibly efficient mounds. Termite mounds, anthills, and beehives are all examples of natural phenomena called Complex Adaptive Systems.

**Characteristics of a Complex Adaptive System**

- **Emergence**: agents in the system are unpredictable and interact in apparently random ways. Patterns emerge from these interactions, and the agents react to these patterns.
- **Self-Organizing**: there is no hierarchy of command and control, the system continuously reorganizes itself to adapt.
- **Sub-optimization**: complex adaptive systems do not need to be perfect to thrive.
- **Simple Rules**: the rules governing the system are quite simple, even when the emerging patterns are rich and complex. For instance, all the rivers and lakes and waterfalls in the world operate on one simple rule: water always finds its own level.
- **Diversity**: the greater the variety in the system the stronger and more stable it is.
- **Edge of Chaos**: a system in equilibrium cannot adapt and will die, a system in chaos ceases to function. The most productive system lives on the edge of chaos, with maximum variety and creativity creating new possibilities.

**What does this teach us about cities?**

If cities are complex adaptive systems, we need to change our regulatory philosophy.

We need to let go of top-down planning, and instead find the simple rules that allow self-organizing, bottom-up emergence.

The Adaptive Code is a schematic framework for such a system.

**Principles of the Code**

1. Favor free-markets over management, bottom-up emergence over top-down administration.
2. Only regulate what is essential to:
a. Promote long-term stability and appreciation in property values.
b. Eliminate externalities.
c. Favor consumption-based fees over flat-rate services.

The Model

1. Start with a street pattern.
(diagram)
All development must extend this pattern outward or offer equivalent connectivity.
Allow half-streets and dead-ends to facilitate incremental extension of the urban fabric.

2. Establish a transect of complete street types.
(diagram)
All new streets must conform within acceptable limits to one of these types.

3. Map existing streets to the new types.
Any non-conforming streets must be reconfigured the next time they are rebuilt.

4. There may only be one street type per block segment.
Block segments run from intersection to intersection. Adjacent block segments may only change up or down by one level of intensity.

5. Define appropriate building scale and disposition requirements for each street type.
All future development must conform to the requirements associated with the type of street on which it is located.

6. Universal building requirements:
   - All buildings must have an inhabitable ground floor fronting onto any public street.
Off-street parking is not allowed to be located between the building and the public street.

7. **Greenfield developments may be built at any intensity**

The developer must provide the appropriate street type for whatever intensity of development he wishes to construct. Connecting block segments on the edge of the site must be scaled within one intensity level of adjacent segments.

The City will not fund any portion of any cost associated with extending infrastructure to greenfields.

8. **Option to scale-up by right:**

If the city or a developer wishes to increase the allowable intensity of development on a block face they must first upgrade the infrastructure accordingly. A developer who pays the full cost of upgrading an entire block segment to the next level of intensity gains the right to build at a higher intensity level on that block segment.

9. **No parking minimums or maximums.**

The city will use congestion-pricing and parking meters to regulate the supply of on-street parking in such a way that there is always one space available on each block face.

10. **No land-use zoning, but no externalities allowed.**

Maximum noise and light levels specified for each street type by hour of day. Proximity limits for noxious uses allowed, e.g. adult-oriented businesses may be limited from building in proximity to schools.

11. **Miscellaneous**

No new construction in flood plains. No flat-rate solid waste collection, instead charge for solid waste by the pound.

**Conclusion**
Within this framework, individuals have maximum freedom to enjoy their property as they see fit, while eliminating the ability of development to fragment the urban fabric, and greatly reducing the ability to degrade the pedestrian realm. The human-scale city is able to emerge organically.

Thank you for considering this concept, I hope you find it interesting. If you have questions or comments:

- Email andrew@fourthenvironment.com
- Follow @burlesona on Twitter
- Tweet with the hashtag #adaptivecode

If you like this idea and would like to hear from me occasionally about this and other projects I'm working on, please sign up for my email list. I'll send you updates a couple of times per year.

On Jun 5, 2013, at 2:35 PM, Sandy Sorlien <sandysorlien@comcast.net> wrote:

Found my notes on Andrew Burleson's Adaptive Code from last year. Some wording is my summary or paraphrase. Many good ideas.

________

Characteristics of a Complex Adaptive System

Emergence
Self-Organizing
Sub-Optimization
Diversity
Simple Rules
Edge of Chaos
"...find the simple rules that allow self-organizing bottom-up emergence."

Principles of the Code

1. Favor free-markets over management, bottom-up emergence over top-down administration

2. only regulate what is essential to:
   a. promote long-term stability and appreciation in property values
   b. eliminate externalities
   c. favor consumption-based fees over flat rate services

The Model:

1. start with a street pattern (shows grid)

2. establish a transect of complete street types

3. map existing streets to the new types

4. there may be only one street type per block segment (int to int.)
   Adjacent segments may only go up or down by one level of intensity
   (SS-wrong idea?)

5. define appropriate bldg scale and sisp requirements for each street type.
   [note - I do not know what I meant by "sisp"]

6. Universal Bldg requirements
   - all must have "habitable ground floor front on the public street"
- off street parking must not be located between bldg & public street.

7. greenfld dev may be built to any level of intensity. The City WILL NOT fund any portion of any cost associated with extending infrastructure to greenfields.

8. Option to scale up by right (if you, dev or city, pay for added infrastructure)

9. no parking mins or maxes. use congestion pricing & smart meters

10. no land-use zoning, but no externalities allowed some proximity limits OK. light & noise levels transect based.

11. misc
no new constr in flood plain
no flat-rate solid waste collection; charge by pound.
THE DUMB CODE

A basic building code from David Mayernik
A COMMON SENSE CODE FOR URBAN ARCHITECTURE
aka The Dumb Code

GOALS
• establish minimum standards of urban and rural architectural harmony without prescribing stylistic constraints or specific patterns of development
• reestablish durability, beauty, and craft in building standards

ADVANTAGES
• clarifies relationship of built and natural environments
• controls building heights, and therefore urban hierarchies
• generates facade and volume standards without mandating style
• fire resistant, durable, sustainable, beautiful

GENERAL URBAN AND BUILDING PRESUMPTIONS AND PARAMETERS
• presumes only two kinds of development: “urban” (>16 units or 60% FAR/acre) and “non-urban” (<0.25 units or 1.25% FAR/acre)
• “urban” presumes zero lot line (other by variance only); “non-urban” has no constraints
• masonry bearing wall preferred
• pitched roofs mandated
• prioritizes stair-accessibility (i.e. elevators necessary only for disabled use)
• mandated for urban densities, recommended otherwise

SPECIFIC BUILDING REQUIREMENTS (“THE CODE”)
I. Foundations
   i. masonry or
   ii. gravity-loaded, mass concrete walls (no reinforced concrete below grade)

II. Wall construction
   i. integral, monolithic masonry bearing wall (reinforced where necessary only for excessive lateral load resistance and seismic loads); no cavity walls, metal shelf angles, lateral ties, etc. permitted
   ii. self-supporting masonry openings (arches, jack arches, stone or timber lintels) only; no metal lintels permitted
   iii. insulating masonry blocks and/or insulation within interior furring as required
   iv. lime or high lime mortars only
   v. exposed surfaces may be stone, brick, or stucco only
   vi. exposed heavy timber with masonry or hemp-lime infill is only allowable urban wood structural system; timber with other infill permitted in “non-urban” areas only

III. Floor structure
   i. timber joists and beams, or
   ii. masonry or tile vaults preferred
   iii. cast in place un-reinforced concrete shells (vaults, domes, etc.)
   iv. reinforced concrete slabs with no exterior exposure

IV. Roofs
   i. minimum pitch 2:12 (in hot, dry climates only; otherwise minimum 4:12)
   ii. timber truss and/or masonry/un-reinforced concrete shell vault are only permissible structural systems
   iii. only inert, non-combustible sheathing (stone or slate, clay tile, bronze, copper, lead or lead-coated copper); no exposed wood sheathing, nor asphalt or other synthetic materials

VARIANCES
Only where pre-industrial, local precedents allow

©David Mayernik Ltd. This document is intended for academic purposes only and is not intended in any way to represent, describe or imply architectural design services, nor does it in any way supplant, augment, or contradict any and all locally applicable building and zoning codes.
DOWNTOWN LAFAYETTE CODE

This code is to be collated into Lafayette's existing code. (Courtesy Nathan Norris.)
89-13 “D” Downtown

Purpose: the “D” district implements the Mixed-Use Center future land use category of PlanLafayette. This provides the highest density and intensity in the City and Parish, and preserves its unique character and function.
(a) Permitted Uses. See § 89-21.

(b) General Provisions

(1) Intent

a. To provide development standards that enhance and protect the core downtown amenities of vibrancy as characterized by human activity and interaction; convenience to one's daily needs; and public space as defined by high quality outdoor rooms.

b. To ensure the appropriate character and function for private property having the following characteristics:

1. Buildings are aligned parallel to the street, built close to the sidewalk, and configured to minimize gaps between buildings in order to physically shape the street as an outdoor room.

2. Sidewalks are shaded with awnings and galleries.

3. Shopfronts maximize transparency with clear windows.

4. Location of all off-street parking, both surface and structured, screened from street view.

5. Main building entries face the sidewalk to increase activity on the street.

6. Building Facade height must be a minimum to create a sense of enclosure and a maximum to avoid eliminating sunlight from the outdoor room.

7. A sufficient amount of openings facing the street, such as windows and doors, create interest and enhance security.

c. To ensure the appropriate character and function for the public realm having the following characteristics:

1. Thoroughfares designed for vehicle speeds not to exceed 25 mph for a sense of comfort and safety.

2. Encourage outdoor dining so long as an adequate walkway width is maintained.

3. Defined “Furnishing Zone” allowing placement of trees, bicycle parking, parking meters, street lights, and other streetscape elements.

4. Sidewalks shaded with street trees where awnings and galleries are not present.

5. On-street parking serves as a buffer for people walking and dining, helps reduce vehicle speeds, and provides convenient parking for shoppers and guests.

6. Walkways are wide enough to allow at least two people to walk side-by-side comfortably.
Article 2 Districts | 89-13 “D” Downtown

Intent as adapted from the Downtown Action Plan adopted June 10, 2014
(c) Establishment of Lot Lines and A_D & B_D Streets

(1) Definition of Front Lot Line(s): A Front Lot Line is the front or side (in the case of a corner lot) lot line along a public street or pedestrian right-of-way. All lots shall have at least one front lot line.

(2) Definition of Side and Rear Lot Lines: Side and Rear Lot Lines are established as follows:
   a. Side Lot Lines are established between adjoining lots.
   b. Rear lot lines are those that do not intersect with a front lot line or that abut an alley.
   c. Corner lots have two side lot lines, unless the second side lot line abuts an alley or a residential district in which case it is considered a rear lot line.

(3) Establishment of A_D & B_D Streets: All existing and future streets and pedestrian rights of way within and immediately adjacent to this zoning district shall be classified as either an "A_D" Street or "B_D" Street where:
   a. "A_D" Streets are designed at the highest standards for vibrancy as characterized by human activity and interaction, and public spaces defined by high quality outdoor rooms.
   b. "B_D" Streets allow for reduced Frontage standards allowing for more flexibility and a limited vehicular interface.
   c. Corner lots have two Front Lot Lines. Where two "B_D" Streets meet, one frontage shall adhere to "A_D" Street Frontage standards.

(4) A_D & B_D Streets Map: An official A_D and B_D Street Map as adopted and amended from time to time by the provisions of this Ordinance is provided below:
Where two "B_0" Streets meet on a corner lot, one frontage shall adhere to "A_0" Street Frontage standards.

If Residential District ...

then this is a Rear Lot Line

Corner lots have two Side Lot Lines, unless the second side property line abuts an alley or a residential district in which case it is considered a Rear Lot Line.
(d) Building Placement

(1) Setbacks

a. Front Setback: Maximum 10.0 feet.
   1. Front Setback Area: The area within the front setback shall be the Front Setback Area and shall be used for:
      A. placement and articulation of the building Facade;
      B. establishing required minimum Public Walkways;
      C. providing additional sidewalk space for outdoor dining and other commercial-related activities,
      D. street furniture and non-permanent planters; and
      E. in the case of a Residential Frontage, landscaped yards and building access such as porches and stoops.
   2. Required Front Setback for Walkway: Where a minimum Public Walkway width requirement has not been met, a setback is required in accordance with Building Interface and Public Frontage Standards.
   3. Required Front Setback at Corner: To ensure adequate pedestrian circulation and visibility at corners, corner lots shall maintain a minimum corner setback formed by the line joining two points measured 20.0 feet along the edge of pavement on each side to their intersecting point.
   4. Corner Line of Sight: All Required Lines of Sight shall be calculated at no higher than a 25mph design speed as determined by Lafayette Consolidated Government Department of Public Works.

b. Side Setback: There shall be no required setback where a Party Wall is built at the lot line, otherwise a minimum 5.0 foot side setback is required where:
   1. no party wall is to be built, or
   2. the abutting lot is zoned Residential.

c. Rear Setback: Minimum setbacks from a rear lot line shall be as follows:
   1. 12.0 feet from the center-line of an alley, or
   2. 10.0 feet from a rear lot line adjoining another Downtown parcel or Commercial district, or
   3. 20.0 feet from a rear lot line adjoining a lot zoned Residential.

d. Secondary Building Setbacks: On lots with more than one building and where the Frontage Buildout requirements of this district have been met, additional buildings on a lot shall not be subject to the front setback and Frontage Buildout requirements.
Minimum Rear Setback:
10.0’ from adjacent Downtown District,
12.0’ from centerline of adjacent alley, or
20.0’ from adjacent Residential District.

Minimum Side Setback:
0.0’ where a party wall is
to be built on the lot line, otherwise a
minimum of 3.0’

Side Setback Exceptions:
(1) Minimum Side Setback where adjacent to
a house in a Residential District or that is
deemed historic is 5.0’.
(2) Corner lots may have second side
setbacks or a rear setback depending on
whether the property line is considered a
side or rear lot line.

Corner lots shall maintain a minimum corner
triangle setback formed by the line joining two
points measured 20.0 feet along the edge of
pavement on each side to their intersecting
point.

A setback may be required to achieve the
minimum Walkway Width. “A” streets require
8.0’ and “B” streets require 5.0’ (See § (h)(3)
Public Frontage)
(2) Frontage Buildout

a. Frontage Buildout: The Facade of a building shall be built to a minimum percentage of the Front lot Line width within the maximum allowed front setback as follows:

1. For Frontages on an "A\textsubscript{D}" Street with a Front Lot Line width of 100.0 feet or less, a minimum of 80% of the Facade must be built within the Front Setback Area.
2. For Frontages on a "A\textsubscript{B}" Street with a lot widths greater than 100.0 feet, a minimum of 90% of the Facade must be built within the Front Setback Area.
3. For Frontages on a "B\textsubscript{D}" Street: a minimum of 40% of the Facade must be built within the Front Setback Area.
4. Pedestrian Passages and Vehicular Access through buildings having habitable space built above them to a minimum depth of 18.0 feet and within the Front Setback Area shall be counted toward minimum Frontage Buildout requirements.

b. Building Depth: The Frontage Buildout shall be built to the minimum building depth from the front Facade as follows:

1. Parking garages along "B\textsubscript{D}" Streets shall build out their required Frontage Buildout to a minimum Building depth of 12.0 feet.
2. All other buildings shall be built to the minimum depth of 18.0 feet.
3. The Building Depth shall be Habitable Space as described in subsection (f)(1) Building Interface General.

c. Facade Alignment: Facades facing the Front Lot Line shall be built parallel to the Front Lot Line or to the tangent of a curved Front Lot Line.

d. Building Footprint: The maximum Building Footprint on a lot shall be 90% of the lot unless the lot is less than 10,000 square feet or has alley access, in which case it shall have no maximum.
Article 2 Districts | 89-13 “D” Downtown

Frontage Buildout Exceptions:
(1) Buildout on “A₀” streets is 80% for lots under 100.0’ in width, otherwise it is 90%
(2) Parking Garages on “B₀” streets shall have a frontage buildout to minimum depth of 12.0’.

Pedestrian Passages and Vehicular Access through buildings with habitable space built above them count toward minimum Frontage Buildout.

Parking Garages on “B₀” Streets shall build out their required frontage to a minimum depth of 12.0’
(c) Building Height

(1) Building Height: There are no maximum building heights within the Downtown district except as they are limited by the following:

   a. Parking for Buildings over 5 Stories: Buildings over five (5) stories shall be subject to additional Parking standards as set forth in subsection (g) Parking & Access; and

   b. Stepbacks for Buildings over 5 Stories: Buildings over five (5) stories shall have a minimum building stepback of 10.0 feet starting at the sixth floor.

(2) Building Facade Height: All buildings shall have a minimum 20.0 foot building facade height as measured from the Walkway. Building facade height for single story buildings shall be measured from the Walkway to the top of a parapet or eaves line.

(3) Habitable Roofs: As described in § 89-27 Building Height, Habitable Space within enclosed attics, towers, and penthouses with an area equaling 50% or less of the building area of the story immediately below shall not be counted as a story. Non-conditioned rooftop space, covered or uncovered, such as rooftop terraces and patios are permitted, but are not included as Habitable Space.

(4) Building Height Exceptions: Elements that are exempt from building height regulations are as described in § 89-27 Building Height.

(5) Commercial Ground Story: Commercial ground stories shall have a minimum 13.0 foot floor to ceiling height.

(6) Residential Ground Story: Residential ground stories shall:

   a. Be raised a minimum of 24.0 inches from sidewalk level; and

   b. Have a minimum 10.0 foot floor to ceiling height.

(7) Minimum Story Height: All stories shall have a minimum floor to ceiling height of 9.0 feet.
Building Height: There are no building height restrictions, however buildings over 5 stories are subject to additional standards as set out in Section § (g) Parking & Access and Stepbacks as required below.

Stepback: Buildings over five (5) stories shall have a minimum building stepback of 10.0 feet starting at the sixth floor.

All Stories: Min. Height: 9.0'

Commercial Ground Story:
Min. Height: 13.0'
Raised Min. 24.0” from Sidewalk grade.

Building Facade Height: All buildings shall have a minimum 20.0 foot building facade height as measured from the Walkway.

Habitable roofs with an area no more than 50% of the area of the story immediately below are not considered a story.

100%
≤50%

Area of Story Below
(f) Building Interface

(1) General

a. Private Frontage Interface: The Private Frontage shall be established as the area within the Front Setback Area from the Front Lot Line up to and including the Facade and the required Habitable Space.

b. Habitable Space: Habitable Space is building area suitable for active human use such as residential, office, retail, and institutional uses. Parking and warehousing are examples of non-Habitable Space. The required Building Depth as described in § (d)(2) Frontage Buildout shall be Habitable Space.

c. Primary Building Entry: Habitable space at the Front Lot Line shall have its primary entry(s) within the Front Setback Area. Upper stories shall have direct access to the Front Setback Area.

d. Private Frontage Interfaces: There are two possible Private Frontage types. Private Frontages are limited to the following, and are to be designed in conformance to their applicable standards (as noted):
   1. Commercial Frontage (f)(2)
   2. Urban Residential Frontage (f)(3)

e. Frontage Attachments: Galleries and Awnings are not required. Galleries and Awnings shall not overlap the Walkway and/or encroach into the public right-of-way unless constructed in accordance with (f)(4) Building Interface: Gallery Standards and (f)(5) Building Interface: Awnings Standards.

f. Upper Story Façade Requirements
   1. Glazing above the first Story Façade shall be a minimum of 20% of the Façade wall area.
   2. Low pitch or flat roofs on new buildings shall be enclosed by a parapet that is a minimum of 3.0 feet in height, or as necessary to screen the view of mechanical equipment from the Walkway. Existing buildings shall screen mechanical equipment through a parapet or by other means.
   3. Upper story balconies can extend over public sidewalk to maximum depth of 4.0 feet.

(g) Development over Accessways: To achieve a connected street wall and for more efficient use of land, buildings may extend over pedestrian and vehicular accessways to internal blocks as follows:
   1. Required Pedestrian Passages shall form a continuous minimum at-grade opening of 12.0 feet sidewalk to ceiling height and a width of 8.0 feet.
   2. Vehicular access to structured and surface parking having the following unobstructed dimensions:
      A. a minimum opening height of 10.0 feet in height, or 14.0 feet in height when over a shared alley or street with service or emergency functions; and
      B. a minimum width of 12.0', or a minimum width of 20 feet (18 feet curb face to curb face minimum) when over a shared alley or street with service or emergency functions. The maximum width of the opening shall be 24 feet.

(h) Required Pedestrian Passage: Any block length having 300.0 feet or more of continuous building Frontage shall be required to have an unobstructed pedestrian passageway for emergency service access.

(i) Building Facades: Buildings wider than 100 feet shall be divided into distinct and separate Building Facades no wider than 100.0 feet.
**Parapet:** Low pitch or flat roofs shall be enclosed by a parapet that is a minimum of 3.0 feet in height, or a greater height as necessary to conceal mechanical equipment from a Walkway.

**Upper Story Openings:** Upper story facade shall have a minimum of 20% openings.

**Balconies:** Upper story balconies can extend over public sidewalk to a maximum depth of 4.0 feet from the facade.

**Habitable Space:** The required Building Depth shall be achieved with building area suitable for active human use.

**Primary Entry:** Habitable space at the Front Lot Line shall have its primary entry(s) within the Front Setback Area. Upper stories shall have direct access to the Front Setback Area.

**The Private Frontage** is the area between the front property line up to and including the front facade and required Habitable Space.

**Pedestrian Passage (1)**
- Min. 12.0’
- Min. 20.0’ (2)
- Min. 8.0’
- Min. 10.0’
- Min. 14.0’ (2)

1. Required for every 300’ of continuous building frontage.
2. When over a shared alley or a street with service or emergency functions.

**Vehicular Access**
- Min. 12.0’
- Max. 24.0’

**Maximum 100’ Wide**

Buildings wider than 100’ shall be divided into distinct and separate facades no wider than 100’.
(2) Building Interface: Commercial Frontage

a. Minimum Glazing: Facades along "A D" Streets shall be glazed with no less than 50% of the first story measured between the ground and 10.0 feet of the Walkway. Facades along "B D" Streets shall be glazed with no less than 30% of the first story measured between the ground and 10.0 feet of the Walkway. Mullions, muntin and frames that are no wider than 4.0 inches shall be included as part of the Glazed area.

b. Glass Transparency: All glass shall be transparent with a maximum 15% reflectivity. Any window tinting, graphics, and interior affixed window shades that create a permanent opaque or translucent condition are prohibited, except for allowed signage.

c. Setback Landscaping: Setbacks shall be paved and shall be available for outdoor dining and furnishing where the minimum Walkway width is established as required in § (h)(3).

d. Shading of Private and Public Frontage: In addition to shade provided by street trees where they are provided, shading of the private and public frontage can be achieved through the combination of a Gallery and/or Awning Frontage.
Minimum Transparent Glazing Area:
“A” Street: 50%
“B” Street: 30%
Does not include mullions and frames smaller than 4.0”
All glass shall be transparent with a maximum 15% reflectivity.

Setback areas shall be paved.
(Red line denotes Front Lot Line.)
(3) Building Interface: Urban Residential Frontage

a. Minimum Glazing: Facades shall be glazed with no less than 25% of the first story measured between 2.0 feet and 10.0 feet of the Walkway.

b. Glass Transparency: All glass shall be transparent with a maximum 15% reflectivity. Window tinting and interior affixed window shades that create a permanently opaque or translucent condition are prohibited. Window shading and privacy can be achieved through interior adjustable window treatments, and/or operable exterior shutters.

c. Raised Ground Story Access: Access to the required minimum 24.0 inch raised residential ground story can be achieved through exterior or interior steps and ramping.

d. Flex Frontage: The raised residential ground story requirement shall be waived where:

1. The ground story at the Frontage to a minimum depth of 18.0 feet is built to a commercial building standard;

2. No other residential room is at the frontage;

3. There is a separate entry for the Residential and Commercial areas of the building, and a lockable interior connection between the areas.

e. Shallow Setback Landscaping: After minimum walkway requirements are met, setbacks less than 6.0 feet may be landscaped or paved.

f. Deep Setback Landscaping: After minimum walkway requirements are met, setbacks over 6.0 feet of the walkway shall be landscaped.

g. Deep Setback Planter Wall: After minimum walkway requirements are met and where setbacks from the Walkway are greater than 6 feet, a required landscaping wall shall be built at the perimeter of the yard, measuring a minimum 18.0 inches in height and 4.0 inches in depth. A side wall is not required where the planter wall is continuous with an abutting yard.
Minimum 25% Transparent Glazing between 2.0’ and 10.0’ of the Walkway Height. Does not include mullions and frames smaller than 4.0”

Shallow Setback:
- Facade is 6.0’ or less from the Walkway.
- First Floor residential uses shall be raised a minimum 24.0” from Walkway height.

Deep Setback:
- Facade is 6.0’ or more from the Walkway.
- First Floor residential uses shall be raised a minimum 24.0” from Walkway height.

Min. 4.0” Masonry or Concrete Wall

- Deep Setbacks require a wall at the perimeter of the yard.
- Min. 18.0” Height
(4) Building Interface: Gallery Standards

a. Gallery Standards: Galleries may not cover the public frontage unless the following standards are met:

1. Galleries shall have the following minimum dimensions:
   A. depth: 8.0 feet
   B. height to ceiling: 11.0 feet
   C. clear height: 8.0 feet

2. Galleries are not permitted above the third story.

3. No element of a gallery shall encroach closer than 1.0 foot to the face of curb, or 2.0 feet when adjacent to overhead utilities or a Drive Lane (as opposed to a Parking Lane).

4. All gallery roof overhangs above 20.0 feet from the sidewalk can be built to the face of curb where overhead utilities are not present.

5. Galleries shall have a consistent depth.

6. Galleries may include a vertical shade between columns to within 7.0 feet of the sidewalk.

7. Galleries shall include illumination of the sidewalk.

8. Galleries shall not be built over an electrical transformer.

9. When built within the public right-of-way, Galleries are subject to applicable agreements with LCG and utility providers.
Galleries shall include illumination of the sidewalk.

Vertical sun shade between columns min. 7.0’ from sidewalk

1.0’ min. to face of curb (shown) - or - 2.0’ min. when adjacent to overhead utility or a Drive Lane.

8.0’ min. opening depth

Fixed Awning

Ceiling 11’ min. Clear 8’ min.

1.0’ min. to face of curb (shown) - or - 2.0’ min. when adjacent to overhead utility lines or a vehicular travel lane.

4.0’ min. depth
(5) Building Interface: Awning Standards

a. Awning Standards: Awnings may not cover the public frontage unless the following standards are met:

1. Awnings shall have a minimum depth of 4.0 feet from the facade.
2. Retractable Awnings may cover sidewalks to the face of curb and to a minimum height of 7.0 feet from the sidewalk.
3. Fixed Awnings shall be built to a minimum height of 8' from the Sidewalk and to within 0.5 feet of the curb.
4. Awnings shall not extend closer than 2.0 feet from the face of curb when adjacent to overhead utility lines or a Drive Lane (as opposed to a Parking Lane).
5. The fabric fringe of an awning may extend as a vertical shade to within 7.0 feet of the sidewalk where it does not impede the walkway.
6. Fixed Awnings shall not be built over an electrical transformer.
7. When built within the public right-of-way, Awnings are subject to applicable agreements with LCG and utility providers.
Fabric fringe min. 7.0’ from sidewalk

To face of curb
- or -

2.0’ min. when adjacent to overhead utility lines or a vehicular travel lane.

4.0’ min. depth

1.0’ min. to face of curb (shown)
- or -

2.0’ min. when adjacent to overhead utility lines or a vehicular travel lane.

4.0’ min. depth
(g) Parking & Access

(1) Vehicle Parking Space Requirements:

a. There shall be no minimum parking space requirements for all buildings of five (5) stories or less.

b. For buildings over five (5) stories, parking shall be provided on the lot, screened from the Walkway as per the provisions of this code, and the minimum number of required parking spaces for the entire building shall be as follows:

1. Retail: 3 Spaces / 1000 sf
2. Office: 2 Spaces / 1000 sf
3. Residential: 1 Space / Unit
4. Accommodations: 1 Space / Room

(2) Location of Off-Street Parking: Off-Street Parking shall not be viewable from the Walkway unless the following conditions are met:

a. Parking Garage Standards § (g)(3), or

b. Parking Screen Standard § (g)(4).

(3) Parking Garage Standards: The following applies to parking garages:

a. Parking garages along "B_D" streets shall be masked from view of the Walkway by the required Frontage Buildout § (d)(2) for the first story. The remainder of the garage may be unmasked provided the following standards are met:

   1. Upper stories of the parking garage shall have a facade where all openings are vertically proportioned.
   2. Any exposed parking spaces at the ground story shall be subject to § (g)(4) Parking Screen Standards.

b. Parking garages along "A" streets shall be fully masked by the required Frontage Buildout § (d)(2) to the height of the parking garage.
Exposed upper stories of the parking garage shall be enhanced with an architectural facade having a minimum 20% vertically proportioned fenestration or openings.

**Min. 12.0’ Depth for Min. 40% Lot Width (Frontage Buildout (§ (d)(2)) For First Story**

**B**_“Street Interface:*
Parking garages along "B"_ streets shall be masked from view of the Walkway by the required Frontage Buildout (§ (d)(2)) for the first story.

Any exposed parking spaces at the ground story shall be subject to § (g)(4) Parking Screen Standards.

**Min. 18.0’ Depth for Min. 60% or 90% Lot Width (§ (d)(2)) To Height of Garage**

**A**_“Street Interface: Parking garages along "A"_ streets shall be fully masked by the required Frontage Buildout (§ (d)(2)) to the height of the parking garage.
(4) Parking Screen Standards

a. Opaque Height: 40.0 inches minimum, 8.0 feet maximum vertical distance from the top of the Walkway.

b. Material: Rigid opaque materials to minimum depth of 4.0 inches, and to the minimum height after which other materials may be used to the maximum height. Decorative metal in combination with vegetative landscaping can be used in place of rigid materials. Chain-link and wood fences are not permitted. Vegetative landscaping shall achieve and maintain the required minimum Opaque Height within one year of installation.

c. Setback Landscaping: Parking Screens shall be set back a minimum of 2.0 feet from the Walkway and may be landscaped or paved. In no case shall a Parking Screen be set closer to the Walkway than the Building Facade.

d. Parking Screens shall allow openings no wider than 24.0 feet for vehicles, and provide openings as needed for pedestrian access along the rear of the building.

(5) Parking and Loading Access

a. Loading facilities and service areas shall not be visible along "Ad" Street Walkways.

b. Loading facilities and service areas are permitted within the Front Setback Area of a building on a "Bd" Street, but shall not count toward the required Frontage Buildout.

c. Garbage enclosures shall not be visible from view of a Walkway.

d. Where a lot abuts an alley, parking shall be accessed from the alley.

e. Drive Aisle Dimensions: Minimum 24.0 feet for two way traffic. One-Way drive aisles are allowed only for angled parking (both back-in/head-out and head-in/back-out) with dimensions as follows:

   1. 45 degree parking stall: minimum 12.0 foot drive aisle
   2. 60˚ degree parking stall: minimum 16.0' foot drive aisle
   3. 75˚ degree parking stall: minimum 23.0' foot drive aisle

f. Parking Stall Dimensions:

   1. Width as measured on-centre: Minimum 8.0 feet, typically 9.0 feet, or a minimum 9.5' to accommodate door openings where the side of a stall is directly adjacent to a wall or vertical element over 6.0 inches in height.
   2. Length: Minimum 18.0 feet.

   g. Vehicular entrances to off-street parking lots and parking garages shall be no wider than 24.0 feet at the Front Lot Line.
Min. 40.0” Opaque Height.
Walls to be constructed of rigid materials. Opacity achieved by a solid wall, decorative metal and vegetative landscape, or a combination of both.

**Pedestrian Access Allowed**

**Max. 24.0’ Opening**

**Min. 2.0’ Landscaped Setback**

---

**Drive Aisle Dimensions**
- Two-Way: 24.0 min.
- One-Way with Angled Parking:
  - 45°: 12.0’ min.
  - 60°: 16.0’ min.
  - 75°: 23.0’ min.

**Typical Angled Parking Dimensions (9.0’ Parking Stall Width)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Depth</th>
<th>Interval</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>45°</td>
<td>19.0’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60°</td>
<td>20.0’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75°</td>
<td>19.5’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90°</td>
<td>18.8’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Parking Stall Width**
- Minimum: 8.5’
- Adjacent to Wall: 9.5’ min.
- Compact: Min. 8.0’ for max. 20% of Spaces

**Parking Stall Length**
- Minimum: 18.0’

---

**Lafayette Consolidated Government Unified Development Code**
(h) Public Frontage

(1) Public Frontage: The public frontage shall be established as the area between the Front Lot Line and the face of curb.

(2) Public Frontage Components: The public frontage has three primary components.

   a. The Furnishing Zone: The area between the face of curb and the Walkway utilized for street light standards, utility poles, street furniture, outdoor dining, planting areas, and tree planting.

   b. The Walkway: A continuous, unobstructed, accessible, paved area dedicated to pedestrian movement along the private frontage. Walkways are required on all public frontages.

   c. The Interface Zone: The area between the Walkway and the Building Facade (not including residential yards) available for outdoor dining, sidewalk signs, street furniture, non-affixed planters, and outdoor merchandising.

(3) Minimum Walkway Widths: Minimum, unobstructed Walkway widths shall be established as follows:

   a. A minimum of 8.0 feet on "Ad" Streets.

   b. A minimum of 5.0 feet on "Bd" Streets.

   c. Unobstructed Front Setback Areas that are paved at the same grade as the adjoining Walkway shall be counted toward the minimum Walkway width.

   d. Bollards installed for pedestrian safety shall not be considered an obstruction to a Walkway.

   e. Non-permanent outdoor dining may encroach into an "Ad" Street Walkway provided that a minimum 5.0 feet clear is maintained.
The Interface Zone: The area between the Walkway and the Building Facade available for outdoor dining, sidewalk signs, street furniture, non-affixed planters, and outdoor merchandising.

The Furnishing Zone: The area between the face of curb and the Walkway utilized for street light standards, utility poles, street furniture, outdoor dining, planting areas, and tree planting.

The Walkway: A continuous, unobstructed, accessible, paved area dedicated to pedestrian movement along the private frontage. Walkways are required on all public frontages.

Required minimum unobstructed Walkway width:

- “A” Street: 8.0’
- “B” Street: 5.0’

Unobstructed Front Setback Areas that are paved at the same grade as the adjoining Walkway shall be counted toward the minimum Walkway width.
DEVELOPMENT DESIGN CENTER EXPLAINED

This explanation of the Development + Design Center from Lafayette’s Downtown Action Plan explains the rationale behind creating the center.
III. Development + Design Center

Development in the downtown is complex because there are a multitude of landowners (both public and private), a wide variety of infrastructure conditions, and no master developer coordinating its overall development like a large-scale suburban greenfield project.

To help mitigate these challenges as well as speed redevelopment and improve the quality of development, the Development & Design Center (DDC) was established as an entity within the Downtown Development Authority in August of 2013 with the creation of the Director of Design position.

The DDC has five primary responsibilities:

1. **Implement the Downtown Action Plan.** The DDC is the primary entity tasked with facilitating the day to day implementation of this Downtown Action Plan. This also includes ongoing efforts to provide information to various stakeholders about the vision for the downtown and the basis for the vision.

2. **Facilitate Promotion & Coordination of Downtown Development.** The downtown competes with large-scale developments in the suburbs that have centralized sales and coordinated development operations. The DDC serves as informal sales office by actively promoting the downtown to prospective residents, businesses, visitors and developers in collaboration with Downtown Lafayette Unlimited. The DDC also helps facilitate coordination between property owners.

3. **Concierge.** The DDC serves as a concierge for development that supports the vision of the downtown.

4. **Mediator.** The DDC may act as a mediator when a conflict arises between a developer and an entity involved in the development process such as the local government, utility service provider or neighbor.

5. **Research & Development Conceptual Design Services.** The DDC provides conceptual schematic design services to owners and developers of property in the downtown upon request. This includes the creation of conceptual master plans, illustrations, regulatory documents and other planning documents that will increase the speed of redevelopment in the downtown.
Figure 5 Development Focus Areas

1. Centre-Ville / Main Street
2. Mouton Place
3. University Gate
4. Vermillion Street/Marché
5. Versailles
6. Uptown
7. Iberia/Congress Gateway
8. Jefferson Center (Entertainment District)
9. Vermilionville
10. University/Saint Streets
11. Johnston/UL Connection
12. Johnston/Freetown Transition
13. Railway/I-49 Interface
14. Congress/La Place Transition

Downtown Cultural District Boundary
DBA District Boundary
This process speeds redevelopment in three ways:

A. Making the Numbers Work. A lot of development does not happen because the owner cannot figure out how to make the numbers work. If the owner does not understand how the numbers can work, he or she is likely to refrain from paying a local architect, engineer, builder or planner to help them out. This is how property becomes “stuck.” To get off “stuck” (i.e., get to the point where the owner will hire a local practitioner to move forward), the DDC will provide free conceptual design services that show the owner or developer the best route for maximizing value on the property. Many times this will involve showing the owner different development opportunities (such as incremental development opportunities), or simply making the long-term value proposition more clear. In this way this process will speed the time it takes for an owner to hire a local practitioner to help him or her move forward on the redevelopment of the property.

B. Pre-empting Poor Design. Downtown development can also be slowed down by poor design. That is to say that if something is built that diminishes the core benefits of a downtown (e.g., no windows, suburban orientation with parking in front of the building, poor proportions, etc.), it can slow down the speed of redevelopment around it. Instead of trying to fix design problems after an owner has already invested money in a specific design, it is much more productive to collaborate with the developer from the very beginning of the process.

C. On-Site Availability. Development is complex and anything but static. Issues pop up throughout the development process that were not contemplated during the conceptual design process. Instead of relying upon outside consultants who have limited availability, the DDC is available throughout the development process to make sure everything stays on track without a sacrifice to the quality of the project.

Development Focus Areas
To fulfill its mission to promote, coordinate, and provide conceptual master plans that implement the plan, a key strategy for the Development and Design Center is the establishment of Development Focus Areas as shown in Figure 5. These will establish an identity for smaller areas within the downtown for the purposes of planning, development, and marketing. This allows coordinated action to occur in increments smaller than the scale of downtown but larger than an individual property. Character areas are intended to:

- Identify and prioritize streetscape improvements;
- Guide potential property consolidation, re-subdivision, and coordinated development opportunities;
- Develop localized parking strategies including on-street, off-street, and structured parking facilities;
- Explore possibilities for new and/or expanded public spaces; and
- Allow for joint marketing of development opportunities under a common identity and brand.

Procedural Review
Given the critical role that the DDC plays in helping coordinate development in the downtown, it should receive concurrent notice from property owners of all submissions that are made to the Planning, Zoning & Codes Department.
III. Development + Design Center: Actions And Investments

1. Foster and support the establishment and advancement of the Development and Design Center.

2. Target redevelopment of the old federal courthouse site to bring multi-family residential and mixed-use development into the downtown. Investments will likely include preparing the site for sale to private developers.

3. Complete interior and exterior renovation of the parish courthouse and surrounding streets (Centre-Ville)

4. Initiate and develop plans, strategies, and stakeholder outreach for University Gateway, Mouton Place, Jefferson Center, Versailles, Iberia/North Gateway, Vermilion, and other Development Focus Areas as the demand arises.

5. Identify and fund strategic demonstrations of new and/or pioneering development projects such as lining parking lots with permanent or temporary small-scale mixed use buildings.

6. Advance and improve base mapping, and both physical and computerized 3d models, for the downtown.
STORE SIZE CAPS

This toolkit is from the Institute for Local Self-reliance.
Introduction

A size cap ordinance prohibits the construction of retail stores larger than a certain size. Dozens of cities and towns across the country have enacted these ordinances. The limits vary, but 50,000 square feet is about average.

Size caps help to sustain the vitality of small-scale, pedestrian-oriented business districts, which in turn nurture local business development. They also prevent the many negative impacts of big box development, such as increased traffic congestion and over-burdened public infrastructure, and they protect the character of the community by ensuring that new development is at a scale in keeping with the traditional built environment and surrounding landscape.

When faced with a store size cap ordinance, a retailer that typically builds larger stores will either opt not to build or will design a smaller store that fits within the cap.

What this kit contains:

1. “How Big is Too Big?” Flyer and Poster for Distribution
2. Common Questions: How to Answer the Opposition
3. Model Size Cap Ordinance
4. Key Decisions in Drafting a Size Cap Proposal
5. Tips for Building Support for a Store Size Cap
6. Examples of Communities that have Adopted Size Caps
7. Sample Materials from other Campaigns

BIGBOXTOOLKIT
A project of the Institute for Local Self-Reliance
www.bigboxtoolkit.com

This fact sheet is © 2006 by the Institute for Local Self-Reliance and is licensed under a Creative Commons License. Please visit bigboxtoolkit.com for information on authorized uses.
How Big is Too Big?

A typical Wal-Mart or Target supercenter, with its parking lot, occupies an area equal to more than a dozen football fields. Since 1990, retail development in the U.S. has consumed about 500,000 acres, or 780 square miles—more than half the size of Rhode Island.

Wal-Mart, Target, Home Depot, Lowe’s, and other retailers build stores that are several acres in size. Their parking lots are even larger, typically occupying a land area three times the size of the store itself.

And the big boxes keep getting bigger. Wal-Mart, for example, has been closing its superstores and building supercenters, which are about twice as large on average (100,000 vs. 200,000 square feet) and include a full supermarket.

Bigger Stores, Bigger Impacts

Many of the negative impacts that big-box retailers have on communities and local economies are directly related to the size of their stores:

*Diminished competition*—The bigger the store, the bigger the bite it will take out of the local economy. Wal-Mart’s U.S. stores, for example, annually average $418 sales per square foot (Wal-Mart 2005 Annual Report), meaning a 200,000-square-foot supercenter is designed to capture $84 million each year. Most communities, even fast-growing areas, cannot absorb a store of that scale without severe revenue losses to existing businesses, including both locally owned stores and competing supermarkets and shopping centers.

As these businesses contract and close, residents are left with fewer choices and less competition. Some towns and neighborhoods now depend on a single big-box store for certain goods. Evidence suggests that these retailers may raise prices once they attain a dominant market position.

*Heavier Traffic*—The larger the store, the larger the geographic region from which it pulls customers and the higher the traffic counts. A 200,000-square-foot superstore typically generates more than 10,000 car trips on weekdays and more on Saturdays. (See our Impact of Big-Box Stores on Traffic fact sheet.)
Excessive land consumption—While neighborhood and downtown business districts, with their multi-story buildings and reduced need for parking, are relatively efficient users of land, big-box retailers are bulldozing vast tracks of field, forest, and farm land.

Retail chains have been consuming land at about ten times the rate of growth in consumer spending. Since 1990, some 500,000 acres—an area more than half the size of Rhode Island—has been developed for retail, mostly big-box stores.

Spoiled local character—Massive big-box stores surrounded by asphalt are out of proportion with the scale of traditional commercial districts and residential neighborhoods, fueling sprawl and undermining the character of our cities, towns, and rural areas.

Solution: Store Size Caps

Dozens of cities and towns have enacted local zoning ordinances that prohibit stores over a certain size. Examples include:

- Ashland, Oregon—Limits retail stores to no more than 45,000 square feet.
- Ravalli County, Montana—Caps stores at 60,000 square feet.
- Madison, Wisconsin—Restricts retail buildings to a footprint of 100,000 square feet.
- Damariscotta, Maine—Bars stores over 35,000 square feet.

Store size caps prevent the many negative impacts of big-box development, such as increased traffic and over-burdened public infrastructure. They help to maintain the vitality of local business districts and protect the character of the community by ensuring that new development is at a scale in keeping with existing buildings.

Store size caps are not discriminatory. They do not ban retailers such as Home Depot and Target. Rather, they mandate that those companies build stores that are an appropriate size for the community.

Store size caps are legal. Through their land use zoning ordinances, cities have long had the power to control the scale of development by, for example, limiting building heights or setting minimum house lot sizes. Store size caps are a recent variation on these types of regulations and have been validated by the courts as a legitimate use of municipal authority.

For examples of size cap ordinances, see: http://www.newrules.org/retail/size.html
Common Questions: How to Answer the Opposition

Are store size caps legal?

Yes. Cities and towns have long had the authority—through the zoning powers granted to them by state law—to control the scale of development. Most municipal zoning codes are filled with provisions that regulate scale by, for example, restricting the height of buildings or setting a minimum acreage for house lots.

Store size caps are merely a variation on this long-standing use of zoning to ensure that new development is of a scale appropriate to the community. As such, they are perfectly legal. Indeed, scores of cities and towns have restricted the size of stores and their laws have not been challenged by big-box retailers.

Didn’t Wal-Mart sue a city in California that adopted a law banning superstores?

Wal-Mart did seek to overturn an ordinance adopted by Turlock, California, on the grounds that it was discriminatory and illegally interfered with competition.

The ordinance at issue was not a straight size cap on all stores. Instead, the law only bans stores over 100,000 square feet that devote more than 5 percent of their floor area to groceries. While supercenters are affected, other kinds of big-box stores that do not carry food are not.

Even so, Wal-Mart lost in both state and federal court. Courts in both jurisdictions upheld Turlock’s ordinance, ruling that the restrictions are constitutional, do not unduly harm competition, and are a valid use of municipal zoning authority.

Doesn’t it go against the free market to ban certain types of businesses and prevent them from competing?

Size caps do not single out particular companies and prevent them from doing business. Instead they require all retailers to build stores that are appropriately sized for the community. Wal-Mart, Home Depot, and other chains are free to open stores so long as those outlets do not exceed the size limit—a limit that local businesses are also subject to.

Size caps are not only fair, but they foster greater competition and more consumer choice by not allowing a single giant supercenter to become the only place where residents can buy certain kinds of goods. Size caps instead facilitate a market composed of a diversity of small and mid-sized stores.
If 50,000 square feet is okay, why not 51,000 square feet? Aren’t size caps rather arbitrary?

The size limit being proposed was not chosen at random. It is the result of much research into what other cities and towns have done and what size limit makes the most sense for this community.

The research overwhelmingly indicates that the cost to communities of large-scale retail development far outweighs the benefits. Deciding exactly where to draw the line is not always easy—there’s always someone who will argue that a particular number is arbitrary—but we have to draw it somewhere.

Didn’t Wal-Mart get around a size cap in a Maryland community by building two smaller stores side-by-side?

This particular size cap ordinance, in Calvert County, was poorly worded. Most size cap ordinances, including the one proposed here, define two or more adjacent buildings operated by one company as a single retail store for the purposes of the size cap (meaning the total square footage of all the buildings cannot exceed the cap).

Although Wal-Mart did propose two side-by-side stores in Calvert County, public outcry over the plan ultimately led the company to drop its proposal.

Won’t a size cap hurt economic development? What has been the experience of cities and towns that have size caps?

Communities commonly report that, while store size cap ordinances stop some development, they actually foster other kinds of economic development. The caps have blocked massive retail projects, but ushered in downtown investment and encouraged small-scale, mixed use and pedestrian-oriented development.

After the passage of 65,000-square-foot cap in Rockville, Maryland, a site slated for a big-box store was instead developed as a multi-story residential building with retail stores and restaurants on the first floor. In Arcata, California, a prohibition on big-box development has had the effect of steering new investment into the downtown instead. The downtown has virtually no retail vacancy and a new multi-story building was recently erected on a long-standing vacant lot.

None of the size cap ordinances that we are aware of—some are more than a decade old—have been repealed.
Model Ordinance

This is a very basic size cap ordinance that can serve as a starting point for crafting your proposal.

LARGE-SCALE RETAIL ORDINANCE

WHEREAS the city finds that large-scale retail development can result in substantial impacts to the community, including noise, traffic, and loss of local character;

WHEREAS the city finds that large-scale retail development imposes additional costs on public facilities and services;

WHEREAS the city finds that large-scale retail development is inconsistent with the goals contained in the comprehensive plan;

WHEREAS the city finds that limiting the size of retail stores is necessary to foster a competitive and diverse mix of retail establishments;

WHEREAS the city finds that limiting the size of retail stores will promote a more efficient use of land;

WHEREAS the city finds that limiting the size of retail stores is necessary to facilitate a safe and comfortable pedestrian scale environment;

NOW, THEREFORE, BE IT ORDAINED by the city:

That in all zoning districts, no single retail establishment, whether located in a single building or combination of buildings, shall exceed 50,000 (fifty thousand) square feet of gross floor area in the aggregate.

The term "gross floor area" shall include indoor and outdoor space utilized for retail display and sale of goods. The gross floor area of adjacent stores shall be aggregated in cases where the stores (1) are engaged in the selling of similar or related goods, wares or merchandise and operate under common ownership or management; (2) share checkstands, a warehouse, or a distribution facility; or (3) otherwise operate as associated, integrated or co-operative business enterprises.
Key Decisions in Drafting a Size Cap Proposal

What will be the geographic extent of the cap?

Most store size cap ordinances apply to the entire city or town. In some larger cities, size caps are implemented on a neighborhood by neighborhood basis, allowing for variation in the size limit depending on the needs and circumstances of each neighborhood.

A number of counties have also adopted store size caps. Usually county zoning rules affect only the unincorporated land that lies outside of the jurisdiction of cities and towns within the county. In some cases, however, county laws supersede municipal laws and apply to land both beyond and within town boundaries.

Should the cap apply to the building footprint or to the "gross leasable area"?

A few communities cap only the footprint of the building. This approach allows for larger stores provided they are multi-story. A footprint cap of 50,000 square feet, for example, would accommodate a 200,000-square-foot store spread over four floors.

The vast majority of communities with store size cap laws apply the limit to the gross leasable area, or the GLA, of the store. GLA refers to the total floor space that the store occupies. A 50,000-square-foot cap on GLA would not allow for a store larger than that, whether on one or more stories.

Because many of the economic, community, and traffic impacts of big-box retailers are tied to the size of the stores, not the footprint of the buildings, we strongly recommend that size cap laws specify GLA.

Encouraging or mandating that retailers build multi-story buildings that accommodate other uses, such as residential or offices on upper floors, is also an excellent idea. Doing so will not only produce a more efficient and pedestrian-friendly land use pattern, but it will create a better environment for nurturing new locally owned businesses. Fostering multi-story buildings, however, is best achieved through design standards, rather than through a footprint ordinance.

What should be the size limit?

This depends on the circumstances and the long-term goals of the community. Every community is different and must make its own determination about what makes sense.

Here are some factors worth considering:
• Where other communities have drawn the line—Most cities and towns that have size caps in place set the limit somewhere between 25,000 and 75,000 square feet (see the examples included in this kit). A cap of 50,000 square feet—which is somewhat larger than the average supermarket (44,000 square feet) and smaller than a football field (57,000 square feet)—is close to average.

• Population and shopping choices—Communities have enough spending power to support only so much retail. A town of 10,000 might only be able to sustain a total of 400,000 square feet of retail, so a cap of 20,000 square feet makes sense to ensure a good mix of different businesses. Although it might seem like a very different environment, the same dynamic is at work in many big cities, where a neighborhood business district serves a similarly small population within a short radius. A number of urban neighborhoods have capped retailers at 10,000 square feet or less to foster a mix of many different stores.

• The size of existing retail stores—Some communities adopt a cap that is the size of the largest store in town. However, it is also entirely legitimate to set a limit that is smaller than existing stores. Indeed, it’s often only after experiencing the negative effects of one or more big-box stores that many communities decide they cannot accommodate additional large-scale development. While size caps apply to all future construction and do not force changes on existing oversized stores, they do prevent those stores from expanding further.

• Your transportation goals—A smaller cap encourages more stores within closer proximity to more homes, and thus less driving. Consider—and this is a very rough-sketch example—that a market with 40,000 people generates enough spending on hardware and building supplies (according to national averages) to support either a single 140,000-square-foot big-box or seven to eight 20,000-square-foot stores scattered across the city and providing hardware and related goods within a short distance of many residents.

For a list of average store sizes for different retail chains, see the "How Big is Too Big?" flyer included in this kit.

Should you allow for some flexibility for stores in a certain size range?

Some communities have taken a tiered approach. They have adopted an absolute cap of, say, 60,000 square feet, while requiring proposals for stores in a smaller size range—say, 20,000 to 60,000 square feet—to pass a community impact review and obtain a special use permit to build. This approach recognizes that stores in a certain size range may or may not have adverse impacts, depending on the particular store and location, and therefore should be considered on a case-by-case basis. For more on community impact review ordinances, see ILSR’s New Rules web site at http://www.newrules.org/retail/impact.html.
Tips for Building Support for a Store Size Cap

Form a broad coalition.
Your message will be especially powerful if decision-makers hear it from a broad range of people. Reach out to business owners, labor unions, religious leaders, environmentalists, community and neighborhood groups, and, of course, your friends and neighbors.

Develop a campaign plan to educate your neighbors and elected officials.
You will find many tools and resources on the Big Box Tool Kit web site at http://www.bigboxtoolkit.com to help you make the case about the impact of big-box stores and the need for a size cap. See especially the campaign guidance under Section 1 ("Where to Start: How to Stop a Big Box") and the educational materials in Section 3 ("Educate Your Neighbors: Facts on Big-Box Impacts") and Section 4 ("Find Answers: Studies, Experts & Advice")

Use visuals.
This is crucial. Most people have no idea how big 50,000 or 100,000 square feet is, and opponents will take advantage of this by trying to portray your proposal as unreasonable. Distribute the "How Big is Too Big?" flyer included in this kit or blow it up as a poster for public meetings. Or develop your own graphic to illustrate stores sizes, perhaps in relation to a local landmark. Citizens in one community, for example, started with an aerial photo of their downtown and overlaid the outline of 200,000-square-foot supercenter and its parking lot. You should also think about ways that you can convey size in talking about the cap. For example, if you are proposing a size cap of 50,000 square feet, you might tell people you want to bar stores larger than a football field.

Quote from your community’s comprehensive plan.
Read your community’s comprehensive plan and find statements within the plan that support limiting retail sprawl and strengthening downtown and neighborhood businesses. Then quote from the plan as you make the case for the cap, particularly when talking to city officials. (If you need a basic overview of local land use policy and comprehensive plans, please see Section 1 ("Where to Start: How to Stop a Big Box") of the Big Box Tool Kit web site at http://www.bigboxtoolkit.com).
Examples of Communities with Size Caps

Here are some examples of the dozens of communities that have enacted store size cap ordinances. Additional details and the full text of all of these ordinances can be found on ILSR’s New Rules website at www.newrules.org/retail/size.html

Cities and Towns

Andover, MA—65,000 square feet (2007)
Agoura Hills, CA—60,000 square feet (2002)
Ashland, OR—45,000 square feet (1995)
Belfast, ME—75,000 square feet (2001)
Bellingham, WA—90,000 square feet (2007)
Boxborough, MA—25,000 square feet (2000)
Bozeman, MT—75,000 square feet (2003)
Charlevoix, MI—45,000 square feet (2005)
Cottage Grove, WI—60,000 square feet (2006)
Easton, MD—65,000 square feet (2000)
Hailey, ID—36,000 square feet (1995)
Homer, AK—45,000 square feet (2004)
Madison, Wisconsin—100,000 square feet (building footprint) (2005)
Mt. Shasta, California—50,000 square feet (2005)
Neptune Beach, FL—60,000 square feet (2006)
North Elba, NY—40,000 square feet (1998)
Northampton, MA—90,000 square feet (2002)
Rockville, MD—65,000 square feet (2000)
Santa Fe, NM—150,000 square feet (2001)
Skaneateles, NY—45,000 square feet
Taos, NM—80,000 square feet (1999)
Walpole, NH—40,000 square feet (2000)
Warwick, NY—60,000 square feet (2002)
Westford, MA—60,000 square feet (1995)

Counties

Coconino County, Arizona (Flagstaff)—70,000 square feet (2001)
Kauai, Hawaii—75,000 square feet (2007)
Talbot County, MD—65,000 square feet (2003)
Tuolumne County, CA—60,000 square feet (2004)

Neighborhoods

Brookside in Kansas City, MO—10,000 square feet (or 25,000 square feet for grocery stores) (2000)
Coconut Grove in Miami, FL—70,000 square feet (2005)
San Francisco, CA—Several San Francisco neighborhood cap stores at 4,000-6,000 square feet
Front and back of a flyer developed by Our Town Damariscotta in their successful campaign for a 35,000-square-foot size cap in Damariscotta, Newcastle, and several other towns in Maine.

**BIG BOX**

Will Raise Your Taxes

Communities Across the Nation Have Learned the Hard Way:

Big Box Stores Cost Taxpayers Money.

Here are 6 reasons why:

1. Police, Fire, and Road Maintenance costs increase due to Big Box development - more than any other kind of retail. – who pays?
2. Police costs skyrocket by as much as 30% when Big Boxes stores are in small towns. – who pays?
3. Big Box retail will reduce the values of neighboring residential properties thereby creating tax increases on your property. – Again, who pays?
4. Local businesses are forced to close or scale back, which decreases their assessed value and their tax contribution. – who pays?
5. Towns around the country report a NET LOSS in revenue when Big Boxes come to town. – who pays?
6. Big Box retail pays less in taxes per square foot than smaller retailers. – who pays?

Not them -- YOU do!

Based on independent research studies available at www.newrules.org.
Paid for by the local people who support Our Town.
www.ourtowndamariscotta.com

Vote YES on the Size Cap
March 21 -- Damariscotta
March 27 -- Newcastle

How big is too big?

The proposed Wal-Mart site including parking is 25 acres, bigger than Damariscotta's entire downtown district.
Front and back of a flyer developed by Our Town Damariscotta in their successful campaign for a 35,000-square-foot size cap in Damariscotta, Newcastle, and several other towns in Maine.
TIGARD LEAN CODE DRAFT

A portion of a draft code for Tigard, Oregon. (Courtesy Matthew Lambert.)
18.620.020 DEVELOPMENT THRESHOLDS

Sections:

A Development Thresholds

1. Development thresholds provide for regulations based upon the size and scope of development according to TABLE 18.620.02 and the following:
   a. Development thresholds are determined by site size and development scope.
      i. Site size determines the four primary development threshold categories.
      ii. Development scope determines the following three subcategories:
          (01) Subcategory A: change of use, building modifications, and modifications to the site resulting in no addition to building floor area.
          (02) Subcategory B: change of use, building modifications, and modifications to the site resulting in a limited addition of building floor area as defined in TABLE 18.620.02.
          (03) Subcategory C: all others not within Subcategory A or B.

B Nonconforming Development

1. Chapter 18.760.040 Criteria for Nonconforming Situations Section C Nonconforming development is extended by the following:
   a. Criteria for determining that a nonconformity is decreased through enlargement:
      i. Where an existing structure exceeds the maximum setback from a pedestrian street, an enlargement that reduces the setback is deemed to decrease the nonconformity.
         (01) The depth of the enlargement must exceed its width except where the enlargement meets maximum setback requirements.
      ii. Where an existing structure does not satisfy the minimum building frontage along a pedestrian street, an enlargement that occupies additional frontage is deemed to decrease the nonconformity.
         (01) The width of frontage occupied by the enlargement must exceed the depth of the enlargement except where the enlargement causes the site to meet minimum building frontage.
   b. Criteria for determining that a nonconformity is decreased through alteration:
      i. Where an existing structure exceeds the maximum setback or does not satisfy the minimum building frontage along a pedestrian street, alterations which activate the pedestrian street frontage as follows are deemed to decrease the nonconformity:
         (01) Adding outdoor seating, covered or uncovered.
         (02) Adding outdoor merchandise displays.
         (03) Adding provisions for mobile vendors, such as food trucks.
         (04) Adding streetscreens.
C Special Adjustments

The following modify the provisions of Section 18.370.020.C in accordance with TABLE 18.620.02.

1. Dedication of Right-of-Way
   a. Required:
      i. Where MAP 18.620.C requires the dedication of right-of-way, the applicant is required to provide the dedication.
      ii. Development thresholds 1A, 1B, 1C, and 2A:
          (01) The City may provide assistance in the dedication process.

2. Street Frontage Improvements
   a. General:
      i. Sites within subcategories A and B are deemed to fulfill the requirements of Section 18.810.030.A.5.c, qualifying for a future improvements guarantee in lieu of completing full street improvements.
   b. Trees:
      i. The applicant is required to plant trees along frontages according to the spacing requirements of TABLE 18.620.18.
      ii. The applicant may choose to provide a future improvements guarantee for other improvements required by Section 18.620.100.

3. Build Streets and Trails
   a. Right-of-way Only:
      i. Sites within subcategories A and B are deemed to fulfill the requirements of Section 18.810.030.A.5.c, qualifying for a future improvements guarantee in lieu of completing full street improvements.
      ii. The applicant may choose to provide a future improvements guarantee for improvements required by Section 18.620.100.

4. Stormwater Quality Management
   a. <= Pre-Dev:
      i. Peak stormwater release rate must be less than or equal to the existing conditions on site.
   b. Fee in Lieu:
      i. The applicant may pay a fee in lieu of meeting the peak stormwater release rate requirement, per SCHEDULE TO BE DETERMINED BY CITY OF TIGARD.
   c. All others:
      i. Peak stormwater release rate must be less than existing conditions on site by the percentage specified in TABLE 18.620.02.

5. Stormwater Conveyance
   a. Exempt:
      i. The applicant is exempt from the requirements of Section 18.810.100.

6. Sewer Main to Site
   a. Exempt except per County req:
7. Water Main Upsizing
   a. Water main upsizing may be required by the Tualatin Valley Water District which is outside of the City’s authority.

8. Traffic Study
   a. Exempt except with drive-thrus:
      i. A traffic study is not required unless a drive-thru is included.
   b. Limited scope:
      i. Where the Institute of Transportation Engineers Trip Generation Manual, current edition, estimates that site development would result in fewer than 1,000 new trips, a traffic study is not required.
         (01) The applicant must provide a table detailing the estimate, prepared by a transportation engineer licensed in the State of Oregon.

9. Parking along Pedestrian Street Frontages
   a. General:
      i. Vehicles must be able to maneuver on site to prevent backing movements onto arterials or collectors except for sites within development thresholds 1A and 1B.
   b. < 50% of Frontage:
      i. Parking setbacks from pedestrian street frontages is reduced to eight feet.
      ii. Where parking occupies less than 50% pedestrian street frontage length, the applicant is exempt from streetscreen requirements of Section 18.620.070.E.
   c. Street Screen Required:
      i. Parking setbacks from pedestrian street frontages is reduced to eight feet.
      ii. A streetscreen is required in accordance with Section 18.620.070.E.

10. Parking along Access Street Frontages
    a. General:
       i. Vehicles must be able to maneuver on site to prevent backing movements onto arterials or collectors except for sites within development thresholds 1A and 1B.
    b. Exempt:
       i. Parking setbacks from access street frontages is reduced to three feet.
       ii. Applicants are exempt from streetscreen requirements of Section 18.620.070.E along access street frontages.
    c. Street Screen Required:
       i. Parking setbacks from access street frontages is reduced to three feet.
       ii. A streetscreen is required in accordance with Section 18.620.070.E.
# TABLE 18.620.02 Special Adjustments Matrix

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Threshold</th>
<th>Site Size</th>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Right-of-Way Dedication</th>
<th>Street Improvement</th>
<th>Build Streets and Trails</th>
<th>Stormwater Quality Management</th>
<th>Stormwater Conveyance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1A</td>
<td>0 - 1 acres</td>
<td>Adaptive reuse, no additions</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Trees only</td>
<td>Right-of-way Only</td>
<td>&lt;= Pre-Dev (or fee in lieu)</td>
<td>Exempt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1B</td>
<td>0 - 1 acres</td>
<td>&lt;800 sf addition, 2 story max</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Trees only</td>
<td>Right-of-way Only</td>
<td>&lt;= Pre-Dev (or fee in lieu)</td>
<td>Exempt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1C</td>
<td>0 - 1 acres</td>
<td>All Other</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.100</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.100</td>
<td>&lt;= Pre-Dev</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A</td>
<td>1 - 3 acres</td>
<td>Adaptive reuse, no additions</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Trees only</td>
<td>Right-of-way Only</td>
<td>&lt;= Pre-Dev (or fee in lieu)</td>
<td>Exempt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2B</td>
<td>1 - 3 acres</td>
<td>&lt;1,200 sf addition, 2 story max</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Trees only</td>
<td>Right-of-way Only</td>
<td>&lt;= Pre-Dev</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2C</td>
<td>1 - 3 acres</td>
<td>All Other</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.100</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.100</td>
<td>10% Less than Pre-Dev</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3A</td>
<td>3 - 6 acres</td>
<td>Adaptive reuse, no additions</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Trees only</td>
<td>Right-of-way Only</td>
<td>&lt;= Pre-Dev (or fee in lieu)</td>
<td>Exempt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3B</td>
<td>3 - 6 acres</td>
<td>&lt;1,200 sf addition, 2 story max</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Trees only</td>
<td>Right-of-way Only</td>
<td>10% Less than Pre-Dev</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3C</td>
<td>3 - 6 acres</td>
<td>All Other</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.100</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.100</td>
<td>20% Less than Pre-Dev</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4A</td>
<td>&gt; 6 acres</td>
<td>Adaptive reuse, no additions</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Trees only</td>
<td>Right-of-way Only</td>
<td>&lt;= Pre-Dev (or fee in lieu)</td>
<td>Exempt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4B</td>
<td>&gt; 6 acres</td>
<td>&lt;1,200 sf addition, 2 story max</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Trees only</td>
<td>Right-of-way Only</td>
<td>20% Less than Pre-Dev</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4C</td>
<td>&gt; 6 acres</td>
<td>All Other</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.100</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.100</td>
<td>30% Less than Pre-Dev</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Threshold</td>
<td>Sewer Main to Site</td>
<td>Water Main Up sizing</td>
<td>Traffic Study</td>
<td>Parking along Pedestrian Street</td>
<td>Parking along Access Street</td>
<td>Parking along Frontages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1A</td>
<td>N/A except per County requirement</td>
<td>Per TVWD</td>
<td>Exempt except with drive-thrus</td>
<td>&lt; 50% of frontage</td>
<td>Not restricted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1B</td>
<td>N/A except per County requirement</td>
<td>Per TVWD</td>
<td>Exempt except with drive-thrus</td>
<td>&lt; 50% of frontage</td>
<td>Not restricted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1C</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.090</td>
<td>Per TVWD</td>
<td>Exempt except with drive-thrus</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.070</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.070</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A</td>
<td>N/A except per County requirement</td>
<td>Per TVWD</td>
<td>Limited scope</td>
<td>&lt; 50% of frontage</td>
<td>Not restricted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2B</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.090</td>
<td>Per TVWD</td>
<td>Limited scope</td>
<td>&lt; 50% of frontage</td>
<td>Not restricted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2C</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.090</td>
<td>Per TVWD</td>
<td>Limited scope</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.070</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.070</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3A</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.090</td>
<td>Per TVWD</td>
<td>Limited scope</td>
<td>&lt; 50% of frontage</td>
<td>Not restricted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3B</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.090</td>
<td>Per TVWD</td>
<td>Per Section 18.810.030. CC</td>
<td>&lt; 50% of frontage</td>
<td>Street Screen Required</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3C</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.090</td>
<td>Per TVWD</td>
<td>Per Section 18.810.030. CC</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.070</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.070</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4A</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.090</td>
<td>Per TVWD</td>
<td>Limited scope</td>
<td>Street Screen Required</td>
<td>Not restricted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4B</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.090</td>
<td>Per TVWD</td>
<td>Per Section 18.810.030. CC</td>
<td>Street Screen Required</td>
<td>Street Screen Required</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4C</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.090</td>
<td>Per TVWD</td>
<td>Per Section 18.810.030. CC</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.070</td>
<td>Per Section 18.620.070</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1948 SAN FRANCISCO CODE
Delete this text and replace it with your own content.
ZONING MAP BOOK

For City and County of SAN FRANCISCO

CONTAINS

- COMPLETE CITY MAP
- SECTIONAL ZONING MAPS
- DISTRICT BOUNDARY MAP
- SET BACK MAP
- ZONING ORDINANCE
THE FOLLOWING LETTER FROM THE CITY PLANNING COMMISSION IS REPRODUCED FOR YOUR GUIDANCE IN USING THIS BOOK.

CITY AND COUNTY OF SAN FRANCISCO
CITY PLANNING COMMISSION

February 9, 1948

Lithotype Process Co.
303 Polk Street
San Francisco, Calif.

Dear Sir:

In reply to your letter of January 7, 1948 requesting our Zoning Division to check a set of zoning maps which your company proposes to publish in the near future, we find your maps to be in substantial agreement with our office copy. However, the following points should be kept in mind whenever the proposed publication is used:

1. The maps are purely diagrammatic and should be used as a general guide only. (The Block Books of the City Planning Department of San Francisco should be consulted for exact boundaries of the different zones.)

2. No nonconforming uses are shown.

3. Many changes of Use District classifications with definite stipulations are not included.

4. Some changes of Use District classifications that occurred after July 1947 are not included.

We believe that your proposed publication will fill a definite need for general information concerning the City Planning Code and Minimum Lot Size Ordinance of San Francisco.

Yours very truly,

[Signature]

[Name]
Director of Planning.

TJK:deh

Copyright 1948

Lithotype Process Company
303 Polk Street
San Francisco 4, California
Telephone Douglas 2-4561
Lithographed in the United States of America
CONTENTS

INDEX ZONING MAP . . . . . . PAGE 6

SECTION MAPS—1 to 8 . . . . . PAGES 7-13

CITY MAP . . . . . . . . . . PAGES 4, 5

SECTION MAPS—9 to 14 . . . . PAGES 16-22

SUBDIVISION MAP . . . . . . PAGES 14, 15

SET BACK MAP . . . . . . . . PAGE 23

CITY PLANNING CODE . . . . PAGES 24, 26

MINIMUM LOT SIZE ORDINANCE . . PAGE 27
MAP DESIGNATIONS
FOR USE OF PROPERTY MAPS

- FIRST RESIDENTIAL DISTRICT
- LIGHT INDUSTRIAL DISTRICT
- SECOND
- HEAVY INDUSTRIAL
- COMMERCIAL
- UNRESTRICTED

INDEX MAP
INDEX TO LOCALITY DESIGNATIONS
IN COMMON USE

A - WESTERN ADDITION
A- 1 Marina
A- 2 Jefferson-Lafayette
A- 3 Hayes Valley
A- 4 Upper Fillmore
A- 5 Fillmore
A- 6 Van Ness-Folk-Larkin

B - NORTH BEACH
B- 1 Telegraph Hill

C - RUSSIAN HILL

D - NOB HILL
D- 1 Chinatown

E - PARK-PRESIDIO (RICHMOND)
E- 1 Seaciff
E- 2 Pleasant View
E- 3 Francisco Heights
E- 4 Presidio Terrace
E- 5 Irving Terrace

F - HAIGHT-AISBURY

G - HAIGHT-FILLMORE

H - CENTRAL BUSINESS DISTRICT

I - SOUTH OF MARKET
J - POTRERO
J- 1 Southern Heights

K - INNER MISSION
K- 1 24th St. District
K- 2 Market-Guerrero
K- 3 Noe Valley
K- 4 29th-Castro

L - EUREKA VALLEY
L- 1 East-West of Castro

M - TWIN PEAKS AREA

N - SUNSET
N- 1 Golden Gate Heights
N- 2 Sunset Heights
N- 3 Irving Street
Merchants Association

O - PARKSIDE
O- 1 Pinelake Park
O- 2 Merced Manor
O- 3 Lakeside
O- 4 Park-Merced
O- 5 Ingleisde Terrace
O- 6 Mt. Davidson Park
O- 7 Balboa Terrace
O- 8 St. Francis Wood
O- 9 West Portal
O- 10 Pacific Terrace
O- 11 Forest Hill
O- 12 Forest Hill Extension
O- 13 Merritt Terrace
O- 14 Claremont Court
O- 15 Miraloma Park
O- 16 Sherwood Forest
O- 17 Westwood Highlands
O- 18 Monterey Heights
O- 19 Westwood Park

P - WEST OF TWIN PEAKS
P- 1 Pinelake Park
P- 2 Merced Manor
P- 3 Lakeside
P- 4 Park-Merced
P- 5 Ingleisde Terrace
P- 6 Mt. Davidson Park
P- 7 Balboa Terrace
P- 8 St. Francis Wood
P- 9 West Portal
P-10 Pacific Terrace
P-11 Forest Hill
P-12 Forest Hill Extension
P-13 Merritt Terrace
P-14 Claremont Court
P-15 Miraloma Park
P-16 Sherwood Forest
P-17 Westwood Highlands
P-18 Monterey Heights
P-19 Westwood Park

Q - INGLEISDE HEIGHTS

R - OCEANVIEW

S - OUTER MISSION
S- 1 Sunnyvale
S- 2 Colonial Park
S- 3 Mission Terrace
S- 4 Cayuga
S- 5 Excelsior
S- 6 West-end Addition
S- 7 Crocker-Amazon

T - GLEN PARK

U - FAIRMOUNT

V - BERNAL HEIGHTS
V- 1 Peralta Heights
V- 2 Crescent District
V- 3 Holly Park
V- 4 St. Mary's Park

W - BAYVIEW
W- 1 Portola Heights

X - SAN BRUNO
X- 1 University Mound

Y - VISITACION VALLEY
Y- 1 Sunnyvale
Y- 2 Bayside Hills
This area is under study for possible changes. Check with the City Planning Commission for additional information.
SET-BACK MAP

Indicates set-back restrictions. Consult City Planning Commission for detailed information.
ARTICLE 1
GENERAL ZONING REGULATIONS

SEC. 1. Definitions.
(a) Accessory, (b) Adjacent, (c) Apartment, (d) Building, (e) Business or commerce, (f) District, (g) Dwelling, (h) Hotel, (i) Industry, (j) Lot, (k) Office, (l) Story, (m) Street line, (n) Street, (o) Street right-of-way, (p) Subdivision, (q) Use district, (r) Use district boundary, (s) Use statistic, (t) Yards.

(b) Building. "Building" means a structure, other than a fence, which is designed or intended to be used for any of the following purposes: (a) tenements; (b) schools; (c) churches; (d) community clubs; (e) Nurseries, farms, truck gardens and greenhouses; (f) The usual accessories located on the same lot with these various buildings.

SEC. 2. Use Districts.
There shall be five different districts comprising the City of San Francisco, (1) First Residential District, (2) Second Residential District, (3) Commercial District, (4) Light Industrial District, and (5) Heavy Industrial District.

SEC. 3. First Residential District.
Land designated as a part of this district shall be used and occupied by one or more persons or families for the purpose of dwelling, and no building or structure which is intended to be used or occupied for any other purpose other than the purposes specified in Sections 4 and 5 of this Article and those of Article 2 shall be erected or maintained within or upon the lands in the First Residential District.

SEC. 4. Second Residential District.
In a Second Residential District no building or structure shall be erected, maintained, or operated for any purpose other than the purposes specified in Sections 4 and 5 of this Article and those of Article 2.

SEC. 5. Commercial District.
In a Commercial District no building or structure shall be erected, maintained, or operated for any purpose other than the purposes specified in Sections 4 and 5 of this Article and those of Article 2.

In a Light Industrial District no building or structure shall be erected, maintained, or operated for any purpose other than the purposes specified in Sections 4 and 5 of this Article and those of Article 2.

SEC. 7. Heavy Industrial District.
In a Heavy Industrial District no building or structure shall be erected, maintained, or operated for any purpose other than the purposes specified in Sections 4 and 5 of this Article and those of Article 2.

ARTICLE 2
ZONING PROCEDURE

(a) General. The Board of Supervisors, or its designee, may, upon the request of any property owner within any part of the City of San Francisco, authorize the Board of Supervisors to adopt a zoning ordinance for the City of San Francisco.
(b) Notice of Hearing. Notice of any hearing shall be given in accordance with the provisions of Section 1.4 of this Article.
(c) Notice of Determination. Notice of any determination shall be given in accordance with the provisions of Section 1.5 of this Article.

ARTICLE 3
GENERAL PROVISIONS

(a) All streets and alleys within the City of San Francisco shall be maintained in good condition at all times.
(b) All public property and public works shall be maintained in good condition at all times.
(c) All property owners shall be responsible for the maintenance of their property at all times.

ARTICLE 4
Miscellaneous Provisions

(a) No building or structure shall be erected, maintained, or operated for any purpose other than the purposes specified in Sections 4 and 5 of this Article and those of Article 2.
(b) All property owners shall be responsible for the maintenance of their property at all times.
(c) All public property and public works shall be maintained in good condition at all times.

ARTICLE 5
Enacted and corrected as of July, 1947.

PLANNING CODE


SEC. 1. Definitions.
(a) Accessory, (b) Adjacent, (c) Apartment, (d) Building, (e) Business or commerce, (f) District, (g) Dwelling, (h) Hotel, (i) Industry, (j) Lot, (k) Office, (l) Story, (m) Street line, (n) Street, (o) Street right-of-way, (p) Subdivision, (q) Use district, (r) Use district boundary, (s) Use statistic, (t) Yards.

(b) Building. "Building" means a structure, other than a fence, which is designed or intended to be used for any of the following purposes: (a) tenements; (b) schools; (c) churches; (d) community clubs; (e) Nurseries, farms, truck gardens and greenhouses; (f) The usual accessories located on the same lot with these various buildings.

SEC. 2. Use Districts.
There shall be five different districts comprising the City of San Francisco, (1) First Residential District, (2) Second Residential District, (3) Commercial District, (4) Light Industrial District, and (5) Heavy Industrial District.

SEC. 3. First Residential District.
Land designated as a part of this district shall be used and occupied by one or more persons or families for the purpose of dwelling, and no building or structure which is intended to be used or occupied for any other purpose other than the purposes specified in Sections 4 and 5 of this Article and those of Article 2 shall be erected or maintained within or upon the lands in the First Residential District.

SEC. 4. Second Residential District.
In a Second Residential District no building or structure shall be erected or maintained, or operated for any purpose other than the purposes specified in Sections 4 and 5 of this Article and those of Article 2.

SEC. 5. Commercial District.
In a Commercial District no building or structure shall be erected, maintained, or operated for any purpose other than the purposes specified in Sections 4 and 5 of this Article and those of Article 2.

In a Light Industrial District no building or structure shall be erected, maintained, or operated for any purpose other than the purposes specified in Sections 4 and 5 of this Article and those of Article 2.

SEC. 7. Heavy Industrial District.
In a Heavy Industrial District no building or structure shall be erected, maintained, or operated for any purpose other than the purposes specified in Sections 4 and 5 of this Article and those of Article 2.

ARTICLE 2
ZONING PROCEDURE

(a) General. The Board of Supervisors, or its designee, may, upon the request of any property owner within any part of the City of San Francisco, authorize the Board of Supervisors to adopt a zoning ordinance for the City of San Francisco.
(b) Notice of Hearing. Notice of any hearing shall be given in accordance with the provisions of Section 1.4 of this Article.
(c) Notice of Determination. Notice of any determination shall be given in accordance with the provisions of Section 1.5 of this Article.

ARTICLE 3
GENERAL PROVISIONS

(a) All streets and alleys within the City of San Francisco shall be maintained in good condition at all times.
(b) All public property and public works shall be maintained in good condition at all times.
(c) All property owners shall be responsible for the maintenance of their property at all times.

ARTICLE 4
Miscellaneous Provisions

(a) No building or structure shall be erected, maintained, or operated for any purpose other than the purposes specified in Sections 4 and 5 of this Article and those of Article 2.
(b) All property owners shall be responsible for the maintenance of their property at all times.
(c) All public property and public works shall be maintained in good condition at all times.
ARTICLE 2

ZONE PROVINCING

Sec. 20. Proceedings to change zoning classifications and for special variances.

Sec. 20. Applications.

Sec. 20. Fees.

Sec. 20. Posting and publication.

Sec. 20. Notice by mail.

Sec. 21. Use of Property Zone Maps.

ARTICLE 2

BUILDING SETBACK LINES

Sec. 25. Definitions.

Sec. 26. Proceedings to establish or change building set-back lines.

Sec. 27. Hearings.

Sec. 27. Stipulations.

Sec. 27. Time limit—Reversion.

Sec. 28. Building permits—Proceedings pending.

ARTICLE 3

BUILDING SETBACK LINES

Sec. 30. Definitions.

Sec. 31. Proceedings to establish or change building set-back lines.

Sec. 32. Hearings.

Sec. 32. Stipulations.

Sec. 32. Time limit—Reversion.

Sec. 33. Buildings between set-back lines and streets prohibited.

Sec. 34. Garages.

Sec. 35. Penalty.

Sec. 36. Building permits—Proceedings pending.
ARTICLE 4
GENERAL PROVISIONS
Sec. 99. Regulating Subdivision of Land and Use of Lots for Dwelling Purposes (See page 27).
Sec. 100. Building permits.
Sec. 101. Interpretation—Purpose.
Sec. 102. Enforcement.

Sec. 103. Interpretation—Purpose. In interpreting and applying the provisions of Sections 1 to 14 inclusive, of Article 1 of this Chapter and Sections 100 to 104 of this Article they shall be held to be the minimum requirements adopted for the protection of the public health, safety and welfare.

It is not intended by Sections 1 to 14, inclusive, of Article 1 of this Chapter and Sections 100 to 104 of this Article to regulate, control, limit or in any way prevent or interfere with any existing provision of law or ordinance or any rules, regulations or orders promulgated or to be promulgated which shall be adopted or issued pursuant to the law relating to the use of buildings or premises; nor is it intended by Sections 1 to 14, inclusive, of Article 1 of this Chapter and Sections 100 to 104 of this Article to interfere with or abrogate or annul any easement, covenant or other agreement between parties; provided, however, that where Section 1 to 14, inclusive, of Article 1 of this Chapter and Sections 100 to 104 of this Article imposes a greater restriction upon the use of buildings or premises than is imposed or required by such existing provisions of law or ordinance or by such rules, regulations or orders, the provisions of Sections 1 to 14, inclusive, of Article 1 of this Chapter and Section 100 of this Article shall control.

SEC. 102. Enforcement. It shall be the duty of the Department of Public Works, Department of Health, Police Department, Fire Department and Department of Electricity to enforce the provisions of Sections 1 to 14, inclusive, of Article 1 of this Chapter and Section 100 of this Article.

Any person, firm or corporation violating any provisions of this ordinance shall be guilty of a misdemeanor and upon conviction thereof shall be punishable by a fine of not more than $500.00 or by imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months in the city and county of San Francisco, or both, in the discretion of the court. Each person, firm, or corporation shall be deemed guilty of a separate offense for each and every day during any portion of which any violation of this ordinance is committed, continued or permitted.
Regulating Subdivision of Land and Use of Lots for Dwelling Purposes

Bill No. 4375, Ordinance No. 4102 (Series of 1989), as follows:

An ordinance amending Article 4, Chapter II, Part II, of the San Francisco Municipal Code, by adding Section 99 thereto, relating to the subdivision of land and the use of lots for dwelling purposes, by amending Section 100 of Article 4, Chapter II, Part II, relating to building permits and by amending Sections 101 and 102 of Article 4, Chapter II, Part II, to include reference to Section 99 as added by this ordinance.

Be it ordained by the People of the City and County of San Francisco, as follows:

Section 1. Article 4, Chapter II, Part II, of the San Francisco Municipal Code is hereby amended by adding a new section to be known as Section 99, reading as follows:

SEC. 99. (a) New Subdivisions—Lot Areas. In all areas hereafter subdivided, where a subdivision map is to be filed for approval, all lot lines shall be shown on said map, and such lots shall conform in dimension to the neighborhood pattern as determined by the City Planning Commission. Where a neighborhood pattern does not exist, lots shall have a width of not less than 33 feet. No subdivision shall be approved which does not comply with the provisions of this section.

(b) New Subdivisions—Lot Coverage. No dwelling shall be constructed upon a lot in a new subdivision for which a map has been approved in accordance with the provisions of this section, which will cover more than 65 per cent of the lot area, or which provides for an open rear yard less than 25 feet in depth. The provision of open spaces between dwellings on adjacent lots is optional, but where such side yards are provided, the distance between dwellings shall be not less than 6 feet.

(c) Redivision. Except as provided in Subdivisions (d) and (e) hereof, in any area previously subdivided no lot or land unit shall be established and indicated upon a map or maps filed for record which has an area less than 2500 square feet, or a width less than 25 feet, and no building shall be constructed upon any such lot which will cover more than 65 per cent of the lot area, or which provides for an open rear yard less than 15 feet in depth.

(d) Corner Lots—First Residential Districts. In any area previously subdivided in a First Residential District, the area lying within 100 feet of the corner of a block, measured along each street from such corner, can be re-subdivided into lots having a minimum width of 25 feet and a minimum depth of 70 feet; provided, however, that where the City Planning Commission finds that existing conditions do not permit the establishment of the minimum depth of 70 feet such areas can be re-subdivided into lots having a street frontage of not less than 25 feet and a depth of not less than 57.5 feet. No building shall be constructed upon any such lot which will cover more than 75 per cent of the lot area, or which provides for an open rear yard less than 15 feet in depth.

(e) Corner Lots—Second Residential Districts. In any area previously subdivided in a Second Residential District the area lying within 100 feet of the corner of a block, measured along each street from such corner, may be re-subdivided into lots having a minimum width of 25 feet and a minimum depth of 57.5 feet. No building shall be constructed upon any such lot which provides an open rear yard of a depth less than 57.5 feet to be constructed upon any such lot which provides for an open rear yard of a depth less than 57.5 feet.

(f) Lots Now of Record Excepted. Wherever a map showing subdivided lots is of record in the office of the Recorder or the office of the Assessor at the time of the enactment of this section, any lot as shown having dimensions less than those required by this section may, nevertheless, be used as the site for a dwelling, provided that the requirements as to coverage and rear yards of Subdivision (d) shall apply thereto.

(g) Variance. The City Planning Commission may, upon application, grant variances from any of the provisions of this section, after public notice and hearing.

If it is of the opinion that special circumstances exist in the particular case, and that unnecessary hardship would result from the strict interpretation and enforcement of such provision. The procedure governing such applications, and the granting or denial of such variances, shall be the same as that prescribed by ordinance for zoning changes.

Section 2. Section 100 of Article 4, Chapter II, Part II, of the San Francisco Municipal Code, is hereby amended to read as follows:

SEC. 100. Building Permits. Building permits for the erection or alteration of any building or structure, shall be issued by the Central Permit Bureau only after approval by the Bureau of Building Inspection, the Division of Fire Prevention and Investigation and the City Planning Commission and shall not be issued contrary to the provisions of Sections 1 to 14, inclusive, of Article 1 or Section 99 of Article 4 of this Chapter.

Each application for a building permit hereafter filed with the Central Permit Bureau shall be accompanied by a statement as to the use of the building to be constructed or altered on blanks to be furnished by the Central Permit Bureau. On each application there shall be shown an accurate block plan of the location of the building on the lot drawn to a scale of sixteen (16) feet to one (1) inch.

Section 3. Sections 101 and 102 of Article 4, Chapter II, Part II, of the San Francisco Municipal Code, are hereby amended to read as follows:

SEC. 101. Interpretation—Purpose. In interpreting and applying the provisions of Sections 1 to 14, inclusive, of Article 1 of this Chapter and Sections 99 and 100 of this Article, they shall be held to be the minimum requirements adopted for the promotion of the public health, safety, comfort, convenience and general welfare. It is not intended by Sections 1 to 14, inclusive, of Article 1 of this Chapter and Sections 99 and 100 of this Article to regulate or control any other lawful use of land and buildings or any lawful trade or business, or to affect any contractual or other agreements, or to interfere with any existing provision of law or ordinance or any rules, regulations or permits previously adopted or issued or which shall be adopted or issued pursuant to the law relating to the use of buildings or premises nor is it intended by Sections 1 to 14, inclusive, of Article 1, of this Chapter and Sections 99 and 100 of this Article to interfere with or abrogate or annul any easement, covenant or other agreements between parties; provided, however, that where Sections 1 to 14, inclusive, of Article 1, of this Chapter and Sections 99 and 100 of this Article impose a greater restriction upon the use of buildings or premises than is imposed or required by such existing provisions of law or ordinance or by such rules, regulations or permits or by such easements, covenants or agreements, the provisions of Sections 1 to 14, inclusive, of Article 1, of this Chapter and Sections 99 and 100 of this Article shall control.

SEC. 102. Enforcement. It shall be the duty of the Department of Public Works, Department of Public Health, Police Department, Fire Department and Department of Electricity to enforce the provisions of Sections 1 to 14, inclusive, of Article 1, of this Chapter and Sections 99 and 100 of this Article.

Read Second Time and Finally Passed—Board of Supervisors, San Francisco, November 25, 1946.

I hereby certify that the foregoing ordinance was finally passed by the Board of Supervisors of the City and County of San Francisco.

John R. McGRATH, Clerk.

Approved San Francisco, November 26, 1946.

R. D. LAFHAM, Mayor.
Pink Code Draft

(Courtesy Andrés Duany.)
"Pink Code" DRAFT 1

(Note: This format is a "dashboard interface" for the applicant. The notes in parentheses are for the calibrators. The unavoidable legalisms, like wires and ducts, will be woven throughout this text in red ink-- on a file till necessary fi).

APPLICABILITY
-Pink Zone is an overlay category designated on the Ignite High Point Regulating Plan V 1.0.
-These provisions and procedures, when in conflict, shall take precedence over all others. Those not addressed by this this code continue to be applicable.
-This code deploys Six Transect Zone that replace the existing zoning categories.

INTENT
-Determinations made at the four Enabling Levels shall be guided by this Intent Section.
-This Ignite High Point Interim Zoning Ordinance (the "Pink Code") is intended to lighten the legalistic complexity and the procedural burden (the "red tape") that impedes:
A. The construction of new building economically.
B. The inexpensive recycling of existing building.
B. Expeditious and time-certain permitting.
C. Responsible self-building.
D. Business incubation.
F. The construction of very affordable housing.
G. Innovative design and technical experimentation.
-An additional Intent of this code is to support the character of the underlying base Zones as describe
T6 URBAN CORE ZONE (description to be inserted)
T5 URBAN CENTER ZONE
T4 GENERAL URBAN ZONE
T3 SUB-URBAN ZONE
T2 RURAL ZONE
T1 NATURAL ZONE
(Note: this is an operational list to guide decisions the four Levels of enabling. It spares the applicant the usual aspirational sentiments about social equity, ecological responsibility etc. which appear in the base)

PROCEDURES
-An Enabling process shall be available at five levels. The applicant may choose to engage directly at any level of Enabling.
.LEVEL ONE: For projects that follow this and all applicable codes may certified by a licensed professional architect or engineer. The CRC shall be notified at commencement of construction and at completion. The certified professional shall inspect, and the CRC may inspect the site for compliance.
The prerequisite for application is a letter or non-objection from the majority of the immediately adjacent property owners.

LEVEL TWO: for projects that warrant a deviation that nevertheless complies with the Intent of this Code and/or applicable codes. A warrant may be granted directly by CRC. A negative determination must be returned within 6 working days.

LEVEL THREE: a direct determination by the City Manager at the request of the project applicant.

LEVEL FOUR: approval by vote of the City Council in public hearing.

A negative determination may be appealed to the next higher level. A negative determination at Level four reverts the application to Level Two.

The Consolidated Review Committee (the CRC) shall consist of representatives of every relevant department as appointed by the City Manager. The CRC shall be chaired by a delegate of the City Manager. The members shall be authorized to make discretionary decisions in support of the Intent of this code. In the event of an impasse the decision shall be made in consultation at Level Three.

RESIDENTIAL INTENSITY

- There shall be no minimum size for room or dwelling required.
- Residential Density shall be calculated on the basis of the street frontage of the lot or the block. (Note: This incentivizes smaller blocks as an example, four 200X200 ft blocks have almost double the frontage of the standard 200X800 ft block).
- Alleys providing rear access to parking shall be considered street frontage. (Note: to strongly incentivize alleys)

T6 The average frontage per dwelling shall be 12 ft
T5 The average frontage per dwelling shall be 24 ft and not less than 18 ft.
T4 The average frontage per dwelling shall be 36 ft and not less than 24 ft.
T3 The average frontage per dwelling shall be 54 ft and not less than 36 ft.
T2 The average frontage per dwelling shall be 90 ft and not less than 54 ft.
T1 The average frontage per dwelling shall be determined by the Council.

(Note that the system is flexible and parametric. Since the market privileges freestanding dwellings there is no need to provide side setbacks in order to assure a predominance of the house type in T3 and T4. Because of the smaller lots, T5 building types will tend to be rowhouses, sideyard houses or double houses. T6 will tend to be apartments.)

COMMERCIAL INTENSITY

- Commercial Density. Based on the calculated allocation of residential density, with a conversion factor of 1000sf of commercial space per dwelling allocated. (Note that this discourages commercial use in the less dense T-zones. So it is soft mixed use control)
- All other uses shall be as requested by the applicant and determined by negotiation at Level TWO and/or above. (Note that this goes directly to where the decision is made anyway--without red tape)

FRONTAGE SETBACKS

In the event of an infill lot the frontage may match one or the other of the adjacent buildings, or an average of the two. Or at the discretion of the CRC, the following shall apply.
T6 At least 80% of the facade of a building shall be set between 3 and 12 ft from a frontage line.
T5 At least 80% of the facade of a building shall be set between 3 and 12 ft from a frontage line.
T4 At least 60% of the facade of a building shall be set between 3 and 24 ft from a frontage line.
T3 At least 60% of the facade of a building shall be set between 24 and 54 ft from a frontage line.
T2 The facade shall be set in consultation with the Council
- The remainder of the facades may be set back further.
- Those portions of the setback which are not paved must be landscaped.
(Note, facades are on frontages by definition and levations are on the other, internal or rear, property lines. Those setbacks are otherwise assured by window access to light, by fire code, and by the designer so it is not our job.

BUILDING HEIGHT
- Building height shall be measured to the top of the tallest parapet or the average eave height as follows:
  T6 The maximum building height shall be 4 stories excluding basement and habitable attic.
  T5 The maximum building height shall be 3 stories
  T4 The maximum building height shall be 3 stories,
  T3 The maximum building height shall be 2 stories,
  T2 The maximum building height shall be as determined by the CRC
  T2 The maximum building height shall be as determined by the CRC

PARKING PROVISION
- Parking associated with a lot or a building thereupon is not required on or off the lot.
- Parking on a lot, if provided, shall not exceed 2 per principal dwelling, plus 1 per ancillary dwelling and 4 per 1000 sf of commercial space.
- At the discretion of the CDC, for the demonstrated purposes of a. convenience, b. mortgage qualification and/or c. property appraisal, the municipality may lease those parking places a. On the street directly along the frontage of a lot and/or b. Municipal Parking within the pedestrian shed of the lot.
- Parking, when provided on the lot shall be
  a. if open, setback to behind the facade of the building
  b. if roofed, setback twenty feet behind the facade of the building
  c. an enclosed garage may be aligned with, or in front of, the facade if it designed and equipped to become a commercial space.
TENT ENCAMPMENTS AND TINY HOUSE VILLAGES

*Tent Encampments and Tiny House Villages as a Crisis Response to Homelessness*,
from the *Low Income Housing Institute*. 
Tent Encampments and Tiny House Villages as a Crisis Response to Homelessness

www.LIHI.org
LIHI owns and manages over 50 properties in 6 counties in the Puget Sound region, serving a wide variety of individual and family populations: homeless, low-income, disabled, senior, young adult, veteran, refugee. Additionally, LIHI runs three Urban Rest Stops that offer homeless persons free shower, laundry, and other hygiene services. LIHI also partners in operation of 3 homeless encampments.

**Cheryl Chow Court**
50 apartments for seniors

**August Wilson Place**
57 workforce apartments
Housing First Models

Ernestine Anderson Place
60 apartments for homeless and low-income seniors

Gossett Place
63 apartments for homeless vets, young adults and the mentally ill
University Commons
49 apartments for homeless young adults with a food bank on the ground floor.

Olympia Commons
43 apartments for homeless young adults, vets, disabled, and others
LARGEST SHELTER & ENCAMPMENT NETWORK IN THE PACIFIC NORTHWEST
Nickelsville
Why Tent Cities are Needed

Severe lack of shelters
Severe lack of affordable housing
Survival: WITHOUT SHELTER PEOPLE DIE!

10,000 Homeless in King County
4,505 Unsheltered
67 Homeless Deaths in 2015

Tent Cities/Encampments
INTERIM SURVIVAL MECHANISMS
From its inception King County’s 10 year plan to End Homelessness recognized that Interim Survival Mechanisms are a legitimate response to help meet the immediate safety and survival needs of individuals who have no access to safe shelter.
Tent Encampments and Tiny House Villages in Seattle
Background

• History of Tent Encampments in Seattle
Background

• **How Tent Encampment Works:**
  • Democratic & Self-managed
  • Weekly meetings – real democracy
  • Strict Code of Conduct (Sobriety, Non-violence)
  • NO Sex Offenders
  • Dumpster and Port-a-Potties provided
  • Security workers at all times/Litter patrols daily
  • Bus tickets provided
  • LIHI Case Management (TC5 Interbay)

• **Advantages of Encampments**
  o Community
  o Cooperation
  o Safety/Security
  o Empowerment
  o Point of engagement
  o Cost-effective
  o Couples/Families stay together (Pets are allowed)
The Low Income Housing Institute (LIHI) began hosting and providing services to Nickelsville in September of 2013 when the encampment was forced to move off of the City of Seattle land on W. Marginal Way that they had occupied for several years.

For the first year the encampment was located at our property on S. Jackson St. in the Central District.

Religious Sponsor:
Tabernacle Missionary Baptist Church

Nickelsville then moved to S. Dearborn St. in September, 2014

Religious Sponsor:
Lutheran Church of the Good Shepherd
Oct 2014
Seattle Mayor Convenes Emergency Task Force on Unsheltered Homelessness

- Tent encampment legislation
- Mayor announces 100 bed shelter
- Use of City-owned and other public spaces for sheltering homeless people
- Funds for homeless youth shelter beds
- Tiny Houses
- Regional response: City funds used for shelter in King County outside of Seattle

Seattle Mayor Ed Murray
Encampment Legislation

• **Federal:**
  RLUIPA - Religious Land Use and Institutionalized Persons Act
  The land use-related provisions of the Religious Land Use and Institutionalized Persons Act of 2000 (RLUIPA) prohibit state and local governments from regulating land use in a manner that: discriminates against or among religious institutions, 42 U.S.C. ' 2000cc(b); or imposes a substantial burden on religious exercise, unless the regulation is the least restrictive means of serving a compelling government interest.

• **WA State:**
  ESHB 1956 - Authorizing religious organizations to host temporary encampments for homeless persons on property owned or controlled by a religious organization.

• **City of Seattle:**
  o Existing ordinance allowing churches to host encampments
  o New ordinance passed on March 30, 2015 allowing 3 encampments of up to 100 residents each on public or private land (without church host).
    ➢ City issued RFQ to identify tent city sponsors
    ➢ LIHI in Partnership with Nickelsville and SHARE are chosen to run the 3 encampments.
  o Mayor Murray declares state of emergency due to homelessness on Nov 2 and city councils allocates $7.3 million in 2016 budget to address problem.
Simple Small Sturdy Sleeping Structures

To serve families, who would often show up in the middle of the night, we partnered with Home Depot to build small huts.
Tiny Houses

As we got more involved with, committed to, and experienced with encampments, we realized that houses are much better than tents and that we could do much better than shacks.

We began to reach out to schools and training programs and soon were partnering with them to build inexpensive, but quality, durable Tiny Houses, complete with electricity and heat.
## Materials List for one Tiny House

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REF #</th>
<th>SKU</th>
<th>QTY</th>
<th>UM</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
<th>PL</th>
<th>TAX</th>
<th>PRICE EACH</th>
<th>EXTENSION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R01</td>
<td>0000-387-133</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>4X4-12FT PT CON SELECT FIR</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$17.78</td>
<td>$35.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R02</td>
<td>0000-314-210</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>12INX12IN PIER BLOCK</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$4.84</td>
<td>$14.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R03</td>
<td>0000-621-044</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>4X4 ADJUSTABLE POST BASE</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$6.62</td>
<td>$19.86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R04</td>
<td>0000-186-714</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>2X6-12FT #2/BTR KD HEM-FIR</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$5.15</td>
<td>$10.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R05</td>
<td>0000-186-695</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>2X6-8FT #2/BTR KD HEM-FIR</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$3.43</td>
<td>$34.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R06</td>
<td>0000-915-394</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>23/32&quot; 4X8&quot; T&amp;G PLYWOOD</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$27.15</td>
<td>$81.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R07</td>
<td>0000-743-895</td>
<td>6.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>PL375 HEAVY DUTY ADH 100Z VOC</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$2.28</td>
<td>$13.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R08</td>
<td>0000-102-924</td>
<td>20.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>H2.5AZ 18GA ZMAX HURRICANE TIE</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$0.55</td>
<td>$11.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R09</td>
<td>0000-132-272</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>BX</td>
<td>1-1/4&quot; HOT GALV JOIST HGR 1 LB</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$4.54</td>
<td>$4.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R10</td>
<td>0000-335-373</td>
<td>14.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>2X4-14FT PREMIUM KD HEM FIR</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$4.03</td>
<td>$56.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R11</td>
<td>0000-186-602</td>
<td>15.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>2X4-12FT PREMIUM KD HEM FIR</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$3.45</td>
<td>$51.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R12</td>
<td>0000-161-640</td>
<td>17.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>2X4-12FT PREMIUM KD WHITEWOOD STUD</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$2.05</td>
<td>$34.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R13</td>
<td>0000-509-095</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>3/8&quot; 4X8&quot; SMART SIDE SIDING</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$27.70</td>
<td>$277.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R14</td>
<td>0000-694-876</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>8&quot;X12 TEXTURED STRAND LAP SONG</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$8.25</td>
<td>$16.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R15</td>
<td>0000-915-378</td>
<td>6.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>15/32&quot; 4X8&quot; PLYWOOD</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$15.82</td>
<td>$94.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R16</td>
<td>0000-161-897</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>3/4X4-8FT CEDAR BOARD</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$2.96</td>
<td>$29.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R17</td>
<td>0000-727-626</td>
<td>3.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>3/4X6-12FT CEDAR BOARD</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$11.54</td>
<td>$34.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R18</td>
<td>0000-322-946</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>3/8IN GALVANIZED Z-BAR</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$2.83</td>
<td>$5.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R19</td>
<td>0000-140-770</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>KILZ 2 PRIMER 20941 128OZ</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$16.13</td>
<td>$16.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R20</td>
<td>0000-256-830</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>RL</td>
<td>#15 ROOFING FELT 4-SQ</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$19.24</td>
<td>$19.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R21</td>
<td>0000-894-803</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>1-1/2IN X 1-1/2 GALV ROOF EDGE</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$2.52</td>
<td>$5.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R22</td>
<td>1000-001-507</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>RL</td>
<td>EVERBILT 9X150&quot; 76 GRMS HOUSE WRAP</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$82.65</td>
<td>$82.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R23</td>
<td>1001-188-139</td>
<td>8.00</td>
<td>BD</td>
<td>SUPREME METRIC ESTATE GRAY 25 YR</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$23.11</td>
<td>$184.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R24</td>
<td>0000-944-319</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>BX</td>
<td>8D 2 3/8 IN SINKER NAIL 5 LB BX</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$5.38</td>
<td>$18.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R25</td>
<td>0000-944-327</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>BX</td>
<td>16D 3 1/4 5LB COATED SINKER</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$9.38</td>
<td>$18.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R26</td>
<td>0000-193-534</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>BX</td>
<td>3/4&quot; ELECTRO GALV. ROOFING 5 LB</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$9.95</td>
<td>$9.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R27</td>
<td>0000-172-618</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>ARROW 1/4&quot; 150 GALV STAPLES 1250PK</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$2.70</td>
<td>$2.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R28</td>
<td>0000-650-521</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>WALL VENT DUCTING KIT</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$16.27</td>
<td>$16.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R29</td>
<td>0000-158-602</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>12&quot;X12&quot; FLANGE CENTER - BROWN</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$15.72</td>
<td>$31.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R30</td>
<td>0000-300-774</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>SATIN NICKEL FANCY MUSHROOM COMBO</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$12.67</td>
<td>$12.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R31</td>
<td>0000-254-265</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>NEW WORK 1G 22.5CU</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$0.49</td>
<td>$0.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R32</td>
<td>0000-635-801</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>36X24 2500 SL WHIT LOWE OBS 1/1 WD</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$90.87</td>
<td>$90.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R33</td>
<td>0000-614-287</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>15A WHIT SNGLPOLE TGGL SWITCH</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$0.65</td>
<td>$1.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R34</td>
<td>0000-212-261</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>1G WHIT NLY MIDWAY OUTLET WALLPLT</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$0.45</td>
<td>$0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R35</td>
<td>0000-249-408</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>PLASTIC KEYLESS LAMP HOLDER</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$1.22</td>
<td>$1.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R36</td>
<td>0000-268-550</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>14-2 NM W/G 290 FT</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$33.22</td>
<td>$33.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R37</td>
<td>0000-614-637</td>
<td>20.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>1IN 4FT X 8FT POLYSTYRENE</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$10.88</td>
<td>$217.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R38</td>
<td>0000-722-359</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>NEW WORK CEILING 3&quot; 1BCU W/LUG</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$1.70</td>
<td>$1.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R40</td>
<td>0000-915-378</td>
<td>13.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>15/32&quot; 4X8&quot; PLYWOOD</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$15.82</td>
<td>$205.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R42</td>
<td>0000-663-624</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>EA</td>
<td>30&quot;X80&quot; RH BASIC FLUSH IS NBM</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>$113.05</td>
<td>$113.05</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MERCHANDISE TOTAL: $1,905.52**
Tulalip Tribe
Dedication Celebration
of First Two Tiny Homes

June, 2015
Lutheran Church of the Good Shepherd

Built by TERO Tulalip Apprenticeship Program
Ballard Encampment Opens
November, 2015 - 5 Tiny Houses
Ballard Encampment Site Plan
Good Shepherd Encampment Opens
January, 2016 - 15 Tiny Houses
Future Site: Othello Village
Model Agreement w/Church Sponsors

- Grant of License
- Use & Use Restrictions
- Term
- Maximum Users
- Move-In Notice/ Waiver of Relocation Benefits/Agreement not to Sue
- Sex Offender Checks
- Landscape Buffers & Right of Way
- Parking
- Signs
- Services for Occupants
- Community Outreach
- Inspections

- Rules & Regulations/ Code of Conduct
- Security
- Condition of Property
- Insurance Requirements
- Utilities
- Termination of License
- Meals
- Indemnification & Hold Harmless
- Notices
- Nondiscrimination
- No Religious Participation Requirement
Staff & Services

While building higher quality shelters for the encampment helped meet an immediate need, our primary goal was to move families into housing and get them the services they needed to improve their situation.

LIHI Supportive Services Manager Charese Jones was assigned to find housing for families (and singles) and almost immediately we were moving children off the streets in less than one day.

We cannot stress enough the importance of having dedicated, knowledgeable staff to help encampment residents find housing and services.

LIHI Supportive Services Manager Charese Jones (right) and family of 3 who were moved into LIHI housing in Rainier Valley.
Specific Services

• Housing resources
• Basic food
• Help with benefits, daycare, school, job search
• Partnerships with
  ➢ Public Health (Kids Plus)
  ➢ YWCA’s Late Night program
  ➢ Family Housing Connection
  ➢ Mary's Place shelter and other providers
• Transportation: local and long distance
• Reunification with families and relatives
Successes
Hey Mayor, we've got a lot of these tiny houses for the homeless. Where shall we put 'em?
Recent News Coverage

• Kiro Story
• Fox 13 Story

(Requires Internet Connection)
LEAN WASTEWATER TREATMENT TOOLS

Steve Coyle wrote this paper based on his extensive experience in developing countries.
Lean Tools for Developing Countries, Regions and Communities

Background:
The UNICEF Generation 2030 Africa report states that the current one billion-plus population will double within 35 years and the 18 and younger population will increase to almost one billion. During the same time period, over 50% of Africans will be living in cities, taxing the supporting infrastructure and natural resources, from water to energy. Concurrently, the impacts of climate change from increasing greenhouses gas emissions will stress both natural and built environments.

Villages, towns and cities require durable, simple, and low maintenance infrastructure from potable water service, and wastewater treatment and facilities to storm water collection and flood protection, electric power, streets, sidewalks, and pathways. The following set of Lean Tools can be deployed in hamlets, villages, towns, and cities using local labor and materials.

Lean, Scalable, and Incremental Wastewater Treatment Systems

Un-Lean Wastewater Treatment: Central Wastewater Treatment
Sewage collection and treatment generally does not exist in many developing or “third world” settlements or is often limited to private septic tanks, holding tanks or cesspools that often malfunction because of an aging system and lack of proper maintenance. The conventional “top down” approach to wastewater collection and treatment consists of a central sewage treatment plant connected by a network of gravity flow piping and pump stations to individual building and other facility waste drains.

Many buildings in these places remain unplumbed and streets lack sanitary piping and manholes. There are often no lift stations nor reliable power for the pumps necessary to force effluent over hills and long, flat runs that defy gravity flow. A typical city wastewater system can cost millions of dollars, followed by decades to excavate streets, install piping, and plumb buildings where the waste is generated, to treat the waste at the treatment plant.

Unclean Wastewater Treatment: Individual Examples
Instead, besides unreliable private septic tanks, holding tanks, and cesspools, residential buildings dump raw sewerage directly into streams, creating pollution challenges on water resources and increasing the frequency and intensity of water-borne disease.

The Block Scale Micro-Treatment System
Where and when municipal or large community-scale treatment systems are infeasible because of geography, costs, or other constraints, or when such facilities are planned in the distant future, a micro-treatment system should be considered. Block scale wastewater treatment consists of a conventional, site built concrete septic tank and drain or leach field. This small-scale system, located directly adjacent to groups of individual dwellings or apartments, requires an area sufficient for the tank and drainfield, adequate soil conditions, and accommodating topography to permit installation. However, the work can be completed frugally using local labor and materials without excavating equipment.

An installation can accommodate a few homes to many dozens of buildings. The wastewater generated in each residence or small commercial and institutional building is collected and conveyed from each building’s wastewater drain pipes by gravity directly into a common septic tank. The secondary wastewater treatment and the disposal of the resulting liquid or effluent occurs in a common drain or leach field, and/or through a constructed wetlands. The small scale septic system provides an
incremental part of any longer term, central sewage collection and treatment system. The wastewater collection and treatment also provides a critical part of storm water management to assure that the wastewater will be treated to an acceptable level before entering creeks and other waterways.

Excavation with new partial wall section for a new septic tank serving a school with no wastewater treatment for over 600 students, construction courtesy of Engineers Without Borders, Gabon.

The Lean Septic Tank, Leach or Drainage Fields
The concrete septic tank consists of a single or multi-chambered watertight vault which accomplishes approximately 45-50% of the ultimate treatment. The walls, with in and out pipe sleeves, should be reinforced concrete or, where forming is difficult, concrete block filled with a slurry mix and vertical reinforcement, with the inside wall faces parged to minimize absorption of effluent. A reinforced concrete floor and cover with access port completes the construction. Cement, sand, aggregate and reinforcing steel are available throughout Africa and Asia. Concrete blocks are usually hand made.
A block scale septic system under construction. The buried tank at left of the image connects to the field.

From the tank, a “subsurface flow system” creates a below-surface flow through a permeable medium, keeping the water being treated below the round, mostly avoiding the development of odors and other nuisances. The media is typically soil, sand, gravel or crushed rock. The lean leach field or drainage field is typically a shallow, hand dug excavation containing network of perforated pipes laid in underground crushed stone or gravel-filled trenches to help dissipate the effluent in the pipes from the septic tank. Pre-settled effluent from the tank flows to a simple distribution box that routes the effluent into the individual pipes that configured into a pattern that fits the area provided and the topography, for example, long and narrow, short and wide, or terraced on a hillside. Each pipe and trench percolates the liquid into the subsurface soil for absorption and subsequent filtering, as dissipates the liquid through evaporation through the minimal gravel or turf covering. Where soils are less permeable, the field can be raised above grade with the soil, sand, gravel or crushed rock contained around the perimeter.

Below grade leach or drain field diagram above, with perforated pipes in gravel, and a planted leach field after installation, below.
Natural or Constructed Wetland
Free water surface systems are designed to simulate natural wetlands, with the treated effluent flowing over the soil surface at shallow depths. In the wetter climates, natural or artificially constructed wetlands or swamps can be employed as a part of the wastewater treatment flowing from the septic tank. The process reduces contaminants and if appropriately designed and operated, can be used for secondary (in place of the drainage field) and tertiary wastewater (flowing from an drainage field that overflows). Natural and constructed wetlands should be considered with block and neighborhood scale septic tank and/or leach field systems when space permits and they are close to creeks and streams.

![Image of natural wetland](constructed-wetlands-above-connected-to-a-concrete-septic-tank-not-shown-image-courtesy-fondazione-osservatorio-astronomico-di-tradate-messier)

Lean, Plumbed Facilities
Wastewater systems of any size require sufficient quantities of wastewater collected and distributed to the septic tank, typically from toilets, baths, showers, and sinks. Wastewater from tubs, showers and sinks can be separately collected as “grey water”; liquid waste without suspended solids which can be minimally treated, though the expense and complication of installing two separate plumbing drains is outside the “lean” criteria of inexpensive and relatively simple to build.

In reality, many developing urban areas contain few plumbed dwellings. The traditional and lean approach in settings where buildings lack interior plumbing is the use of community or local water spigots, and outhouses that often dump waste directly into shallow drainage channels that overflow during rain storms spreading unsanitary waste. In place of outhouses, inexpensive building shells
containing community toilets, sinks, and showers can be locally constructed and connected to the small scale wastewater system. When buildings are eventually plumbed, their internal wastewater piping is extended to the exterior drainage pipe.

**Construction and Maintenance**

To develop small scale treatment systems, a local government or group of homeowners or businesses must acquire land sufficient to locate the common tank and field, and then organize and finance construction by a contractor or using local labor. The contractor or local tradesmen excavate and build the septic tank, install the sewer lines from tank-to-buildings and tank to distribution box, and excavate the drainage field and install the interconnected pipes. Depending on site conditions and complexities, part or all of the system can be completed by the residents and neighbors with hand tools.

The small scale wastewater treatment process requires adequate management and supervision of siting, construction, and maintenance to build and successfully operate a reliable system. Periodic maintenance of the tank and the field is essential. Management can be accomplished through the local government or an organization of homeowners or businesses that assume responsibility for tank and leach field maintenance; even constructed wetlands must be cleaned every decade or so. Any ongoing cost should be paid by the homeowners or businesses through annual or monthly fees that cover the pumping out of the septic tank or replacing damaged or clogged drain field pipes.

**The Lean Approach**

The lean wastewater system provides an efficient and relatively quick means to provide sanitary waste collection and treatment. Rather than waiting to connect to a central plant that may take many years to build plus the time required to install sewer pipes between the plant and buildings, the microsystem can be installed in the interim prior to the construction of a central plant. When street piping is completed, the individual septic tanks can be connected directly to the sewer mains and function like a pre-installed manhole. A construction process that uses local labor and materials helps build the skills and confidence necessary for achieving greater self-sufficiency while improving community health.

Stephen Coyle
BICYCLING MODULE
A guide and SmartCode module on how to build bicycle infrastructure, by Mike Lydon, with Zachary Adelson and Tony Garcia. (More modules are available.)
The bicycle is the most efficient machine ever created: Converting calories into gas, a bicycle gets the equivalent of three thousand miles per gallon.

Bill Strickland
BICYCLING STANDARDS
1.3 INTENT
3.7 THOROUGHFARE STANDARDS
5.9 PARKING AND DENSITY CALCULATIONS
5.10 PARKING LOCATION STANDARDS

BIKEWAY & FACILITY TYPE SUMMARY  TABLE B1, FOR ARTICLE 6
BIKEWAY TYPES  TABLE B2, FOR ARTICLE 6
BICYCLE PARKING REQUIREMENTS  TABLE B3, FOR ARTICLE 6
BICYCLE PARKING FACILITY TYPES  TABLE B4, FOR ARTICLE 6
BICYCLE PARKING - GENERAL LOCATION STANDARDS  TABLE B5, FOR ARTICLE 6

DEFINITIONS OF TERMS  FOR ARTICLE 7

COMPLETE THOROUGHFARE ASSEMBLIES WITH BIKEWAYS  FOR ARTICLE 6, TABLE 4C
SMARTCODE ANNOTATED

SMARTCODE MODULE - BICYCLING
This Bicycling Module is transect-based. All or part of it may be adopted with a customized SmartCode as regulatory, advisory, or merely permissive ("shall," "should" or "may") or it may be provided as an auxiliary set of guidelines for developers and/or municipalities. Any mandatory regulations must be activated by the sections on the facing page or similar language. Even advisory or permissive standards are more likely to be used if they are activated by text within the code.

The Bicycle Tables may need further calibration with By Right and Warrant bullets, as local regulations, politics, and physical conditions require. While all Bikeways, Bicycle Parking Facilities, and Countermeasures require site-specific analysis and informed judgment for applicability, "By Right" shall mean that the proposed facility is applicable and permitted, while "Warrant" shall mean that further analysis is almost always appropriate. Spaces left blank in a table mean that a facility is generally not compatible with that Transect Zone in terms of habitat character.

The Bicycle Module tables may be appropriate in various places in Article 6, before the SmartCode Summary Table 14. As always, the insertion of new tables will require the renumbering of subsequent tables and a Find/Replace of those numbers throughout the code text. The Bikeway Assemblies should be included with other Thoroughfare Assemblies, found in the Complete Thoroughfares Module (formerly Table 4C).

If any part of this Module is used, the appropriate definitions should be added to Article 7 during calibration.

BICYCLING STANDARDS
ARTICLE 1. GENERAL TO ALL PLANS
1.3 INTENT
These goals may be added to the Intent section of the base SmartCode.

ARTICLE 3. NEW COMMUNITY PLANS
3.7 THOROUGHFARE STANDARDS
If any tables of this Module are to be mandatory or advisory for New Community Plans (the public realm), they should be activated using this or similar language in the code text. The word "shall" may be replaced with "should" if the tables are merely advisory.

Bicycle lanes and other bikeways that widen the right-of-way are not advised for new thoroughfares designed for the urban contexts of T-3, T-4, T-5, and T-6. They are, however, useful for retrofitting existing thoroughfares.

The Existing Thoroughfares Module is helpful for codes that apply only to already urbanized areas, i.e., the G-4 Sector. For such codes, the sections here may be correlated to that Module, albeit with different numbering, and then into the final code.

ARTICLE 5. BUILDING SCALE PLANS
5.9 PARKING & DENSITY CALCULATIONS
5.10 PARKING LOCATION STANDARDS
If any tables of this Module are to be mandatory or advisory for the private realm, they should be activated using this or similar language in the code text.

ARTICLE 1. GENERAL TO ALL PLANS
1.3 INTENT

1.3.1 THE REGION
i. That development should provide contextual Bikeways for both short and long distance movement, as well as bicycle parking facilities for short and long term storage.

1.3.2 THE COMMUNITY
j. That the regional Bikeway network should be well-integrated with the regional and local transit network.

ARTICLE 3. NEW COMMUNITY PLANS
3.7 THOROUGHFARE STANDARDS
3.7.2 VEHICULAR LANES
b. A Bikeway network consisting of shared use Bicycle Trails, shared use Bicycle Paths, Bicycle Routes, and/or Bicycle Lanes shall be provided throughout the community, as defined in Article 7 Definitions of Terms and allocated according to Table B2.

c. All Thoroughfares shall permit bicycling, with the exception of limited-access Highways.

d. All Bikeway and Countermeasure pavement markings and safety and wayfinding signage shall adhere to the same standards as automobile Vehicular Lane markings and signing.

e. Bicycle Trails and Bicycle Paths shall be physically separated from motor vehicle Thoroughfares, except for intersection crossings.

3.7.3 PUBLIC FRONTAGES
a. SPECIFIC TO ZONES T4, T5, T6

iv. Within the Public Frontages, the prescribed types of bicycle parking facilities shall be as shown in Table B4 and Table B5.

ARTICLE 5. BUILDING SCALE PLANS
5.9 PARKING AND DENSITY CALCULATIONS
5.9.3 BICYCLE PARKING REQUIREMENTS GENERAL TO ZONES T2, T3, T4, T5, T6
a. The amount of bicycle parking required per lot shall be regulated by Table B3.

5.10 PARKING LOCATION STANDARDS
5.10.6 BICYCLE PARKING LOCATION STANDARDS SPECIFIC TO ZONES T4, T5, T6
d. Location and type of bicycle parking shall be regulated by Table B4 and Table B5.
**TABLE B1. BIKEWAY & FACILITY TYPE SUMMARY**

This table coordinates 18 types of Bikeways, Bicycle Parking Facilities, and Countermeasures (which mitigate unsafe or unappealing bicycling conditions) for constructing new thoroughfares or retrofitting existing ones. These techniques and measures are by no means comprehensive, as site specific design is encouraged and local calibration essential. Some known bicycling accommodations are intentionally omitted from this module because they compromise other aspects of urbanism. For example, Wide Curb Lanes unnecessarily expand roadway width, thereby encouraging automobile speeding, while not meaningfully attracting bicycle use - probably for that very reason.

Each of these 18 types is applied to one or more of the Transect Zones, yet existing conditions or other limitations may require one or more of them to be deleted, or other types added, in the calibration.

For example, the more intensive Bikeway design techniques, including bicycle lanes, are not necessary within the more urban zones of a greenfield site because urban thoroughfares based on the SmartCode are designed from the beginning to be safe for bicycling. However, in existing urbanism it is often advisable to convert excessive space dedicated to automobiles to space for pedestrians and bicyclists. Therefore some Bikeways are marked as suitable for retrofit only.

**ADDITIONAL RESOURCES:**

- Bicycle Boulevard Planning and Design Guidebook, Initiative for Bicycle and Pedestrian Innovation <www.ibpi.uspdx.edu/guidebook.php>
- Cycle Tracks: Lessons Learned, Alta Planning + Design <www.altaplanning.com/cycle+tracks.aspx>
- BIKESAFE: Bicycle Countermeasure Selection System <www.bicyclinginfo.org/bikesafe/>
- Cities for Cycling, National Association of City Transportation Officials <www.nacto.org/workshops.html>

---

**Note:** All requirements in this Table are subject to calibration for local context.
BIKeway TYPES

This table prescribes placement of the basic types of Bikeways across the Transect. They may or may not be part of a marked Bicycle Route. They include: two types of shared use facilities to be used equitably with pedestrians, including runners, and other non-motorized transport, i.e., Bicycle Trails in more rural Transect Zones, and Bicycle Paths in more urban Transect Zones; various types of Bicycle Lanes (conventional, buffered, physically-separated, etc.), and all Shared Vehicular Lanes, including Bicycle Boulevards. Specific subtypes are shown in the Assemblies and Definitions sections of this Module. Bicycle Lanes are appropriate for the retrofit of existing outside thoroughfares, but if added to new thoroughfares in urban contexts, they may have negative impacts on safety by increasing thoroughfare width and therefore automobile speed and pedestrian crossing distance, and by increasing intersection conflicts.

The language on the right side of this table is regulatory. Some localities may require or prefer that regulatory language appear in the main text.

As with the SmartCode’s thoroughfares for motor vehicles, a Bikeway consists of the Riding Surface (the actual roadbed or pathway on which the bicycle travels) and its roadbed or pathway on which the bicycle travels) and its Public Frontage, if the latter is specific to the Bikeway. The language on the right side of this table is regulatory. Some localities may require or prefer that regulatory language appear in the main text.

A complete Bikeway network includes a rich tapestry of thoroughfares in urban contexts, they may have negative impacts on safety by increasing thoroughfare width and therefore automobile speed and pedestrian crossing distance, and by increasing intersection conflicts.

The language on the right side of this table is regulatory. Some localities may require or prefer that regulatory language appear in the main text.

New Bikeways should provide identifiable and safe connections to an existing regional or community-scale Bikeway network, and should increase access to recreation, employment, education and commercial amenities. They should also connect to the existing transit network.

A complete Bikeway network includes a rich tapestry of types that accommodate the many skill levels and preferences of bicyclists. It is especially important to attract those who want to bicycle, but have been deterred by the perception - and reality - of unsafe conditions.

When selecting a Bikeway type, the existing vehicular thoroughfare width, traffic speed and volume, land use, urban form, etc. must be analyzed. Next, a communal vision for future urban character must be coordinated with thoroughfare type and vehicular movement to determine which Bikeway type is appropriate.

For example, a physically-separated bicycle lane (cycle track) provides a high level of service, but is only appropriate where intersections and curb cuts are limited and/or where turning conflicts can be mitigated with Countermeasures, like the two-stage signalized left-turn that includes bicycle queueing space, or other similar design techniques.

This Module, Shared Use facilities may be either Bicycle Trails or Bicycle Paths. The terms are often used interchangeably, but there are important distinctions in detailing and use that correspond to the Transect. A Bicycle Trail is more appropriate for rural environments where it is used mainly for recreational purposes, as fewer destinations exist along its trajectory. Bicycle Trails may follow more meandering, scenic routes, may use a wider variety of surface treatments (pavement or a more pervious material such as compact gravel or dirt), and typically intersect with fewer thoroughfares than their more urban counterparts. Bicycle Trails generally attract less use than Bicycle Paths, and may be as narrow as a single-track mountain bike trail.

A Bicycle Path is more urban in character, is almost always paved with asphalt or concrete, and is used for utility and commuting as well as recreation. It typically requires more intensive stormwater considerations, lighting, and detailed pavement markings. Other SmartCode Modules are helpful in this regard, including Light Imprint, Sustainable Urbanism, Light Levels, Lighting Design, and Landscape.

Bicycle Paths are appropriate within greenways, parks, and waterfronts in urban Transect Zones, and alongside some urban rail right-of-ways. Thoroughfare crossings may occur, but should be unobtrusive so that movement may remain safe and as continuous as possible.

Although the conversion of underutilized railroad right-of-ways to shared use Bikeways is increasingly common due to the Rails-to-Trails movement, rail infrastructure should be preserved for future use as transit. The preferred “Rails-with-Trails” include their own design standards (See: FHWA Rails-With-Trails: Lessons Learned Report).

In North America, innovative Countermeasure applications, many inspired by success in Europe, are in various stages of experimentation. Shared Vehicular Lane Markings (Sharrow) were recently adopted into the 2009 Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD). Two new Countermeasures include bicycle boxes and colored bicycle lanes. A full understanding of these types should be achieved prior to their calibration and implementation, using the Resource list in this Module.

**BIKEWAY TYPES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bikeway Type</th>
<th>Movement</th>
<th>Recommended for retrofit only</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bicycle Trail (BT)</strong></td>
<td>Conventional</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bicycle Lane (BL)</strong></td>
<td>Conventional</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bicycle Boulevard (BB)</strong></td>
<td>Conventional</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bicycle Path (BP)</strong></td>
<td>Conventional</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shared Vehicular Lanes</strong></td>
<td>Conventional</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table B2: Bikeway Types** - This table describes opportunities for the placement of several Bikeway types across the Transect. A Bicycle Route may be comprised of any or all of these physical types. Bicycle Lanes should be used primarily for retrofit of existing outside Thoroughfares.
BICYCLE PARKING REQUIREMENTS

Bicycle Parking Requirements, as they are associated with Article 5 Building Scale Plans, are applicable to both New Communities and Infill/Retrofit.

This table may be locally calibrated and incorporated into the Building Function & Parking Calculations tables in the base code. The goal is to provide the adequate facility enhancement and the appropriate bicycle parking ratios for the general land uses in each Transect Zone. Bicycle parking should not be calculated as a portion of automobile parking requirements because supply and demand for that mode are not an adequate indicator of actual bicycle parking need. Furthermore, if a municipality adopts automobile parking maximums, or later reduces such parking requirements, the amount of bicycle parking would also be reduced when the opposite may be necessary. Therefore, bicycle parking ratios should be based on Building Function (e.g., a gym needs more bicycle parking than a lumberyard) and quantifiable indicators like unit count, employee count, or building square footage. Table B3 coordinates these elements for common land use types across the Transect

Transect Zones with higher densities and higher degrees of mixed-use generally require higher ratios of bicycle parking.

Civic Zones and some Special Districts, especially schools and universities, vary widely in their placement and function, and with their large populations of active young people, may attract heavy bicycle use. Therefore, the bicycle parking ratios in Table B3 for these areas is very general, and may attract heavy bicycle use. Therefore, the bicycle parking ratios should be reviewed in conjunction with bicycle master plan updates, or at least every five years, to ensure that supply meets demand.

Table B3: Bicycle Parking Requirements - This table prescribes minimum parking ratios within each Transect Zone and assumes a bicycle mode share of 5% or less. Requirements may be met within the building, Private Frontage, Public Frontage, or a combination thereof.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Municipality</th>
<th>RESIDENTIAL</th>
<th>SHORT TERM PARKING</th>
<th>LONG TERM PARKING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Residential</td>
<td>Single-Family</td>
<td>no spaces required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Multi-Family</td>
<td>no spaces required</td>
<td>Min. 2.0 spaces 15 spaces /bedroom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Office</td>
<td>no spaces required</td>
<td>Min. 2.0 spaces 10.0 /add. 10,000 sq. ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Retail</td>
<td>Min. 2.0 spaces 1.0 /add. 10,000 sq. ft.</td>
<td>Min. 2.0 spaces 1.0 /add. 10,000 sq. ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Industrial</td>
<td>TBD</td>
<td>TBD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Civic</td>
<td>TBD</td>
<td>TBD</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These annotations are advisory only. The SmartCode itself appears only on the right side of each spread.
BICYCLE PARKING FACILITY TYPES

Bicycle Parking Facility Types are applicable to both New Communities and Infill Retrofit. They may be associated with either the Public Frontage (see the Bikeway Assemblies of this Module) or private lots.

Bicycle Parking is often excluded or insufficiently addressed in the planning, urban design and development process. As a result, accessible, attractive, and lockable parking facilities for short and long term use are often undersupplied or poorly located. When done well, both private and public bicycle parking initiatives complement the Bikeway network by encouraging more people to bicycle. Decision makers must take bicycle parking into consideration during the initial planning and design process.

To be truly effective, bicycle parking solutions must take the needs, behaviors, and preferences of people who bicycle into account. Meeting these needs will encourage and increase bicycle use and avoid haphazard solutions that reinforce anarchic parking behavior, threaten bicycle security, and ultimately deter use.

Municipalities should create and oversee bicycle parking plans at the scale of the city and in conjunction with county and/or state and owned rights-of-way and the officials who oversee them. However, such plans should be implemented and maintained at the scale of the neighborhood. Certain Special Districts, areas of high activity, and neighborhoods of unique character may provide opportunities to make use of bicycle parking facility designs that reinforce an existing built or natural aesthetic, or help define a new one. So-called “decorative” racks must be readily identifiable and built to the same standards as other bicycle racks so that their design does not compromise the intended function.

Once implemented, bicycle parking must be well maintained, so that all parking areas remain clean, orderly and free of abandoned or vandalized bicycles.

Bicycle parking is to be allocated across the Transect by type, but detailed in quantity and location by land use, demand, and building size. As an example, a civic space, a movie theatre, and a transit station may be in the same Transect Zone, but each requires its own bicycle parking solution. Regardless, bicycle parking must be placed as close as possible to the associated destination, at least as close as any related automobile parking.

Bicycle parking facility types and styles are numerous. Several common types are shown in Table B4.

These annotations are advisory only. The SmartCode itself appears only on the right side of each spread.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bicycle Rack: The most simple, recognizable, and effective form for short term parking is the “inverted U-rack.” A single rack provides two bicycle parking spaces and allows the bicycle’s frame to be secured with at least two points of contact—a pre-requisite for all acceptable bicycle rack types.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bicycle Shelter: Shelters provide all-weather protection, and are intended for longer term use within areas of higher intensity, like transit stops, fitness gyms, civic buildings and civic space, trail heads, and educational institutions. Shelters should be simple to use, well-lit, and highly recognizable. Shelters also provide an opportunity to display a map of the regional and local bicycle network, as well as any other relevant information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES:


**TABLE B4: Bicycle Parking Types.** This table shows five common types of Bicycle Parking facilities. Standards should be calibrated to the needs of each municipality.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bicycle Parking Type</th>
<th>Standards</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bicycle Rack (inverted &quot;U,&quot; post and ring, etc.)</td>
<td>sleek, concealed, and highly visible. Racks shall be capable of securing bicycles with at least two points of contact. Simple, easily identifiable forms shall be used. Racks shall be placed in the Private Frontage, Public Frontage, or within buildings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bicycle Rack (decorative, public art)</td>
<td>decorative racks shall be recognizable as bicycle parking facilities and shall be held to the same performance standards as other bicycle racks. Such racks may be provided for Civic Buildings, Civic Spaces, and other locations of historic, social, or cultural importance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bicycle Shelter</td>
<td>shelters shall be highly recognizable and integrated with transit and/or related land uses requiring medium or long term bicycle parking needs. Each shelter shall include bicycle parking racks capable of securing bicycles with at least two points of contact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bicycle Locker</td>
<td>bicycle lockers shall be placed in a highly visible and well-lit location, but shall not disrupt the function and order of the public realm. They shall be monitored and maintained to discourage vandalism.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bicycle Station</td>
<td>bicycle stations shall be located in highly visible locations, ideally near transit. They should offer a variety of services that may include repair, rental, cafes, lockers, showers, and storage facilities.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* By Right
* By Warrant

© Mike Litten and Zachary Adelson 2013

SMARTCODE MODULE

By Right

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bicycle Parking Facility Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bicycle Rack: The most simple, recognizable, and effective form for short term parking is the “inverted U-rack.” A single rack provides two bicycle parking spaces and allows the bicycle’s frame to be secured with at least two points of contact—a pre-requisite for all acceptable bicycle rack types.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bicycle Shelter: Shelters provide all-weather protection, and are intended for longer term use within areas of higher intensity, like transit stops, fitness gyms, civic buildings and civic space, trail heads, and educational institutions. Shelters should be simple to use, well-lit, and highly recognizable. Shelters also provide an opportunity to display a map of the regional and local bicycle network, as well as any other relevant information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ADDITIONAL RESOURCES:

BICYCLE PARKING

GENERAL LOCATION STANDARDS

The placement and location of bicycle parking and other end-of-trip facilities is crucial in making bicycling more attractive and feasible. Bicyclists want to park as closely and conveniently to their destination as possible. In this regard, they are no different from motorists, as searching for bicycle parking can be equally frustrating as searching for motor vehicle parking. Short term facilities, like bicycle racks and shelters, should be located as close as possible to the destination(s) they serve. This is especially important for public spaces served by retail uses and transit stops. Long term parking, such as bicycle lockers and stations, should also be as convenient as possible. However, the protection from inclement weather and the enhanced level of safety/service that long term facilities afford the user can make up for a less convenient location. Similarly, shower, changing rooms, and locker facilities need not be located inside the destination they serve.

Table B5, which was adapted from the Danish Cycling Federation’s Guide to Bicycle Parking, demonstrates the general relationship between short term and long term parking, as well as the desired distance and level of service required to meet the needs of bicyclists.

Table B5: Bicycle Parking - General Location Standards - This table prescribes the general relationship among the distance from parking facility to destination, the parking duration, and the parking facility type provided.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distance from Bicycle Parking Facility to Destination (Feet)</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>50</th>
<th>75</th>
<th>100</th>
<th>125</th>
<th>150</th>
<th>200</th>
<th>250</th>
<th>300+</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>5 min.</td>
<td>10 min.</td>
<td>15 min.</td>
<td>20 min.</td>
<td>30 min.</td>
<td>45 min.</td>
<td>1 hour</td>
<td>1 hour 30 min.</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
<td>4 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bicycle Station</td>
<td>Rack</td>
<td>Locker</td>
<td>Shelter</td>
<td>Parking Facility</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adapted from the Danish Cyclists Federation.
DEFINITIONS OF TERMS

Any of these Bicycle Module terms used in a calibration of a SmartCode should be incorporated into Article 7 of the base code. Some definitions appear here for terms that are already in the base code (e.g., Bicycle Lane), but the definitions in this Module are more specific. Calibrators should modify any disparities according to local intent.

ARTICLE 7. DEFINITIONS OF TERMS

BICYCLE MODULE

- **Bicycle Boulevard**: a Thoroughfare with shared Vehicular Lanes that introduces traffic calming and wayfinding solutions to give movement priority to bicyclists.
- **Bicycle Box**: a section of pavement designed to give bicyclists using a Bicycle Lane a head start at signalized intersections. A Bicycle Box is often colored and includes a standard white bicycle pavement marking. It improves visibility between motorists turning right and cyclists traveling through the intersection. (Syn: advance stop line)
- **Bicycle Inductor Loop**: a coil of wire embedded in a Thoroughfare surface that detects the presence of a bicycle and prioritizes an intersection signal for it.
- **Bicycle Lane**: a lane reserved for bicycle travel within a vehicular Thoroughfare.
- **Bicycle Locker**: an enclosed and secured locker that provides bicycle parking for long term use.
- **Bicycle Path**: a dual-direction Bikeway that is physically separated from vehicular Thoroughfares, usually shared with pedestrians, runners, and rollerbladers and detailed for the more urban Transect Zones. (Var: shared use path)
- **Bicycle Route**: a route marked with signs to be amenable to bicycling, often comprised of one or more types of Bikeways over its trajectory.
- **Bicycle Shelter**: a roofed shelter that provides multiple bicycle racks for public use.
- **Bicycle Station**: a building that provides self-service, attended indoor valet, or automated bicycle parking services, often accompanied by showers, lockers, bicycle repair and rental facilities.
- **Bicycle Trail**: a dual-direction Bikeway that is physically separated from vehicular Thoroughfares, usually shared with pedestrians, runners, and rollerbladers and detailed for the more rural Transect Zones. (Var: shared use path)
- **Bikeway**: a continuously designated segment of the Right of Way that provides exclusive, preferential, or equal priority for bicycle travel. It includes the Riding Surface and any Curbs, markings, and protective barriers, and any plantings, lighting, and furniture that are specific only to the Bikeway.
- **Buffered Bicycle Lane**: a Bicycle Lane separated from vehicular travel and/or parking lanes by striped pavement markings which function as a buffer. (Syn: enhanced bicycle lane)
- **Contra-Flow Bicycle Lane**: a designated Bicycle Lane marked to allow bicyclists to travel against the flow of traffic.
- **Conventional Bicycle Lane**: a Bicycle Lane for which the only separation from vehicular traffic is pavement striping.
- **Countermeasure**: a design technique or facility intended to mitigate unsafe or unappealing bicycling conditions.
- **Diverter**: a design intervention that limits vehicular traffic from entering all or part of a Thoroughfare but that enables bicycles to pass through.
- **Peg-a-Track**: parallel dashed pavement markings that continue a Bicycle Lane through an intersection. (Var. Peg-a-Trak)
Physically-Separated Bicycle Lane: a uni- or bi-directional Bicycle Lane separated from the motor vehicle travel lanes by Curbs, railings, plantings, parked cars, and/or grade separation. (Var: cycle track, sidepath)

Riding Surface: the portion of a Bikeway used for cycling, the equivalent of the Vehicular Lanes or roadbed for motor traffic

Shared Vehicular Lane Marking: a pavement marking featuring a bicycle symbol and chevron, applied to a Thoroughfare too narrow to accommodate Bicycle Lanes and with vehicular target speeds slow enough to allow cyclists to move safely with motor vehicles. (Syn: Sharrow)

Sharrow: see Shared Vehicular Lane Marking.

Shoulder: a paved portion of a Thoroughfare that exists outside of its Vehicular Lanes.

Shy Zone: a painted buffer between parked cars and a Bicycle Lane.
These annotations are advisory only. The SmartCode itself appears only on the right side of each spread.

Standards for the separations on Physically-Separated Bicycle Lanes are not given because the materials and widths vary depending on context - curbs, planters, bolts, raised pavement or other tools may be used.

Bicycle Boulevards are a new and highly specific street type to be used for retrofitting corridors where primarily residential land uses abut the thoroughfare. The Bicycle Boulevard assembly drawn here shows a partial divider and specific pavement markings to communicate the priority movement of bicyclists. In reality, dividers should be used sparingly, and are just one of many techniques used to articulate a Bicycle Boulevard. Other measures include wayfinding signs, reduced speed limits, medians designed for cyclists, neighborhood traffic circles, and the removal of stop signs along the corridors. Please refer to the Bicycle Boulevard Planning and Design Guidebook for further information on where this bikeway type is most applicable.

TABLE 4C. BIKEWAY ASSEMBLIES

Included here are ten assemblies with detailed Bikeway standards that may be added to the base SmartCode during local calibration, and others may be created as necessary using the same template. They replicate closely the thoroughfare standards of municipal public works manuals and are intended to supplement the Complete Thoroughfares Module (Table 4C). Assemblies in all SmartCode transportation modules have specific measurements because they are meant to refer to an exact place. They should be considered examples and may be modified.

The Bikeways drawn here are to scale and include support information below them. These assemblies combine a vehicular thoroughfare similar to those found in the SmartCode Complete Thoroughfares Module with a Bike-way type selected from this module. In the final calibrated code, the assembly may be extended to include one or more Transit types, if applicable. A complete thoroughfare designed from scratch would require all transportation provisions to be considered together, along with drainage, which also must be correlated to the Transect. (See LightImprint.org, the Natural Drainage Module, and the Landscape Module for techniques.)

The assemblies in this module that include bicycle lanes in the higher T-zones are intended only for retrofit of existing thoroughfares, as noted on the assembly table. Properly designed thoroughfares in New Urbanist communities have low target speeds so bicycle lanes are generally not necessary. In fact, they may be counter-productive to a safe pedestrian and bicycling realm, widening the curb-to-curb crossing distance as well as the sense of spatial enclosure that slows down motorists. When bicyclists are not present, bicycle lanes actually may cause motorists to feel safer driving faster (they are farther from parked cars and trees), which in turn makes bicyclists less likely to use that thoroughfare for bicycling. Sharing traffic lanes with very slow-moving traffic is safer. For example, the vehicular lanes for the Bicycle Path assembly are wider than advised for New Urbanist design in the T-zones shown, making the path a good solution for cycling.

While parking lanes in the Complete Thoroughfares Module may be 7’ for narrower ROWs and therefore slower target speeds, restringing of an overall thoroughfare may call for 8’ parking lanes when placed between a conventional (striped only) bicycle lane and the curb. This helps reduce the likelihood of the motorist “dooring” the cyclist. A wider-than-minimum bicycle lane is also indicated in this case. Again, these are retrofit strategies only.
### TABLE 4C BIKEWAY ASSEMBLIES - NEW OR RETROFIT

**KEY**
- **Thoroughfare Type**
- **Right-of-Way Width**
- **Pavement Width**

**THOROUGHFARE TYPES**
- Highway: HW
- Road: RD
- Street: ST
- Drive: DR
- Avenue: AV
- Commercial Street: CS
- Boulevard: BV
- Rear Way: RA
- Rear Lane: RL
- Path: PT
- Parking: PK

**BIKEWAY TYPES**
- Bicycle Trail (Shared Use): BT
- Bicycle Path (Shared Use): BP
- Bicycle Lane: BL
  - Conventional: BLC
  - Buffered: BLB
    - Buffered - Two-Way: BLB2
  - Physically Separated: BLP
- Shoulder: BLS
- With Bicycle Box: BLX
- Shared Vehicular Lane: SL
- Bicycle Boulevard: BB

**TRANSIT TYPES** See TOD Module

#### TABLE 4C BIKEWAY ASSEMBLIES - RETROFIT

**KEY**
- **Thoroughfare Type**
- **Right-of-Way Width**
- **Pavement Width**

**THOROUGHFARE TYPES**
- Highway: HW
- Road: RD
- Street: ST
- Drive: DR
- Avenue: AV
- Commercial Street: CS
- Boulevard: BV
- Rear Way: RA
- Rear Lane: RL
- Path: PT
- Parking: PK

**BIKEWAY TYPES**
- Bicycle Trail (Shared Use): BT
- Bicycle Path (Shared Use): BP
- Bicycle Lane: BL
  - Conventional: BLC
  - Buffered: BLB
    - Buffered - Two-Way: BLB2
  - Physically Separated: BLP
- Shoulder: BLS
- With Bicycle Box: BLX
- Shared Vehicular Lane: SL
- Bicycle Boulevard: BB

**TRANSIT TYPES** See TOD Module

---

**ASSEMBLY DESIGNATION**

**HW-66-48-BLC**
- Thoroughfare Type: Commercial Street with Conventional Bicycle Lane as Bicycle Boulevard
- Right-of-Way Width: 76 feet
- Pavement Width: 52 feet
- Transect Zone Assignment (retrofit): T3, T4, T5

**PUBLIC FRONTAGE**
- Drainage Type: 4” raised Curb
- Curb Radius: 10 feet
- Walkway Type: 5 foot Sidewalk both sides
- Planter Type: 5 foot continuous planter
- Landscape Type: trees at 30’ o.c. avg.
- Median Width: n/a

**VEHICULAR LANES**
- Traffic Lane Width: 10 feet
- Parking Lane Width: both sides @ 8 feet
- Target Speed: 30 mph
- Pedestrian Crossing Time: 13 seconds

**BIKEWAY TYPE**
- BLS - Bicycle Lane / Shoulder
  - Riding Surface Width: 6 feet
  - Movement: with traffic
  - Intersection Treatment: signed, signalized, Bicycle Inductor Loops
- SL - Shared Vehicular Lane (Sharrow)
  - Riding Surface Width: 6 feet
  - Movement: with traffic
  - Intersection Treatment: Bicycle Parking

**TRANSIT TYPE** See TOD Module

---

**ASSEMBLY DESIGNATION**

**CS-76-48-BLC**
- Thoroughfare Type: Commercial Street with Conventional Bicycle Lane
- Right-of-Way Width: 76 feet
- Pavement Width: 48 feet
- Transect Zone Assignment (retrofit): T3, T4, T5

**PUBLIC FRONTAGE**
- Drainage Type: 4” raised Curb
- Curb Radius: 10 feet
- Walkway Type: 5 foot Sidewalk both sides
- Planter Type: 5 foot continuous planter
- Landscape Type: trees at 30’ o.c. avg.
- Median Width: n/a

**VEHICULAR LANES**
- Traffic Lane Width: 10 feet
- Parking Lane Width: both sides @ 8 feet
- Target Speed: 20 mph
- Pedestrian Crossing Time: 10 seconds

**BIKEWAY TYPE**
- BLS - Bicycle Lane / Shoulder
  - Riding Surface Width: 6 feet
  - Movement: with traffic
  - Intersection Treatment: Bicycle Parking

**TRANSIT TYPE** See TOD Module

---

**ASSEMBLY DESIGNATION**

**ST-52-32-BB**
- Thoroughfare Type: Street as Bicycle Boulevard
- Right-of-Way Width: 52 feet
- Pavement Width: 32 feet
- Transect Zone Assignment (retrofit): T3, T4

**PUBLIC FRONTAGE**
- Drainage Type: 4” raised Curb
- Curb Radius: 10 feet
- Walkway Type: 5 foot Sidewalk both sides
- Planter Type: 5 foot continuous planter
- Landscape Type: trees at 30’ o.c. avg.
- Median Width: n/a

**VEHICULAR LANES**
- Traffic Lane Width: 10 feet
- Parking Lane Width: both sides @ 8 feet
- Target Speed: 20 mph
- Pedestrian Crossing Time: 10 seconds

**BIKEWAY TYPE**
- BLS - Bicycle Lane / Shoulder
  - Riding Surface Width: 6 feet
  - Movement: with traffic
  - Intersection Treatment: Bicycle Parking

**TRANSIT TYPE** See TOD Module
## TABLE 4C BIKEWAY ASSEMBLIES - RETROFIT

### ASSEMBLY DESIGNATION

**ASSEMBLY DESIGNATION**

**Thoroughfare Type**

- Avenue with Bicycle Lane with Bicycle Box (AV-84-56-BLX)
- Commercial Street with Buffered Bicycle Lanes (CS-104-76-BLB)
- Drive with 2-Way Buffered Bicycle Lane (DR-68-40-BLB2)

**Right-of-Way Width**

- 84 feet (AV-84-56-BLX)
- 104 feet (CS-104-76-BLB)
- 68 feet (DR-68-40-BLB2)

**Pavement Width**

- 56 feet (AV-84-56-BLX)
- 76 feet (CS-104-76-BLB)
- 40 feet (DR-68-40-BLB2)

**Transect Zone Assignment**

- (retrofit) T3, T4, T5
- (retrofit) T5, T6

### PUBLIC FRONTAGE

**Drainage Type**

- 4" raised Curb

**Curb Radius**

- 10 feet

**Walkway Type**

- 14 foot Sidewalk both sides

**Planter Type**

- 6 foot tree wells

**Median Width**

- n/a

### VEHICULAR LANES

**Traffic Lane Width**

- 10 feet, turn lane 20 feet

**Parking Lane Width**

- both sides @ 6 feet marked

**Target Speed**

- 35 mph

**Pedestrian Crossing Time**

- 15 seconds

### BIKEWAY TYPE

**Riding Surface Width**

- BLX - Bicycle Lane with Bicycle Box

**Movement**

- with traffic

**Intersection Treatment**

- signalized, Bicycle Box

**TRANSITWAY TYPE**

- See Transit Module

### TABLE 4C BIKEWAY ASSEMBLIES - RETROFIT

### ASSEMBLY DESIGNATION

**ASSEMBLY DESIGNATION**

**Thoroughfare Type**

- Avenue with Bicycle Lane with Bicycle Box (AV-84-56-BLX)
- Commercial Street with Physically-Sep. Bicycle Lanes (CS-98-76-BLB)
- Drive with 2-Way Buffered Bicycle Lane (DR-68-40-BLB2)

**Right-of-Way Width**

- 84 feet (AV-84-56-BLX)
- 98 feet (CS-98-76-BLB)
- 68 feet (DR-68-40-BLB2)

**Pavement Width**

- 56 feet (AV-84-56-BLX)
- 76 feet (CS-98-76-BLB)
- 40 feet (DR-68-40-BLB2)

**Transect Zone Assignment**

- (retrofit) T3, T4, T5
- (retrofit) T5, T6

### PUBLIC FRONTAGE

**Drainage Type**

- 4" raised Curb

**Curb Radius**

- 10 feet

**Walkway Type**

- 14 foot Sidewalk both sides

**Planter Type**

- 6 foot tree wells

**Landscape Type**

- trees at 30' o.c. avg.

**Median Width**

- 10 feet

### VEHICULAR LANES

**Traffic Lane Width**

- 10 feet

**Parking Lane Width**

- both sides @ 6 feet marked

**Target Speed**

- 35 mph

**Pedestrian Crossing Time**

- 15 seconds

### BIKEWAY TYPE

**Riding Surface Width**

- BLX - Bicycle Lane with Bicycle Box

**Movement**

- with traffic

**Intersection Treatment**

- signalized, Peg-a-Track, colored, Bicycle Box, Bicycle Inductor Loops

**TRANSITWAY TYPE**

- See Transit Module
LIGHT IMPRINT MATRIX

Simple matrix of methods for mitigating stormwater, from Thomas E. Low
All the water that will ever be is, right now.

National Geographic, 1993
**LIGHT IMPRINT STORM DRAINAGE MATRIX**

This table summarizes a comprehensive strategy that can supplement the basic Natural Drainage Standards in this volume. The Light Imprint initiative coordinates over sixty tools and resources for environmental, infrastructural, and cost efficiency concerns. Because it is transect-based, all or part of Light Imprint may be adopted with a SmartCode, or provided as an auxiliary set of guidelines for developers. Definitions will be necessary for some terms on this table. Full descriptions of all the tools, along with a comprehensive introduction and set of case studies, are located in the complete Light Imprint Handbook. Information is available at www.lightimprint.org.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tool Description</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tool 1</td>
<td>Definition 1</td>
<td>Notes 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tool 2</td>
<td>Definition 2</td>
<td>Notes 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tool 3</td>
<td>Definition 3</td>
<td>Notes 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Note:** All requirements in this Table are subject to calibration for local context.

### LIGHT IMPRINT STORM DRAINAGE MATRIX

#### 1. PAVING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material</th>
<th>T1</th>
<th>T2</th>
<th>T3</th>
<th>T4</th>
<th>T5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Compacted Earth</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood Planks</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plastic/Geomat</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grassed/Grasscrete Paver Block</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asphalt</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concrete</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permeable Concrete</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paved Blocks on Concrete</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grassed Cellular Plastic</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grassed Cellular Concrete</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pea Gravel</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drainage Ditch</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French Drain</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shallow-Channel Drainway</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concrete Trough</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rooted Tree Wells</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underground Vaults/Pipes</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underground Vaults/Pipes</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underground Vaults/Pipes</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grated Tree Wells</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grassed Cellular Plastic</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grassed Cellular Concrete</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waterscapes</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*NOTE - Maintenance is denoted as L=Low, M=Medium and H=High.*
ECONOMICS OF STREET TYPES

Frank Starkey created this in April, 2014.
The Economics of Street Types
Frank Starkey
April, 2014

Premises
The Problem
A Lean Proposal
Product and Process

Premises
Definitions/Distinctions:
- Streets are thoroughfares within settled areas ("settlements" includes hamlets, neighborhoods, towns, cities).
- Streets must be interconnected at a walkable density (measured by intersection density or max block perimeter)
- Roads and highways are thoroughfares between or among settled areas.

**Streets create real estate value:**
- Streets create value for individual properties by creating frontage and providing transportation (facilitating mobility) (ref. the old s-curve DoT diagram of functional classification.
- (Roads/highways create value for settlements by connecting them together.)
- Value depends on street type, which is comprised of:
  - The functionality of the street (where it leads; what it connects to)
    - Amount of traffic carried
    - Mix of short- medium- and long-distance travel
    - Length
  - The character of the street itself
    - Amount of traffic
    - Mix of traffic (pedestrian, bicycle, transit, cars, trucks)
    - Physical design (place within network, geometry, accoutrements)
  - Collectively, these can be expressed as “Functional Classification” but only if that definition is more nuanced than the DoT version (ref: Rick Hall proposal to expand definition, as well as FLDoT’s Chapter 19 and ITE’s Context-Sensitive Solutions)

- Value creation occurs at, and is expressed in, the frontage line of private lots with the street
- Therefore, the design of frontage (both public and private), is a critical component of value creation, and should be seen as an economic imperative, not “merely” an aesthetic one.

Different types of real estate uses “value” different kinds of streets
- There is a reasonable proportionality between street type and its economics:
  - the array of street types and the types of uses that derive value from them (T3 residential "values" leafy and quiet; T5 "values" robust and busy);
  - the amount of transportation/traffic a given street type carries and the amount that its fronting owners will tolerate or demand (T3 tolerates low volumes; T5 demands high volumes);
  - the amount (in linear footage) of a given street type and the demand for it (T3 requires more linear footage – per unit and total – than T5);
  - the cost of building/maintaining/upgrading a given street type and the value created by it (T3 streets are cheap and T3 lots are lower value *per front foot*; T5 streets are expensive and the lots are high-value)
• Streets “naturally” fall into a hierarchy of types, which correspond to the Urban Transect
• An appropriately conceived street can be paid for by its builder (be it government, private developer or both) from the value it creates.

Supply/demand economics can logically guide the building of streets
  ○ A commercial street costs more and generates more salable value per front foot.
  ○ Single-family residential streets are relatively cheap to build per linear foot, but single family lots are able to pay much less per front foot.
  ○ Building a more elaborate street enhances this value and concentrates the intensity of demand, in a straightforward cost/benefit/market analysis.
  ○ Street developers are thus motivated to build the highest-quality street the (immediate) market will support. (Wise developers will ensure there is a mechanism for improving every street in the future, as well.)

Assigning costs:
• **Interconnected streets** create transportation value for the whole settlement (ref: Create more value than you capture. - Tim O’Reilly): they externalize value.
• The cost of building and maintaining a street should be born directly by its fronting properties.
  ○ This is a reciprocal social contract between property owners and the community: We maintain our respective streets, and we share them with each other, as well. We all pay; we all benefit.
  ○ In a proper network hierarchy, the shared demand on a given street is proportional to the costs of that street.
  ○ Property taxes are an appropriate mechanism to fund streets, though the method should be improved. (ref; the Fiscal Impact Quotient proposal by Peter Katz)
• The cost of building and maintaining a road/highway should be born collectively by the settlements it connects.
  ○ “User Fees” (eg gas tax and tolls) as well as regional/state/national taxation are appropriate mechanisms to fund highways.
• Some streets do not contribute to network mobility (eg dead-ends and gated streets)
  ○ These create limited value for their fronting lots, by locking them into residential-only uses forever.
  ○ More pointedly, these externalize all of their mobility demand (and travel distances for those residents are generally greater, too). This disproportionate external demand should be paid for by those properties. Impact Fees and increased property taxes are an appropriate mechanism to do this, provided they are used to offset the costs of all the other streets.
  ○ With appropriate cost allocation, such streets will be fairly priced into rareness, but they need not be prohibited entirely.
• The external costs of building roads for externalized travel demand drop almost entirely out of the equation. Along with it drops the ludicrous voodoo of traffic engineering studies and their attendant costs, time delays, and exactions for building highway interchanges five miles away.
• This fundamentally alters a huge portion of a developer’s (or a municipality or individual lot owner) financial model. By only having to pay for the streets one builds one’s focus can be on gleaning the highest value out of those streets. (See Development In Action below)
• Settlers are dynamic systems, and tend generally (but not always linearly) toward greater density and intensity over time.
• The array of street types broadens over time with greater intensification in higher Transect Zones as values rise more steeply there.
• Rebuilding/upgrading a street can correspond with the rise in value (or change in use) of its fronting properties. Upgrading a street can create and/or respond to this rise in value.
• Every street is subject to change in function, density and/or intensity, if its design can accommodate that change.
• Long-term real estate value depends on the ability of a street to adapt to changing conditions, including economic, social, demographic, technological, environmental, etc. (ref: Pace Layering; Stewart Brand as adapted by Hank Dittmar)
• A mechanism is needed for upgrading streets block by block in response to or anticipation of these changes. (Ref: The Sky Method, Steve Mouzon)
The Problem

Distortions in contemporary suburban street/road/"stroad"-building and funding

- **Decouples mobility and frontage as value creators.** This creates roads that only provide transportation and "streets" that provide only frontage (and "collectors" that provide neither!).
  - Local streets (including “driveways” within commercial parking lots) and collector roads are typically built by private developers, who reap the benefit of the initial value creation by selling single-family lots and multifamily or commercial tracts.
  - Arterials and Highways are built by the public sector, but without meaningful funding that is tied to new development. (ref: Chuck Marohn’s “Growth Ponzi Scheme” argument) Impact fees are an attempt at this but because of the enormous externalized cost of the system redundancies, development interests successfully resist a true cost recapture. General funds, (sometimes via bond issuances) are forced to make up the difference, but can never quite make it. Road building, by definition, falls further and further behind demand.
- **The functional classification diagram is misapplied.** Different functional class thoroughfares are arranged in a branching rather than a parallel (or “tartan” grid) pattern
- **Automobile traffic is concentrated at too-few intersections,** which require over scaling and long signal timing and get congested anyway.
- **The road pattern is redundant,** hence costly and land consumptive
- **Trip distances are made too long** and itineraries are too dispersed for any transportation mode besides automobiles (which is the least efficient mode in most every measure.)
- **Street and road types are "neither/nor" in both character and function:**
  - Commerce clusters along roads/highways because of their concentration of traffic (ie customers), exacerbating congestion;
  - Road connections between settlements congest to the point of non-function
  - Commercial lacks foot traffic (which is arguably better for commerce)
  - Local “streets” in dead-end patterns, often with gates, contribute nothing to network mobility, stymie future value increases, and prohibit changes in use
“One-size fits all” engineering/construction standards result in streets that are often either over-built or under-built for their context. (*residential streets are gold-plated, while “stroads” lack amenities for pedestrians and bicycles.*)

Costs exceed value:

- Overall transportation system costs are higher:
  - Requires excessive lane-mileage and miles-traveled per unit of mobility (trip);
  - Requires excessive numbers of automobiles (per household and overall) and their associated engines, tires, mass, energy consumption and pollution;
  - Requires excessive provision of parking spaces (ref: Shoup);
  - Household transportation costs are higher due to requisite car ownership and high VMT (vehicle-miles traveled)
  - Excessive maintenance costs
  - Excessive (and ultimately futile) costs to mitigate congestion (primarily through roadway and intersection expansion.)

- Social costs are higher:
  - Directly through limited mobility, excessive time spent driving (and in traffic), high transportation injury and fatality rates;
  - Indirectly through increased social segregation (abetted by single-use zoning), and the rigidity and “placeless-ness” of commoditized development practice (see below re: threshold scale of development), and declining social capital (ref: Putnam and Oldenburg)

- The suburban roadway network externalizes costs:
  - Privately-funded local streets and collector roads shift “transportation-bearing” road-building costs to the public sector;
  - Transportation Impact Fees and related concepts attempt to charge new development but cannot (politically) fully recapture these double costs.
  - Publicly-funded arterials and highways shifts social costs to the private sector.
  - *We pay too much money for roads and then pay again with our lives.*

- Minimum threshold scale of development is blown up:
  - Intersections with primary roads may only be made by building large new collector roads, whose excessive cost must be amortized over a large acreage of salable lots/parcels.
  - The new intersections of collector and arterial create demand for large chunks of non-residential uses, increasing project complexity, risk, and economic requirements (*but little demonstrable benefit to the residential lots.*)
  - Economies of scale and rapid sales velocity must be achieved to “make the numbers work”, leading to standardized, less market-responsive “product offerings.”
  - Big Finance is required, along with specialized large-scale developers with less local knowledge.
  - Big Finance and Professional Developers (and the required phalanx of consultants and their corollary regulators) add cost, time and risk to development.
  - Incremental and successional development is impossible (ref: Lean Urbanism, generally)

- Value creation and retention is limited
  - All this puts downward pressure on real estate sales prices (to achieve volume and velocity), construction quality, and on responsiveness to local and emerging market demands
- Oversized commodity “neighborhoods” on dead-end street networks are created for a momentary “market” and restricted from future adaptation (abetted by zoning and deed restrictions)
- Commercial development is similarly oversized and constricted, so that its eventual (and inevitable) redevelopment is extremely difficult (ref: Suburban Retrofits and Sprawl Repair)
- Local investment capital is squeezed out of local real estate investment, except as an “end user.” The value creation “bump” of real estate development largely leaves the local economy (ref: BALLE).
- Unless a location is extremely lucky, this calcified, commoditized state ultimately becomes obsolete, a term which should not naturally be applied to real estate (buildings, perhaps, but not lots!)
- When velocity and volume are king, quality is the first thing to go. Marketing takes over. Cynicism follows.
A Lean Proposal
Government Planning can create a framework for Lean Urbanism by stripping its planning functions back to street planning, and then allowing market forces to flesh out the urbanism. This is simpler than trying to force mixed uses, and it was the way towns and cities were planned for centuries before Modern planning.

Plan the Street Network First:
- Planning should return to simply laying out street networks.
  - Ensure that every street segment can both create and sustain value for its fronting lots by connecting to other streets with a network density sufficient to support all modes of travel (measured by intersection density or max block perimeter);
  - Ensure that every street segment contributes transportation capacity to the overall network: *This should be a simple visual assessment, not a complicated traffic planning computer model!*
  - Locate road connections from one settlement to another, where they are separated by either:
    - Rural Preserve (permanently protected agriculture or environmental land);
    - Rural Reserve land, held for future development.
  - Locate highways (which run among settlements but do not provide land access)
  - Locate trails and future rail corridors.
  - *(This is where traffic engineering belongs – where the factors are fairly simple, and the roads need only to be sized properly, and where automobile travel can reign. Interconnected streets are almost always oversized because as a network they operate so efficiently. Furthermore, local streets demand design nuance that is undermined by the traffic engineering mindset.)*
- Roads between settlements must be restricted from urban development but connect directly to primary streets (boulevards and Main Streets) through settlements, where commercial activities are likely to locate.

Building Form Second:
- *Allow* for a Transect-based Form-Based Code to be enacted by a landowner or developer;
- *Provide* a Transect-based Form-Based Code only where needed to guide infill- and redevelopment *and keep it minimal*. Resist the temptation to pile on all those sexy modules but do make them optional.
- *Allow* for a *very* wide variety of street designs to be deployed on a block-by-block basis;
- *Allow* for a *very* wide variety of building types and frontages, with only minimal metric requirements to correspond to the street type (ie Transect Zone).
- *Don't mess up the street frontages!* If you keep the street types and frontages right, the proper private frontages are more likely to follow: mess up the street frontage and the buildings will change very quickly! (ref: pictures of buildings changing in response to street changes)

Mixing of uses will come in due time, following market forces.
Oh yeah, and Zoning? Fuggedaboutit. Euclid made it legal; it didn’t make it mandatory. Let go and Let God!
- If that causes your head to explode, then either:
  - or establish performance standards, such as ambient standards (noise, light, smell, vibration, etc.)
  - translate your zoning code into a form-based code.

Get rid of Impact Fees for transportation, and stop building government roadways to handle new development’s primary transportation.
The Product and Process

Development Decision-Making in Action:
If I am a developer planning to build a new neighborhood (or portion of a neighborhood), my market research will ask how much I can charge for frontage on each of the different types of streets, what should be the character of those streets, and how much demand (expressed in front feet) there is. I can combine this with preliminary cost estimates from my contractor to come up with my development program. (This is akin to a homebuilder’s method for determining product mix, but without the burdensome metric of economies of scale needed for each type).

Based on this information I can instruct my planners to include the programmed mix and proportions of different street types. For example, they are to include “X” linear feet of “Main Street” (eg T4-O or T5), with such-and-such a level of finish/amenity (i.e. brick v. concrete sidewalks, street furniture, etc.) for which I will be able to charge so-much-per-linear-foot. Then there will be “Z” linear feet of “Elm Street” (eg T3, T4-R) and a fair amount of “Meridian Street” (eg T4-R or T4-O) that I can shift from one use to the other during my build-out. That gives me a transitional zone into which additional commercial or higher-density residential can “squirt”, or that I can put into an interim use so that I can hold for much higher values when the market matures a little more.

“Main Street” will cost the most, and be worth the greatest dollars per foot but I will have demand for the least amount of it. “Elm Street” will be the cheapest to build, and be worth the fewest dollars per foot, but I’ll “make up for it with volume” as they say. “Meridian Street” will be in the middle on all counts. (This is where I have the greatest potential upside if I do a great job building a community or outside factors intervene in my favor. These are the “Black Swan” streets, per Nassim Taleb’s formulation.)

Rather than negotiating with my municipality over disconnected and abstract fees for the costly trips they are assuming on behalf of my future residents, I will be calculating the best way to create value from the streets I am building anyway. I want the greatest delta between my costs and sale price and I will try to figure out how to design the project a way that all the lots are more valuable.

My best way to do that is by creating an “amenity” that a) I don’t have to pay much for (or, ideally, I get PAID for) and b) that creates more value than it costs. Parks and recreational amenities are part of this equation, but they cost me money and I have to ask the residents to pay to maintain them so that will only get me so far. Gates and cul-de-sacs are too expensive except for the very small, tip-top of the market, and they don’t create any value for anyone else. The really powerful stuff is the convenience of having daily needs nearby and easy to get to. Schools, preschools, churches, YMCAs and libraries are all nice IF I can land one, and they don’t cost me much, if anything.

But commercial! Commercial land I can sell! Commercial is stuff people use every day! Groceries, yeah, but grocery stores are big and hard to make money at unless I have just the right location. C-Stores are too crappy to put in a neighborhood. A corner store is good if I can make the numbers work and find a good operator. A pizza joint. A coffee shop, hair salon, barber shop, a gym, a wine bar, a sushi place, a bodega. What if someone works at home and needs a co-working space? Better yet, a place to have an office “downtown” instead of in the dining room... Maybe I need to start with food trucks and temporary buildings instead of starting with bricks-and-mortar stores when there are few customers. Suddenly I’m motivated to get creative about commercial opportunities, in order to sell houses and sell them for more!
Working Differently:

For Local Government:
- Retrain and redeploy your traffic planners to do useful engineering. They're trained civil engineers so their talents could be employed to design beautiful streets, roadways, bridges and other infrastructure.
- Retrain and redeploy your zoning administrators and development review staff to help facilitate the myriad small-scale local "lay" developers (eg dentists, insurance agents and retired schoolteachers) through the design and building permit process. Ensuring that frontages are correct should be their only regulatory function.
- Unchain your environmental review staff from the trees and bird counts and deploy them to help the general public better understand the value of natural and rural lands. And employ them to get important lands protected.
- Put the Director of Public Works, Building Official and Fire Chief together in one office, and incentivize them to collaborate and find efficient solutions together. Reward them monetarily when they reduce costs (but not quality) or create excess value. If they won’t work together, get new ones who will.

For large landowners:
- Get familiar and comfortable with form-based codes, and figure out how to use them to create value. Then either enact one on your land or sell to a developer who really understands them (not just paying lip-service to it). Maintain an equity position in the development if you can.

For “large” developers (i.e. you’ve built subdivisions before):
- Familiarize yourself with transect zones and form-based codes and figure out how to squeeze value out of them (hint: build just enough street for each use, but make it beautiful so they sell well and add value to all the other streets!).
- Learn about the local market and learn how to look FORWARD at the market rather than the typical “rear-view mirror” market study approach. In addition to the fat part of the bell curve, also learn the micro-markets and “long-tails”, where there is unmet market demand. You’ll be much more able to meet that demand profitably now that you can build in small increments.
- Figure out how to “future proof” both your street network and your buildings so that they can adapt to changing markets over time. That “future” may just get here while you’re still developing and you will want to be able to capture the value. If you’re a build-and-hold developer, this is even more important.
- Start paying more attention to local capital, not just the international capital markets. Your chiropractor will likely be a better equity partner than Gigantor Equity, LLC with its 20% IRR expectations, 10-year horizon and $100 Million minimum deal size.

For “small” developers:
- Be of good cheer, for you will now have immensely more opportunities to build small projects. Blocks and lots on meaningful streets will once again be plentiful.
- Make your talents known to the large developers, who won’t want to play at the small scale. Buy their lots and build stuff. Reward the ones who have good plans, who build the best streets and deliver the best customers.
• Let your creativity fly, and find lots of different ways to skin the cat. You don’t have to stick with a “proven” model; you can be entrepreneurial with a single lot!
• Make your talents known to local business people who will need new space developed for them, or who will need help learning how to develop their own buildings.

For planning consultants:
• Learn how to write a lean and mean form-based code for a developer and learn how to administer it (it ain’t rocket science):
• Contract with the developer (or municipality) to administer it.

For Land Use Attorneys:
• Make yourself useful and affordable to small developers: there will be much more work for them than there is for the big guys.
SMALL CHANGE INDEX INDICATORS

Small Change’s Change Index.
The Small Change Index’s Scoring System

The Change Index is Small Change’s proprietary scoring system that illustrates the impact its projects have on its surroundings. The Change Index uses data points such as an area’s walk- and bike-ability, public transit access, proximity to green space, availability of commercial and cultural amenities and other measures of quality of life to produce a composite score of 1-10 (10 being the best) to gauge the possibilities of a project.

Calculating your Change Index.

The majority of our metrics apply to both commercial and residential real estate projects. A few only apply to one or the other. C denotes a commercial metric and R denotes a residential one.

Mobility

Walkscore over 70: The Walkscore is a composite number that indicates the pedestrian friendliness of the project and its proximity to important amenities. The higher the Walkscore, the less someone needs to rely on a car, therefore reducing personal costs and environmental impact. A score of 70 and over is considered “very walkable.” All scores are sourced via walkscore.com. (C + R)

Bikescore over 70: The Bikescore is a composite number that indicates the ease of using a bicycle as a mode of transportation to and from the project. Bikescore takes into account both the friendliness of the surrounding topography and the biking culture of the area. The higher the score, the more bike friendly the area will be. A score of 70 and over is considered “very bikeable.” All scores are sourced via walkscore.com. (C + R)

Dedicated bike lane within ¼ mile: Dedicated bike lanes provide an additional level of safety for those who use bicycling as their means of transportation. A study of adults living in Seattle found that those living within a half-mile of a dedicated bike lane were 20% more likely to ride their bike. (C + R)

Transit score over 50: Transit is a critical component of a healthy city. Better transit means less congestion, increased mobility and unlocked economic potential. The Transit Score indicates public transportation options close to the project. The higher the score, the better the options and frequency of public transit nearby. All scores are sourced via walkscore.com. (C + R)

Commercial/business corridor within 1 mile: Local businesses keep money circulating within a community and reduce the distance that people need to travel to obtain goods and services. An attendant effect of a high concentration of neighborhood businesses means that alternate methods of transportation such as walking, biking and public transit are more likely to be utilized. (R)
**Bike racks for occupants**: Providing bike racks for building occupants increases the likelihood that individuals will choose biking as their mode of transportation. (C)

**Car sharing station within ½ mile**: Car sharing stations allow users to utilize a car only when one is truly needed. The service eliminates the personal expense of owning a vehicle – thereby acting as an individual economic stimulus for other products and/or savings – and lowers the number of cars on the road, thereby lessening traffic congestion. (C + R)

**Transit-oriented Development**: Transit-oriented development (TOD) is a type of mixed-use community development integrated into a walkable neighborhood and located within a half-mile of public transportation. (C + R)

**Sustainability**

**Adaptive reuse / brownfield site**: A brownfield site is defined as industrial or commercial property that is abandoned or underused and is often environmentally contaminated. The ability to reuse something that already exists, whether it is a building or land, is a fundamental element of sustainability. This not only reduces our environmental footprint, it also allows for the revitalization of a building or site. (C + R)

**Green building practices**: The implementation of green and sustainable building practices ranges from including energy efficient lights and windows to building with sustainably harvested or local materials to providing rain catchment systems. Any attempt made to eliminate the negative effects of the building on the environment is a positive change. (C + R)

**Minimized site disturbance**: Any disturbance of undeveloped land changes the natural balance of the site and leads to soil erosion and water management issues. Preserving existing noninvasive trees, native plants, and pervious surfaces and ensuring that one hundred percent of the development footprint occurs on previously developed land can meet the need to minimize site disturbances. (C + R)

**In a principal city**: Principal cities meet certain population and employment criteria. Being in a principal city identifies the project as supporting urban growth. Meeting any of the following criteria qualifies a location as a principal city: (C + R)

1. The largest incorporated place in a CBSA (Core Based Statistical Area) with a population of at least 10,000, or if no such incorporated place exists, the largest incorporated place or census-designated place in the CBSA. This designates the largest principal city.
2. Incorporated or census-designated places that have a population of at least 250,000 in which the number of workers is 100,000 or more
3. Places with a population between 50,000 and 250,000 where the number of workers exceeds the number of working residents
4. Places with a population between 10,000 and 50,000 where the number of workers i) exceeds the number of working residents and ii) are at least one-third of the population of the largest principal city.
**Park or plaza within ½ mile**: The close proximity of green space to a project allows for recreation outside the immediate proximity of the project site. This gives individuals a place to be outdoors, which improves mental and physical health and strengthens community ties. (C + R)

**Reduced parking footprint**: By reducing a project's parking footprint to less than 20% of the total developable land, environmental harm associated with parking facilities – land consumption and rainwater runoff – is minimized. (C)

**In a mixed-use neighborhood**: A mixed-use neighborhood is an area that has clusters of diverse land use, making it more likely that residents can find all of their needs within that neighborhood. Mixed-use neighborhoods flush with residential and commercial amenities support walking, biking and use of public transit. (C)

**Urban farm within 1 mile**: Having an urban farm near the site means that individuals will be able to buy fresh, healthy produce locally – something many urban communities to do not have access to. Residents will also be supporting the local economy. (R)

**Economic Vitality**

**At least 10 jobs created (1 per 500 SF)**: The creation of jobs helps the local economy. Workers earn money and spend it in the surrounding community. Jobs created can apply both to construction workers who build the project, or to employees who occupy the buildings once the project is complete. (C + R)

**More than 10 jobs created**: The more jobs that are created in an area, the more people – and money – will be concentrated in that area. This leads to additional development, increasing the economic vitality of the community. (C + R)

**In an historically underserved community**: Underserved communities have higher poverty rates, higher unemployment rates, lower property values, and a higher number of city-owned or abandoned buildings or vacant lots. Choosing to develop these areas is the first step in achieving economic growth for the immediate area and for the city at large, revitalizing fallow land for future growth. (C + R)

**Activates the street**: Activating the street encourages pedestrian-friendly development and a sense of safety and livability in a community. Creating connections between the inside and outside of buildings – think front porches on homes, or sidewalk cafes for local businesses – accomplish this. (C + R)

**Third place within ½ mile**: A “third place” is a gathering place that is an extension of people's homes. It may be a coffee shop, bar, restaurant, bookstore, etc. This is a place where an individual feels comfortable, enjoys meeting others, stays for significant periods of time and visits frequently. (C + R)
Affordable housing: Everyone deserves decent housing. Affordable homeownership can stimulate the local economy by stabilizing and populating a neighborhood with permanent residents. Homeowners take ownership not only of their new house, but of the neighborhood as well, adding personal, community and economic investment in an area. (R)

Incubator / co-working space: Incubators and co-working spaces foster interactions and the exchange of ideas, and support the growth of startups, driving economic vitality in the area. (C)
REVOLVE DETROIT GUIDEBOOK

This is a guidebook from REVOLVE Detroit.
GUIDE TO DETROIT’S RETAIL EVOLUTION
REVOLVE is a program of the Detroit Economic Growth Corporation. It is designed and implemented in collaboration with many partners.
PREFACE

The REVOLVE Guidebook is a collection of resources to support Detroit’s Retail Evolution. Whether you are starting a business, installing a public art project, restoring a building, or promoting a neighborhood, this is your one-stop shop for practical how-to information regarding the revitalization of Detroit’s neighborhood business districts.

The guidebook is designed for a broad audience of entrepreneurs, artists, community organizations, and building owners with the common goal of activating vacant space. It is oriented to help stakeholders work together and take action. Included are checklists, flow-charts, permits, and much more in easy-to-understand, ready-to-use formats.

Some of the information may not be applicable to you. However, we believe that good things happen faster when we work together and have a mutual understanding of the to-do list. The guidebook is developed specifically for Detroit. However, much of the information is transferable to other cities or applications of urban revitalization.

Finally, there is no “one way” to do this. Every neighborhood requires a unique approach. This guidebook tells you how we facilitate Retail Evolution at REVOLVE. We encourage you to familiarize yourself with these resources and do things in your own way. We also realize that things evolve. Consider this a living document. We encourage you to share your feedback and lessons learned to improve this guide by emailing us at info@revolvedetroit.com.

We ask just one thing of you: Be revolutionary.
- Michael Forsyth, Program Manager

REVOLVE would like to thank the following contributors to this guidebook:
“IF WE BUILD IT, WE WILL COME.”
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## 1. REVOLVE DETROIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Program Overview</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pop-Up Defined</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Different Approaches to Pop-Up</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The REVOLVE Model</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partnership</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strategy</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tools</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Retail Evolution Process</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 2. CASE STUDIES AND BEST PRACTICES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>West Village in Detroit</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About West Village</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pop-Up Event</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community Leadership</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Building Owners</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pop-Up Food</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pop-Up Retail</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pop-Up Art</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 3. ENTREPRENEUR RESOURCES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>REVOLVE Pop-Up Checklist</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Getting Ready for Business</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legalities and Formalities</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pop-Up Construction and Deconstruction</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marketing and Promotion</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVOLVE Program Participation</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REVOLVE Detroit Property Assessment</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property Assessment</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Building Assessment</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pop-Up Resources</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small Business Services</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporary Use Permit</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporary Food Permit</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sample License Agreements</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insurance Contacts</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Furniture and Equipment</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER I: REVOLVE DETROIT
REVOLVE Detroit is a collaborative program of the Detroit Economic Growth Corporation (DEGC), which partners with community leaders, building owners, entrepreneurs, and artists to activate vacant storefronts with transformational businesses and art installations. The goal of the program is to foster Retail Evolution in Detroit’s neighborhood business districts.

At its core, REVOLVE uses “pop-up” as a catalyst to accomplish three main objectives: 1) recruit and grow full-time tenants, 2) spark public and private investment, and 3) change the image and experience of neighborhood business districts. REVOLVE combines pop-up with other tools, such as incentives to support building restoration and technical assistance for entrepreneurs. In other words, we use small, short-term actions to spark big impacts and long-term investment in neighborhoods, businesses, and buildings.

POP-UP: NEW MODELS FOR BUSINESS AND SPACE

At REVOLVE, we define a pop-up as a temporary use, such as a business, art installation, or event that activates a vacant or under-utilized space. While many definitions and variations exist, the operative word is “temporary.” Pop-ups are meant to create low-cost, low-risk opportunities to transform a place quickly for a limited amount of time. For example, pop-up business models can allow entrepreneurs to test their business in a location for a month before signing a long-term lease. This offers the opportunity to make money, make adjustments to a business model, and prove to financers and landlords that a business can succeed. Building owners benefit from getting a prospective long-term tenant and unprecedented marketing. Neighborhoods benefit from new energy and a great new business. Temporary art installations are serving as a medium to re-engage various audiences in rethinking what is possible in a place, often times catalyzing a new image or interest in investment. Art can create real value in vacant space where the market value cannot yet bear business investment. Pop-ups are also becoming an increasingly popular marketing tool. Established companies are using pop-up to reveal a new product or elevate their brand. Whether the idea or the investment is big or small, pop-ups offer great experience, exposure, and excitement.

HOW TO USE THIS SECTION OF THE GUIDEBOOK

This section of the guidebook highlights the theory and practices behind the REVOLVE Detroit program. It was written with two audiences in mind: potential REVOLVE partners and participants, as well as other organizations interested in developing innovative approaches to revitalize neighborhood business districts.
DIFFERENT APPROACHES TO ACTIVATE BUSINESS AND SPACE

**PARTY POP**
One or two day event.

**MYSTERY POP**
Where will we be next?
It’s a surprise.

**ART POP**
Art first.
Retail second.

**TRAVELING POP**
Open temporarily. Close.
Re-open somewhere else.

**DOUBLE POP**
A pop-up inside of a pop-up.
Programming = pop-up success.

**IN-SHOP POP**
Open pop-up inside an established shop.
Co-promote. Co-benefit.

**TEST POP**
Test location and business.

**PERMI POP**
Lease with free rent and/or out clause
in 3-6 months. Intend to lease.

**JUST DO IT POP**
Go all in.
Open permanently.
There are three fundamental elements to REVOLVE Detroit: Partnership, Strategy, and Tools. This section of the guidebook presents the basics of the program and the theory behind it.

**PARTNERSHIP**
REVOLVE partners with four stakeholders to support Retail Evolution.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NEIGHBORHOODS</th>
<th>BUILDING OWNERS</th>
<th>ENTREPRENEURS</th>
<th>ARTISTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>TRANSFORM NEIGHBORHOODS INTO VIBRANT RETAIL DISTRICTS.</strong> Match entrepreneurs with opportunities to transform vacant spaces into viable places. Create buzz by changing the conversation, image, and experience on the street and online. Grow and attract high-quality and long-term businesses.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>REVOLUTIONIZE THE RETAIL DEVELOPMENT AND RECRUITMENT PROCESS.</strong> Match property owners with temporary and permanent businesses. Apply innovative marketing techniques to reach new tenant prospects and customers. Connect property owners with a suite of resources to create retail-ready space.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CREATE VENUES FOR NEW BUSINESS VENTURES.</strong> Connect entrepreneurs with Detroit’s prime neighborhood retail spaces and property owners. Create a low-cost, low-risk environment to experiment, test, and refine your business model. Assist with permitting, marketing, and resources to grow your business.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RE-IMAGE NEIGHBORHOODS THROUGH CREATIVE EXPRESSION.</strong> Use the arts to spur economic development and neighborhood revitalization. Showcase Detroit’s world-class art scene to engage new audiences in-person and online. Transform the image and potential of Detroit’s neighborhoods.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## STRATEGY

REVOLVE applies a four-step strategy to transform business districts.

| PLAN | Establish partnerships, secure building owner commitments, and develop common vision and strategy. |
| LAUNCH | Pop-up business at one prime location to engage community and illustrate the benefits of temporary use. Support art installations at several spaces to spark district interest. Issue small grants and provide fast, visible impacts in storefronts. Support major marketing to promote participants and opportunities. |
| SCALE | Increase pop-up business activity. When permanent tenants are secured, issue grants and assist with financing to support build-out, leverage private investment, and close the financial gap for tenants. |
| TRANSFORM | Leverage success and awareness to keep recruiting new businesses. Construction and business financing and gap funds help support larger projects and private investment after the market is stimulated. This establishes a performance-based model for investment. |

## TOOLS

REVOLVE applies a three-tier investment strategy to support sustainable transformation.

| PROGRAM OPERATIONS | Goal: Provide staff, marketing, and entrepreneur technical assistance. Approach: Budgeted by REVOLVE. Theory: Wrap-around services and strong program management are necessary for program success. |
| RETAIL READINESS FUND | Goal: Create move-in-ready space. Approach: Matching grants leverage private investment. Assist with project financing. Theory: Direct investments into space is also indirect investment into full-time tenants. |
THE RETAIL EVOLUTION PROCESS

The following graphic shows how REVOLVE uses these tools and strategies to foster Retail Evolution in Detroit business districts.

**STEP 1: PARTNERS**
- Assess district and building challenges/needs.
- Build “the team” of community leaders, building owners, and existing businesses.

**PROGRAM TASKS**
- Meetings/planning with community.
- Evaluate building conditions.
- MOU and establish commitments and responsibilities.
- Develop vision/strategy for execution.

**STEP 2: CALL FOR ENTRIES**
- Assess demand for new businesses and art.
- Build “the team” by identifying new entrepreneurs and artists to contribute to revitalization.

**PROGRAM TASKS**
- Issue request for proposals.
- Interviews and due diligence with entrepreneurs and artists.
- Curate mix of uses.
- Generate media buzz.
- Assess team capacity and fill gaps on participant needs.

**STEP 3: POP-UP**
- Demonstrate demand for businesses and art.
- Build excitement.
- Build capacity around actions that lead to revitalization.

**PROGRAM TASKS**
- Develop common vision, expectations, and plan for executing strategy amongst all team members.
- Issue small grants to support temporary uses.
- Prepare space.
- Engage community.

**STEP 6: FULL-TIME BUSINESS**
- Meet market demand.
- Build leverage to do more local capacity.

**PROGRAM TASKS**
- Press/public announcements.
- Assist with permitting.
- Support local leadership’s continued efforts.

**STEP 5: CONSTRUCT**
- Demonstrate demand for long-term investment.
- Build permanent assets.

**PROGRAM TASKS**
- Issue grants if necessary.
- Assist with financing for build-out costs.
- Assist with permitting.

**STEP 4: PERMANENT LEASES**
- Demonstrate demand for building renovation.
- Build case for business investment.

**PROGRAM TASKS**
- Assist with lease negotiations.
- Assist with project financing.
- Publicize wins.
- Keep recruiting.
Located three miles east of downtown, West Village is part of a collection of unique waterfront communities that locals affectionately refer to as “the Villages.” The Villages has long been recognized for its diversity. Historic neighborhoods, high-rise condos, edgy lofts and apartments, affordable rental properties, and new construction homes accommodate a diversity of people and lifestyles. Nearby landmarks, such as Belle Isle and the Detroit River, define the area’s unique and charming identity. Despite the tremendous collection of assets that contributed to a high quality of life, a missing ingredient remained just a few years ago: a walkable, neighborhood business district.

Developing a recipe to create a business district from scratch started in 2011 with two ingredients: creativity and beer. Local residents worked together to transform a vacant lot into a temporary community beer garden, “Tashmoo Biergarten.” It was a smashing success that discovered a broader community that was thirsty for more opportunities to meet over food and drink. Entrepreneurs took note.

In the fall of 2012, REVOLVE Detroit partnered with the Villages Community Development Corporation (Villages CDC), two building owners, entrepreneurs, and artists to transform an entire block of vacant storefronts next to the beer garden on Agnes Street between Parker and Van Dyke. A call for entries for pop-up and permanent businesses was launched to assess the demand for business investment in the area. Of the 25 applicants, most were interested in locating permanently in West Village. Over the course of the next year, partners collaborated to create three pop-up businesses, host several events, and recruit four permanent businesses to fill the entire block. The end result, fully completed in the summer of 2014, includes Craft Work (full-scale bar and restaurant), Detroit Vegan Soul (vegan café), The Red Hook (coffee and pastry shop), and Tarot and Tea (retail boutique).

The following details the perspectives, contributions and lessons learned from various partners that contributed to the transformation.
ABOUT
Tashmoo Biergarten is a European-style, outdoor beer garden that activated a vacant lot in West Village with a series of five pop-up events. With their first event in September 2011, Tashmoo helped spark a movement in West Village. They showcased the vibrancy of the neighborhood, while demonstrating tremendous demand for a new business.

HOW IT HAPPENED
“All good ideas start with beer,” says West Village resident Aaron Wagner, who along with his now wife Suzanne Vier, had the idea to run a pop-up community beer garden in West Village. They presented the concept to the Villages Community Development Corporation to gain their support. The Villages backed the idea and helped bring the concept to life by providing insurance, obtaining non-profit liquor licenses, and promoting the event in the community. For more information on non-profit liquor licenses click here.

On opening day in fall 2011, Tashmoo Biergarten made enough money to cover all of their out-of-pocket expenses and all funds went back to the Villages CDC. Tashmoo Biergarten helped changed the image and awareness of West Village, while building a loyal following. Now, Tashmoo has gone on the road to bring the beer garden to other areas of Detroit.
CHALLENGES

As an outdoor experience, weather was always the biggest hurdle for the beer garden. Good weather meant more people and profit. Uncertainty in how much profit an event would generate made initial out-of-pocket expenses problematic.

Volunteers were also crucial, playing a big role in executing events by saving on cost, time, and sweat. Social media platforms, such as Facebook and Twitter, were key in getting the word out for helpers and promotional purposes.

Liquor licenses, or lack of, are what make and break these events. Only 12 liquor licenses are allowed per calendar year for each non-profit. Tashmoo Biergarten partnered with Waldorf School, a 501c3, to get a liquor license. When collaborating with non-profits, all proceeds are issued to them.

BENEFITS

Aaron’s event and marketing background, combined with Suzanne’s entrepreneur and savvy outreach skills, made them a great pair. A combined 7,500 people were at Tashmoo Biergarten’s first 5 events. People from all over metro Detroit came out to West Village, some having no previous knowledge that the area existed. The events showcased the strong community, labeling it as a new destination for residency, retail, and recreation.

Because the events were temporary, it was easy to purchase products as needed, load materials into a truck, and drive to the destination. A loyal group of volunteers and regular customers continue to come out to support Tashmoo Biergarten wherever they pop-up.

LESSONS LEARNED

At the end of their 2011 pop-up tenure, Tashmoo Biergarten decided to change their strategy in small ways moving forward. They believed that many things went amazingly well, but realized that each event is unique. They never had the same amount of customers at each event—sometimes the line was longer than anticipated and they didn’t have enough product. It was about learning to work through the challenges, such as rain or lack of volunteers. Preparation for the best and worst turnout is crucial to each event on an individual level.

With the pop-up process being new territory to everyone, a great deal of work was involved to organize the first event. They had to develop processes to coordinate with various stakeholders, build and gather furniture, develop marketing strategies, and design the Tashmoo brand. In the end, it was about finding the right people to talk to, untangling the process of getting licenses in time for beer orders, and keeping things organized up front with consistent communication to pull off the events.
In early 2012, following a successful run with Tashmoo Biergarten, two apartment building owners with vacant ground floor retail space approached the Villages for help recruiting businesses to occupy their vacant storefronts on Agnes Street. There were four vacant storefronts in two buildings, which resulted in an entire block with no street presence. The spaces neighbored Tashmoo Biergarten. That summer, the Villages wrote and received a grant from the Kresge Foundation to execute a retail planning effort in the neighborhood. Brian contacted Michael Forsyth of the Detroit Economic Growth Corporation (DEGC) to discuss the underlying needs and explore opportunities to collaborate for retail recruitment and renovations. The collaborative effort would serve as the pilot for the DEGC’s newly formed REVOLVE Detroit program.

The Villages CDC was able to build strong working relationships with the building owners, as the DEGC’s REVOLVE program was able to bring additional funds to the initiative while also elevating retail recruiting and marketing efforts. The Villages CDC, REVOLVE, and the building owners issued a joint request for proposals seeking pop-up and permanent businesses. DEGC leveraged its strong relationships with the press to market the RFP, while the Villages and building owners hosted open houses for interested entrepreneurs. The RFP received an overwhelming response, with over 25 applicants, including both well-established businesses, along with first time entrepreneurs—many of which sought permanent leases.

The Villages and REVOLVE facilitated a series of interviews to vet the candidates with owners and worked with both building owners to help curate an optimal mix of retailers. Within two months, letters of intent had been signed to fill all of the vacant storefronts permanently. The Villages and REVOLVE worked together to activate the spaces with pop-up businesses, while leases were negotiated and renovations planned. Pop-ups included a coffee and bake shop called Coffee and (___) and an apparel shop called PRAMU, which morphed into a retail shop with an art gallery and event space. The pop-ups took on a life of their own, spinning off into another art gallery and a pop-up holiday movie theater.
Pop-ups helped create tremendous buzz while engaging the community in what it was like to have a business district again. Pop-ups built momentum into the launch of new permanent businesses, all while engaging the community and marketing the area to a broader audience.

**CHALLENGES**

The Villages played an important role, solving many challenges that went into activating these spaces. The Villages helped facilitate zoning variances to allow the new permanent uses and provided gap funding alongside the REVOLVE program to support the costs of renovations. While there was a rich engagement process with tremendous outcomes, once the project was complete, there was a need to acknowledge the people who contributed the small things throughout the years to create a stable neighborhood that in turn, created the foundation to attract retail. There are people who have lived in these areas for a long time who do trash pick-ups and watch the streets late at night that should be recognized in revitalization projects.

**BENEFITS**

There is a significant value in using temporary uses to build the foundation and demand for permanent uses. Tashmoo Biergarten set the groundwork and built the buzz in 2011 by activating a vacant space and acting as a social community gathering spot. Pop-up shops along Agnes created a more permanent, albeit temporary space to engage the community in redevelopment of the business district, while building and sustaining momentum. Pop-up events, coupled with a robust communications and marketing strategy, were used to unveil the permanent businesses at the Villages Fall Festival to further build excitement for the new, up and coming retail district.

Collaboration also created tremendous value. Partnering with the DEGC’s REVOLVE program helped match the funds from the Villages, and also increased the human capital for the project. Joint retail recruiting, marketing, and interviewing resulted in a more efficient and effective project.

**LESSONS LEARNED**

The public often views pop-ups as short-term businesses inside of permanent spaces. Detroit uses pop-ups to create value out of a space that otherwise had none. The community wants to know that the space they see and interact with will always be there— that they can come back next year and it will occupied. Continuity has to happen; otherwise pop-up becomes about starting over again, which isn’t what these initiatives are about. Though pop-ups switch in and out, individually, they get the chance to open a better business next time around after learning what takes place during their most recent pop-up term.
BUILDING OWNERS

ABOUT

West Village Manor is owned by LAND, Inc., a Michigan non-profit real estate development corporation. It was one of the properties that participated in the REVOLVE program in West Village. Jackie Bejma is Executive Director of LAND, Inc. She worked with the Brian Hurtienne of the Villages CDC and Michael Forsyth of REVOLVE to facilitate a pop-up art gallery and temporary window art installations, while helping start three new permanent businesses in the building: Detroit Vegan Soul, The Red Hook, and Tarot and Tea. Jackie’s role was, in partnership with Brian and Michael, to review the 25 proposals that were submitted, to interview the entrepreneurs who submitted those proposals, and then to provide project management for renovations to the commercial spaces that would eventually be occupied by chosen entrepreneurs.

HOW IT HAPPENED

LAND, Inc. acquired the West Village Manor building in 2009, a three-story apartment building with ground floor retail space. Since acquisition, the commercial spaces, along with those in the neighboring Parkstone Building, remained predominately vacant. All of the units needed renovation. Traditional brokers were ineffective in recruiting high quality tenants with the capacity to take on both business and renovation investments. Vacant storefronts combined with a lack of funds to renovate the spaces were hurting cash flow on the property.

The Villages CDC and REVOLVE met with LAND, Inc. to discuss the possibility of conducting a pop-up business competition at the building, with the hopes of building demand to fill the space full time. It seemed to be a win-win proposition that could generate interest in the community, draw attention to affordable commercial space for emerging entrepreneurs, and drive new and exciting developments. LAND, Inc. participated in a joint request for proposals for pop-up and permanent businesses, which produced tremendous interest. The RFP discovered many new prospects, and eventually introduced us to three new full-time tenants. LAND, Inc. reviewed all the proposals, interviewed top entrepreneurs, and ultimately decided which entrepreneurs to lease to in collaboration with the Villages, REVOLVE, and the adjacent building owner. West Village hosted a series of pop-up events, an art gallery, and then provided project management for renovations to the commercial spaces for the permanent tenants.
CHALLENGES

The challenge hosting pop-ups is the transition between the end and the beginning of construction. More coordination was needed to ensure a smooth and timely process between the pop-up tenant and the contract. The primary challenges were associated with preparations for permanent tenants. Permitting, inspections, and the inevitable unknowns that come with older buildings caused delays in construction. Lease negotiations with permanent tenants took longer than expected. In particular, legal assistance for lease negotiations can be a challenge for small business start-ups with limited access to funds.

BENEFITS

Partnership with the DEGC’s REVOLVE program and the Villages CDC was extremely beneficial. The number and quality of responses received from entrepreneurs interested in opening a shop in the building was a surprise. Having the DEGC promote the initiative led to higher quality responses. It provided more choices and helped find the ideal tenant in a shorter amount of time, increasing cash flow and bringing in resources for renovations. Although pop-up wasn’t needed to vet prospective permanent tenants, it was a great way to bring life back to the space at little or no cost to the landlord. The pop-ups were extremely creative in making small improvements to the space that had a big impact. Additionally, the publicity and media centered on West Village was what the area needed for recognition and sustainability. Now, the entire block is full and enjoying a comeback that is believed to have a lasting impact.

LESSONS LEARNED

In addition to marketing and collaboration provided by REVOLVE and the Villages, technical assistance for the entrepreneurs is also needed. Assistance with legal, back office/back of house business operations, and inventory controls are all things that small businesses need to thrive over the long-term, but they also need it at the outset of start-up. Many small-scale entrepreneurs also need coaching and support during the first year of operations. Access to capital is not the only challenge. It is also capacity, understanding of the market, and understanding of the business itself.
ABOUT

Coffee and (___) made its debut as a pop-up in West Village in the fall of 2012. The shop is ran by classically trained pastry chef and West Village resident, Angela Foster. The pop-up offered seasonal pastries, locally roasted coffee, teas, and artisan hot cocoa. The basic concept, “Coffee and (whatever Angela decided to bake that day),” was perfectly suited for the temporary nature of the business. The pop-up lasted about 90 days on Agnes Street, filling the community’s insatiable demand for a cozy gathering spot and caffeine while amassing a large following in the press and social media. Coffee and (___) built on its success in West Village to help launch its next pop-up in the Jefferson-Chalmers neighborhood of Detroit, which is potentially going permanent in 2014.

HOW IT HAPPENED

Angela received an e-mail from FoodLab Detroit, a group of Metro Detroit food entrepreneurs, about REVOLVE Detroit’s request for proposals and attended open houses to see the retail spaces in West Village. Angela was just moving into the neighborhood from Delaware and wanted a public meeting space that allowed her to connect with her neighbors. She looked at the West Village initiative as an opportunity to open a coffee shop that acted as the engagement space she was looking for.

She developed a business plan in response to the RFP. After a few interviews with the project team and building owners, she was chosen to open a pop-up shop. While the space most recently served as a restaurant, the kitchen was inoperable and the space was inhabitable.

She borrowed furniture, plants, a coffee mug collection, and a record player. Angela and her friends joined the building owners, the Villages and REVOLVE for a few late night sessions cleaning the space. REVOLVE and the Villages helped secure more furniture from the neighborhood. Angela obtained a temporary food permit from the Detroit Institute of Population Health and began cooking pastries out of a commercial kitchen. She signed a license agreement with the building owner that was provided by REVOLVE in substitute for a lease. REVOLVE helped generate press for the opening and the shop took on a life of its own. Angela’s pastries and personality were a hit in the community, and soon the neighborhood began to take ownership in the shop. People brought more furniture and music. Someone even let Angela borrow an espresso machine. The rotating menu of pastries created something new to market every day. In the last two weeks, Coffee and (___) featured their most popular items to drive traffic to the store before the pop-up was over.
CHALLENGES

Angela desired to create a name for herself. As a barista in college and a pastry chef later on in the Virgin Islands, she sought to have the same credibility in her new city. For the first two weeks of the pop-up term, one of her former pastry assistants flew into town to help launch the coffee shop’s social media presence.

Because there wasn’t a kitchen in the space, Angela had to commute to and from a commercial kitchen in Madison Heights to West Village daily. Someone would fill in at the shop while she would go bake. For her, the easiest part was standing behind the counter, the hardest being the lack of sleep and demands if being both a baker and business owner. It served as a real life test for the small business lifestyle.

While Angela had significant experience as a pastry chef, this was her first experience as a business owner and operator. She was able to discover what she knew and what she didn’t. When the pop-up concluded, she enrolled in D:Hive’s Build Class, a business and project planning class designed for aspiring and established entrepreneurs. Equipped with education in the classroom and in the real world, Coffee and (___)’s significantly improved its latest pop-up in a different neighborhood to the point where Angela is making the business permanent.

BENEFITS

Many people that were inspired by her new venture donated equipment and time to help with the space. This created a true sense of community ownership in the business. Contributors would bring in their friends and family to brag about “the coffee shop they helped create.” This not only increased sales, but created stronger customer relationships. Coffee and (___) excelled at using social media to connect with customers. Because the coffee shop was only temporary in West Village, many people came out to enjoy it while it lasted— “people love things that are fleeting,” says Angela. She eventually established a name for herself as well as relationships that contributed to the continuation of the coffee shop. She landed countless catering jobs, some of which are long standing as a result of her experience in West Village.

LESSONS LEARNED

Those who are interested in going from pop-up to permanent, must understand the importance of developing a space that will remain up-to-code and can sustain a business longer than three months. More due diligence is needed to assess the condition of the space – both regulatory and physically – early in the process. This includes understanding and executing on construction needs, architecture plans, zoning and building code issues and securing financing. When a space is temporary, the permitting process is less extensive than when permanent. If the pop-up use is consistent with the previous use, and the building is up to date on inspections, generally speaking a Temporary Use Certificate is all that is needed. Permanent businesses need a Certificate of Occupancy, which indicates that a building meets all city codes, including building, plumbing, electrical and mechanical systems. Other issues pertaining to zoning and permitting may also come into play when a different use is proposed.
HOW IT HAPPENED

Edmund Zagorin saw the West Village RFP online and applied with his business partner, Dylan Box. They thought they were applying for December holiday retail pop-up, but were asked to open for an extended stay during the fall and had only two weeks to prepare for the launch.

PRAMU didn’t exist in any form before the West Village initiative. Edmund and Dylan thought this would be an enjoyable experience for them both, so the pop-up clothing store developed once the opportunity arose. For them, it was about trying something they have never done before: working in retail and running their own shop. Dylan was coming from a background in design and architecture, while Edmund was experienced in film and producing. The pop-up was considered short-term, having no expectation of becoming permanent. Alongside unique items made by PRAMU, the shop also sold apparel and products from several Detroit designers. The pop-up grew organically, to include events programming to help engage a broader audience, experiment and bring more people to the space.

CHALLENGES

In the span of two weeks, PRAMU had to obtain furniture, clothing racks, insurance, and build-out the space. The entrepreneurs were both freelancing at the time and dropped everything, working 12-hours a day to make this happen. Getting insurance was an unforeseen issue. They found that most insurance companies only offer year-long policies, so working with an insurance company to get a three-month policy for a small scale project was one of their initial problems. Waiting for tasks that were out of their hands was worrisome, such as inspections, city approval, and some renovation.

Though they expected the hectic rush leading up to the opening, additional time was needed to get people to come out to the store, as West Village wasn’t a retail destination at the time. The shop was dependant on walk-ins, having the bulk of their customers coming from Coffee and (___) from Tashmoo Biergarten’s events. Like many start-up retail businesses, it was hard for them to stand alone as a new
shop. It was important for them to be placed next to other businesses and to be located in an area that was highly trafficked.

**BENEFITS**

The West Village project was extremely collaborative, offering direct connections to building owners and other resources that allowed them to focus on products and other obligations that contributed to the success of the shop. Flaco Shalom, a local Detroit artist, helped with the space and coordinated various pop-up art events in the shop. This not only helped with the look and vibe of the space, but also brought in a new pool of customers. The owners of PRAMU had many friends who were skilled in the same areas that they were, so their work was showcased during the pop-up term as well.

Social media platforms, such as Facebook and Twitter, were a key tool used to request furniture donations. They also used Craigslist to help develop the space the way they envisioned. Fred’s Unique Antiques on 8 Mile Rd in Warren, MI, allowed PRAMU to rent furniture at a cheap rate, permitting them to keep a fraction of the profits if the furniture sold. REVOLVE Detroit helped to spread the word and bring in additional furniture that was needed, such as mannequins, clothing racks, and display cabinets.

**LESSONS LEARNED**

Dylan and Edmund experienced the behind-the-scenes management that occurs in retail shops. They learned the importance of location and how shops like theirs are dependent on the businesses surrounding it. If PRAMU were to go forward with their shop after the pop-up term, they would have chosen a different location and done more promoting and coordination with different events.

The pop-up format gave them the ability to prototype their business model. Rushing to start a business causes high risk, though it is a way to test the success of a concept at a cheaper rate. Working with different networks of people created new working relationships between PRAMU and other people involved in West Village long after the pop-up term.
Flaco was recruited to be a creative curator during the West Village pop-ups in the fall of 2012. His first installation, "Smiling Faces," was a series of murals to reflect a warm community and bring life to the long empty storefront windows. He recognized the need to help boost traffic and interest to support PRAMU and Coffee and ( ). He helped PRAMU program events that helped with the success and vibe of the retail space. It started with “Church of Hustle”, his concept that spawned a new art gallery inside the pop-up shop which would give way to spontaneous opportunities for events and new artists to showcase their craft. This unplanned experience created authentic opportunities to engage a new audience and bring more people to West Village.

Prior to opening the Untitled Bottega, Flaco was introduced to the West Village project through Dylan Box from PRAMU. Pop-ups only filled some of the empty storefronts, so Flaco was commissioned to activate windows with art installations. From there, his role expanded to bring arts programming to the retail experience.

Working on a time-sensitive project with people you have never worked with before can be trying. People reacted differently under stress and had their own routine way of doing things, especially artists. The challenge of bringing together different audiences and skill sets ended up creating opportunities for experimentation and new ways to test previously untested models.
**BENEFITS**

For artists, the pop-up format is quite similar to that of a gallery opening. It is about temporarily showcasing your work and creating an atmosphere that is applicable to your audience. West Village acted as an opportunity to interact, network, and grow a community through the arts. Because of opportunities like this where artists have the chance to work with different people and organizations; in the future, other groups and organizations are more open to working with them as well and see the value of art in creating authentic experiences and intrigue.

**LESSONS LEARNED**

Knowing your market is always a lesson. There are always opportunities to test new ideas in different places through the arts to understand how people react and what they value. It is also important to promote intelligently and diligently in order to optimize the opportunities of arts programming for community engagement and business marketing.
CHAPTER 3: ENTREPRENEUR RESOURCES
HOW TO USE THIS SECTION OF THE GUIDEBOOK

We know how entrepreneurs like their information: simple and to the point. You have enough on your plate as it is. This section provides checklists, sample documents, permits and resources based on our experience and research. These are resources aimed to facilitate action. We’ve cut through the red tape and countless hours of trial and error to distill information down to what we believe are essential. With that said, every situation is different and we can’t account for everything. These resources should in no way replace your own research nor are they an excuse not to do your own homework. One thing however remains constant - you get out what you put in. We wish you best on your endeavor and encourage you to be Revolutionary.

This guidebook provides the following:

A pop-up checklist that covers the basics to getting started, legalities and formalities, construction and deconstruction and marketing and promotion.

A building assessment guide that we use to determine the “retail readiness” of a space. If you find yourself in the midst of a building renovation, in addition to starting a business, be sure to engage design-build professionals.

Permits including temporary use permits and temporary food permits that may be necessary to make your pop-up a reality.

Sample forms that REVOLVE uses. This includes license agreements (our version of a lease) that was based on Pittsburgh’s Project Pop-Up. REVOLVE also uses additional forms and contracts (not included) for participants chosen to participate directly with our program.

Resource guide which includes partial lists of insurance agencies, Detroit businesses where we’ve procured furniture and equipment, and the “Biz Grid” – an infographic designed to help Detroit entrepreneurs navigate the landscape of organizations providing business assistance within the city.
## 3. ENTREPRENEUR RESOURCES | REVOLVE POP-UP CHECKLIST

### REVOLVE POP-UP CHECKLIST

This checklist covers several requirements to execute a pop-up business. While it is a long to-do list, it is by no means exhaustive. It is oriented towards pop-up businesses locating within a vacant storefront and doesn’t cover things such as co-locating with an existing business, art installations, or events programming. This list was developed to help aide in the development of pop-up stores but shouldn’t replace your own planning. It’s also subject to change. Other great resources exist, like *Storefront’s Ultimate Guide to Opening a Pop-Up Shop*. The lists cover four topics: Part 1) Get Ready for Business provides the basics. Part 2) Legalities and Formalities details important tasks for permitting, insurance and business start-up. Part 3) Construction and Deconstruction provides considerations for designing and building the space. Part 4) Marketing and Promotion explores some of the basics for getting the word out.

### GETTING READY FOR BUSINESS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TASK</th>
<th>NOTES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Develop a business plan for pop-up and permanent business.</td>
<td>Not required, but highly recommended. Pop-up can provide an opportunity to test and refine facets of a permanent business with less risk and cost. Determine your goals for the pop-up. Ask yourself: How do short-term actions and achievements for my pop-up advance my long-term business aspirations?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Develop a plan to execute the pop-up.</td>
<td>Your business plan is one thing, but developing a plan for executing your pop-up is more detailed and action oriented. What is your budget? What is your schedule? This to-do list is a great start for figuring out your plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identify neighborhood(s) and space(s).</td>
<td>Identify the location and space that best fits your business model. Check out REVOLVE spaces here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reach out to locals.</td>
<td>Inquire about opportunities to collaborate with community organizations and get insider information from local businesses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Price products and set financial goals.</td>
<td>Determine sales targets, costs, profit, unit margins, etc. This is your chance to test financial viability of your business and/or product.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Develop point-of-sales system.</td>
<td>Determine how to collect and process credit card and cash sales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Determine hours of operation, opening and closing dates.</td>
<td>This is vital to the success of your pop-up. Keep consistent hours so that customers know when to come. Use openings to generate excitement and buzz. Use closing dates to drive traffic to the shop before the pop-up is gone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Determine staffing needs.</td>
<td>Can you do it all by yourself or will you need help? This is a chance to also determine staffing needs for a full-time business.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Determine merchandising and service strategy.</td>
<td>How will you display your products? What is the experience you want your customers to have and remember? How does design help elevate sales.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gather as much data as you can on your business.</td>
<td>Prove yourself and investors what the economic opportunity is. This can help secure loans, determine if the location is right and what you can afford for rent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Develop strategy for post-pop-up.</td>
<td>If you’re planning on going permanent and the pop-up is proving to be successful, be sure to start lease negotiations with the building owner ASAP. You could lose out to another potential full-time tenant after you market the space and demonstrate a viable economic opportunity.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### LEGALITIES AND FORMALITIES

This section of the checklist covers some important required tasks. Tasks, such as registering your business with the state will help you get closer to becoming a permanent business, while obtaining insurance can get you closer to operating full-time. Other permitting tasks are specific to the City of Detroit. It’s highly recommended that you work with the City’s Building, Safety, Engineering and Environmental Department to not only determine requirements to open a pop-up, but to identify needs to transition your temporary use to a permanent one at your location of choice.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TASK</th>
<th>COST</th>
<th>PROCESS TIME</th>
<th>NOTES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Register your business and file articles of incorporation.</td>
<td>$50</td>
<td>10 days or less</td>
<td>See if your business name is available <a href="#">here</a>. Fill articles of incorporation <a href="#">here</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apply for FEIN.</td>
<td>No fee</td>
<td>Immediate</td>
<td>Apply <a href="#">here</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Register to pay sales taxes.</td>
<td>No fee</td>
<td>4 weeks or less</td>
<td>Register <a href="#">here</a>. If you make retail sales at only one or two events in Michigan per year, complete form <a href="#">here</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obtain general liability insurance.</td>
<td>Varies</td>
<td>Varies</td>
<td>See partial list of insurance options <a href="#">here</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work with <a href="#">BSE&amp;ED</a> to determine the “existing use” and “compliance” of the space and all permitting needs.</td>
<td>No fee</td>
<td>Varies</td>
<td>Visit or contact the BSE&amp;ED. An in-person visit is recommended. If the pop-up use is the same as the previous use AND the property is current on inspections, you’re good to occupy the space. If the pop-up use is the same as the previous use BUT not current on inspections, inspections are required. Coordinate with the property owner to schedule and pay for the inspections. If the pop-up use is DIFFERENT than the existing use, complete a temporary use permit. If you’re considering going permanent, use this opportunity to identify requirements to transition your pop-up to permanent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete a temporary use permit (if needed, see step above).</td>
<td>$150 and up</td>
<td>Minimum 3-5 days processing</td>
<td>See form <a href="#">here</a>. In addition to completing the form you will need 1) a license agreement/lease showing property owner permission to use property and 2) three copies of a floor plan for the space drawn to scale and printed on minimum of 11x17. Architecture stamp is not required. Permits can be walked through on Tuesdays and Thursdays at BSE&amp;ED.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete building inspection (if needed, see two steps prior).</td>
<td>$208</td>
<td>Varies</td>
<td>See above. If you’re also proposing alterations to the space (structural, plumbing, electrical and/or mechanical) building and/or trade permits may be required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Submit temporary food permit (food users only).</td>
<td>$125 - $250</td>
<td>Submit 2 weeks from opening</td>
<td>Obtain permit <a href="#">here</a>. Permits are good for 14 days. In-person submission reccomended. Money orders only. $125 non-profit, $250 for profit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete lease or license agreement.</td>
<td>No fee</td>
<td>Submit 2 weeks from opening</td>
<td>See <a href="#">sample license agreement</a> that REVOLVE uses as a substitute to a lease.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete REVOLVE license agreement (if REVOLVE participant)</td>
<td>No fee</td>
<td>Submit 2 weeks from opening</td>
<td>See <a href="#">license agreement</a>. This is a requirement as a REVOLVE participant.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### POP-UP CONSTRUCTION AND DECONSTRUCTION

Opening a pop-up can sometimes feel like opening a permanent store on an abbreviated timeline. During the planning process, it is important to understand what construction tasks are necessary for you to achieve your short-term goals while advancing your long-term vision. A strong understanding of your goals, budget and schedule are essential to determining how much you should invest in a space.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TASK</th>
<th>NOTES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Assess condition of space and determine construction and design needs.</strong></td>
<td>See simple property assessment form <a href="#">here</a>. It is highly recommended that you engage a design-build professional to determine design and construction needs for your pop-up. Determine build-out needs that are required for your pop-up and those can wait until you go permanent. Develop a budget, schedule and a plan for construction. If any substantial changes or additions are required you may need a building and/or trade permit(s). Be sure to get improvements approved by the building owner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Develop a floor plan (if necessary) and design scheme.</strong></td>
<td>Floor plans, drawn to scale, are required for temporary use permits. <a href="#">Google SketchUp</a> is a free and useful tool for developing floor plans. Use the floor plan to layout and design your shop – seating, merchandising, service, paint colors, shelving etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Recruit contractors and/or volunteers for construction.</strong></td>
<td>Some improvements – electrical or plumbing for example – will likely require qualified contractor. Identify and execute on those needs early on and find good professionals you can trust. Identify other improvements that volunteers can help with. Nothing helps local word of mouth marketing more than involving your customers in constructing your pop-up shop. Your customers will feel a sense of ownership and will bring their family, friends and neighbors to show off the store they helped create.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Clean and complete improvements to the space.</strong></td>
<td>Cleaning and a fresh coat of paint can go a long way. Be sure to get improvements approved by the building owner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Collect furniture, shelving, and lighting as needed.</strong></td>
<td>Ask local residents, friends, families, and others to donate items you need. Ask REVOLVE what you need and we’ll try to point you towards someone who has it. See list of resources for rentals and purchases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Obtain and install all equipment for pop-up.</strong></td>
<td>See above. If you’re a food user and will have dishes, you’ll need a three-compartment sink. If you have hot or cold food, you’ll need equipment to maintain temperatures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Recruit volunteers for deconstruction.</strong></td>
<td>Start planning 2 weeks in advance. Rent or borrow a truck if needed. This is the responsibility of the tenant and an often overlooked aspect of the pop-up process.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MARKETING AND PROMOTION

Strong marketing and promotion are essential to a successful pop-up. This is your opportunity to garner some invaluable attention to a new business or concept. You’ll need to cover all the basics - location, hours, opening and closing date – while also determining the story you want to tell. If you have a strong understanding of what you want to achieve during your pop-up, marketing and promotion is one way to help influence those outcomes. Remember too that it’s not all about you. Teaming up with local neighborhood leaders and existing businesses, can help market the destination as well. Find opportunities to co-promote and leverage new networks where ever possible.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TASK</th>
<th>NOTES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Develop a press release.</td>
<td>If selected as a REVOLVE participant, REVOLVE will help market your pop-up. REVOLVE will help promote any pop-up by listing events on RevolveDetroit.com and social media pages (Facebook, Twitter, Instagram).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Build social media presence.</td>
<td>Build your following on Facebook, Twitter, and Instagram. Be sure to create a Facebook event and invite the world. Cross promotion with other businesses, events, and entrepreneurs boosts visibility. Click here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engage local residents in construction of your pop-up to support word-of-mouth marketing.</td>
<td>Nothing helps local word-of-mouth marketing more than involving your customers in constructing your pop-up shop. Your customers will feel a sense of ownership and will bring their family, friends, and neighbors to show off the store they helped create.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work with CDC’s for local outreach.</td>
<td>Community Development Corporations often have emails or contact information for hundreds of neighboring residents. Work with CDC leadership to craft messages and advertisements for your pop-up. This is a win-win for both of you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Submit press releases to local media outlets.</td>
<td>Submit your press release to local publications like Model D and Curbed Detroit two weeks prior. Larger publications like the Detroit News, Free Press or television programs need a press advisory a week before and one-on-one outreach to get coverage before or during your event. You may consider giving one press outlet the “exclusive.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grand opening party event and promotion.</td>
<td>Print and distribute flyers, make Facebook events, and send out electronic invites. This is your biggest opportunity to announce to the world that you’re opening.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plan interim events and collaborations.</td>
<td>New and interesting events will keep people coming out. Collaborating with other businesses or artists is a great way to reach new audiences and create new marketing opportunities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closing celebration and promotion.</td>
<td>Because you’re a temporary business, it’s important to let customers know that your product is only available for a certain time and if they don’t visit they’ll miss out. Instill a sense of urgency into potential customers and make sure you celebrate your success on your last day(s). You deserve it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REVOLVE DETROIT PROPERTY ASSESSMENT

This form is designed for building owners interested in participating in the REVOLVE Detroit Program. The form presents the basic benefits and obligations for REVOLVE participation and also collects basic information about property ownership, the condition of the space, and the parameters for supporting new uses. This form can also be used by prospective entrepreneurs and artists that are considering activating or leasing a space. It’s a great starting point to support owner/user collaboration and coordination.

REVOLVE is a collaborative program of the Detroit Economic Growth Corporation (DEGC) that partners with local leaders, building owners, entrepreneurs, and artists to activate vacant storefronts with transformational businesses and art installations. The goal of the program is to foster the evolution and vibrancy of Detroit’s neighborhood business districts. This form assesses a property owner’s willingness and qualifications to participate in the REVOLVE Detroit Program.

REVOLVE DETROIT PROGRAM PARTICIPATION

The following section asks questions about your willingness to participate and contribute to the REVOLVE Detroit Program.

What REVOLVE can do for you:

- Recruit temporary “pop-up” businesses and art to activate the space (little to no owner cost).
- Market the space and neighborhood to prospective tenants (free).
- Recruit full-time tenants, that pay full rent (free).
- Potentially provide matching grants or other financial tools to support build-out (if applicable).

What you can do to participate in REVOLVE:

- Provide free or reduced rent to temporary “pop-up” businesses and art (tenants or REVOLVE typically pay all operating expenses).
- Specify the amount of time pop-up users can occupy the space.
- Complete a Memorandum of Understanding and License Agreement.

Pop-Up Basics:

Are you willing to let a pop-up business or art installation temporarily occupy the space? YES NO
Will you provide rent for free or at a reduced rate? What do you want to charge? _________
Note: Both are required to qualify for consideration of free marketing and recruitment as well as matching grants to support build-out if available.

How long could a pop-up user expect to stay?

- One weekend, plus prep time (Event pop-up)
- Two weeks (Short-term pop-up)
- One month (or more)
- Until I get the full-time tenant I’m looking for

When will the space be available? ________________ How long will the space be available? ________________

Note: In the event that a full-time tenant is secured, the landlord must provide the pop-up tenant with 30 days notice to vacate the space.
PROPERTY ASSESSMENT

Property Address: _____________________________

Contact Information
Name: ________________________________
Phone: ________________________________
Email: ________________________________

Your role: (choose all that apply)
○ Building Owner
○ Property Manager
○ Broker
○ Other

Quick Assessment of Building Condition and Needs
Previous Use: ________________________________ Desired future use: ________________________________

General description of the space: (your selling points)
________________________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________________________

What is the general condition of the building?
○ Great (it’s move-in ready)
○ Good (minimal repairs and $)
○ Fair (it needs some work and $$)
○ Poor (it needs serious work and $$$$)

YES NO
○ Is there working electricity?
○ Are there working bathrooms?
○ Is there Certificate of Occupancy?
○ All bills up to date?
○ Is there working heat/AC?

Please list improvements needed to get the space move-in ready. If you know the cost of improvements please include this here. If you have a budget for improvements please also include this here.
________________________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________________________

Are there any impediments to leasing the space beyond its condition that we should be aware of?
________________________________________________________________________________________
________________________________________________________________________________________

Utilities
Who will pay for utilities?
○ Landlord
○ Tenant
○ Electricity
○ Gas
○ Water and sewer
○ Garbage Disposal

Insurance and Compliance
What are your insurance requirements?
________________________________________________________________________________________

YES NO Are you willing to add a pop-up tenant as an additional insured on your insurance policy?
○ ○
BUILDING ASSESSMENT

The following section asks detailed questions about the building’s condition. This helps us understand what improvements are necessary in order to get the space “retail ready.” Please answer the questions to the best of your ability.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flooring</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Estimated Cost:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wood</td>
<td>Great (it’s move-in ready)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cement/Concrete</td>
<td>Good (minimal repairs and $)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carpet</td>
<td>Fair (It needs some work and $$)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood</td>
<td>Poor (it needs serious work and $$$$)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Something else</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bathrooms</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Estimated Cost:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How many bathrooms?</td>
<td>Great (it’s move-in ready)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do they work?</td>
<td>Good (minimal repairs and $)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are they ADA compliant?</td>
<td>Fair (It needs some work and $$)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Poor (it needs serious work and $$$$)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Electricity</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Estimated Cost:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is there electricity?</td>
<td>Great (it’s move-in ready)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are the outlets grounded?</td>
<td>Good (minimal repairs and $)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How many work?</td>
<td>Fair (It needs some work and $$)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Poor (it needs serious work and $$$$)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Heating and AC</th>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Estimated Cost:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is there heat?</td>
<td>Great (it’s move-in ready)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is there AC?</td>
<td>Good (minimal repairs and $)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fair (It needs some work and $$)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Poor (it needs serious work and $$$$)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Can we make modifications to the space? If so, please describe what’s allowed:

________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________

What modifications are you willing to make to the space? These are the financial responsibility of the landlord.

________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________
SMALL BUSINESS SERVICES

**Detroit BizGrid**

The BizGrid is a physical infographic designed to help Detroit entrepreneurs navigate the landscape of organizations providing business assistance within the city. The BizGrid features 54 organizations offering services ranging from business planning and strategy to real estate assistance, funding, co-working space, and beyond. Its crisp, simple design enables an entrepreneur to find names and contact information for assistance organizations based on the entrepreneur’s business stage and needs. The BizGrid was created by a committee of the Detroit Business Support Network consisting of Bizdom, D:hive, the Detroit Economic Growth Corporation, InsYght, & TechTown with the support of the New Economy Initiative of Southeast Michigan. The committee drew on its members’ day-to-day interface with entrepreneurs and invited input from business owners who represent the BizGrid’s target user base. We thought we’d share this resource rather than re-creating the wheel.

![BizGrid Image]

**D2D Business Database**

Refined other small businesses in Detroit. The database introduces Michigan companies to opportunities that help them grow and expand.

**PERMITS**

The following provides two permits that are commonly used to support temporary uses in the City of Detroit. Temporary Use permits may be required by the City of Detroit’s Building, Safety, Engineering and Environmental Department (BSE&ED) to activate a space. Temporary Food permits may be required by Detroit’s Institute of Population Health (IPH). Both permits are unique to Detroit. Other municipalities will have their own regulations and permitting requirements. See the REVOLVE Checklist for more information to understand if the forms are required and how to complete them. We’ve also included contact information for BSE&ED and IPH officials to contact with further questions.

Helen Broughton  
313.628.2459  
broughtonh@detroitmi.gov

Mignon Lott  
313.522.0673  
mignonlott@gmail.com

**Temporary Use Permit**  
**Temporary Food Permit**
SAMPLE AGREEMENTS

The following are three “license agreements” which REVOLVE uses to help define roles and responsibilities between pop-up participants. These documents are based on Pittsburgh’s Project Pop-Up program. We’re grateful that the good folks in Pittsburgh shared these with us, so we’re sharing them with you. Please note that when these documents are used outside of the REVOLVE program, users will be responsible for changing these documents to meet individual needs. Independent legal counsel may be required.

The “Building Owner and Participant License Agreement” can serve as a substitute for a lease for REVOLVE pop-ups. “DEGC and Building Owner License Agreement” serves as an agreement between the DEGC (the managers of the REVOLVE Program) and building owners. This form can be used when REVOLVE essentially master leases a space to allow for a series of pop-up programming. The “DEGC and Tenant License Agreement” can be used to simply solidify responsibilities for participating in the REVOLVE program, or can be used when REVOLVE essentially sub-leases to one or more pop-up tenants in a space.

Building Owner and Participant License Agreement
DEGC and Building Owner License Agreement
DEGC and Tenant License Agreement

Note: These are references that we have collected. Use them as a starting point. We do not endorse the organizations and we do not endorse the views they express or the products/services they offer.

INSURANCE CONTACTS

ACT Insurance Program
http://www.actinspro.com
$39 - $265

Fractured Atlas
http://www.fracturedatlas.org/site/liability/PublicArt
$425-525

Johnsonese
http://www.johnsonese.com/creative_businesses

K&K Insurance Group
http://www.kandkinsurance.com/EventsAttractions/Pages/Special-Events.aspx

Popupspace
http://www.popupspace.com/index.jsp?nav=insurance
$120

Veracity Insurance
http://www.veracityinsurance.com/products/insurance/special-events-liability-insurance/

Detroit Insurance Agency
http://www.aemourad.com/SmallBusiness/DIA.aspx

Van Wyk Risk & Financial Management
www.vanwykcorp.com
Matt Capel
Main: 616.942.5070
Direct: 616.726.1068
mattc@vanwykcorp.com
3. ENTREPRENEUR RESOURCES | FURNITURE AND EQUIPMENT

FURNITURE AND EQUIPMENT

**Architectural Salvage Warehouse of Detroit**
4885 15th St
Detroit, MI 48208
313.896.8333
http://www.aswdetroit.org/

**Detroit Antique Mall**
828 W Fisher Fwy
Detroit, MI 48201
313.963.5252

**Detroit Display**
1332 Broadway St
Detroit, MI 48226
Contact: Paul Balog
313.575.2004

**Detroit Store Fixture Co**
7545 W. Eight Mile Rd.
Detroit, MI 48221
313.341.3255
http://detroitstorefixture.com/

**Display Group**
1700 W Fort St
Detroit, MI 48216
313.965.3344
http://www.displaygroup.com/pages/home

**Eastern Market Antiques**
2530 Market St.
Detroit, MI 48207
313.259.0600
http://www.easternmarketantiques.com/

**Franklin Furniture**
5062 Loraine Street
Detroit, MI 48208
Contact: Jim
313.393.2500

**Fred’s Unique Furniture and Antiques**
http://fredsuniquefurniture.smugmug.com/

Warren Location
14901 E 8 Mile Rd
Warren, MI 48089
586.776.7100

Livernois Location
20201 Livernois
Detroit, MI 48221
313.345.0884

**Modern Stool Manufacturing Co (new and used furniture)**
4885 15th St
Detroit, MI 48208
313.896.8333
http://www.aswdetroit.org/

**People’s Restaurant Equipment Company**
2209 Gratiot Ave
Detroit, MI 48207
313.567.1944
http://www.peoplesrestaurantequipco.com/
THE COLLABORATIVE ECONOMY HONEYCOMB DIAGRAM
This diagram was built by Jeremiah Owyang, and is licensed under Creative Commons.
Collaborative Economy
Honeycomb Version 1.0

The Collaborative Economy enables people to efficiently get what they need from each other. Similarly, in nature, honeycombs are resilient structures that enable many individuals to access, share, and grow resources among a common group.

In this visual representation, this economy is organized into discrete families, sub-classes, and example companies. To access the full directory of 9000+ companies visit the Mesh Index, at meshing.com/companies managed by Mesh Labs.

By Jeremiah Owyang @Jowyang

With input from:
Neal Gorenflo (@gorenflo),
Lisa Gansky (@instigating),
Shervin Pishevar (@sherpa),
Mike Walsh (@mwalsh),
Brian Solis (@briansolis),
Alexandra Samuel (@dawntosphere),
and Vision Critical (@visioncritical).

Design by Vladimir Mirkovic www.transartdesign.com
May 2014. Creative Commons license: Attribution-NonCommercial.

KEY MARKET FORCES
- Societal Drivers
  - Desire to Connect
  - Sustainable Mindset
  - Population Increase

- Economic Drivers
  - Financial Climate
  - Untapped Idle Resources
  - Startups Heavily Funded

- Technology Enablers
  - Internet of Everything
  - Mobile Technologies
  - Social Networks
NEW ECONOMY OF SHARING

A presentation from Ann Daigle on the sharing economy
New Economy of Sharing

“Building individual & community value via sharing of responsibilities & resources.”

CNU 21 Salt Lake City
New Orleans Opportunity Shares

- Restaurant & Food Product Incubators
- Culinary Medicine “Teaching Kitchen”
- Food Industry Training Restaurants
- Community Urban Farms & Markets
- Social Service Innovators
- Small Business Office Shares
- Entrepreneurial Talent Incubators
Common Traits

• Locally Generated to Empower Individuals Through Sharing of Broad-Based Resources
• Strong Public/Private Partnerships
• Professional-Based Educational Services
• Strategic Consulting & Business Planning
• Experiential Learning
• Meaningful Networking
• Idea-Generating Thought Leadership
Edible Enterprises

• Provides culinary entrepreneurs with all the tools necessary to develop & successfully market Louisiana specialty food products
• Currently serves 42 Startups & has graduated 100’s
• Nonprofit collaboration between government, economic development agencies, corporate grants & Goodwill
• Recommend tenants have $2,000 startup
• Tenants pay hourly rental for shared commercial restaurant facilities & equipment
• Assistance with industry specific business resources, product development, sales & marketing
Café Reconcile

- Food service job incubator
- Trains disadvantaged teenagers in all aspects of the restaurant industry, giving them opportunity and hope
- Requires parallel classes in life and social skills
- Partners with local chefs and hospitality industry professionals, who hire “graduates”
- Imbedded in low-income neighborhood in corner, 3-story mixed-use building, hires only local teens.
- Café open daily & upper floors dedicated to classrooms and special events.
- A successful model that has been replicated nationally.
Café Reconcile
New Orleans

Feed your soul!
Please ask your server about today’s Chef Special.
Hollygrove Farms & Market

• CSA (Community Supported Agriculture)
• Collective of local farmers: backyard growers, community gardens, urban micro-farms
• Shared central market, experimental farm & demonstration site
• Promotes environmentally sustainable growers
• Education Programs: composting, cistern irrigation, recycling, chicken coops, sustainable gardening
• Collaborative marketing & sales outlets
Refresh Project

• Collaboration of Education (Tulane Culinary Medicine), Corporation (Whole Foods), Local Business (Grow Local - local farmer network), Collaboration (Broad Community Connection – government & Main Street Program) & Nonprofit (Liberty Kitchens - hospitality industry incubator)

• Goals: to provide fresh food & nutritional resources to the underserved community & grow the local economy

• Redevelopment of abandoned big box store in low income neighborhood as “center”

• Will grow to house numerous tenants & incubate opportunity (including a local land bank)
• An interactive Teaching Kitchen providing cooking skills for health improvement.

• Offers instruction on the principles of healthy food preparation and meal planning, breaking down the perceived barriers of cost, time and flavor through hands-on cooking classes, community discussions and outreach programs.

• Educates community members and current and future physicians about fundamental culinary skills and nutrition knowledge in order to enhance the patient-physician dialogue about the importance of dietary and lifestyle change.
Tulane Teaching Kitchen
RX for Health: Good Nutrition & Healthy Lifestyles. Community organizations collaborating for a healthier New Orleans.
The Propeller Incubator

- Co-working office for socially minded businesses & entrepreneurs
- Multiple open space & private office options
- Houses 40 organizations with room to grow
- Funded through grants & memberships
- Multi-level collaboration
- “Creative Financing Starts Locally”
“Pitch NOLA”

- “Start Up” weekend – 54 hour event where developers, designers, marketers, product managers & startups come together to share ideas, form teams, build products & launch startups
- Culminates in presentation to entrepreneurial leaders & venture capitalists
- Winners “give back” to community by leading future events
Identifies, Supports & Retains Entrepreneurial Talent in... *New Orleans*: a place for big ideas, grand dreams, and the passion to build, grow and execute.

The Entrepreneurial Ecosystem:

- Over 3,000 entrepreneurs
- Engage over 2,400 professionals
- Allocate 72,295 consultant hours
- Over $3.45 Mil in seed capital
- Portfolio of over $100Mil in annual revenue
- Created over 2,000 jobs
“Trust Your Crazy Ideas”

Annual IDEAinstitute
Competitive: “The good entrepreneur knows you may have to pitch your idea 100 times before one person funds you.”
Collaborative Network: Over 500 individuals and 20 universities
DRAFT NOTES TOWARDS A NEW ECONOMY OF SHARING

Draft notes for Ann Diagle’s *New Economy of Sharing* (on page 811).
1. One of the most elegant regenerative trends in cities is the recovering of lost community built around work. It not only empowers individuals, but brings great economic and social value to communities.

2. The more Shares there are, and the more they are connected, the stronger the LOCAL ECONOMY can become because resources are locally generated and retained. A number of grass-roots opportunity sharings are happening in NOLA. Not surprising, many are centered around the food industry – and include nutrition planning to farm to table enterprises. Also prominent are centers fostering entrepreneurship.

3. While Shares might have different levels of organization and diverse missions they all generate economic change by empowering people through reducing individual risk and softening entry into markets. Shares offer access to multiple resources relevant to the endeavor. Partnerships form the foundation for programs to maximize practical and financial resources. Education is key to more organized efforts and often includes access to high schools, community colleges and universities as well as professionals. Spaces offer consulting services that are targeted to the individual and the specific idea or product. Learning happens through doing via successful strategies. Networks that might take years to grow are established by the Share for participant access. Information and resources are cutting edge and market-proven.

4. We have six local food product and restaurant incubators in the New Orleans region, that range from a successful incubator in a local high school to Edible Enterprises, which is one of the most organized, best supported and largest facilities that is already enlarging.

5. It has 12,000 sf of space, conference rooms and offices, internet, a refrigeration room and now three commercial kitchens with various sizes of equipment to accommodate large scale canning, jarring and cooking operations. A large packaging / processing room with loading dock for shipping and receiving ensures they can do everything in one place.

6. Most of EE clients are older men and women. Many are small Mom & Pops wanting to do something with their grandma’s favorite recipe; Others (predominantly younger users) are looking to get established and grow into large operations. Those that are full time into the company tend to “graduate” or move into their own restaurant or food prep space after 2-3 years. Others have other careers and want to work part time on their food product as additional income. The incubator thus provides a permanent solution for small scale operations as well as transitional space.

7. Another type of share is the food service industry incubator that trains workers through experience in a restaurant. Café Reconcile is located in a mixed-use corner building, engrained in a socially and economically disadvantaged neighborhood. It teaches all the skills needed for the important New Orleans hospitality industry - from life skills which many don’t have, to
restaurant waitressing, cooking and management. The first floor restaurant is open to the public daily, and upper floors are available for special events and parties.

8. Participants are expected to attend regular educational classes held in classrooms on the upper floor for things like vocabulary and communication skills, job application and resume writing, and life skills that teach proper manners, grooming and time management.

9. Work sharing takes the form of a co-op in the growing agricultural and urban farming industry.

10. Hollygrove CSA brings together all levels of local and regional food producers and connects them with their market, as well as a support network of institutions including nonprofits and universities.

11. Rx for Health: good nutrition! Tulane Medical School has teamed with local chefs and restaurants in NOLA to promote Culinary Education, Workforce development, Research, Capacity Building & Community Engagement that focuses on healthcare through healthy cooking & eating.

The Center for Culinary Medicine has renovated part of the old warehouse into a Teaching Kitchen where future doctors and the public will learn about healthy lifestyles. The idea is to expand interest in healthy eating and incubate new restaurants and other opportunities to support the movement.

13. The Refresh Project is a broad-based collaboration that focuses on nutritional health and wellness as a road to community prosperity and citizen well being. Partners in education, healthcare, business, government and the nonprofit world came together to redevelop an abandoned grocery store in a blighted neighborhood. The current building houses the Broad St Main Street Association, the Tulane Teaching Kitchen (headed by a professional chef and group of Tulane Med School pediatric residents), a jobs-generating nonprofit that focuses on the restaurant industry, and a local land bank that concentrates on the redevelopment of abandoned property.

14. Addresses health issues such as obesity, diabetes, heart disease, high blood pressure through the perspective of nutrition and eating habits. Teaches Medical Students who in turn teach the public.

15. Social entrepreneurship in New Orleans. Mission: to solve pressing social & environmental challenges by incubating creative solutions of social innovators. 10 month Venture Accelerator helps early stage ventures for profits, nonprofits and hybrids become operational, reach financial sustainability & meet social impact targets.

16. Focus on issues like access to healthy food, criminal justice, the environment & more.

(Justice & Accountability Center of LA) Co-working desks are $150/month and permanent desks
are $250/month. Primarily young group is being joined increasingly by older, sometimes retired individuals wanting to make a difference in the community.

18. Great for building networks and getting ideas off the ground.

19. Founded in 2000 by 5 entrepreneurs talking regularly at a local bar about how to change the Brain Drain vacuum into a Brain Gain, Idea Village’s mission is to grow & retain business in New Orleans. It initially raised money for one business plan competition and has grown into a year-round, multi-faceted program that has national networks and funding sources. Idea Village is a nonprofit organization with a mission to “identify, support & retain entrepreneurs.” It provides resources for an annual “Entrepreneurial Season” that connects a collaborative network of local and national partners to bring together local startups through broad based network of innovative educational and consulting services. Corporations, universities, and government shall contribute. Forbes named NOLA the “Biggest Brain Magnet of 2011”

20. The annual IDEA institute attracts young bright people from all over the world who become enamored by New Orleans and the open system. Many stay even if not selected. Major Business schools including Northwestern, Harvard, Yale Management, DePaul, Cornell, Duke, Berkeley share their expertise, and their teams compete in the process. In order to participate a Team must have a Dedicated team leader(s), 6 MBA students, 1 Professor, and a Commitment to be in New Orleans one week for immersion. They need a $1,500 participant fee to cover all costs while in New Orleans including hotel, food, local transportation, and cultural activities. Airfare is not included.
LEAN BUSINESS OF PLACE-BASED ENTERPRISE

A general white paper on hyper-local businesses, by Ann Daigle.
The Lean Business of Place-Based Enterprise
Ann B. Daigle

Executive Summary

Within every community are two economies: one is locally generated or “place-based” and sustains assets at home. The other operates remotely, extracts local value and sends it elsewhere. Regeneration of a community depends on retaining and growing small, locally owned enterprises that build financial, social, built and cultural capital simultaneously. Big businesses dominate global markets, command entrenched financial and banking powers and are incentivized by often misguided government policy. However, emerging startups can disrupt the status quo and compete prosperously if they connect with their customer base and build capacity through local networks. The challenge is to “make small possible” by working at the association, neighborhood and city levels to monitor, manage and replicate emerging local business successes. Bottom-up vigilance can influence top-down policy and change the economic dynamics of a region while it strengthens its cultural, social and built landscape.

Statement of Need

Place-based enterprises grow out of the economic, social and diverse market needs of the communities they serve. They enhance the character of those communities and brand them to outsiders. Place-based enterprises include offices, factories, restaurants, workshops and studios. They sell finished and raw resources from the region’s forests, farms and fields, and services based on the local economy’s demographics, level of well-being and unique culture.

Small local enterprises dominate the business landscape. Nationally, firms with less than 20 workers make up 97.9 percent of all businesses and almost 90% of those are employers. The top wage-producing industries in the U.S. are primarily local - professional and technical services, restaurants and construction-related business. Disruptive start-ups drive the economy, as local enterprise represents personal empowerment, independence and innovation for owners and employees. These are the types of businesses the Project for Lean Urbanism intends to enable and encourage.

Small local enterprises are local value creators. According to a study by Civic Economics (http://www.civiceconomics.com/featured-projects/the-civic-economics-of-retail/), "locally generated business" returns from 52 percent to 79 percent of its revenue to the local economy compared to just 14 percent for national chains. By spending more money and purchasing goods and services near home, local enterprises sustain a financial network that makes a significant difference in the local economy.

Other studies, including those by the Institute for Local Self-Reliance (ILSR) (http://www.ilsr.org/key-studies-walmart-and-bigbox-retail/) confirm that places with strong local businesses have more jobs overall, more positive income growth and have fewer workforce residents on public assistance. Employees enjoy higher per capita incomes. Locally owned businesses are positively associated with a community’s level of social and civic well-being thanks to familiar, frequent communication that engenders relationships of trust, loyalty and shared commitment to people and place. They donate to local causes and tend to “self-police” their respective industries.
As Entrepreneur.com notes, however, disrupting existing large industries is hard. Incumbent market leaders are entrenched. They stifle competition, put in place exclusive partnership deals and campaign heavily against competition. They use outside money to establish government lobbying groups that influence legislation and policy that inhibits entrants and preserves the status quo.

Top-down public policy gained through large-scale competitive opposition is the primary reason for corporate dominance and for unfair practices that undermine place-based enterprise. State and federal tax codes are riddled with loopholes for large corporations that do not benefit small businesses. Federal programs favor the large and connected and make progress daunting for small locals. State governments put resources into attracting and incentivizing outside business rather than supporting and growing existing assets within their boundaries. Local governments favor the “silver bullets” of big projects and national big box retailers, who FALSELY claim through well-funded marketing campaigns that they bring more jobs and prosperity to communities. In reality the opposite is true.

While altering federal, state or even citywide policy may not be in the purview of the Project for Lean Urbanism, counteracting corporate dominance at levels that make sense is important because its negative effects are specifically local. Within one to five years of opening, big box exploitation successfully squashes all but the strongest local competition - reducing job numbers, job diversity and tax revenue, and resulting in abandoned buildings and lowered property values.

Despite laws protecting the public’s right to know, deals made to bring in large projects and providers remain vague if not secret to the general public. Information collected by the New York Times show their cost to state and local coffers results in a net loss to taxpayers, leading to all sorts of negative consequences including higher poverty rates. According to one study, the average American pays $6,000 through taxes that directly and negatively impacts local enterprises.

The consolidated banking industry is a key threat to small local enterprise and in the past few years has had a disastrous effect. Big banks control 43 percent of all banking assets, but account for only 16 percent of small business loans. Lending to large businesses is up 36 percent, but small business loans have fallen 14 percent. Micro business loans under $100,000 critical to small locals have fallen 33 percent.

Federal Loan guarantees traditionally provided through the U.S. Small Business Administration have begun favoring the largest of "small businesses," and disappeared for the smallest loans. The average loan size has more than doubled to $360,000, while micro-loans less than $250,000 have been cut by two thirds.

In a 2014 Independent Business Survey by the ISLR, 42 percent of business owners that needed a loan were unable to obtain one. Businesses with fewer than 20 employees and women-owned startups were disproportionately affected. Minority owned businesses (African American and Latino) were even less likely to be approved despite sharing similar business and credit profiles as those of their counterparts.

Undercapitalization is one of the top three reasons small businesses fail. It also is the key reason small business startup has declined over the past 20 years and why, according to the Brookings Institute, for the first time small business openings in our history have not kept pace with closings.
One consequence of the inability to capitalize is that home-based enterprise has been on the rise. It now accounts for over 52 percent of all business, and employee hiring is down. “Non-employer business” (sole proprietors who have no employees) now comprise up to 79 percent of all businesses in America. This is concerning because the benefits of employer firms is much more economically important to communities.

While self-employment in baby boomers is up, self-employment among younger age groups has been dropping twice as fast as in the general population. In 2010, for example, a study showed self-employment was two percent for those 25 and younger and 23 percent for those 65 and older.

Independent businesses rate unfair tax policy and competition from large internet companies who pay no sales tax and as their biggest challenges. These are followed by supplier pricing that favors big competitors, high costs for insurance (particularly health insurance,) and escalating commercial rents and energy costs. Excessive government red tape is not a top issue for small locals in America, although it rates high in European countries.

**Recommendation**

While the scale is tipped towards the large, remote and formulaic, there are advantages to being small, local and incremental. Although many issues are out of small business control, there is something every local group can do to sway relevant outcomes. The Project for Lean Urbanism can create tools to help sustain and grow these so that more local enterprise can be created and generate jobs. The role of networking and organizing - strength in numbers - is key.

Small businesses do not have top-heavy management hierarchies and can respond more quickly to change. They have more flexibility to alter a business plan that is not working. The internet has revolutionized small enterprise, creating opportunities to serve niche markets powerfully and nimbly. The Project for Lean Urbanism should consider developing models for web education and suggest management strategies for sharing web networks at the building and block levels.

The places where businesses locate tend to themselves follow the four general phases of the business cycle - Prosperity (expansion), Recession (slow down), Depression (decline) and Recovery (revival). Locating a specific product or service where it is most needed at the time it is needed creates advantages. Small businesses are usually more mobile and can take advantage of trends that are place-specific. They can benefit by locating in smaller towns or in neighborhoods experiencing change, where their presence means something to local residents. Appropriate strategies that help local enterprises weather each phase within a community are also useful and advantageous to the community as a whole.

Taking stock at the association and neighborhood level using tools that measure performance can result in positive “bubble up” effects. Business associations should track the economic capture of local enterprises versus nationals. They should keep excellent records of relevant business permits, income generation and employment figures. This will provide ammunition when dealing with top-down policy and help business districts understand where there are unmet needs, where improvement is needed, what businesses they need to attract and support,
and where to target their marketing and advertising dollars.

Citizens, associations and neighborhood groups can influence their local elected officials to adopt localist policies by contesting subsidies to corporations and large developments whenever they are proposed. Locals should create collaborations with regional organizations that share their goals and foster relationships with national organizations and conservancies that specifically address local/small versus big/formulaic. They can sway opinion by taking advantage of the wealth of information they have collected through case studies and surveys.

Local disrupters should be eager to work with governments to proactively develop reasonable rules and oversight. This is especially true for new, emerging businesses that do not fit conventional standards for permitting. Local business should seek out sympathetic institutions and similar businesses, and through coalitions educate local regulators about their business models, practices and inherent issues, and offer to collaborate on oversight.

Locals and neighborhood groups should support policies that help residents afford the rising costs of living. These may range from programs that offer shared space for daily needs like laundry and day-care, to farmers markets that support local backyard growers. It may include short-term stay opportunities that help locals market the livability of their place, and longer-term room rentals that encourage safe living arrangements. Regulations proposed that are clearly drafted to protect existing players from competition should be discouraged, such as prohibiting new services like car shares or pedicabs that protect established taxi services.

City councils and planning commissions should be encouraged to consider other variables aside from zoning and land use, including economic development and environmental issues to identify and monitor probable detriments of large-scale projects on wages, household incomes, net job creation and impacts on existing local businesses. Policies and codes should favor pedestrians and transit over cars, encourage multi-story mixed-use buildings and human-scaled development that supports compact markets. Independent businesses are disadvantaged in cities where zoning separates uses and discourages diversity so rules that undermine traditional commercial districts in favor of auto-oriented sprawl should be altered.

To address banking and lending, regional banks and credit unions should be encouraged since they are the primary lenders to small enterprises. Despite the upward trend to increase their holdings they are still losing ground to bank consolidation. State Partnership Banks, such as the publicly owned Bank of North Dakota, use state government deposits to supplement the lending capacity of local banks and provide a secondary market for mortgages. The result is that North Dakota has four times as many local banks per capita as the U.S. average and much more local-business lending. At the local level, there is opportunity to establish new programs such as “local economy investment pools” that allow cities, counties, and institutions to invest a portion of their funds in local enterprises and infrastructure.

Venture Capital is often touted as a key resource for local startups and takes advantage of successful locals who desire to give back to their business communities. However, it often encourages enterprises to grow too quickly so investors can make fast exits. Slow and steady growth, which is safer and more prosperous in the long term, is a key part of a good business plan. Likewise crowdfunding and other unconventional financing sources are inspiring and should be included in the mix, although they are alone inadequate for the need.

To ignore the relevance and needs of place-based enterprise is to ignore the largest sector of America’s economy.
GOOD QUOTES:

"Overall, American families are paying an annual $6,000 subsidy to corporations that have doubled their profits and cut their taxes in half in ten years while cutting 2.9 million jobs in the U.S. and adding almost as many jobs overseas."
~ Paul Buchheit, Common Dreams, reported by the New York Times

“Opportunities are universal—ideas are non-rival, and economic development is the art of setting the table so that general improvements in the economy (so called value creation) can be taken advantage of locally (value capture)... The ability to use or deploy a good idea productively and locally is what we should be focused on when discussing "Lean." “
~ Scott Bernstein, Center for Neighborhood Technology
PLACEMAKING BOND FUND PROPOSAL AND LEGISLATION

A proposal by Christopher (Kip) Bergstrom for a placemaking pilot using a placemaking bond fund. This includes draft legislation. See Placemaking Bond Funds (on page 69).
Title of Proposal
Placemaking Pilot Bond Fund

State Agency: Department of Economic & Community Development
Liaison: Rob Michalik
Phone: 860-270-8186
E-mail: rob.michalik@ct.gov
Lead agency division requesting this proposal: DECD Offices of Culture and Tourism
Agency Analyst/Drafter of Proposal: Kip Bergstrom, Deputy Commissioner

Proposal Summary
Create a pool of $3 million in bond funds for a set of pilot projects to determine how to foster the development of more compelling and walkable places in our city, town and village historic centers that become magnets for mobile talent, including a mix of Millennials, downsizing Boomers, immigrants, and Makers. The purpose of the pilot would be to learn how DECD’s existing brownfields, TOD, historic preservation, art and innovation programs can be best combined in the same place at the same time to increase their collective impact. In cooperation with participating municipalities and neighborhood and private partners, the pilot projects could include experiments with new building types and innovative models for building re-use, and new financing models and new zoning approaches that that enable development by smaller players. The pilot projects will be focused on applying the key principles of the Project for Lean Urbanism, which aims “to make small possible”…i.e., incremental development by small cap developers and self-builders, and creation of housing and commercial space that is affordable by design rather than by subsidy, but which at the same time yields much higher property taxes per acre than conventional development.

PROPOSAL BACKGROUND

• Reason for Proposal
Please consider the following, if applicable:
(1) Have there been changes in federal/state/local laws and regulations that make this legislation necessary?
(2) Has this proposal or something similar been implemented in other states? If yes, what is the outcome(s)?
(3) Have certain constituencies called for this action?
(4) What would happen if this was not enacted in law this session?

One of the key constraints on the growth of the CT economy is access to talent. It is particularly critical that CT be able to attract and retain the following types of mobile talent:
• There are 76 million Millennials nationally, more than Boomers. Millennials plus Boomers represent over half the U.S. population. Millennials are now in their late twenties and thirties, the time of most intense mobility for most people. Downsizing Boomers are another significant mobile cohort, and are also a source of talent as more and more of them defer retirement. GenXers are busy raising families and therefore tend to be less mobile and less of an opportunity for increasing CT’s talent pool by revitalizing our city and town center neighborhoods.

• According to recent research, 56% of Millennials and Boomers prefer to live in compact, walkable, distinctive places. CT’s small cities and towns have good “bones” on which to build such places. DECD has many tools in its TOD, brownfield, art, historic preservation and innovation programs to help localities transform themselves into magnets for this mobile talent, but the programs are not coordinated and therefore lack the synergy and impact that greater integration would create. The purpose of the pilot is to create a template for better integration of existing programs free of the constraints of the multiplicity of statutory criteria for each of the individual programs.

PROPOSAL IMPACT

• Agencies Affected (please list for each affected agency) **NONE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agency Name:</th>
<th>Agency Contact (name, title, phone):</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date Contacted:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Approve of Proposal | ____ YES | ____ NO | ____ Talks Ongoing |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of Affected Agency’s Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Will there need to be further negotiation? | ____ YES | ____ NO |

• Fiscal Impact (please include the proposal section that causes the fiscal impact and the anticipated impact)
Municipal (please include any municipal mandate that can be found within legislation)

Will have positive impact on the participating localities as the funds will be spent in support of local projects.

State
$3 million of bond funds

Federal
None

Additional notes on fiscal impact

- **Policy and Programmatic Impacts** (Please specify the proposal section associated with the impact)

  This pilot will identify opportunities to leverage and cross-rough existing TOD, brownfields, art, historic preservation, and innovation programs of DECD to increase their collective impact on making CT cities and towns magnets for talent. Those policy changes would be achieved through legislation developed at the conclusion of the pilot.
Be it enacted by the Senate and House of Representatives in General Assembly convened:

**Placemaking Pilot Program.** (a) The Department of Economic and Community Development shall establish and implement a pilot program intended to identify more effective ways to leverage state funds in the development of more compelling and walkable places in our city, town and village historic centers that could become magnets for mobile talent. The goal of the program would be to learn how brownfields, TOD, historic preservation, art and innovation programs can be best combined in the same place at the same time to increase their collective impact.

(b) The Commissioner of the Department of Economic and Community Development, under this program, may award grants to municipalities, economic development agencies, non-profit organizations, and developers for purposes including, but not limited to, experiments with new building types and/or innovative models for building re-use, and new financing models and new zoning approaches that that enable development by smaller players.

(c) For the purposes described in subsection (b) of this section, the State Bond Commission shall have the power, from time to time to authorize the issuance of bonds of the state in one or more series and in principal amounts not exceeding in the aggregate three million dollars.

(d) Upon the conclusion of the pilot program, the Department of Economic and Community Development shall report in accordance with the provisions of section 11-4a to the joint standing committee of the General Assembly having cognizance of matters relating to commerce on the effectiveness of the place-making pilot program.
APPROACH FOR A PLACEMAKING BOND FUND

These are notes about how the placemaking bond fund might work, and the kinds of programs it might support. (Courtesy Christopher (Kip) Bergstrom.)
Notes of August 18, 2014 of Task Team 2

Succeeding Economically Without Losing Our Soul

Staff briefed the group on existing DECD tools for real estate development/redevelopment, including:

- **Historic Tax Credits**: DECD administers two state historic tax credits for structures on the State Register of Historic Places, and also administers the federal historic tax credit for structures on the National Register of Historic Places. The programs provide credits against state and federal taxes for a portion of the cost of renovation of historic structures. Renovation work must conform to the Secretary of the Interior’s Standards for Historic Preservation.

- **Historic Restoration Fund**: DECD provides 1:1 matching grants for restoration by municipalities and non-profits of structures on the State or National Register of Historic Places. The grants are on a reimbursement basis once the work is complete. Renovation work must conform to the Secretary of the Interior’s Standards for Historic Preservation.

- **Making Places (the Mill Project)**: Operated through a grant by DECD to the CT Trust for Historic Preservation, the Making Places projects consists of a statewide inventory of historic mill complexes and their villages (3,100 structures have been identified to date), and a grant program for the pre-development costs of turning these complexes to productive reuse.

- **re-wire Project**: A pilot project funded by DECD through the CT Trust for Historic Preservation that is supporting planning work to identify an outside-the-box concept for redevelopment of the historic core of the Gilbert and Bennett Wire Mill in the Georgetown section of Redding.

- **TOD Pre-Development and Acquisition Fund**: A public/private partnership between DECD and the Local Investment Services Corporation to provide funds for property acquisition and pre-development costs for sites adjacent to transit nodes. Focus is on housing development, as that is the priority of LISC, the primary funder.

- **Brownfield Municipal Grants**: DECD provides grants to municipalities.

- **Targeted Brownfield Development Loan Program**

In addition, DECD Brownfields, SHPO and DEEP are working on a joint grant program to provide funds for environmental assessment and redevelopment planning for mill buildings, to be announced publicly in September 2014.

Discussion:

These programs, and others for the “soft” stuff, should be packaged as a “Placemaking Tool Kit” on paper and online.

What does it mean to “lose our soul”? Soul means:
• Authenticity
• Diversity of people and uses
• One-of-a-kind “place-based” business vs national chains
• Start-ups, not just established businesses
• Makers- our artisan’s and artist’s hand-made products available in our places
• Both the old and the young
• Enabling the artist pioneers to stay and not be priced out (see attached one-pager on Collinwood neighborhood of Cleveland, OH
• Working farms (in a rural context)

How many of the 3,100 mill-related structures identified in the Making Places inventory can be repurposed?

Examples of soulful redevelopment:
• Tel Aviv (need specific project)
• New Jersey mill (need specific project)
• West Berlin vs East Berlin
• Collinswood project in Cleveland, OH (see attached one-pager)

Is there an inverse relationship between money and soul?

Is it money, or is it regulation?

Organic, bottom-up processes, vs. top-down, large-scale, silver bullet processes. Scale is an enemy of soul. Need to embrace Incrementalism, by breaking big parcels into smaller ones to enable small cap developers and self-builders to play.

The story of North Adams pre and post Mass MOCA. Before Mass MOCA, North Adams was a mill town in decline, but still had vestiges of economic security for a fairly broad range of people. Post Mass MOCA, there is nothing to North Adams but Mass MOCA, no jobs, no economic security. An essential; element of the “soul of a place” is the economic security of a place. People will cobble together resources if they have security and can’t be displaced. Look at NYC Garment District coop model: 1) limited asset appreciation; 2) created a community. Maybe we should create a Coop Development Bank. Great idea, can be married to our Artist/Ownership program.
Also, look at Brooklyn North model. And the Art Space model (a problem with it is that it relies too much on LITC).

The problem of commodification, where neighborhoods go from slum to vibrant, mixed use neighborhood to generic chic neighborhood. If neighborhood development were a nuclear reaction, we know how to ignite it, but not how to keep it from self-destructing. How to arrest the ignoble march to McMansions?

The problem of “fostering”...maybe it’s better to think in terms of “securing” rather than “fostering”?

Recreate the “illegal loft”? First came the lofts, then the Loft Law, which legalized the illegal. **This should be prioritized to coincide with the Making Places inventory and married to the Incrementalism approach. I honestly believe that Connecticut’s embrace of Artist/Ownership can be one of our single greatest, talent attraction strategies.**

Is it losing your soul, or is it losing your identity? What’s your community? What community are you in? Can we be facilitators of community? **“The ongoing and open-ended question of what intentional community and self-determination may mean in the 21st century is the central focus of our research and outreach effort.”** Or at least, facilitate ease of entry and exit? Not sure exactly what this point means...

The poor and disenfranchised...how do we use these resources for these populations? E.g., Roseanne Haggerty’s project at the Swift building in the North End of Hartford.

The bedrock condition of poverty is economic isolation. One way to overcome it is to enable entrepreneurs of various types (artists, makers, etc.) to access the best retail space in the city, rather than expecting the market to come to them. This has been a focus of the CreateHereNow storefronts program, which has helped neighborhood, low income entrepreneurs to access the exposure of downtown storefronts.
ARTICLES OF INCORPORATION FOR AN MPOA

These articles of incorporation are for a Master Property Owners Association — an umbrella organization to make certain decisions and collect fees across the boundaries of homeowner or commercial associations.
# Articles of Incorporation

of

[Project Name] Master Property Owners Association, Inc.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Article</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Article I</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article II</td>
<td>Purposes</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article III</td>
<td>Definitions</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article IV</td>
<td>Membership</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article V</td>
<td>Voting Rights</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article VI</td>
<td>Board of Directors</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article VII</td>
<td>Limit on Liability and Indemnification</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article VIII</td>
<td>Dissolution</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article IX</td>
<td>Amendment</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Article X</td>
<td>Registered Office and Agent</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ARTICLE I
NAME

The name of the corporation is [Project Name] Master Property Owners Association, Inc., hereinafter called the “Master POA”.

ARTICLE II
PURPOSES

The Master POA does not contemplate monetary gain or profit to the Members thereof, and the specific purposes for which it is formed are to provide for the management, maintenance and care of certain real estate within the development known or to be known as “[Project Name], a Master Planned Community” located in _________ County, _________, in the [Project Name] Master Community Agreement made by ________ (the “Master Developer”), recorded or to be recorded in the Land Records of the _________ (as the same may be amended or supplemented from time to time, the “Master Community Agreement”), and to provide a means whereby the Members, acting together, may provide for the management, maintenance, care and operation of the common areas of the Associations and of the Master Commons and for this purpose to: (a) enforce the Master Community Agreement and exercise all of the powers and privileges and perform all of the duties and obligations of the Master POA thereunder; (b) fix, levy, collect and enforce payment by any lawful means of all charges or Assessments pursuant to the Master Community Agreement and the Bylaws of the Master POA; (c) pay all expenses of the Master POA; (d) subject to the Master Community Agreement and the Bylaws, acquire, own, hold, improve, build upon, operate, maintain, convey, sell, lease, transfer, dedicate for public use or otherwise dispose of real or personal property in connection with the affairs of the Master POA; and (e) have and exercise any and all powers, rights and privileges which a corporation organized under the _________ Nonprofit Corporation Act may by law now or hereafter have or exercise. No part of the net earnings of the Master POA shall inure (other than by providing management, maintenance and care of the Master Commons and the common areas of the Associations and other than by a rebate of excess membership dues, fees and Assessments) to the benefit of any private individual.

ARTICLE III
DEFINITIONS

 Except as expressly defined herein, all capitalized terms used herein shall have the respective meanings set forth in the Master Community Agreement.
ARTICLE IV
MEMBERSHIP

Every incorporated homeowners, business owners, or property owners association ("Associations") within [Project Name], shall be a Member of the Master POA. Membership of an Association shall not be separated from ownership of the Association’s common area. Upon the closing of the sale of all of an Association’s common areas, the membership appurtenant to those common areas of the selling Association shall cease and the purchasing Association or owner shall become a Member of the Master POA. The Master Developer shall be a member until it no longer owns any real property in [Project Name].

ARTICLE V
VOTING RIGHTS

Section 5.1 Votes. Each Member, other than the Master Developer, shall be entitled to cast one (1) vote under the Master Community Agreement. The Master Developer, or its designated entities, shall be entitled to cast _____ (__) votes under the Master Community Agreement. Where ownership of a Parcel is in more than one person or is held by an entity, voting shall be conducted in accordance with the Bylaws.

Section 5.2 Suspension of Voting Rights. The Board of Directors of the Master POA (the “Board”) may suspend the voting rights of any Member subject to assessment under the Master Community Agreement during the period when any Assessment shall remain delinquent, but upon payment of such Assessment, the voting rights of such Member shall automatically be restored.

ARTICLE VI
BOARD OF DIRECTORS

Section 6.1 Number and Classes of Directors. The number of directors shall initially be five and shall be Class “B” Directors appointed by the Master Developer. There shall initially be two classes of directors. When the Master Developer no longer owns any real property in [Project Name], the Members shall have the right to elect Class “A” directors to replace the Class B directors. The Master Developer may, at its sole option, accelerate the point in time where the Members elect Class A Directors. The Class B Directors need not be owners of Parcels within [Project Name].

Section 6.2 Master Developer's Right to Appoint and Remove Directors. The Master Developer shall have the right to appoint or remove any and all Class B Directors.

Section 6.3 Removal of Class A Directors. At any regular or special Duly Called Meeting of the Master POA where the meeting notice states that the purpose, or one of the purposes, of the meeting is removal of one or more Class A Directors, such Class A Director(s) may be removed, with or without cause, by a majority of the votes entitled to be cast by the Members.
Section 6.4  **Vacancies.** When there are no longer any Class B Directors on the Board, vacancies in the Board occurring for any reason other than the removal of a director by vote of the Members shall be filled by a vote of the majority of the remaining directors, even though less than a quorum, at any meeting of the Board. The Master Developer shall fill all vacancies of Class B Directors. Each person elected or appointed to fill a vacancy as described in this section shall serve the unexpired portion of the term of the director being replaced.

Section 6.5  **Disqualification for Contracts with Master Developer.** As long as the requirements of Section _____ of the Code of _____ are met, no director shall be required to disqualify himself or herself upon any vote upon any management contract or other contract or lease or matter between the Master Developer (or any individual, partnership, corporation or other entity having an affiliation with the Master Developer) and the Master POA.

Section 6.6  **Term of Office.** Class A Directors, other than those elected to fill the unexpired portion of the term of a director being replaced as provided for in Section 6.4, shall serve until the first annual meeting following their election. Directors may be reelected for subsequent terms. Class B Directors shall serve until the time identified in the transition provision of Section 6.1 of these Articles of Incorporation or until removed by the Master Developer.

**ARTICLE VII**

**LIMIT ON LIABILITY AND INDEMNIFICATION**

Section 7.1  **Limit on Liability.** In every instance in which the _____ Nonprofit Corporation Act, as it exists on the date hereof or may hereafter be amended from time to time, permits the limitation or elimination of liability of directors or officers of a corporation, the directors and officers of this Master POA shall not be liable to the Master POA or its Members.

Section 7.2  **Mandatory Indemnification.** The Master POA shall indemnify any individual who is, was or is threatened to be made a party to a civil, criminal, administrative, investigative or other proceeding (including a proceeding by or in the right of the Master POA or by or on behalf of its Members) because such individual is or was a director or officer of the Master POA, or of any other legal entity controlled by the Master POA, against all liabilities and reasonable expenses incurred by him or her on account of the proceeding, except such liabilities and expenses as are incurred because of his or her willful misconduct or knowing violation of the criminal law. Unless a determination has been made that indemnification is not permissible, the Master POA shall make advances and reimbursement for expenses incurred by any of the persons named above upon receipt of an undertaking from him or her to repay the same if it is ultimately determined that such individual is not entitled to indemnification. The Master POA is authorized to contract in advance to indemnify any of the persons named above to the extent it is required to indemnify them pursuant to this Section.

Section 7.3  **Miscellaneous.** The rights of each person entitled to indemnification under this Article shall inure to the benefit of such person’s heirs, executors and administrators. Indemnification pursuant to this Article shall not be exclusive of any other rights of indemnification to which any person may be entitled, including indemnification pursuant to a valid contract, indemnification by legal entities other than the Master POA and indemnification...
under policies of insurance purchased and maintained by the Master POA or others. However, no person shall be entitled to indemnification by the Master POA to the extent he or she is indemnified by another, including an insurer.

ARTICLE VIII
DISSOLUTION

If and when the Master POA is dissolved, all of the assets of the Master POA shall be transferred to another nonprofit owners' association or governmental agency having a similar purpose.

ARTICLE IX
AMENDMENT

When the Master Developer no longer owns any real property in [Project Name] and subject to the Master Community Agreement, these Articles may be amended with the approval of two-thirds (2/3) of the Members. During the period when the Master Developer may appoint Class B Directors, the Master Developer may amend these Articles without approval of the membership.

ARTICLE X
REGISTERED OFFICE AND AGENT

The name of the registered agent is _______ who is a resident of _______, and whose business office is the same as the registered office. The post office and street address of the registered office is ____________________.

Dated ________, ______

__________, Incorporator

Address of Incorporator:
PROVISION FOR SUBASSOCIATIONS IN OWNER DOCUMENTS

A provision to be added to ownership documents, so that associations of various scales can be formed.
From the XXX Master Community Documents:

In the Bylaws of the Master POA:

Section 3.16  Committees and Subassociations.

The Board, as it deems necessary, shall have the authority to create committees and
subassociations to address specific issues and needs of the Master POA or XXX.

In the Master Declaration:

**Zone.** “Zones” are smaller areas within XXX of distinct building type or character. Owners of
property within a Zone may be assessed for maintenance of property primarily serving that Zone.

**Zone Expenses**

Zones are intended to provide a flexible means for providing additional maintenance or capital
improvements to a portion of XXX that has special needs. Zone boundaries may be designated at
the time of the addition of the property by Supplemental Declaration or at any later time by the
Board. Some expenses apply only to a certain Zone within XXX:

- **Capital Improvements.** Any Zone may, by [Vote required to assess Owners for capital
improvements] vote of the Owners within that Zone and approval of the Board, vote to
assess all Owners within the Zone for capital improvements to Neighborhood Commons
that will primarily benefit that Zone.

- **Additional Services.** Any Zone may, by majority vote of the Owners within that Zone
and approval of the Board, vote to assess all Owners within the Zone for maintenance or
services in addition to those normally provided by the Neighborhood Association. For
front-yard landscape maintenance, the Board may define a Zone by Residential Parcel
type and may approve landscape service for that Zone, which shall be effective unless a
majority of the Owners within that Zone object in writing to the landscape service.

If the assessment is approved, it will be assessed to and allocated among all Owners within that
Zone or designated group as Individual Residential Parcel Assessments.

Zones may be combined for such assessments. If more than one Zone is to vote, the Board shall
determine whether approval and assessment is to be by Zone or by the combined group of Zones.
If a group smaller than a Zone wishes to be assessed for capital improvements or services, all of
those being assessed must agree to the assessment.
DISPUTE RESOLUTION FRAMEWORK

A framework that can be included in association documents in order to provide a method for resolving disputes.
Chancellors

Chancellors are not officers of the Board. However, Chancellors play an important role in the life of the Residential Neighborhood. The Chancellors may mediate disputes among Members or their tenants related to the requirements of the Neighborhood Declaration, the Design Code, or any rules giving the Board, Members and residential and commercial tenants a forum to work out differences and find solutions. Depending on the circumstances, the Chancellors may act individually or as a panel. If disputes cannot be resolved by mediation, the Chancellors may make recommendations to the Board. The Board determines the number of Chancellors and may decide to make the Chancellor a paid professional position, in which case, the Board will select a mediator, attorney or other professional for each available Chancellor position. Chancellors are elected by the Members unless the Board has determined that Chancellors are to be paid professional positions. However, if there are insufficient numbers of candidates for chancellor, the Board may select the remaining Chancellors.

Role of the Chancellors

When problems with covenant enforcement arise, the Board or any resident or Member may file a request with the Board for a Chancellor to hear the issue. The Board may authorize, in advance, categories or types of issues that may be heard by the Chancellor without first coming to the Board. The Board has the authority to approve or deny the use of a Chancellor to mediate agreement. If requested by the Board or the Chancellor to which the case is assigned, and if there is more than one Chancellor, the case will be heard by more than one Chancellor, sitting as a panel. The Chancellor, or panel of Chancellors, will notify the resident who is believed to be in violation, as well as the owner of the Parcel, if different, and set a convenient date for a mediation session.

Mediation Session. The object of the mediation session is to hear the various viewpoints and to attempt to reach an agreement that is acceptable to all parties. Sessions must be conducted with tact, dignity and respect. The Chancellor or panel has the discretion to decide if the complaining party should participate in the mediation session.

Agreement. The Chancellor, or panel of Chancellors, is to evaluate whether the resident has caused an unreasonable disturbance or other violation, and, if so, to help reach a resolution within the general principles set out in this Chapter. If the parties reach agreement, the agreement is to be summarized in writing and signed by the parties. The Chancellor’s office is to keep a copy of the agreement. The Chancellor or panel has the right to consider whether the same problem has arisen in the past and whether the Member or resident has complied with previous agreements in evaluating the current agreement. If agreement is not reached, or if the parties do not comply with the agreement, the Chancellor or panel may make a report and recommendation to the Board for further action.
Enforcement

Each Member and the Members’ family members, guests and tenants are required to abide by the covenants contained in this Book, which are covenants running with the land, and any rules and regulations adopted by the Neighborhood Association. Each Member is responsible for assuring such compliance, and any violation by family members, guests or tenants may be considered to be a violation by the Member. If the Chancellor cannot resolve a violation, the Board is empowered to take necessary legal steps to enforce the covenants contained in this Book.

If the Chancellor determines that the problem is not satisfactorily resolved, the Board will notify the Member of the date of the Board meeting at which the matter will be discussed. After hearing the report from the Chancellor and giving opportunity for the resident (and Member, if different) to be heard, the Board may take any of the following actions . . .

FAQ

Q. If I don’t like the Chancellor’s decision, is there a right of appeal?

The Chancellor(s) operate primarily as mediators. If they are unable to facilitate the reaching of an agreement between the residents, Member or Members in question, they may make a recommendation to the Board. The affected residents and Members have the opportunity for a hearing before the Board. The decision of the Board is final, subject to any subsequent court action.
VIRGINIA STATEMENT OF OWNER RIGHTS

A declaration of the rights of owners in the Virginia Acts of Assembly.
An Act to amend the Code of Virginia by adding in Article 2 of Chapter 4.2 of Title 55 a section numbered 55-79.72:3 and by adding in Article 1 of Chapter 26 of Title 55 a section numbered 55-509.3:1, relating to the Condominium and Property Owners' Association Acts; statement of unit and lot owner rights.

Approved March 17, 2015

Be it enacted by the General Assembly of Virginia:

1. That the Code of Virginia is amended by adding in Article 2 of Chapter 4.2 of Title 55 a section numbered 55-79.72:3 and by adding in Article 1 of Chapter 26 of Title 55 a section numbered 55-509.3:1 as follows:


Every unit owner who is a member in good standing of a unit owners’ association shall have the following rights:

1. The right of access to all books and records kept by or on behalf of the unit owners' association according to and subject to the provisions of § 55-79.74:1, including records of all financial transactions;

2. The right to cast a vote on any matter requiring a vote by the unit owners' association membership in proportion to the unit owner's ownership interest, except to the extent that the condominium instruments provide otherwise;

3. The right to have notice of any meeting of the executive organ, to make a record of such meetings by audio or visual means, and to participate in such meeting in accordance with the provisions of § 55-79.75;

4. The right to have (i) notice of any proceeding conducted by the executive organ or other tribunal specified in the condominium instruments against the unit owner to enforce any rule or regulation of the unit owners' association and (ii) the opportunity to be heard and represented by counsel at the proceeding, as provided in § 55-79.80:2, and the right of due process in the conduct of that hearing; and

5. The right to serve on the executive organ if duly elected and a member in good standing of the unit owners' association, except to the extent that the condominium instruments provide otherwise.

The rights enumerated in this section shall be enforceable by any such unit owner pursuant to the provisions of § 55-79.53.

§ 55-509.3:1. Statement of lot owner rights.

Every lot owner who is a member in good standing of a property owners' association shall have the following rights:

1. The right of access to all books and records kept by or on behalf of the association according to and subject to the provisions of § 55-510, including records of all financial transactions;

2. The right to cast a vote on any matter requiring a vote by the association's membership in proportion to the lot owner's ownership interest, except to the extent that the declaration provides otherwise;

3. The right to have notice of any meeting of the board of directors, to make a record of such meetings by audio or visual means, and to participate in such meeting in accordance with the provisions of subsection F of § 55-510 and § 55-510.1;

4. The right to have (i) notice of any proceeding conducted by the board of directors or other tribunal specified in the declaration against the lot owner to enforce any rule or regulation of the association and (ii) the opportunity to be heard and represented by counsel at the proceeding, as provided in § 55-513, and the right of due process in the conduct of that hearing; and

5. The right to serve on the board of directors if duly elected and a member in good standing of the association, except to the extent the declaration provides otherwise.

The rights enumerated in this section shall be enforceable by any such lot owner pursuant to the provisions of § 55-515.
A bill of rights for homeowners, suggested as a model for legislation by the AARP.
Bill of Rights for Homeowners

I. The Right to Security against Foreclosure
An association shall not foreclose against a homeowner except for significant unpaid assessments, and any such foreclosure shall require judicial review to ensure fairness.

II. The Right to Resolve Disputes without Litigation
Homeowners and associations will have available alternative dispute resolution (ADR), although both parties preserve the right to litigate.

III. The Right to Fairness in Litigation
Where there is litigation between an association and a homeowner, and the homeowner prevails, the association shall pay attorney fees to a reasonable level.

IV. The Right to Be Told of All Rules and Charges
Homeowners shall be told—before buying—of the association’s broad powers, and the association may not exercise any power not clearly disclosed to the homeowner if the power unreasonably interferes with homeownership.

V. The Right to Stability in Rules and Charges
Homeowners shall have rights to vote to create, amend, or terminate deed restrictions and other important documents. Where an association’s directors have power to change operating rules, the homeowners shall have notice and an opportunity, by majority vote, to override new rules and charges.

VI. The Right to Individual Autonomy
Homeowners shall not surrender any essential rights of individual autonomy because they live in a common-interest community. Homeowners shall have the right to peaceful advocacy during elections and other votes as well as use of common areas.

VII. The Right to Oversight of Associations and Directors
Homeowners shall have reasonable access to records and meetings, as well as specified abilities to call special meetings, to obtain oversight of elections and other votes, and to recall directors.

VIII. The Right to Vote and Run for Office
Homeowners shall have well-defined voting rights, including secret ballots, and no director shall have a conflict of interest.

IX. The Right to Reasonable Associations and Directors
Associations, their directors and other agents, shall act reasonably in exercising their power over homeowners.
X. *The Right to an Ombudsperson for Homeowners*
Homeowners shall have fair interpretation of their rights through the state Office of Ombudsperson for Homeowners. The ombudsperson will enable state oversight where needed, and increases available information for all concerned.
FREE SPEECH RIGHTS IN CICs
An article discussing free speech in Common Interest Communities
(UN)COMMON INTEREST COMMUNITIES:  
SEARCHING FOR A WORKABLE EXTENSION OF FREE SPEECH RIGHTS TO CICs

Mark J. Pesce

"No sign of any kind except a small nameplate on a lamppost or affixed to the front of a house shall be displayed to the public view on any lot. . . . No sign of any type may be displayed from the window of any home."

I. INTRODUCTION

Governing documents of condominiums, cooperatives, and homeowners associations ("HOAs") 2 around the United States are replete with restrictive covenants like the one above. These common interest communities ("CICs") are created to provide owners or tenants with quiet, manicured, and aesthetically pleasing environments; 3 hence the frequent imposition of outright bans on

* J.D., magna cum laude, 2015, Seton Hall University School of Law; B.A., 2012, University of Notre Dame. I would like to thank my family, friends, and Rebecca Salk for their love and support in law school and while writing this Comment. I would also like to thank my advisor Professor Angela C. Carmella, as well as Judge Robert Contillo, Professor Paula A. Franzese, Ronald L. Perl, and Michael S. Karoff for their helpful perspectives. Finally, a special thanks to my father, who surely never would have suggested this topic had he known how much I would bother him about it.


2 Each of these kinds of developments is included under the umbrella term "common interest communities," but exhibit markedly different characteristics. For a survey of the differences, see Paula A. Franzese & Steven Siegel, The Twin Rivers Case: Of Homeowners Associations, Free Speech Rights and Privatized Mini-Governments, 5 Rutgers J.L. & PUB. POLY 729, 730 n.3 (2008). In general though, "[c]ommon-interest communities are those in which the property is burdened by servitudes requiring property owners to contribute to maintenance of commonly held property or to pay dues or assessments to an owners association that provides services or facilities to the community." Restatement (Third) of Prop.: Servitudes ch. 6, intro. note (2000).

A Florida state appellate court cogently described this purpose, remarking that: [I]nherent in the condominium concept is the principle that to promote the health, happiness, and peace of mind of the majority of the unit owners since they are living in such close proximity and using facilities in common, each unit owner must give up a certain degree of freedom of choice which he might otherwise enjoy in separate, privately owned property. Condominium unit owners comprise a little democratic sub
things such as pets, satellite dishes, and political signs and activity.

For better or worse, the number of Americans living in CICs has grown tremendously in the last few decades, and CICs now occupy a significant percentage of home ownership in the United States. For many, the increase in prevalence of CICs has created attendant confusion with the extent to which communities can restrict individual rights. In response, courts and legislatures have slowly given more free speech rights to residents of CICs. For others though, this recent trend towards individual rights has come at the expense of the collective interest.

This inescapable clash between expressional society of necessity more restrictive as it pertains to use of condominium property than may be existent outside the condominium organization. Hidden Harbour Estates, Inc. v. Norman, 309 So. 2d 180, 181–82 (Fla. Dist. Ct. App. 1975); see also Gerald Korngold, Resolving the Flaws of Residential Servitudes and Owners Associations: For Reformation not Termination, 1990 Wis. L. Rev. 513, 518 (1990) ("Residential developers often impose servitude schemes on tract and high-rise developments to increase the desirability of the housing units."); 2012 Public Policies of Community Associations Institute, Aesthetics as an Economic Issue, at 9, http://www.caionline.org/govt/policies/Documents/public%20policies-April%202012%20update.pdf (last visited Oct. 15, 2014) ("When aesthetics of any one development look clean, well maintained, properly proportioned and part of an overall design or compatible color scheme, owner expectations are met and property values are sustained and improved.").

Mark S. Dennison, Enforcement of Restrictive Covenant or Lease Provision Limiting the Keeping of Animals or Pets on Residential Property, 95 AM. JUR. TRIALS 193 (2004).

Alois Valerian Gross, Annotation, Radio or Television Aerials, Antennas, Towers, or Satellite Dishes or Dics as Within Terms of Covenant Restricting Use, Erection, or Maintenance of Such Structures Upon Residential Property, 76 A.L.R.4th 498 (1989).


See, e.g., Edward R. Hannaman, State and Municipal Perspectives - Homeowners Associations, presented to Rutgers University Center for Government Services Conference, at 3 (Mar. 19, 2002) ("It is obvious from the complaints [to DCA] that that [home]owners did not realize the extent association rules could govern their lives."); Susan F. French, The Constitution of A Private Residential Government Should Include A Bill of Rights, 27 WAKE FOREST L. REV. 945, 949 (1992) ("Dreams of homeownership can turn sour for people whose building or landscaping plans are not approved and for people who learn too late that they will not be permitted to put up political signs, for sale signs, or holiday decorations.").

See infra Part IV.

2012 Public Policies of Community Associations Institute, supra note 3, at 9 (noting that attempts to interfere with "community-crafted aesthetic controls" undermines the "lifestyle expectations of the collective ownership").
versus property and contractual rights\textsuperscript{11} has led to a host of suggested and implemented solutions,\textsuperscript{12} but no more clarity in this realm.\textsuperscript{13} Such an inconsistency of treatment thwarts the goals of predictability and deterrence from litigation,\textsuperscript{14} and it is clear that there is a need for a workable method of extending more free speech rights to CICs.\textsuperscript{15}

Although this area of the law has seen a significant number of illuminating publications,\textsuperscript{16} this Comment adds to the discussion in two ways. First, although a variety of proposals have been offered for extending free speech rights to CICs over the past two decades,\textsuperscript{17}

\textsuperscript{11} The Restatement acknowledges the tension between the two competing interests, saying that

The law of residential common-interest communities reflects these tensions between protecting freedom of contract, protecting private and public interests in security of the home both as a personal base and as a financial asset, and protecting the public interest in the ongoing financial stability of common-interest communities. It also reflects the tensions between protecting the democratic process at work in common-interest communities and protecting the interests of individual community members from imposition by those who control the association.

\textsuperscript{12} See infra Part IV.

\textsuperscript{13} See, e.g., Peter Applebome, My House, My Rules. Or So One Might Think, N.Y. TIMES, July 29, 2007, at A25 ("This is not an entirely new world, but it’s still a vexing one, where the rules are still being sorted out . . .").

\textsuperscript{14} See Golden Gateway Ctr. v. Golden Gateway Tenants Ass’n, 29 P.3d 797, 808 (Cal. 2001) (quoting Todd F. Simon, Independent but Inadequate: State Constitutions and Protection of Freedom of Expression, 33 U. KAN. L. REV. 305, 318 (1985)) ("The notion that free expression can, and potentially does, mean something slightly different in each state even when provisions read identically is not fully supportable.").

\textsuperscript{15} See infra Part III (discussing why CICs should not be “speech free” zones).


\textsuperscript{17} The major suggestions have been to: (1) treat CIC boards as “state actors” and thus apply state constitutional free speech-protections to CICs, see infra Part IV.A; (2) rely on legislative action to protect free expression, see infra Part IV.B; (3) push homeowners to pass a residents’ bill of rights, see infra Part IV.C; (4) apply a constitutional test that analyzes the reasonableness of restrictive covenants (the New Jersey approach), see infra Part IV.D; and (5) strike down covenants that are found to be against public policy (the Restatement approach), see infra Part V.
further analysis of each of these theories is needed in light of some important recent developments around the United States. Second, few if any commentators have scrutinized the practical implications of each of the major proposals to extend free speech to CICs, as most have been largely theoretical. In reality, the application of some of these theories could make, and in some instances already have made, the treatment of free speech in CICs even more confusing and inconsistent. Therefore, the merits and disadvantages of each theory must be analyzed to determine which actually presents the best opportunity to extend reasonable free speech rights to CICs around the country.

In Part II, this Comment describes how the “state action” requirement has insulated CICs from constitutional scrutiny. In Part III, this Comment explains why CICs should not create “speech free” zones, but should instead reasonably embrace the uncommon interests of its residents. Part IV presents the prevailing theories for application of free speech principles to CICs, analyzes their efficacy, and explains why each is not an ideal solution to the problem. In Part V, this Comment argues that state courts should adopt the policy of judicial non-enforcement of servitudes that violate public policy, in line with the Restatement (Third) of Servitudes. In Part VI, this Comment suggests that no matter which solution courts adopt around the country, boards should proactively amend their governing documents to better reflect reasonable restrictions on expressional freedoms.

II. STATE ACTION: WHY THE FIRST AMENDMENT TO THE U.S.

18 There are several important recent developments. First, one state has further developed its unique adoption of a major theory. See infra Part IV.D (discussing New Jersey’s extension and clarification of its unique constitutional test in Duhler v. 2000 Livewood Ave. Owners, Inc., 220 N.J. 71 (2014)). In addition, another state has extended free speech rights into a more conservative region of the country, utilizing a constitutional test never before used outside of the state that created it. See infra note 169 and accompanying text (discussing a Missouri state court’s adoption of New Jersey’s constitutional test in Lamprecht v. Tiara at the Abbey Homeowners Association, No. 12JE CC0027, 2013 WL 6144144 (Mo. Cir. Oct. 3, 2013)). And finally, two other states have recently revived a major theory and applied it to CICs for the first time. See infra note 42 (discussing Shelley v. Kraemer’s application in Bd. of Managers of Old Colony Vill. Condo. v. Pres., 80 Mass. App. Ct. 728, 732 (2011); review denied, 964 N.E.2d 985 (Mass. 2012)) and Lamprecht, 2013 WL 6144144.

19 See, e.g., Franzese & Siegel, supra note 2, at 742 (“The Twin Rivers decision is not a model of clarity,”); Golden Gateway Ctr., 29 P.3d at 801 (citation omitted) (“Robins was less than clear ‘as to the scope of the free speech rights it was recognizing.’”).

30 See infra Part IV (describing and assessing the viability of each of the major proposed theories).
CONSTITUTION DOES NOT APPLY TO CICs

Over the last few decades, and with increasing frequency, residents have challenged the regulations in their communities. These residents have argued, inter alia, that their constitutional rights of free speech and association are infringed under the United States Constitution and state constitutions. Until recently, these suits have been relatively fruitless, with residents having little success in subjecting CICs to First Amendment protections. This failure can be largely attributed to the "state action" requirement under the federal and state constitutions, which establishes that violations of constitutional rights are redressable only if committed by governmental entities.

A. U.S. Constitution

The First Amendment states that "Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances." Flowing naturally from this language is that the Constitution prohibits only government interference with constitutional rights, not actions by private entities.

There has only been one instance in which the U.S. Supreme Court has addressed residential restrictions on political expression under the First Amendment. In City of Ladue v. Gilleo, the Supreme

---

21 For example, in New Jersey alone there has been a clear uptick in the number of cases the New Jersey Supreme Court has addressed on this issue in recent years. See State v. Schmid, 84 N.J. 555 (1980); N.J. Coal. Against War in the Middle East v. J.M.B. Realty Corp., 138 N.J. 326 (1994); Comm. for a Better Twin Rivers v. Twin Rivers Homeowners' Ass'n, 192 N.J. 344, 367 (2007); Mazzabrook Commons Homeowners' Ass'n v. Khan, 210 N.J. 482, (2012); Dubliner, 220 N.J. 71 (2014).

22 The genesis of the state action doctrine was in the Civil Rights Cases, where the Supreme Court held that "until some State law has been passed, or some State action through its officers or agents has been taken, . . . no legislation of the United States under said amendment, nor any proceeding under such legislation, can be called into activity, for the prohibitions of the amendment are against State laws and acts done under State authority." Civil Rights Cases, 109 U.S. 3, 13 (1883).

23 U.S. CONST. amend. I.

24 Despite this logical conclusion, the state action doctrine has remained in flux since its inception, and is still considered a "conceptual disaster area." Charles L. Black, Jr., Foreword: State Action, Equal Protection, and California's Proposition 14, 81 HARV. L. REV. 69, 95 (1967); see also State Action and the Public/Private Distinction, 123 HARV. L. REV. 1248, 1260 (2010) ("In the years following [the Civil Rights Cases], the Court transformed the state action doctrine into one of the most complex and discordant doctrines in American jurisprudence.").

Court analyzed sign restrictions imposed by a municipality in a Missouri town. After a resident posted a sign protesting the war, the resident was notified that these signs were prohibited in the city. After denying the resident a variance, the city passed an ordinance with a blanket prohibition on signs. The Supreme Court ruled that while a “time, place and manner” restriction was permissible, a ban on an entire unique medium of expression was an overreach of the state’s police power, and therefore unconstitutional under the First Amendment.

Despite *City of Ladue*’s promising ruling, it is of limited applicability in the context of private community associations. In *City of Ladue*, the state action requirement was clearly met, because the sign restrictions had been created and enforced by a municipality. To the contrary, because the boards of CICs are not government entities, their actions are insulated from the restrictions imposed by the First Amendment, and thus are not subject to the same constitutional protections as the Supreme Court extended in *City of Ladue*.

There have been several other important Supreme Court cases that have hinted at possible alternate methods of enforcement of First Amendment rights against private entities. The seminal case is *Marsh v. Alabama*, which held that the actions of a private company town were constrained by constitutional protections because the town functioned as a governmental entity. Initially, the Court extended this holding, applying the same reasoning to other private entities like shopping centers; but this holding has since been rolled back, and

---

26 Id. at 43.
27 Id. at 45.
28 Id. at 46.
29 Id. at 56.
30 The Court explained that although municipalities could regulate signs under their police power, these forms of expression were still protected under the Free Speech Clause, and thus the municipality’s powers were not unlimited. Id. at 48.
31 *But see infra* Part IV.A (discussing the argument, advanced by several scholars, that HOAs should be treated as state actors because modern CICs perform many of the functions of local governments).
33 Id. at 508 (“[T]he town of Chickasaw does not function differently from any other town.”).
35 *See Hudgens*, 424 U.S. at 507 (holding that property does not “lose its private character merely because the public is generally invited to use it for designated purposes,” and that “[t]he essentially private character of a store and its privately
the Court's now long-standing position has been that the First Amendment does not apply to private actors. In the words of the Supreme Court: "It is, of course, a commonplace that the constitutional guarantee of free speech is a guarantee only against abridgment by government, federal or state. . . . This elementary proposition is little more than a truism." Therefore, individuals generally may not seek recourse for First Amendment violations by private entities, including homeowners associations, by claiming that they are "quasi-governmental" entities like the company town in Marsh.

Another method frequently cited as a possible means of applying state action to traditionally private actors is through the doctrine espoused by the Supreme Court in Shelley v. Kraemer. In Shelley, the Court noted that "the action of state courts and of judicial officers in their official capacities is to be regarded as action of the State within the meaning of the Fourteenth Amendment." Some scholars believed that this holding would and should be extended to other fundamental rights like free speech, but courts have generally limited

---

owned abutting property does not change by virtue of being large or clustered with other stores in a modern shopping center"; Lloyd Corp. v. Tanner, 407 U.S. 551, 569 (1972).

See PruneYard Shopping Ctr. v. Robins, 447 U.S. 74, 80–81 (1980); Hudgens, 424 U.S. at 513. Constitutional scholar Frank Askin has succinctly described the Court's change in heart and current state action doctrine:

[B]ecause of decisions of the United States Supreme Court that postdate the Earl Warren era, plaintiffs in these cases can claim no rights under the First Amendment of the U.S. Constitution. With the change in the make-up of the Court following the election of Richard Nixon as president in 1968, earlier decisions generally labeled as public-function cases were overruled either overtly or sub silentio, and private property recovered its legal sanctity when it came into conflict with fundamental individual rights.


Hudgens, 424 U.S. at 513.

See, e.g., Kalian at Poconos, LLC v. Saw Creek Estates Community Ass'n, Inc., 275 F. Supp. 2d 578, 589 n.14, 590 (M.D. Penn 2003) (holding that the association's public functions do not "deem the Association a state actor" and that "the holdings of Marsh and subsequent cases are [] limited"); Midlake on Big Boulder Lake, Condo. Ass'n v. Cappuccio, 449 Pa. Super. 124, 128 (1996) (holding that a private organization "cannot abridge the rights of the First Amendment of the Constitution"); Snowdon v. Preferred RV Resort Owners Ass'n, 879 F. App'x 636, 637 (9th Cir. 2010) (holding that the association had not assumed the attributes and functions of a municipality).

334 U.S. 1 (1948).

Id. at 14.

See generally RESTATEMENT (THIRD) OF PROP.: SERVITUDES § 3.1 cmt. d (2000) (describing the varying readings of Shelley by scholars and courts: (1) there is state action if the state takes any action to enforce even privately made covenants; (2) Shelley
this holding to racially restrictive covenants.\textsuperscript{42}

Thus, applying the First Amendment to private entities has not been fruitful, despite numerous initially promising avenues. As a result, those seeking recourse for the actions of private entities have increasingly relied instead on the free speech protections offered by state constitutions.

\textbf{B. State Constitutions}

As an initial matter, state courts are generally the ultimate arbiters of their state's own laws and constitution.\textsuperscript{45} Therefore, even though the federal government requires state action under the U.S. Constitution, states are free to impose their own requirements for seeking the protections of state constitutions.\textsuperscript{46} Moreover, state courts usually have more latitude in analyzing the state action requirement, as most state constitutions do not contain express language referencing state action.\textsuperscript{47}

\textsuperscript{42} See \textit{Golden Gateway Ctr. v. Golden Gateway Tenants Ass'n}, 29 P.3d 797, 810 (Cal. 2001) (citing Cole, \textit{Federal and State "State Action": The Undercritical Embrace of a Hypercriticalized Doctrine}, 24 Ga. L. REV. 327, 353 (1990)) ("Although the United States Supreme Court has held that judicial effectuation of a racially restrictive covenant constitutes state action . . . it has largely limited this holding to the facts of those cases."). \textit{But see Lamprecht v. Tiara at the Abbey Homeowners Association}, No. 12JE CC0027, 2013 WL 6144144 (Mo. Cir. Oct. 3, 2013) (holding that judicial enforcement of a private covenant restricting free speech through political signage violated the Missouri constitution pursuant to \textit{Shelley}); \textit{Bd. of Managers of Old Colony Vill. Condo. v. Preu}, 80 Mass. App. Ct. 728, 732 (2011), \textit{review denied}, 461 Mass. 1110 (2012) (holding that state action arose from a civil lawsuit over a covenant, where costs were allocated under a state statute); \textit{see also generally Restatement (Third) of Prop.: Servitudes § 3.1 cmt. d (2000)}.

\textsuperscript{43} See, e.g., \textit{Mullaney v. Wilbur}, 421 U.S. 684, 691 (1975) ("This Court . . . repeatedly has held that state courts are the ultimate expositors of state law."); \textit{Federated Publications, Inc. v. Kurtz}, 94 Wash. 2d 51, 57 (1980).

\textsuperscript{44} The right for a state to recognize broad free speech rights on some private property under its own constitution was affirmed by the U.S. Supreme Court in the seminal \textit{Pruneyard Shopping Center v. Robins}, 447 U.S. 74 (1980) decision ("Pruneyard"). After \textit{Pruneyard}, only a handful of states took the Supreme Court up on its offer, including the California Supreme Court on remand ("Robins"). \textit{See Jon Golinger, Shopping in the Marketplace of Ideas: Why Fashion Valley Mall Means Target and Trader Joe's Are the New Town Squares}, 39 \textit{Golden Gate U.L. REV.} 261, 288-89 (2009) ("In the wake of Pruneyard, high courts in five other states - Colorado, Massachusetts, New Jersey, Oregon and Washington - eventually followed California's lead in interpreting their state constitutions to protect at least some free-speech activities in privately owned shopping centers.").

\textsuperscript{45} \textit{Compare Calif. Const. art. I, § 2, pl. a} ("Every person may freely speak, write and publish his or her sentiments on all subjects, being responsible for the abuse of
Despite that, state courts have nonetheless almost always found state action requirements in their own constitutions. This language, from the Washington Supreme Court, is indicative of the treatment of missing state action language in state constitutions:

It is a 2-foot leap across a 10-foot ditch . . . to seize upon the absence of a reference to the State as the actor limited by the state free speech provision and conclude therefrom that the framers of our state constitution intended to create a bold new right that conflicts with the fundamental premise on which the entire constitution is based. To do so would not be to "interpret" our constitution, but to deny its very nature.

Therefore, although states sometimes discuss and adjust the boundaries of state action under their state constitutions, virtually all have declined to impose substantial state constitutional obligations on this right. A law may not restrain or abridge liberty of speech or press.), with U.S. CONST. amend. I ("Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances."); see also, e.g., Sharrock v. Buick-Cadillac, Inc., 45 N.Y.2d 152, 160 (1978) ("Conspicuously absent from the State Constitution is any language requiring State action before an individual may find refuge in its protections.").

See Comm. For A Better Twin Rivers v. Twin Rivers Homeowners' Ass'n, 192 N.J. 344, 363 (2007) ("[T]he vast majority of other jurisdictions that have interpreted a state constitutional provision with language similar to our constitution's free speech provision require 'state action' as a precondition to imposing constitutional obligations on private property owners."). Although this has been the case for decades, there is a recent, albeit limited, trend towards finding state action by private entities under state constitutions. See infra Part IV.

Southcenter Joint Venture v. Nat'1 Democratic Policy Comm., 113 Wash. 2d 413, 424 (1989). Indeed, some state courts have blunter criticized the reasoning of state courts that have circumvented the state action doctrine to extend free speech rights to residents of CICs, including California in Robins. See, e.g., SHAD Alliance v. Smith Haven Mall, 66 N.Y.2d 496, 501 (1985) (citation omitted) ("[In Robins, t]here is not much analysis and only tangential discussion, if it can be called that, of the State action question. It is evident that the result in Robins was dictated by the accident of a change of personalities in the Judges of [the] court, which this court has correctly condemned as 'a shallow basis for jurisprudential evolution.'"); Jacobs v. Major, 139 Wis. 2d 492, 514, 520 (1987) ("It is significant that the majority did not analyze the constitutional sections, but rather summarily stated the protections granted by those sections. It appears to be more a decision of desire rather than analytical conviction. . . . Our constitution defines and limits the powers of state government; it is not a license for the judiciary to convert what the judiciary perceives to be desirable social policies into constitutional law.").

See, e.g., Sharrock, 45 N.Y.2d at 160 ("[T]he absence of any express State action language [in the New York constitution] simply provides a basis to apply a more flexible State involvement requirement than is currently being imposed by the Supreme Court with respect to the Federal provision.").
private property owners.40

As a result, both the federal and most state constitutions do not provide any protection to individuals seeking to engage in speech within the CICs they call their home. This leaves protection of those liberty interests to private law, where individuals are left with the ability to either select residences that permit their desired free speech or push for greater protections within their existing communities. This reality raises the question: do residents in private communities need additional free speech protections?

III. WHY CICs SHOULD NOT BE “SPEECH FREE” ZONES

Covenants, conditions, and restrictions ("CC&R") serve a legitimate purpose. Developers generally put CC&Rs into place before selling any units in an attempt to provide uniform, aesthetically pleasing environments for people to live and socialize.50 CC&Rs enforce this relative uniformity, ensuring that no singular unit owner’s tastes or practices trump the values of the community.51 While some commentators decry the abuses of associations and board members,52 many insiders instead paint a vivid picture of demanding, erratic, and difficult owners53 who force boards to be more authoritative in an effort

---

40 The major notable exception to this is New Jersey, which does not require state action as a prerequisite for extending the protections of the state constitution. See infra Part IV.D.

50 See supra note 3.


52 See infra notes 65–67.

53 These types of actions are exhibited in Preu, where the owner engaged in a variety of confrontational, and even dangerous, activities that required board intervention (including placing bags with feces in common areas, obstructing common areas, and interfering with fire doors). Bd. of Managers of Old Colony Vill. Condo. v. Preu, 80 Mass. App. Ct. 728, 730 (2011). The court noted that “[t]here was evidence at trial of a history of erratic and disruptive behavior by Preu at the condominium, and of a growing strain in relations between Preu on the one hand and the board and condominium manager on the other.” Id.
to rein them in. Arguably, if we begin to erode the power of CC&Rs, we may stand to lose some of the common in common interest communities.

In addition, there are legitimate arguments made by HOAs that residents in these communities have waived some of their rights by voluntarily living in communities subject to CC&Rs. The freedom to contract is a right that runs deep in the United States, and courts are extremely reluctant to intercede when private parties willingly enter into agreements with certain rights and restrictions. As owners accept the provisions included in their CC&Rs when they move into the community, some argue that they should be contractually barred from challenging them. These and other factors militate in favor of robust CC&Rs.

On the other hand, there are compelling reasons to extend more free speech rights to common interest communities. With the increasing prevalence of CICs, some scholars argue that there is little opportunity for prospective homeowners to actually seek out homes that are not burdened by association regulations. Moreover, many

---

54 Id. Indeed, difficult behavior by residents is allegedly common practice in many CICs. See Robert J. Galvin, Residential Condominiums—Drafting Management and Operational Provisions, CONDI MA-CLE 4-1 (2013) ("This sort of behavior will be familiar to those with experience in representing condominium associations.").

55 See, e.g., Kennedy, supra note 16, at 779–80 (citation omitted) ("At the root of the presumption of legitimacy accorded an association’s CC&Rs is consent. Residents who complain about any provision of the association’s CC&Rs or bylaws must counter the argument that they read these restrictions, considered them, and signed anyway. In contrast to one’s membership in the broader society, it is asserted, one’s membership in an association may be regarded as ‘wholly voluntary.’"); Mazzabrook Commons Homeowners’ Ass’n v. Khan, 210 N.J. 482, 511–12 (2012) (Weinberg, J., dissenting) (arguing that owners should be bound if they have “agreed freely” to live in a community with restrictions on free speech and “there is no showing of overreaching or coercion”). But see Kennedy, supra note 16, at 793 n.106 (discussing several problems with this position).

56 W. Coast Hotel Co. v. Parrish, 300 U.S. 379, 406 (1937) ("[F]reedom of contract is the general rule and restraint the exception; and that the power to abridge that freedom [can] only be justified by the existence of exceptional circumstances.").


58 See Mark Cantor, Increasing Freedom by Restricting Speech: Why the First Amendment Does Not and Should Not Apply in Common Interest Communities, 39 REAL EST. L.J. 409, 424 (2011) ("[P]eople living in common interest communities voluntarily expand some set of preferred benefits by contracting some set of less-favored rights. This happens every day outside of the CIC context in a democratic society, and is the very essence of democratic freedom."); Grant J. Levine, This Is My Castle: On Balance, the Freedom of Contract Outweighs Classifying the Acts of Homeowners’ Associations As State Action, 36 NOVA L. REV. 555 (2012); Kennedy, supra note 55, at 779–80.

59 See supra note 7.

60 See Gott, supra note 16, at 220 ("[T]he growing proportion of properties
residents in CC&Rs are arguably not given sufficient notice that their free speech rights will be severely restricted merely by moving into a certain community.\(^{61}\) And even for those who are aware of burdensome restrictions in their communities, most are nonetheless unable to bargain for different terms.\(^{62}\)

Additionally, HOA boards have been known to abuse their power, subjecting the residents of their communities to restrictions that seem intrinsically unreasonable.\(^{63}\) There are countless horror stories in this encumbered with covenants that provide for community association governance has made it increasingly difficult for a prospective home buyer to avoid.\(^{7}\); Franzese, supra note 2, at 755 (same); Askin, supra note 35, at 15 (discussing that in Twin Rivers, many people purchasing encumbered homes were merely looking for affordable housing, not the restrictions present in CC&Rs).

\(^{61}\) Of course, recordation of CC&Rs usually gives constructive notice to owners and binds them. Paula A. Franzese, Building Community in Common Interest Communities: The Promise of the Restatement (Third) of Servitudes, 38 REAL PROP. PROB. & TR. J. 17, 38–39 (2003). There is good reason to believe, however, that residents do not actually read every sentence of the CC&Rs, and even if they do, that they do not understand the significance and breadth of every restriction. See id.; see also supra note 8 and accompanying text. Professor Winokur has suggested that:

"In most prospective owners do not intelligently review the restrictions to which they subject themselves upon acceptance of a deed to land burdened by servitudes. The documentation typically makes long, boring reading for laypersons, who rarely retain counsel to review the documentation involved in home purchases. Even those who read the restrictions in advance may miscalculate their own future attitudes toward servitude restrictions, perhaps inaccurately expecting that friendly relations with neighbors will eliminate hostile disagreements between residents. Such optimistic expectations are often disappointed.


\(^{62}\) Franzese, supra note 61, at 31 (citing Evan McKenzie, Reinventing Common Interest Developments: Reflections on a Policy Role for the Judiciary, 31 J. MARSHALL L. Rev. 397, 398 (1998)) ("Typically, purchasers do not have the freedom or bargaining power to barter over terms contained in the declaration, described as 'a 200-page adhesion contract, which is merely a stack of non-negotiable, standardized boilerplate provisions.'").

\(^{63}\) See, e.g., Franzese & Siegel, supra note 2, at 761–65 (quoting Hannaman, supra note 8, at 2) (discussing the "undemocratic" conditions of CC&Rs and severe abuses of power articulated in the Hannaman report, as well as other horror stories); Aldo Svaldi, Horror Stories Prompt Industry Group to Ask Colorado to Regulate HOA Managers, DENVER POST (Feb. 13, 2012, 1:00 AM), http://www.denverpost.com/119951732 (presenting the story of an elderly couple on the verge of losing their home over fines that started with a misplaced trash can); Paul Bannister, Homeowner Horror Stories: Associations are Heaven or Hell, BANKRATE, http://www.bankrate.com/finance/real-estate/homeowner-horror-stories-associations-are-heaven-or-hell.aspx (last visited Feb. 7, 2015) (profiling numerous HOA horror stories, many which result in liens and/or foreclosure for the homeowner). In fact, there is even an extensive comment feed on the popular social news site Reddit, where users post their own HOA horror stories. See What are Your Home-Owners Association (HOA) Horror Stories?, REDDIT, http://www.reddit.com/r/AskReddit/comments/17v1fx/what_are_your_homeowners_association_hoa_horror/ (last visited Feb. 7, 2015).
vein, ranging from an HOA’s decision to ban all recreation in common areas\textsuperscript{44} to an elderly woman who was fined every time she walked her dog through the lobby, even though she could not physically carry the dog as required by the CC&Rs\textsuperscript{46}. In fact, so many associations banned residents from flying the American flag outside of their homes that Congress actually passed a statute to protect this right.\textsuperscript{46} But even federal law has not stopped HOAs from engaging in this practice, even when the flag is so small that it fits in a flower pot.\textsuperscript{47}

In sum, although CC&Rs undoubtedly serve the legitimate purpose of ensuring comfortable uniformity within a community, many HOAs take this command too far. By often enacting outright bans on virtually all kinds of free expression,\textsuperscript{48} HOAs are effectively attempting to turn CICs into “speech free” zones. This intolerance is repugnant to the American tradition of vibrant discourse,\textsuperscript{49} especially


\textsuperscript{48} The Freedom to Display the American Flag Act of 2005 reads:

A condominium association, cooperative association, or residential real estate management association may not adopt or enforce any policy, or enter into any agreement, that would restrict or prevent a member of the association from displaying the flag of the United States on residential property within the association with respect to which such member has a separate ownership interest or a right to exclusive possession or use.

Pub. L. No. 109–243, 120 Stat. 572 (2006). There are also state analogs to this law. See, e.g., Fla. Stat. Ann. § 720.304 (2010) (guaranteeing the right of CIC residents to fly a flag “regardless of any covenants, restrictions, bylaws, rules, or requirements of the association”). In reality, the fact that legislatures around the country, including Congress, have independently concluded that homeowners associations often pass overburdensome regulations is reason enough to conclude that more free speech rights should be extended to CICs.

\textsuperscript{47} Florida Man May Lose Home Over Display of American Flag, AOL (June 24, 2014, 2:28 PM), http://www.aol.com/article/2014/06/24/florida-man-may-lose-home-over-display-of-american-flag/20919158/ (describing a situation where a Florida veteran was fined $100 for every day that he kept a miniature American flag in his flower pot).

\textsuperscript{49} See, e.g., Dubliner v. 2000 Linwood Ave. Owners, Inc., 220 N.J. 71 (2014) (where the Board left a small bulletin board as the only means of expression within the community).

\textsuperscript{49} Setha M. Low, The Edge and the Center: Gated Communities and the Discourse of Urban Fear, AM. ANTHROPOLOGIST 45 (2001) (“This retreat to secured enclaves with walls, gates, and guards materially and symbolically contradicts American ethos and values, threatens public access to open space, and creates yet another barrier to social interaction, building of social networks, as well as increased tolerance of diverse cultural/racial/social groups.”). Indeed, the Supreme Court has always stressed the
when it is increasingly difficult for individuals to find residences that are unburdened by these types of restrictions. Therefore, it is vital for the preservation of free speech to identify methods to extend greater expressional rights to CICs.

IV. METHODS PROMULGATED TO EXTEND FREE SPEECH PROTECTIONS TO CICs

Many different theories have been proposed to extend free speech rights to CICs. The most popular of these suggestions have been to: (1) treat CICs as state actors, and thus subject them to constitutional obligations, (2) encourage legislatures to pass statutory protections for expressional rights in CICs, (3) push communities themselves to adopt CIC bills of rights to protect their own speech, or (4) persuade courts around the country to follow the New Jersey Supreme Court's lead in finding that unreasonable restrictions are offensive to their state constitutions. While none of these theories has yet been widely adopted, each provides an opportunity to analyze and weigh the competing interests in an attempt to fashion the best possible solution.

A. Treat CICs as State Actors, thus Subjecting Them to First Amendment Obligations

Experts worry that those looking for new homes are increasingly unable to find properties without accompanying restrictions on free speech. Therefore, one of the most popular proposed solutions argues that CICs have become the de facto governmental entity in vital role of free speech and public discourse, remarking:

The safeguarding of [free speech] rights to the ends that men may speak as they think on matters vital to them and that falsehoods may be exposed through the processes of education and discussion is essential to free government. Those who won our independence had confidence in the power of free and fearless reasoning and communication of ideas to discover and spread political and economic truth... Abridgment of freedom of speech and of the press, however, impairs those opportunities for public education that are essential to effective exercise of the power of correcting error through the processes of popular government.


See supra note 60 and accompanying text.
See infra Part IV.A.
See infra Part IV.B.
See infra Part IV.C.
See infra Part IV.D.
See supra note 60 and accompanying text.
substantial portions of the country, and should be treated as such.\textsuperscript{76} Under this line of reasoning, if CICs fulfill many of the functions of municipalities, their actions should qualify as state action, opening them up to constitutional obligations.\textsuperscript{57}

There is no arguing with the fact that CICs provide services traditionally delivered by municipalities. In fact, even the Community Association Institute, which represents the interests of community associations, describes the phenomena as such:

Newly created community associations are increasingly required to provide their members with what have historically been considered "municipal" services. Association members must then typically pay the same local taxes as other neighboring homeowners even though trash collection, road and sidewalks maintenance and repair, street lighting, disposal of sewage, storm, flood and erosion control systems, shade and ornamental tree maintenance, security patrols for crime, disorder and public safety and other forms of public services are not made available to them.\textsuperscript{78}

Because these are traditional municipal services, some scholars argue that associations effectively operate as "quasi-governmental" entities, entitling residents to the same protections that are afforded to those living under normal government oversight.\textsuperscript{79} In practice, though, this

\textsuperscript{76} There is also a separate but related argument that extensive regulation and protection provided by state laws qualify associations as state actors. Nevertheless, this idea has not caught on and is unlikely to succeed as a rationale for a state action designation on its own. See, e.g., Yan Sui v. 2176 Pac. Homeowners Ass'n, SACV 11-1340 JAK AJW, 2012 WL 6692758, at *11 (C.D. Cal. Aug. 30, 2012) ("[T]he fact that state law governs the formation and operation of the HOA does not make the HOA a state actor.").

\textsuperscript{57} Although this argument is an extension of the Marsh principle, see supra notes 32–38 and accompanying text, it has since taken on a life of its own.

\textsuperscript{78} 2012 Public Policies of Community Associations Institute, Local Taxation and Public Services for Community Associations, supra note 5, at 54.

\textsuperscript{79} See, e.g., Kennedy, supra note 16, at 768 ("Since the ability to wield such power is largely associated with the state, only by recognizing the quasi-governmental nature of these associations and their actions can the unique conflicts they engender be adequately addressed."). A particularly cogent recitation of this analysis is provided by Franzese and Siegel, who note:

Presently, homeowners associations: (1) are assuming many functions and services traditionally provided by municipalities; (2) are often performing those functions and services with the use of taxpayer funds; (3) are often the product of conscious and deliberate municipal land-use policy; (4) represent the standard template for new community development in many parts of this State; and (5) own networks of streets and open space that, if owned by a municipality, would have served as ... traditional public forums for speech and assembly. In the face of these
notion may be untenable, a sentiment that is borne out in the lack of support it has received by courts throughout the United States.80

The initial resistance to this theory was that functions performed by associations do not supplant those essential services traditionally provided by municipalities,81 or that such claims were greatly exaggerated.82 Others argued forcefully that although associations perform some functions of government, such an attribute does not necessarily qualify them as governmental entities.83 Although these arguments are still discussed by commentators and courts,84 there seems to be a more fundamental disagreement with such a solution.

The modern hesitation to implement this solution appears to be that it works too broad and monumental of a change to American jurisprudence by eviscerating the state action doctrine.85 A holding

realities, it is simply untenable to continue a laissez-faire regime that presupposes that homeowners associations are wholly private organizations.

Franzese & Siegel, supra note 2, at 765–66.

80 See, e.g., supra notes 46–47 and accompanying text; see also infra notes 81 & 83.
81 See, e.g., Midlake on Big Boulder Lake, Condo. Ass’n v. Cappuccio, 449 Pa. Super. 124, 128 (1996) (“While there is sewer service, private streets, and private maintenance, Midlake provides no facilities for community public use that are typically found in a municipality, such as schools, libraries, and other public functions.”); Brock v. Watergate Mobile Home Park Ass’n, Inc., 502 So. 2d 1380, 1382 (Fla. Dist. Ct. App. 1987) (“[T]he services provided by a homeowners association, unlike those provided in a company town, are merely a supplement to, rather than a replacement for, those provided by local government.”); Ross v. Hatfield, 640 F. Supp. 708, 711 (D. Kan. 1986) (finding that the community was not "sufficiently similar to the company-owned town in Marsh" because it did not have its own police or firemen, its own schools, independent trash collection, or public spaces serving the business needs of its residents, nor did the Board of Managers have the powers and rights of a town's governing body).

82 Gott, supra note 16, at 207 (“Some [scholars] engage in a disingenuous inquiry into the services an association provides.”).

83 One court, citing Judge Richard Posner, used an analogy to explain why associations should not be considered government actors:

There are two problems with this line of reasoning. First, it ‘confuse[s] an entity and its attributes.’ Dogs breathe, eat, sleep, run, and play, but they are not humans, who also do all of those things. And it is not as though the attributes [cited] are those which have been described by the Supreme Court as possibly exclusive state functions . . . . Demonstrating that condominiums do certain things that state governments also do doesn’t show that condominiums are acting as the state or in the state’s place.


85 The state action doctrine is a bastion of American jurisprudence. Indeed, courts have said that “the fundamental nature of a constitution is to govern the
that any private entity which performs quasi-governmental functions could be held as a state actor would be unduly broad, likely capturing many community associations that may not function as quasi-governments, as well as corporations, unions, and even sports leagues. Any test articulated to help determine what would vault an entity into “state actor” distinction would undoubtedly be imprecise, wholly subjective, and unpredictable. Such a test would do little to resolve the hodgepodge of seemingly contradictory judicial opinions on this issue around the country, nor adequately apprise boards and owners of their rights before litigation hashed them out.

As the line between HOAs and local governments becomes even further blurred, especially as jurisdictions pass legislation mandating private associations for all new development, the calls for treating HOAs as state actors will only get stronger. But because the state relationship between the people and their government, not to control the rights of the people vis-à-vis each other.” Golden Gateway Ctr. v. Golden Gateway Tenants Ass’n, 29 P.3d 797, 808 (Cal. 2001) (citation omitted). By chipping away the state action doctrine, the interactions between private entities would effectively be controlled by the government, reducing choice and eroding the separation of powers. For this reason, it is unlikely to ever be significantly curtailed. See supra Part 0.


89 Goldblatt, 12 F. Supp. 2d at 823 (noting that “[t]he National Basketball Association makes rules, conducts hearings, issues decisions, and imposes fines, but it seems unlikely that the privately run sports league is a government actor,” and discussing how such reasoning could apply to unions and corporations as well).

90 Id.

91 Id.

92 For example, some have simply pegged it as a “fact-bound determination, requiring a variety of linkages between the actor and state authority.” Kennedy, supra note 16, at 783. Such a test would subject every significant private entity to lawsuits to determine whether they are to be treated as state actors under this framework.

93 Id. (“State courts have reached wildly different conclusions when faced with [this determination].”)


action impediment is such a large one, and because most states have already dug in their heels against such a proposition, this proposal is likely more of an academic exercise than a realistic solution.

B. Legislative Extension of Free Speech Rights to CICs

Some state legislatures have recognized the shortfalls of suggested judicial remedies to this problem, and have taken it upon themselves to protect free speech rights through legislation. California’s experience is instructive.

Early on, the California judiciary led the way in extending constitutional protections to private settings, holding that free speech rights applied to private shopping centers. As time wore on, with heavy criticism of its rationales and a more conservative bench, the California Supreme Court sharply limited its extension of free speech rights, and appellate courts followed suit. With that, California’s

344 (2007) ("The manner and extent to which functions undertaken by community associations have supplanted the role that only towns or villages once played in our polity mirrors the manner and extent to which regional shopping centers have become the functional equivalents of downtown business districts."); Cohen v. Kite Hill Cnty. Assn., 142 Cal. App. 3d 642, 651 (Cal. Ct. App. 1983) (citation omitted) (citing a law review article which noted "the increasingly 'quasi-governmental' nature of the responsibilities of... associations" and that "one clearly sees the association as a quasi-government entity paralleling in almost every case the powers, duties, and responsibilities of a municipal government"). It remains to be seen whether more courts will adopt this reasoning, but it is unlikely that a solution requiring such a substantial shift in this country’s jurisprudence will ever command considerable support.

See supra notes 47, 81, & 83 (surveying various courts that have rejected attempts to ascribe state action to private actors).

For example, Illinois has passed a statute, 765 ILCS 605/18.4(h), providing that: [N]o rule or regulation may impair any rights guaranteed by the First Amendment to the Constitution of the United States or Section 4 of Article I of the Illinois Constitution including, but not limited to, the free exercise of religion, nor may any rules or regulations conflict with the provisions of this Act or the condominium instruments. No rule or regulation shall prohibit any reasonable accommodation for religious practices, including the attachment of religiously mandated objects to the front-door area of a condominium unit.

Many other states have passed legislation protecting free speech in CICs. See, e.g., Suarez, supra note 16, at 759 n.116; Chadderdon, supra note 16, at 262–63 (discussing the legislative enactments of Arizona, Maryland, Florida, California, and Texas).

Robins v. Pruneyard Shopping Center, 29 Cal. 3d 899 (1979); see supra note 44 and accompanying text.

See supra note 47 and accompanying text.

See Golden Gateway Ctr. v. Golden Gateway Tenants Ass’n, 29 P.3d 797 (Cal. 2001) (holding that California’s free speech right does not apply to private apartment complexes).

Golinger, supra note 44, at 269 (noting that appellate courts further narrowed
judicial experiment came to a screeching halt.\textsuperscript{100}
Recognizing the importance of certain free speech rights within CICs, and aware that attempted judicial remedies were untenable, the California legislature was forced to act on its own. In 2011, the legislature passed a statute specifically protecting free speech in CICs, with California Civil Code § 1940.4 guaranteeing the rights of residents to display political signs without ramifications from association boards.\textsuperscript{101} There are some reasonable limitations on this right, but the legislation nonetheless codifies rights for residents that the California Supreme Court was ultimately unable or unwilling to extend.
California's experience offers a model for other state legislatures to safeguard the rights of those living in CICs, without disturbing the state action doctrine. Although some have suggested this as a viable solution,\textsuperscript{102} there are undeniable problems with such a course of action. For one, there are questions regarding the ability of legislatures to micromanage private entities and subvert the state action doctrine through legislation. As "freedom of contract [is] the general rule and restraint the exception,"\textsuperscript{103} some have suggested that a retroactive

\textsuperscript{100} The California Supreme Court now holds that "the actions of a private property owner constitute state action for purposes of California's free speech clause only if the property is freely and openly accessible to the public." \textit{Golden Gateway Ctr.}, 29 P.3d at 810; see also Cal. Prac. Guide Landlord-Tenant Ch. 4-D (2014).

\textsuperscript{101} \textsc{Cal. Civ. Code} § 1940.4 reads:
(a) Except as provided in subdivision (c), a landlord shall not prohibit a tenant from posting or displaying political signs relating to any of the following:
(1) An election or legislative vote, including an election of a candidate to public office.
(2) The initiative, referendum, or recall process.
(3) Issues that are before a public commission, public board, or elected local body for a vote.
(b) Political signs may be posted or displayed in the window or on the door of the premises leased by the tenant in a multifamily dwelling, or from the yard, window, door, balcony, or outside wall of the premises leased by a tenant of a single-family dwelling.
(c) A landlord may prohibit a tenant from posting or displaying political signs in the following circumstances:
(1) The political sign is more than six square feet in size.
(2) The posting or displaying would violate a local, state, or federal law.

\textsuperscript{102} See, e.g., \textit{Suarez, supra} note 16, at 762.

\textsuperscript{103} \textit{W. Coast Hotel Co. v. Parrish}, 300 U.S. 379, 406 (1937); see also \textit{In re Brooklyn Bridge Sw. Urban Renewal Project} (Project No. N.Y. R-67) Manhattan, New York, 46 Misc. 2d 558, 561 (Sup. Ct. 1965), aff'd, 24 A.D.2d 710 (1965) (citation omitted) (*While there is no absolute right of freedom of contract, the exercise of legislative authority to abridge it can be justified only where the enforcement of such a contract would conflict with dominant public interests. Otherwise a statutory restraint on the
application of a statute that strips associations of previously held rights might be struck down via the Contracts Clause.\footnote{See Ronald Perl and Brian Edlin, The Constitutional Conundrum; The Application of State and Federal Constitutions to Planned Communities and Condominiums, COLL. OF CMTY. ASS’N LAWYERS, §1.05 (Jan. 24–26, 2013).}

More fundamentally, the political will to pass legislation addressing each free speech issue may be lacking. And even if there was the political will, passing legislation is often reactive, not proactive, and would provide an extremely slow solution to this problem. Moreover, state legislatures likely vary widely in how they view the role of government in controlling private entities, and inconsistent protections offered in different parts of the country would do little to help the current situation. Therefore, although legislative enactments would do much to avoid the difficult state action question, it is unlikely that they would have the speed, uniformity, or predictability necessary to provide an adequate remedy.

C. CIC Bill of Rights

Similar to a reliance on legislative action to protect free speech in CICs, some scholars have suggested that residents themselves should take the initiative to protect free speech in their communities.\footnote{See, e.g., Suarez, supra note 16, at 758.} A Residents’ Bill of Rights\footnote{For potential wording of such a Homeowner’s Bill of Rights, see French, supra note 8, at 351 (“Speech: The rights of residents to display political signs and symbols of the kinds normally displayed in or outside of residences located in single-family residential neighborhoods in their individually owned property shall not be abridged, except that the association may adopt reasonable time, place, and manner restrictions for the purpose of minimizing damage and disturbance to other owners and residents.”); see also Paul Boudreaux, Homes, Rights, and Private Communities, 20 U. FLA. J.L. & PUB. POL’Y 479, 515–54 (2009).} would ostensibly “provide meaningful oversight of homeowners associations without unduly restricting the power of governing boards to carry out their duties and obligations.”\footnote{Franzese & Siegel, supra note 2, at 768 (discussing legislative enactments that would function similarly to a homeowner’s “Bill of Rights”).} This position is theoretically supported by advocates for community associations and boards, who argue that homeowners should shoulder the burden of setting aside the rights they wish to have in their communities.\footnote{Chadderdon, supra note 16, at 260 (“HOA members do have the ability to change the covenants of the HOA through a vote of the members. Thus, there appears to be a political remedy built into the HOA structure: if enough homeowners want to make a change, they can vote to make that change.”); see also infra Part 0 (suggesting that residents and boards should collaboratively change their CC&Rs to reflect reasonable allowances of free expression).} Homeowners control the boards, and are therefore

freedom of the parties to contract is violative of the Fourteenth Amendment . . . ”).
able to amend the associations' governing documents as they collectively see fit. In reality, though, residents cannot be relied upon to protect free speech rights in their own communities. As an initial matter, CC&Rs are almost always set before the sale of any homes, and usually exist for good reasons. In CICs, although select residents may be upset that their expression is limited, many more are thankful that there are restrictions to insulate the community from potentially disruptive speech. More fundamentally, even if the will exists, boards exercise significant control over the legislative process within associations and can greatly hinder any attempt to amend the CC&Rs to add such a bill of rights. As the desire to extend free speech methods in CICs will often be a minority position, it is unlikely that it will ever command the majority necessary to pass a Bill of Rights.

Therefore, while it may certainly help the situation for residents and boards to seek out internal solutions to free speech problems, a "Bill of Rights" cannot be relied on as the only, or even primary, method of safeguarding free speech rights in CICs.

D. Applying a Constitutional Analysis: The New Jersey Approach

The New Jersey Supreme Court has taken the matter into its own hands, devising a unique test under its state constitution that extends free speech rights without deeming CICs state actors. After the U.S. Supreme Court held in PruneYard that states could find greater free

---

109 See supra note 3 and accompanying text.
110 See supra notes 53-54 and accompanying text.
111 In addition to homeowners who actively support restrictions, apathy is also a major impediment to marshaling the will to amend the governing documents. Because many communities count non-votes as "no" votes, an indifferent owner is just as damaging as an owner who actually votes "no" on an amendment.
112 Chadderdon, supra note 16, at 260 ("[T]he notion that homeowners can make changes to CC&Rs once becoming home-owning members of HOAs is largely illusory.").
113 See infra Part 0 (arguing that while a more significant solution is necessary, boards and residents would do well to preemptively modernize their CC&Rs to protect reasonable amounts of free expression).
114 The only other court that has utilized the New Jersey approach was a Missouri state court in Lampecht v. Tiara at the Abbey Homeowners Ass'n, 2013 No. 12-JE CC0027, WL 6144144 (Mo. Cir. Oct. 3, 2013). See infra note 169 and accompanying text.
116 Robins v. PruneYard Shopping Center, 447 U.S. 74 (1980); see also supra note 44.
speech protections under their own constitutions than the U.S. Constitution, and thus could extend free speech protections to certain kinds of private property,\textsuperscript{117} New Jersey was one of the first states to take that leap.\textsuperscript{118}

In its first post-Pruneyard foray into the issue of free speech in a traditionally private sphere, the New Jersey Supreme Court determined in \textit{State v. Schmid}\textsuperscript{119} that there are certain instances where the public nature of private property begets some constitutional protections.\textsuperscript{120} The court recognized that “as private property becomes, on a sliding scale, committed either more or less to public use and enjoyment, there is . . . a counterbalancing between expressional and property rights.”\textsuperscript{121} In order to effectuate this understanding, the court developed a new test to determine the extent to which expression on privately-owned property can reasonably be restricted:

This standard must take into account (1) the nature, purposes, and primary use of such private property, generally, its ‘normal’ use, (2) the extent and nature of the public’s invitation to use that property, and (3) the purpose of the expressional activity undertaken upon such property in relation to both the private and public use of the property. This is a multi-faceted test which must be applied to ascertain whether in a given case owners of private property may be required to permit, subject to suitable restrictions, the reasonable exercise by individuals of the constitutional freedoms of speech and assembly.\textsuperscript{122}

Utilizing this test, the court held that Schmid was entitled to enter the campus of Princeton University and distribute political materials, despite a lack of permission from the University.\textsuperscript{125} This important holding opened the door slightly for those whose free speech was limited in other traditionally private spheres, and set the stage for New

\textsuperscript{117} In \textit{Pruneyard}, the Supreme Court had held that California could extend free speech guarantees to private shopping centers under its own state Constitution. 447 U.S. at 79–80.

\textsuperscript{118} See supra note 44.

\textsuperscript{119} 84 N.J. 535 (1980).

\textsuperscript{120} \textit{Id.} at 567.

\textsuperscript{121} \textit{Id.} at 561 (citing Marsh v. Alabama, 326 U.S. 501, 506 (1946)).

\textsuperscript{122} \textit{Id.} at 563.

\textsuperscript{125} \textit{Id.} at 567–68 ("[I]n the absence of a reasonable regulatory scheme, Princeton University did in fact violate defendant’s State constitutional rights of expression in evicting him and securing his arrest . . . .")
Jersey’s unique development of this constitutional framework.

More than a decade later, the New Jersey Supreme Court extended the ruling of Schmid, holding in New Jersey Coalition Against War in the Middle East v. J.M.B. Realty Corporation that regional private shopping malls had to permit leafleting on societal issues. In Coalition, the court added a new balancing test pitting expressional rights versus private property rights, which stood for the proposition that the more private property is utilized for public purposes, the more expressional rights may be enjoyed upon it. The court noted that the owners of the shopping mall had “intentionally transformed their property into a public square or market, a public gathering place, a downtown business district, a community,” which meant that “[t]he sliding scale [could not] slide any farther in the direction of public use and diminished private property interests.” On the private property interest side of the balancing test, the court observed that the plaintiff’s type of free speech was “substantial in [New Jersey’s] constitutional scheme” and that leafleting could be done without seriously infringing on the rights of other guests. After considering these interests, the court determined that the Schmid factors, as well as the general balancing, tilted in favor of allowing leafleting.

In its third major return to the question of free speech rights in private settings, the New Jersey Supreme Court reiterated in Committee for a Better Twin Rivers v. Twin Rivers Homeowners Association that a lack of state action is not an impediment to invoking free speech protections in the New Jersey constitution. For the first time, this


126 Coalition, 138 N.J. at 362–63.

127 Id. at 363 (quoting Marsh v. Alabama, 326 U.S. 501, 506 (1946)) (“The more an owner, for his advantage, opens up his property for use by the public in general, the more do his rights become circumscribed by the statutory and constitutional rights of those who use it.”).

128 Id.

129 Id.

130 Id.

131 Id.

132 Coalition, 138 N.J. at 365 (“We are totally satisfied that on balance plaintiff’s expressional rights prevail over defendants’ private property interests. We are further satisfied that the interference by defendants with plaintiff’s rights constitutes unreasonably restrictive or oppressive conduct.”).


134 The court stated that “the rights of free speech and assembly under our constitution are not only secure from interference by governmental or public bodies, but under certain circumstances from the interference by the owner of private
precedent was applied to the actions of a private residential entity; specifically, a policy restricting the size, number, and placement of signs within the community. Applying the Schmid/Coalition test, the court determined that the restrictions were not unreasonable and thus not unconstitutional, as they were merely time, place, and manner restrictions and residents had reasonable alternative opportunities to express themselves. Although the court ultimately found for the association and the opinion was somewhat “ambiguous and confusing,” the Twin Rivers decision nonetheless appeared to open the door even more for the eventual extension of free speech rights into CICs.

Just five years later, in Mazdabrook Commons Homeowners Assn. v. Khan, the New Jersey Supreme Court delivered a resounding victory for free speech in CICs, becoming the first state to strike down signage restrictions of a private CIC as violative of the state constitution. The court again repeated that “[i]n New Jersey, an individual's affirmative right to speak freely is protected not only from abridgement by government, but also from unreasonably restrictive and oppressive conduct by private entities in certain situations.” Yet the court noted that the facts of Mazdabrook, where a resident posted a political sign endorsing his own candidacy and was fined pursuant to the association’s blanket sign restriction, required a different interpretation of the Schmid/Coalition test than the one conducted in

property as well.” Id. at 364. The court also left no doubt about its departure from the state action doctrine, saying: “Simply stated, we have not followed the approach of other jurisdictions to require some state action before the free speech and assembly clauses under our constitution may be invoked.” Id. at 368.

Franzese & Siegel, supra note 2, at 733.

Twin Rivers, 192 N.J. at 351 (The covenant held that “residents [could] post a sign in any window of their residence and outside in the flower beds so long as the sign was no more than three feet from the residence. . . . The policy also forbade the posting of signs on utility poles and natural features within the community.”).

Id. at 368.

Id.

Franzese & Siegel, supra note 2, at 743.

Franzese and Siegel stressed the subtle importance of the Twin Rivers decision: Although at first glance the Twin Rivers decision does not appear to constitute a bold proclamation of new doctrine, a more careful analysis of the Court’s opinion reveals that the Court did indeed announce the framework of a new constitutional approach to CICs. That framework, although largely undefined in its details, provides a conceptual basis for a robust constitutional right of free speech and assembly applicable to CIC residents.

Id. at 733.

Mazdabrook Commons Homeowners' Ass'n v. Khan, 210 N.J. 482 (2012).

Id. at 499 (citations omitted).
2015] COMMENT 901

*Twin Rivers.* Because the owner was not an outsider and actually owned the property on which the speech was expressed, a test that pitted expressional rights versus private property rights was an inadequate means to assess the tradeoff. Therefore, the court focused on the third *Schmid* factor and engaged in a more general balancing of Khan's expressional rights versus the negative impact this speech had on the Association's property and common areas. After observing that Khan held a legitimate right to free speech on his own residential property and that his speech had minimal interference with Association property, the court concluded that his rights outweighed the aesthetic interests of the Association, and that the outright ban on signs was unconstitutional.

Despite *Mazdabrook*'s win for free speech, the test for evaluating free speech rights in CICs had become significantly muddled, and lower courts appeared unsure of how to apply the test to differing factual circumstances. Seeking to clarify this standard, the New Jersey Supreme Court recently decided *Dubliner v. 2000 Linwood Ave. Owners, Inc.*, in which it unanimously articulated a new test for analyzing restrictions on speech within CICs. In *Dubliner*, a community's "House Rule" banned solicitation and distribution of

---

143 Id. at 498–99.
144 Id. The court explained that because Khan owned the property, "the first two *Schmid* factors [did] not favor near-absolute limits on placing a political sign inside [his] own home." Id. at 499.
145 Id. at 501.
146 Id. at 501–03.
147 *Mazdabrook*, 210 N.J. at 503.
148 Franzese & Siegel, supra note 2, at 747 (noting that the court had left "undefined the scope and application of this constitutional remedy," and remarking that there could be "many years of appellate litigation before the precise contours of this remedy are fully delineated").
149 See, e.g., *Dubliner v. 2000 Linwood Ave. Owners, Inc.*, No. A-4800-08T3, 2011 WL 3586199 (App. Div. 2011), aff'd, 220 N.J. 71 (2014) (where the Appellate Division purported to apply the *Schmid* test but failed to address how each prong of the test is to be assessed and valued, and neglected to discuss how the test changed based on the type of property and nature of the restriction).
151 Because the building in question was a private cooperative apartment building (often referred to as a "co-op"), which features residents who purchase shares of the building and hold leasehold interests in their units, the House Rule was enforced by a Board of Directors and not a Homeowners Association. Although this difference may implicate different concerns, see Oral Argument, *Dubliner v. 2000 Linwood Ave. Owners, Inc.*, 220 N.J. 71 (2014) (No. A-125-11), available
literature in common areas of the property without board approval.\textsuperscript{152} A resident in the building ran for the Board of Directors and sought to distribute campaign literature on the premises, but the Board denied his request.\textsuperscript{153} The resident filed suit challenging the "House Rule," the trial judge found for the Board, and the plaintiff appealed.\textsuperscript{154}

The Appellate Division applied the well-known Schmid three-factor test, and found that although the community was private and there was no public invitation to the property,\textsuperscript{155} the restriction nonetheless failed the test because it was unreasonable.\textsuperscript{156} The court noted that the policy was especially unreasonable because it did not allow for any alternative means of expression\textsuperscript{157} and seemed to discriminate based on content.\textsuperscript{158} But because of the "ambiguous and confusing"\textsuperscript{159} nature of the New Jersey Supreme Court's previous discussions of free speech in CICs, many issues remained unaddressed in the decision: (1) specific Supreme Court language appeared to contradict the Appellate Division's holding;\textsuperscript{160} (2) it was unclear how a covenant could fail the Schmid test when two of the three factors militated in its favor;\textsuperscript{161} and (3) no court had addressed whether the

\textit{Dubliner}, 220 N.J. at 251–52.

\textsuperscript{152} The rule in question provided:

There shall be no solicitation or distribution of any written materials anywhere upon the premises without authorization of the Board of Directors. Without prior consent of the Board of Directors, no sign or notice shall be placed upon the bulletin board, [in] the mail room, in the halls, lobby, elevators or on the doorways. A bulletin board for residents['] use is provided [near] the rear door.


\textsuperscript{153} \textit{Id.} at *4.

\textsuperscript{154} \textit{Id.} at *6.

\textsuperscript{155} \textit{Id.} at *5.

\textsuperscript{156} \textit{Id.} at *6. It is important to note here that the Board of Directors did not evenly-apply the rule. For one, there was evidence that that Board itself engaged in the exact type of speech it prohibited the residents to engage in, namely in distributing newsletters that attacked the Board's critics. \textit{Id.} at *2. In addition, the Board permitted local police and firefighters to solicit donations by knocking on doors. \textit{Id.}

These facts tend to indicate that the Board discriminated based on content, and although the Appellate Division did not explicitly hold this, it undoubtedly influenced the perception of the reasonableness of the rule. \textit{Id.} at *6; \textit{Dubliner v. 2000 Linwood Ave. Owners, Inc.}, 220 N.J. 71, 88–89 (2014).

\textsuperscript{157} Franzese & Siegel, \textit{supra} note 2, at 743.

\textsuperscript{158} See infra note 167.

\textsuperscript{159} The Appellate Division neglected to discuss the nature of the interaction between the different prongs of the Schmid test. Do all prongs need to be satisfied for
analysis changed based on the identity of the speaker and type of community.\textsuperscript{162}

Recognizing these deficiencies, the New Jersey Supreme Court issued somewhat of a \textit{mea culpa} in \textit{Dublrer}, admitting that the \textit{Schmid/Coalition} test \textit{is} not a perfect fit for private residential communities. The first prong of the \textit{Schmid} test, for example, is largely subsumed by the issue itself. In the case of restrictions imposed by the board of a private common-interest community of dwellings, the primary nature and use of the property, by definition, is private. The second prong—the extent of the public’s invitation to use the property—is even less relevant because residents do not need an invitation to use property in their own community.\textsuperscript{163}

Thus, in an attempt to “clarify the standard,”\textsuperscript{164} the court declared that the \textit{Schmid} test should no longer be applied when the speaker is an owner, not a visitor.\textsuperscript{165} In those situations, “courts should [instead] focus on ‘the purpose of the expression activity undertaken’ in relation to the property’s use . . . and should also consider the ‘general balancing of expression rights and private property rights.”\textsuperscript{166} Thus, in its clearest decision since \textit{Schmid}, the New Jersey Supreme Court finally stated what the test really was all along: a balancing test between free expression and property rights.\textsuperscript{167} Applying this new test to the

\begin{flushleft}
\textit{a defendant to prevail? Must all prongs be satisfied for a plaintiff to win? The court decided that the first two prongs weighed in favor of the association, but found that the third factor, which weighed in favor of the resident, trumped the first two and necessitated a finding for the plaintiff. \textit{Dublrer}, 2011 WL 3386139, at *4–5.}\n\end{flushleft}

\begin{flushleft}
\textit{See supra note 151.}\n\end{flushleft}

\begin{flushleft}
\textit{Dublrer}, 220 N.J. at 84–85.\n\end{flushleft}

\begin{flushleft}
\textit{Id. at 85. See also Frank Askin, \textit{N.J. Supreme Court Decision Clarifies Rules for Condo Associations, Other Properties}, THE STAR-LEDGER (Dec. 11, 2014), http://www.nj.com/opinion/index.ssf/2014/12/nj_supreme-court_decision_clarifies_rules_for_condo_associations_other_properties_opinion.html (suggesting that “the Court took the occasion to clarify the law and end the confusion caused by the Twin Rivers opinion”).}\n\end{flushleft}

\begin{flushleft}
\textit{Dublrer}, 220 N.J. at 84–85.\n\end{flushleft}

\begin{flushleft}
\textit{Id. at 85 (quoting State v. Schmid, 84 N.J. 535, 563 (1980); N.J. Coal. Against War in the Middle East v. J.M.B. Realty Corp., 158 N.J. 326, 362 (1994)).}\n\end{flushleft}

\begin{flushleft}
\textit{Although it showed up some of the problems with the previous test, \textit{Dublrer} arguably raised as many questions as it answered. For one, express New Jersey Supreme Court language seems to directly contradict the holding in this case. In two different decisions, the New Jersey Supreme Court has explicitly said:}\n\end{flushleft}

\begin{flushleft}
The list of ‘horribles’ suggested by defendants as the inevitable consequence of our holding for other forms of private property should be dealt with now, rather than in some future litigation. No highway strip mall, no football stadium, no theater, no single huge suburban store, no stand-alone use, and no small to medium shopping center sufficiently satisfies the standard of \textit{Schmid} to warrant the constitutional
facts, the court held that the “House Rule” was unconstitutional because Dubliner’s important interest in promoting his candidacy and communicating his views about community to governance “outweigh[ed] the minor interference that neighbors w[ould] face from a leaflet under their door.”

With this line of cases, New Jersey is unquestionably at the forefront of adopting a more flexible approach to extending free speech rights to CICs. And this constitutional framework is likely a better solution than any of the aforementioned theories, such as treating CICs as state actors, relying on legislative action, or pushing residents to protect their own interests. It is reasonable, faster than legislative action, and more reliable than depending on residents to fix the problem themselves. Yet the ongoing saga from Schmid to Dubliner underscores the difficulty other states will likely encounter if they choose to adopt New Jersey’s approach to free

extension of free speech to those premises, and we so hold.

Coalition, 138 N.J. at 378; Comm. for a Better Twin Rivers v. Twin Rivers Homeowners’ Ass’n, 192 N.J. 344, 361 (2007). The court never addressed this language in Dubliner. Second, it is still unclear whether slight factual differences fundamentally change the constitutional inquiry. For example, what if the building is a small, two-family building as opposed to a large condominium complex? Is there a difference between an HOA and a co-op? How does the inquiry change for requests by residents to express themselves through community newsletters or community websites? Is there less protection when the speech involved is political, as opposed to “political-like” in Dubliner? Third, the court has suggested that knowing and intelligent waiver might not be possible for free speech rights in the CIC context, Madabrook Commons Homeowners’ Ass’n v. Khan, 210 N.J. 482, 505–06 (2012), but it has not further explained this proposition, and it is still unclear whether waiver no longer applies. These and many more questions abound, and will seemingly require the court to return to this issue very soon.

As it stands, only one other court has followed the reasoning of the New Jersey Supreme Court and extended state constitutional protections to private CICs. The first and only extrastate extension of New Jersey’s constitutional approach was by a Missouri state court in Lamprecht v. Tiara at the Abbey Homeowners Ass’n, 2013 No. 12JE CC0027, WL 6144144 (Mo. Cir. Oct. 3, 2013), which involved facts “nearly identical” to Madabrook. Id. at *3. In Tiara at the Abbey, a covenant mandated that “no sign of any kind shall be displayed to the public view” but made exceptions for “for sale” signs and signs placed by the builder or remodeler to advertise the property. Id. at *1. In its analysis of the constitutionality of the covenant, the court engaged in an almost identical analysis as the New Jersey Supreme Court, complete with a discussion of the expansiveness of the Missouri state constitution, the fundamental importance of political speech, an analysis of the Schmid factors, and the Coalition balancing test. Id. at *2–4. Based on these considerations, the court determined, similarly to Madabrook, that a restriction on political signage is an unreasonable restriction and unconstitutional under Article I, § 8 of Missouri’s constitution. Id.

See supra Part IV.A.

See supra Part IV.B.

See supra Part IV.C.
speech in CICs. Therefore, as discussed in more detail in Part B, although the New Jersey test is noble for the results it commands, its complexity and unpredictability make it difficult to apply even in New Jersey, much less the rest of the country.

V. STRIKING COVENANTS AS UNREASONABLE AGAINST PUBLIC POLICY: WHY THE RESTATMENT TEST PROVIDES THE MOST WORKABLE SOLUTION

This Comment argues that the position taken by the Restatement (Third) of Property ("Restatement") is the most viable method of extending free speech to CICs. The Restatement suggests that courts should find a servitude "invalid if it is illegal, unconstitutional, or violates public policy." In this way, by allowing courts to strike free speech restrictions that contravene public policy, the Restatement provides a contract and property-based means of ensuring that residents in CICs are given reasonable freedom of expression. This attempts to shift the discussion from somewhat distracting constitutional arguments to more substantive and thoughtful ones like "whether the arrangement poses such risks to the social good that judicial modification or nullification is warranted."

And since judicial non-enforcement of covenants as unreasonable against public policy is a "long-standing axiom of contract law," the Restatement's suggestion is not so much a novel suggestion as it is the modern application of a time-tested approach. In this way, the Restatement test provides a method of guaranteeing free expression in CICs that is simple, reliable, and replicable around the country.

A. Overview of the Restatement Test

The Restatement test closely resembles the test the New Jersey Supreme Court recently articulated in Dubliner, in that it requires a balancing between the benefit derived from a covenant versus the harm of leaving the restriction in place. The Restatement begins by commanding that a servitude:

is valid unless it is illegal or unconstitutional or violates public policy. Servitudes that are invalid because they violate public policy include, but are not limited to:

(1) a servitude that is arbitrary, spiteful, or capricious;

---

171 Id.
177 RESTATEMENT (THIRD) OF PROP.: SERVITUDES § 3.1 cmt. e (2000).
(2) a servitude that unreasonably burdens a fundamental constitutional right;
(3) a servitude imposes an unreasonable restraint on alienation under § 3.4 or § 3.5;
(4) a servitude that imposes an unreasonable restraint on trade or competition under § 3.6; and
(5) a servitude that is unconscionable under § 3.7.\textsuperscript{178}

If the servitude does not fall clearly into one of these prohibitions, the Restatement requires courts to weigh the “interests in enforcing the servitude” against the “public interests that would be adversely affected by leaving the servitude in force.”\textsuperscript{179}

As to the first element, which considers the interests served by the servitude, the Restatement test begins with the presumption that all covenants are valid.\textsuperscript{180} This presumption recognizes that “policies favoring freedom of contract, freedom to dispose of one’s property, and protection of legitimate-expectation interests nearly always weigh in favor of the validity of voluntarily created servitudes.”\textsuperscript{181} To accommodate this assumption, the Restatement shifts the burden to the party claiming that a servitude should be struck down as a violation of public policy,\textsuperscript{182} and places strong reliance on waiver, though without mentioning it by name.\textsuperscript{183} Courts may also look to the community benefits derived from the restriction, such as attempts to be free from offensive speech, freedom from litter, and freedom of privacy.\textsuperscript{184}

As to the second half of the balancing test, courts must then consider what societal interests would be adversely affected if the servitude were left in place.\textsuperscript{185} This hinges on what constitutes “public

\textsuperscript{178} \textit{Id.} at § 3.1.
\textsuperscript{179} \textit{Id.} at § 3.1 intro. note (2000).
\textsuperscript{180} \textit{Id.} at § 3.1 intro. note (2000).
\textsuperscript{181} \textit{Id.} at § 3.1 intro. note (2000).
\textsuperscript{182} \textit{Id.} at § 3.1 intro. note (2000).
\textsuperscript{183} \textit{Id.} at § 3.1 intro. note (2000).
\textsuperscript{184} \textit{Id.} at § 3.1 intro. note (2000).
\textsuperscript{185} \textit{Id.} (“If the principal costs of a servitude fall on the parties who have accepted the burdened property in circumstances in which they should have understood the costs, courts should be reluctant to invalidate the servitude, no matter how costly it turns out to be to one of the parties . . . .”).
policy," a definition courts have grappled with for decades.\textsuperscript{186} The general concept of public policy in the servitudes context is that:

An agreement is against public policy if it is injurious to the interest of the public, contravenes some established interest of society, violates some public statute, is against good morals, tends to interfere with the public welfare or safety, or, as it is sometimes put, if it is at war with the interests of society and is in conflict with public morals.\textsuperscript{187}

At first glance, this seems an impossible task; such an undefined standard would be wholly subjective, unpredictable, and unfair.\textsuperscript{188} But the Restatement addresses this issue head-on; it readily acknowledges that the concept of public policy is "somewhat amorphous"\textsuperscript{189} and undertakes to simplify this judicial method through a set of standards to evaluate public policy.\textsuperscript{190}

\textsuperscript{186} William Story remarked more than a century ago that [p]ublic policy is in its nature so uncertain and fluctuating, varying with the habits and fashions of the day, with the growth of commerce and the usages of trade, that it is difficult to determine its limits with any degree of exactness. It has never been defined by the courts, but has been left loose and free of definition, in the same manner as fraud. This rule may, however, be safely laid down, that wherever any contract conflicts with the morals of the time, and contravenes any established interest of society, it is void, as being against public policy.

WILLIAM W. STORY, A TREATISE ON THE LAW OF CONTRACTS, § 675 (1874); see also Henningsen v. Bloomfield Motors, Inc., 32 N.J. 358, 403-404 (1960) (noting that "[p]ublic policy is a term not easily defined" because "[i]ts significance varies as the habits and needs of a people may vary").


\textsuperscript{188} Cf. supra Part D (criticizing the New Jersey approach as being similarly undefined and unpredictable).

\textsuperscript{189} RESTATEMENT (THIRD) OF PROP.: SERVITUDES ch. 3, intro. note (2000).

\textsuperscript{190} Id. at § 3.1 cmt. i. This entire portion of the comment reads: Resolving claims that a servitude violates public policy requires assessing the impact of the servitude, identifying the public interests that would be adversely affected by leaving the servitude in force, and weighing the predictable harm against the interests in enforcing the servitude. Only if the risks of social harm outweigh the benefits of enforcing the servitude is the servitude likely to be held invalid. The policies favoring freedom of contract, freedom to dispose of one's property, and protection of legitimate expectation interests nearly always weigh in favor of the validity of voluntarily created servitudes. A host of other policies, too numerous to catalog, may be adversely impacted by servitudes. Policies favoring privacy and liberty in choice of lifestyle, freedom of religion, freedom of speech and expression, access to the legal system, discouraging bad faith and unfair dealing, encouraging free competition, and socially productive uses of land have been implicated by servitudes. Other policies that become involved may include those protecting family relationships from coercive attempts to
The Restatement offers that sources of public policy can be "the product of judicial development, or they may be based on legislation, or on the provisions of state or federal constitutions."101 In considering the public policy interests espoused by state constitutions and legislative actions, the Restatement test is effectively a consolidation of multiple proposed solutions.102 For example, even if the state constitution could not be applied to private actions due to the state action doctrine, it could nonetheless provide a basis for judges to strike down restrictions as violative of public policy.103 And even if legislatures are not able to proactively protect every method of free expression through legislation, its existing pronouncements could be used by judges in considering whether the legislature would prefer to protect the type of expression in question.104 As a result, courts may look to these and other sources to determine whether striking down the covenant in question implicates interests such as "privacy and liberty in choice of lifestyle, freedom of religion, [and] freedom of speech and expression."105 If the court finds that these interests outweigh the benefits of enforcing the servitude, then the court may void the servitude as offensive to public policy.106

But the Restatement does not stop there. In order to give courts further guidance, the Restatement also puts forth various illustrations to describe types of covenants that would not survive the public policy

---

101 Id. at § 3.1 cmt. f; see also Allen v. Commercial Cas. Ins. Co., 131 N.J.L. 475, 477–78 (N.J. 1944) (suggesting that “[t]he sources determinative of public policy are, among others, our federal and state constitutions, our public statutes, our judicial decisions, the applicable principles of the common law, the acknowledged prevailing concepts of the federal and state governments relating to and affecting the safety, health, morals, and general welfare of the people for whom government — with us — is factually established”).

102 See supra Part B (discussing the suggestion that legislatures should take the lead on extending free speech rights); Part D (discussing New Jersey’s approach of using the state constitution’s expansive First Amendment to strike down restrictions on speech).

103 See, e.g., Kolbet, supra note 92, at 107 (“In Texas, because the state Constitution provides broad free speech protection, a Texas court could rightly hold that a total ban on political signs violated public policy, and was therefore unenforceable.”).

104 See RESTATEMENT (THIRD) OF PROP.: SERVITUDES § 3.1 cmt. f (2000) (“Courts may apply the policies manifested by legislation more broadly than the legislation provides, but they may not refuse to apply policies manifested by legislation in situations to which it clearly applies.”).

105 Id. § 3.1 cmt. i.

106 Id.
analysis. These include covenants that unreasonably restrict criticism of the community association, the posting of political signs, display of an American flag, and door-to-door solicitation of signatures by an outside citizens group. These illustrations give courts a useful framework for conducting the public policy balancing test and help to ensure that the test is conducted consistently by any court that applies it.

As with the other proposed theories, there are of course imperfections with the Restatement approach. As an initial matter, courts are extremely reluctant to interfere in the contractual relations of two private parties in the name of public policy. This is bolstered by the fact that servitudes are now considered extremely valuable aspects of property. Thus, declaring them void as against public policy might decrease the expected value of residents' properties.

In addition, how are courts to weigh competing public policy considerations, when each is compelling? Certainly, as stated poignantly by the Texas Supreme Court, one very important public

---

197 Id. at § 3.1 Illustrations.
198 Id. § 3.1 illus. 5.
199 Id. § 3.1 illus. 7 (noting that "the harm to the public interest in citizen participation in political debate outweighs the value of validating the servitude because "reasonable alternative means of exercising the right are not available").
200 RESTATEMENT (THIRD) OF PROP.:SERVITUDES§ 3.1 illus. 8 (2000) (explaining that flag restrictions would be void because "[d]isplay of the flag has strong expressive value, ready alternatives are not available, and the adverse impacts on other subdivision lot owners are not likely to be substantial"). But see id. at illus. 9 (explaining that a size restriction on a displayed American flag is not voidable because smaller flags provide adequate means of expression and large or numerous flags may hurt aesthetics).
201 Id. at illus. 18 (explaining that if a covenant denied access to anyone not a resident or his invitee, the "burden on the exercise of political speech rights of the Citizens group [would] outweigh[] the benefit to the residents of freedom from intrusion").
203 Joseph William Singer, The Rule of Reason in Property Law, 46 U.C. DAVIS L. REV. 1369, 1416–17 (2013) ("The modern approach recognizes that servitudes are not merely encumbrances on property that should be narrowly construed but that they are valuable property rights in themselves, precisely because of the stability they provide to the owners of dominant estates. That is why most courts have repudiated the traditional notion that ambiguous covenants should be interpreted narrowly in favor of free use of land, adopting instead the modern idea that they should be interpreted to achieve the intent of the grantor."); see also supra note 3 and accompanying text.
policy is the right to contract itself:

[I]f there is one thing which more than another public policy requires it is that men of full age and competent understanding shall have the utmost liberty of contracting, and that their contracts when entered into freely and voluntarily shall be held sacred and shall be enforced by Courts of justice. Therefore, you have this paramount public policy to consider—that you are not lightly to interfere with this freedom of contract.264

This quote illustrates the undeniable tension throughout the country between public free speech interests and the freedom to contract.265 As a result, despite the Restatement's attempts to normalize its prescribed analysis, there is still sufficient wiggle room in the balancing test that might only further perpetuate the inconsistencies currently found in CICs throughout the country.

These imperfections raise the question: Why is the Restatement's balancing test any better than, say, New Jersey's balancing test?266

B. Why the Restatement Test is the Best Method of Extending Reasonable Free Speech Rights to CICs

Although the Restatement's prescribed test is by no means perfect, it nonetheless provides the best method of expanding free speech rights to CICs.

First, the Restatement provides a non-constitutional method of striking down unreasonable restrictions on speech, which should always be considered before a constitutional method of adjudication.267 In general, courts are hesitant to "reach a constitutional question unless its resolution is imperative to the disposition of litigation."268 This theme of constitutional avoidance was articulated years ago by

265 See Baugh v. Novak, 340 S.W.3d 372, 382 (Tenn. 2011) (quoting Steven W. Feldman, Tennessee Practice: Contract Law and Practice § 7:3, at 732 (2006) ("The need for delicacy arises because exercising the authority 'to declare contracts as void as against public policy in tension with freedom of contract and the need to bind parties to their voluntary agreements.'").
267 See generally Ashwander v. Tennessee Valley Auth., 297 U.S. 288, 347 (1936) ("The Court will not pass upon a constitutional question although properly presented by the record, if there is also present some other ground upon which the case may be disposed of. ... Thus, if a case can be decided on either of two grounds, one involving a constitutional question, the other a question of statutory construction or general law, the Court will decide only the latter.").
Frank Askin, one of the foremost advocates for the extension of free speech rights in the country:

Because state courts always retain the common law power to strike down regulations they find unreasonable and against public policy, it is seldom necessary to fall back on constitutional principles when deciding disputes between the association and a member. Any rule that a court might find to be unconstitutional will probably be invalidated on common law principles—although it is true that several cases in Florida have referred to constitutional protections for free speech and family privacy to invalidate rules found to be unnecessarily restrictive of individual autonomy. However, the references to constitutional principles were unnecessary because those courts could have come to the exact same conclusions on common law grounds.209

Since this caution by Askin, New Jersey and other courts have nonetheless engaged in confusing, inconsistent, and unpredictable constitutional analyses.210 Because voiding servitudes as violative of public policy is a separate and independent means of reaching the same result,211 courts should never even reach the constitutional analysis.

Second, the constitutional analysis is far more complicated than


210 Interestingly enough, Frank Askin recently argued for the ACLU in the Dubliiner case, where he asked the New Jersey Supreme Court to strike down a restriction on leafleting as unconstitutional. He does not appear to have made any mention of non-constitutional methods of adjudication.

211 For example, the Restatement’s Illustration 5 poses almost the exact same factual situation as Dubliiner. It reads:

The declaration of servitudes for Harmony Village includes a provision prohibiting owners and residents from criticizing actions taken by the board of directors or the architectural-control committee except at regularly scheduled meetings of the board. A resident unhappy about a board decision to construct a new tennis court distributed a flyer to residents criticizing the board decision. Exercising its power to enforce the servitudes by fines, the board imposed a $1,000 fine on the resident.

In the absence of other facts or circumstances, the conclusion would be justified that the prohibition on criticism of board actions is invalid because it unreasonably burdens freedom of speech.

RESTATEMENT (THIRD) OF PROF.: SERVITUTES § 3.1 illus. 5 (2000); cf. Dubliiner v. 2000 Linwood Ave. Owners, Inc., 220 N.J. 71 (2014) (where a co-op Board of Directors selectively enforced a prohibition on leafleting, such that criticized its opponents in a regular newsletter but prohibited its opponents from doing the same). Thus, in a jurisdiction that utilized the Restatement, the five-year litigation of Dubliiner would likely have been completely unnecessary, either because the Board would have had constructive notice (through the Illustrations) that such a practice would be improper, or because this would have been an open-and-shut case in the trial court.
the Restatement’s property-based test.\textsuperscript{212} For example, in Mazdabrook,
the New Jersey Supreme Court devoted over ten pages of legal analysis
to the constitutional issues presented by a sign restriction, despite
tackling an extremely similar case only five years earlier.\textsuperscript{213} The court
also briefly engaged in the type of property-based analysis that the
Restatement suggests,\textsuperscript{214} but came to the same conclusion in only two
paragraphs.\textsuperscript{215} Therefore, not only does it appear that the court was
not forced to engage the constitutional question at all, but it also seems
that the court chose the more difficult method.

Third, the property-based analysis is replicable throughout the
United States. Unlike New Jersey, which stands alone in bypassing the
state action doctrine and applying its state constitution to private
communities,\textsuperscript{216} most states are simply unable to follow that line of
reasoning without undoing decades of case law\textsuperscript{217} and ignoring the

\begin{footnotes}
\footnotetext{212}{See supra text accompanying note 159.}
\footnotetext{213}{Mazdabrook, 210 N.J. at 492–503. As if that was not enough complex,
constitutional legal analysis on the issue, the court again returned to the issue just two
years later. See Dubliner, 220 N.J. 71.}
\footnotetext{214}{Mazdabrook, 210 N.J. at 507 (holding that “[t]o the extent that Mazdabrook or
the dissent relies on a restrictive covenants analysis, the Association’s sign policy
likewise fails”).}
\footnotetext{215}{The court further stated:
‘[R]estrictive covenants on real property that violate public policy are
void as unenforceable.’ Twin Rivers, 192 N.J. at 370 (citations omitted).
When courts evaluate whether a covenant burdening land is
enforceable, they must determine whether the covenant is reasonable.
Among other factors that inform that decision is ‘[w]hether the
covenant interferes with the public interest.’ Id. at 211.
This Court explained in Twin Rivers that ‘restrictive covenants that
unreasonably restrict speech—a right most substantial in our
constitutional scheme—may be declared unenforceable as a matter of
public policy.’ Twin Rivers, 192 N.J. at 371. Because the restriction in
question is unreasonable and violates the State’s Constitution, the
covenant that memorializes it is unenforceable.
Mazdabrook, 210 N.J. at 507 (parallel citations omitted). The court never stated why
this simple property-based analysis was not sufficient to decide the case.

\footnotetext{216}{New Jersey’s constitutional guarantee of free expression has been described as
“an affirmative right, broader than practically all others in the nation.” Green Party v.
Hartz Mountain Indus., Inc., 164 N.J. 127, 145 (2000). This alone makes it highly
unlikely that other states can replicate the New Jersey’s constitutional test.

\footnotetext{217}{See, e.g., supra note 47 and accompanying text. Indeed, even states with almost
identical free speech language in their constitutions as New Jersey’s have declined to
ignore the state action requirement. For example, Michigan’s constitution is nearly
the same as New Jersey’s, but its courts have nonetheless held that “the federal and the
Michigan constitutional provisions guaranteeing free speech do not extend to private
conduct, but have been limited to protection against state action.” Prysak v. R.L. Polk
fundamental doctrine of *stare decisis*. To the contrary, every state would be able to adopt the Restatement’s approach. The practice of voiding contracts as against public policy is a long-standing mainstay of jurisprudence and is well-established in courts around the country. Thus, the Restatement shifts the discussion to which rights society believes should be protected, as opposed to complex constitutional discussions over how to extend any rights to otherwise private entities.

Fourth, the Restatement test is more predictable than a constitutional approach. Through its “Illustrations,” the Restatement promulgates several types of expression that would not survive such a public policy analysis. If each of these free speech rights is automatically protected in every state, a valuable uniformity of baseline free expression rights would be created in the United States. Moreover, because the Restatement’s illustrations are proactive pronouncements, as opposed to limited constitutional court rulings that focus only on the case at hand, boards and residents would not be forced to guess what speech is permitted and could often act before courts were forced to intermediate.

---

218 The Supreme Court has clearly articulated the importance of an adherence to *stare decisis*. See Payne v. Tennessee, 501 U.S. 808, 827 (1991). Although the Supreme Court has also said that the reviewing court is not as constrained by the doctrine “when governing decisions are unworkable or are badly reasoned,” *id.* at 828, the Court also notes that “[c]onsiderations in favor of *stare decisis* are at their acme in cases involving property and contract rights, where reliance interests are involved,” *id.* (citations omitted). Therefore, states with a strong history of disallowing free speech in private environments may find it difficult to overcome the reliance on *stare decisis* with such a new and unique constitutional test.

219 *Restatement (Third) of Prop.: Servitudes* § 3.1 cmt. d (2000) (“Even though there may not be sufficient state action present to justify application of constitutional limitations to privately created servitudes, the servitude may be invalid as a matter of state or federal common law because it violates public policy.”).

220 *See supra* note 175 and accompanying text.

221 *See supra* Part V.A.

222 *See supra* notes 198–201 (suggesting that associations could not prohibit criticism of the community association, the posting of political signs, display of the American flag, and door-to-door solicitation of signatures by an outside citizens group).

223 *See, e.g.,* Franzese & Siegel, *supra* note 2, at 747 (“Suffice it to say that it may well require many years of appellate litigation before the precise contours of this remedy are fully delineated.”); *supra* note 211 (arguing that if New Jersey had simply adopted the Restatement test instead of making piecemeal pronouncements on the constitutionality of certain free speech restrictions in CIGs, the *Dubliner* case would never have had to be litigated).

224 In essence, because the New Jersey test does not give much in the way of guidance for future issues, as opposed to the Restatement, it leaves residents and boards with mere speculation as to the contours of free speech protections. *See also* Part 0 (suggesting that in the interim, Boards and residents should use the Restatement illustrations as guidelines to adopt their own reasonable free speech policies before
Yet at the same time, the property-based doctrine is necessarily flexible.255 In a country with different types of CICs in varying environments, it is beneficial to give courts the opportunity to make calculations for their own communities.256 The Restatement ensures that judicial determinations are not made on the most fundamental of expressional rights,257 but allows individual communities to determine themselves where to draw the outer membrane of free speech rights in CICs.258 These less fundamental free expression rights are likely more local in character, and the Restatement gives courts the flexibility to fashion their remedies as such.

Fifth, the Restatement test actually considers the important countervailing issues at stake on both sides of the issue. Although recent years have seen HOAs exceed reason with overburdensome free speech restrictions,259 there are undoubtedly good reasons why CC&Rs are adopted in the first place.260 By beginning with the presumption that all covenants are valid,261 the Restatement does not make aesthetics the sacrificial lamb for unbridled free speech rights.262 And in

255 See RESTATEMENT (THIRD) OF PROP.: SERVITUDES § 3.1 cmt i (2000); id. at § 3.1
   cmt. f (“Because policies change to meet changing conditions of society, it is not
   practicable to predict the policy assessments judges will make in the future.”); STORY,
   supra note 186 (describing that the concept of public policy “has been left loose and
   free of definition” because it is, by nature, “uncertain and fluctuating”).

256 For example, a CIC in rural Arkansas is likely to be different in structure and
   interests than one from New York City, so it would be improper to subject them to
   the same exact requirements. Since the public policies in each location will be different,
   local communities can decide themselves what is reasonable. Of course, this could
   result in harsher treatment of minority positions (like mezuzahs in Arkansas or college
   football flags in New York City); but the most important rights are likely protected by
   the Restatement’s illustrations, and as discussed below, the ability of the U.S. Supreme
   Court to intercede might provide an additional safeguard.

257 See RESTATEMENT (THIRD) OF PROP.: SERVITUDES § 3.1 Illustrations (2000)
   (providing examples to inform the courts on what types of restrictive covenants should
   be struck down as violating public policy, effectively guaranteeing that those rights
   would be protected around the country and leaving only the less essential expressional
   rights to be determined by the courts).

   policy is a term not easily defined. Its significance varies as the habits and needs of a
   people may vary. It is not static and the field of application is an ever increasing one.
   A contract, or a particular provision therein, valid in one era may be wholly opposed
   to the public policy of another.”).

259 See supra notes 69–66.

260 See supra note 3 and accompanying text.

261 RESTATEMENT (THIRD) OF PROP.: SERVITUDES § 3.1 cmt. i (2000).

262 Id. at § 3.1 cmt. j (“Absent extraordinary circumstances, if a servitude serves
   some purpose that the purchasers might rationally have agreed to, and its meaning
   should have been apparent to the purchasers, a court should not invalidate it simply
   because the court believes that most people would not have agreed to it, or that it
recognizing that a knowing and intelligent waiver may factor into the analysis, the Restatement does not swing the pendulum towards residents quite as far as the New Jersey Supreme Court has. In this way, the Restatement test is presumably a much more palatable method for advocates of private contract rights and the maintenance of uniformity and aesthetics in CICs.

For those state courts potentially willing to consider the extension of free speech rights into CICs, it seems clear that the Restatement provides a method of adjudication that is relatively simple, replicable around the country, and does not eviscerate the state action doctrine. Therefore, in looking for ways to extend free speech rights to CICs, courts should first turn to the prescriptions of the Restatement and a property-based analysis, as opposed to the constitutional one advanced by the New Jersey Supreme Court.

VI. WHAT CAN BE DONE IN THE INTERIM?: PROACTIVE ACTION BY HOA BOARDS TO AMEND THEIR GOVERNING DOCUMENTS

The major difficulty with the Restatement's prescribed test is that it is non-binding—a mere recommendation of what the law should be. Although Restatements have always been well-respected sources of

produces little benefit.

Indeed, the New Jersey Supreme Court has insinuated that residents may never waive their rights in a CIC. See Mazdabrook Commons Homeowners' Ass'n v. Khan, 210 N.J. 482, 506 (2012) ("It is unclear that the approach in this case can result in a knowing and intelligent waiver of fundamental constitutional rights."). Yet the dissent in the Appellate Division and Supreme Court in Mazdabrook starkly disagreed with the inapplicability of waiver. See Mazdabrook Commons Homeowners' Ass'n v. Khan, A-6106-08T3, 2010 WL 3517030 (App. Div. 2010) (Miniman, J. concurring in part and dissenting in part), aff'd, 210 N.J. 482 (2012) ("The restriction on signs and the right to sue to enforce it are included in the bundle of rights, restrictions, encumbrances, and easements contained in the deed to defendant's unit. Thus, defendant and all other unit owners expressly agreed that they would not violate the prohibition on signs and each owner was empowered to enforce that restriction."); Mazdabrook, 210 N.J. at 511 (Wefing, J., dissenting) ("[I]ndividuals are equally entitled to seek shelter from political debate and division.").

See Christopher J. Wahl, Keeping Heller Out of the Home: Homeowners Associations and the Right to Keep and Bear Arms, 15 U. PA. J. CONST. L. 1009, 1012-13 (2013) ("While [the Restatement test's] imprecision may lead one to fear that a court may have too much leeway, the fact that servitudes are protected with a presumption of validity works against the potential bias or prejudice of a court applying the flexible public policy test to a servitude.").

See, e.g., Lou v. Otis Elevator Co., 77 Mass. App. Ct. 571, 580-81 (2010) (citing Bongaards v. Millen, 440 Mass. 10, 29 (2003)) (noting that "while this court often considers the various Restatements of the Law as prestigious sources of potentially persuasive authority, we have never taken the position that this court should abdicate to the views of the American Law Institute as set forth in its various Restatements").
legal authority, courts around the country will have to buy into the Restatement’s reasoning and apply its test faithfully. While this Comment argues that courts around the country should adopt the Restatement test and extend reasonable free speech rights to residents of CICs, it is unlikely that this will happen overnight. In the meantime, it would behoove both HOAs and residents to proactively amend the governing documents of their communities to reflect a reasonable allowance of free expression within CICs. Although boards are often hesitant to extend more rights to residents, and residents feel powerless to make changes themselves, working together to offer reasonable free speech rights in CICs makes sense for several reasons.

First, the tide is changing. HOAs may resist the extension of free speech into CICs, but the eventual protection of basic expressive rights in these communities is likely inevitable. Given the force of the Third Restatement, powerful and revolutionary court decisions, and compelling scholarly suggestions, it is only a matter of time before free speech protections are imposed on CICs. In order to have a hand in fashioning the remedies themselves, boards must act before they are forced by courts, legislatures, and/or residents.

Second, in some states, boards are putting themselves in difficult situations by refusing to, or merely neglecting to, amend their

---

298 See, e.g., Askln, supra note 209, at 956 (suggesting that “[i]t is inevitable in a society as deeply committed to freedom of expression and communication as ours that more and more courts are going to” follow New Jersey’s lead in extending free speech rights to CICs). In fact, even New Jersey’s complex constitutional analysis was recently adopted elsewhere in the country. See supra note 169 (describing Lampech v. Tiara at the Abbey Homeowners Ass’n, No. 12 JE-CC00227, 2013 WL 6144144 (Mo. Cir. Oct. 3, 2013), where a Missouri state court appeared to adopt the New Jersey test in full).
299 299 See supra Part 0.
300 See supra Part D.
301 See supra note 16; Part 0.
302 For example, following the New Jersey Supreme Court’s decision in Dubliner, a law firm that represents community associations released a client alert that stated bluntly: “[The decision] provides a clear message to common interest ownership community governing boards that they must allow adequate means for community residents to be able to inexpensively communicate with each other and with the board and should not try to prevent debate over association political issues or criticism of the board.” Jonathan H. Katz, Client Alert: N.J. Supreme Court Issues Important Decision Expanding Community Association Residents’ Free Speech Rights, CONDO/LAWS (Dec. 8, 2014, 1:11 AM), http://www.condo.hillwallackblog.com/ client-alert-n-j-supreme-court-issues-important-decision-expanding-community-association-residents-free-speech-rights/.
governing documents. For one, associations that maintain unreasonable blanket restrictions on certain types of free expression may then find it difficult to police any types of expression, even offensive ones. And from a practical standpoint, HOAs that choose not to amend their documents also run the risk of incurring substantial litigation costs when their CC&Rs are eventually challenged. The extension of free speech rights into private entities, and increasingly CIGs, is a fast-growing area of litigation, and there is no sign of it abating. To insulate themselves from the specter of costly litigation, HOAs would be wise to be proactive and adopt reasonable guidelines for speech within their communities.

Therefore, boards and residents should preemptively adopt reasonable free speech protections in their governing documents. Guidance should be drawn from the Restatement’s “Illustrations,” suggestions from the New Jersey Supreme Court, and federal and local legislative actions. But there are several other animating principles that boards and residents should consider when amending and applying their CC&Rs. First, associations should ensure that if a method of free expression is entirely or mostly prohibited, there are reasonable alternative means of expression available to residents. In addition, boards should be sure to avoid uneven application of rules; engaging in the same type of expression that residents are prohibited from may raise an inference that the board is unreasonably

---

545 In other words, boards may find it difficult to enforce any restrictions on speech if they adopt only blanket restrictions, and not reasonable time, place, and manner restrictions. For example, if a resident in CIC posts neon signs saying “Obama sucks” in each of his windows, what recourse does an HOA have if their entire sign restriction is declared invalid, but they have adopted no other time, place, and manner restrictions to prevent this seemingly distasteful display?

546 See supra note 21 and accompanying text.

547 RESTATEMENT (THIRD) OF PROP. SERVITUDES § 3.1 Illustrations (2000).


549 See, e.g., supra note 66 (describing, among other things, a law passed by Congress prohibiting bans on flying American flags).

550 Many states have passed legislation seeking to protect certain kinds of political speech. HOAs should ensure that their CC&Rs reflect these local legislative pronouncements. See infra Part B; see also, e.g., TEX. PROP. CODE ANN. § 202.009 (prohibiting associations from banning political signs within 90 days preceding and 10 days following the election).

discriminating based on content. And finally, boards should be particularly careful when attempting to regulate political speech.

With the Restatement as a guide, boards’ involvement in fashioning reasonable time, place, and manner restrictions would create a beneficial two-way street, where boards and homeowners could reach a compromise. Only then can this contentious system become a collaborative one, where boards and homeowners work together to safeguard the best interests of the community and its residents.

VII. CONCLUSION

We live in a country that embraces diversity and celebrates it, yet too often, CICs seek to create homogenous zones free from various modes of expression. Although time, place, and manner restrictions are unquestionably necessary to avoid offensive forms of speech, more stringent restrictions are antithetical to the embracing aspect of community life in the United States.

In order to scale back these confining servitudes, there must be widespread implementation of the options above, but especially court adoption of the Restatement position. Only then will we be able to effect the profound change we want to see in CICs. Then, finally, we will ensure the protection of one of the most important interests in our CICs, which sits at the base of American democracy: the freedom of expression.

---

354 See, e.g., Dubler, 220 N.J. at 88 (citation omitted) ("Nothing in our case law permits a group in power to attack its opponents yet bar them from responding in the same way. As a general rule, laws that by their terms distinguish favored speech from disfavored speech on the basis of the ideas or views expressed are content-based.").

351 See Restatement (Third) of Prop. Servitudes § 3.1 illus. 7 (2000) (suggesting that "application of [a] covenant to prohibit political yard signs is invalid because the harm to the public interest in citizen participation in political debate outweighs the value of validating the servitude"); Dubler, 220 N.J. at 71 (suggesting that political speech is "entitled to the highest level of protection in our society").

350 See supra notes 53–54 & 63–65 and accompanying text.

352 See generally supra Part 0.

355 See Low, supra note 69 (expressing that our "retreat to secured enclaves... materially and symbolically contradicts American ethos and values"); Kennedy, supra note 16, at 763 ("Residential associations cause harms to nonmembers by developing exclusive communities, by gating formerly public streets and neighborhoods, and by increasing the fiscal burdens of cities and states.").
A GUIDE TO COMMUNITY CAPITAL

This is BALLE's basic guide to community capital, including financing, debt, and the circulation of money within a local economy.
a guide to

Community Capital

www.bealocalist.org
# Table of Contents

The Need for Community Capital .......................................................... 2
What is Community Capital? ............................................................... 2
  Our Definition ....................................................................................... 2
  The Longer Version .............................................................................. 2
What’s in this Guide? ............................................................................ 3
Sources of Capital .................................................................................. 4
  Individuals .......................................................................................... 4
  Donor-Advised Funds .......................................................................... 4
  Foundations ......................................................................................... 5
  Banks ................................................................................................... 5
  Credit Unions ....................................................................................... 6
  Community Development Financial Institutions (CDFIs) ..................... 6
  Angel Investors and Venture Capital .................................................. 7
  Government ......................................................................................... 7
Community Capital Tools ..................................................................... 8
  Grants = A gift (usually with some strings) ........................................... 8
  Equity = A stake in the ownership ....................................................... 8
  Debt = Borrowing money (often with interest) ..................................... 9
  Secured vs. Unsecured Debt ................................................................. 9
  Bonds .................................................................................................. 9
  Hybrid & Non-Traditional Investments ............................................... 11
Investment Offerings and Community Capital Platforms ..................... 13
  Direct Public Offerings and Private Placements ................................... 13
  Direct Public Offerings (DPOs) ............................................................ 13
  Private Placements ............................................................................... 14
  Community Capital Platforms & Mechanisms ..................................... 14
  Investment Clubs ................................................................................ 14
  Local Investment Opportunities Networks (LIONs) ............................ 14
  Impact or Targeted Certificates of Deposit (CDs) ................................. 15
  Local Exchanges ................................................................................. 15
  Crowdfunding ..................................................................................... 16
  Partnership Lending .......................................................................... 17
  Lending Circles .................................................................................. 17
  Peer-to-Peer Lending .......................................................................... 17
  Individual Retirement Accounts (IRAs) ................................................ 17
  Pooled Investment Notes .................................................................... 18
Ok, so what’s next? .............................................................................. 18
Glossary of Terms ................................................................................. 19
The Need for Community Capital

Business owners and social entrepreneurs in many communities struggle to access the funds they need to launch or expand their businesses and initiatives. At the same time, most of our financial investments go to unfamiliar, opaque investments in far away places and have impacts from which we are disconnected. It doesn’t have to be this way. Innovators across North America are creating ways of re-directing financial resources to businesses and organizations that are serving the communities in which they are located by providing needed goods and services, creating high-quality jobs, restoring the environment and enabling prosperity for all through the development of local living economies.

What is Community Capital?

Our Definition

Community capital harnesses the financial wealth that exists within a region to support local, community-serving businesses and organizations, and keeps this wealth re-circulating for the benefit of the whole community.

The Longer Version

BALLE aims to build communities that are healthy, sustainable and equitable – backed by local economies that are strong and resilient. This means using regional resources to meet our needs, and reconnecting eaters with farmers, investors with entrepreneurs, and business owners with the communities and natural places on which they depend.

The dominant financial system is not working. Global capital markets are draining, not building up, the health of our communities. The current system is based on perpetual growth, concentration of power and wealth, and externalized costs; without acknowledging the risks associated with global threats like climate change, natural resource depletion, and inequality.

To restore our communities, we must re-shape the ways in which financial capital flows through our local economies – tapping into the wealth that we have, directing regional resources towards community-serving businesses and organizations that create real, long-term value and re-circulating this wealth for the benefit of the whole community. We focus on financial capital in this guide, but recognize that there are many kinds of wealth in communities, and financial capital is just one of many resources that we must harness to build and support sustainable local and regional economies.¹

¹There are many resources on non-financial capital in our communities. One popular resource is: “The Sharing Solution: How to Save Money, Simplify Your Life & Build Community”, by Janelle Orsi and Emily Doskow: www.sharingsolution.com.
Community capital can take many forms. We’re interested in the continuum of capital needed for thriving local economies – what we call “integrated capital” which includes gifts, grants, loans, equity, credit enhancement, pre-sales, and other forms of exchanging value to support local businesses and organizations. Examples include:

• A local dairy farmer who receives financing for expansion through the pre-sales of cheese and yogurt
• Lending circles where community members lend each other money to build credit and grow businesses
• A community foundation that supports the ability of a local bank to provide loans to local businesses that wouldn’t otherwise qualify by providing a loan loss reserve fund
• Customer purchases of ownership stakes in their favorite local restaurant or farm
• Individual investors or investment funds that re-direct their portfolios to build a regional food distribution system through grants, loans, and equity investments
• A community development financial institution (CDFI) that uses Community Reinvestment Act (CRA) funds to make loans to start-up entrepreneurs in an under-served region
• Member equity shares in a grass-fed cattle producers’ cooperative used to fund collective processing and distribution activities

In some cases, community capital initiatives may be designed to complement traditional capital sources by filling in critical financing gaps. In other cases, community capital may be used to reduce or eliminate our reliance on a financial system characterized by opaque and impersonal transactions, by offering tools that enable transparent investments based on long-term relationships and a shared vision of the economic and social transformation we want to see.

We don’t have to reinvent the wheel again and again – instead, we can share and evolve ideas together and scale those that are most promising. More information and resources will be added regularly to our website: https://bealocalist.org.

What’s in this Guide?

There is a tremendous amount of innovation occurring around community capital right now. This guide is designed to provide an introduction to the ideas and language of community capital, and to pique your interest in learning more by providing descriptions of existing tools with brief examples from communities across North America. This guide provides a high-level primer and a map for readers to connect to a range of resources to learn more. It is divided into four parts:

• Sources of Financial Capital – Overview of capital sources and potential partners that may exist in your community.
• Tools for Deploying Capital – The tools that entrepreneurs and innovators are using to tap into community capital.
• Investment Offerings and Community Capital Platforms – Options for structuring investments, with a review of some of the existing innovative platforms and mechanisms.
• Glossary of Financial Terms – Simple definitions for financial terms.

Sources of Capital

There are many sources of financial capital available within a region, and these will vary significantly by country, state/province and locality. We describe several sources of capital in this section, but local experts and financial organizations can likely direct you to many more.²

Individuals

Individuals in your region are an important source of capital and support for local businesses and organizations. Individuals can make donations, provide loans, purchase ownership stakes in businesses become cooperative owner-members, pre-buy goods and services, and contribute in other ways. Right now, most people have their assets in the traditional global financial system, and have very little knowledge about the positive or negative impacts of their investments or the options for re-investing their money locally – these savings and investments are a huge and largely untapped source of capital for re-building our communities.

In most countries there are laws that restrict individuals from making some types of investments (created in response to scandals where people of modest means lost much of their wealth in bad investments). For some types of investments only accredited investors can participate. Accredited investors include individuals with a certain level of financial wealth; e.g. over $1 million in assets or significant annual income.³ Individuals below this threshold are called unaccredited investors. Just one percent of Americans are accredited investors, and many local investment opportunities are limited to these few individuals.

Donor-Advised Funds

Donor-advised funds allow donors (usually wealthy individuals or businesses) to establish an account with a “charitable sponsor” (often a community foundation or other philanthropic entity) by making irrevocable, tax-deductible contributions to the charitable sponsor. Donors then recommend grants from those funds to give to charitable activities (although the charitable sponsor has ultimate decision-making authority).

---
² For an example of an excellent statewide resource that outlines sources of capital, financing tools and potential partners, see the Access to Capital guide of the California Financial Opportunities Roundtable: http://www.rurdev.usda.gov/Reports/CA-CalFOR.pdf
³ For the U.S. definition of accredited investor see: http://www.sec.gov/answers/accred.htm
More information on donor-advised funds:
• Tides Canada’s overview on creating a donor-advised fund: http://tidescanada.org/create-a-donor-advised-fund/

Foundations

Philanthropic organizations are a common source of grant funding. Community foundations are philanthropic institutions that serve a geographically defined region. Other foundations may also have a regional focus for part of their portfolios. In addition to offering grants, which do not require repayment, many foundations are exploring ways to invest their capital in other ways, including as loans or equity in mission-aligned businesses and organizations. These investments are called program-related investments (PRIs) when they primarily serve a charitable purpose and are treated similar to grants for tax purposes, and mission-related investments (MRIs) when they are expected to have a return and must meet investment standards that apply to the foundation’s other income-generating investments.

More information on PRIs and MRIs:
• Philanthropy Journal article, “Unscrambling MRIs and PRIs: http://is.gd/hirH28

Banks

Banks take in capital from investors and account holders (depositors) and loan funds out to businesses, organizations and individuals. Banks are subject to federal and state lending guidelines that have become more restrictive in the U.S. since the 2008 recession. Banks are more likely to lend to businesses and organizations with long track records of success and/or valuable assets (these assets are often referred to as “collateral”, which the bank could take if the borrower is unable to repay the loan). Many small businesses have a difficult time securing traditional bank financing, particularly those businesses without collateral. There are global, national, and regional/local banks – and while all are potential sources of capital, we’ve found that small and mid-sized banks, which typically have a local or regional lending focus, tend to be more interested in taking the time to understand and lend to local businesses and organizations. While these small and mid-sized banks hold just 22 percent of U.S. bank assets, they make 54 percent of small business loans.

More information local and mission-driven banks:
• One Pacific Coast Bank: http://www.onepacificcoastbank.com/
• Triodos Bank: http://www.triodos.com/en/about-triodos-bank/
In the U.S. the Community Reinvestment Act (CRA) requires banks and other financial institutions to direct capital towards activities they might not otherwise prioritize in low- and moderate-income communities, including: housing and revitalization and economic development by providing financing to low-to-moderate income households, small businesses or farms. Monies to satisfy banks’ CRA requirements may be available in the form of tax credit investments in economic development projects, grant capital and/or loans at lower than market-rate through the banks themselves or through intermediaries that they designate (these designees are typically Community Development Financial Institutions, described below).

More information on loan, grant and equity capital that may be available from banks to satisfy their Community Reinvestment Act requirements:


Credit Unions

Credit unions are member-owned cooperative financial institutions. They have many of the same offerings as banks, such as checking accounts and loans. However, credit unions are owned and controlled by their members (who are also their depositors and borrowers). They often offer lower rates and fees, more broadly accessible products and tend to be more responsive to local community needs. Many are not-for-profit and, in addition to their primary mission of serving their members, pursue broader goals such as community development and environmental sustainability.

There are a range of innovative credit unions across North America. A couple examples:

• Vancity (Vancouver City Savings Credit Union) in Vancouver, BC: https://www.vancity.com/
• Alternatives Federal Credit Union in Ithaca, NY: www.alternatives.org/

Community Development Financial Institutions (CDFIs)

Community development financial institutions (CDFIs) are financial institutions in the U.S. that fill in gaps left by traditional lenders, offering services and products in neighborhoods or to customers that other financial institutions have typically been unable or unwilling to serve. Some of what CDFIs offer can include: lending to non-profit housing developers, mortgage financing for low-income and first-time homebuyers, flexible loan underwriting for small businesses and community facilities, and investments in start-up or expanding businesses (often coupled with technical assistance). The CDFI designation can be given to a range of for-profit and not-for-profit financial institutions such as regulated community development banks and credit unions, and non-regulated entities such as non-profit loan funds or community development corporations.

4 CRA requires financial institutions to lend to low- and moderate-income households and small businesses & communities (“the lending test”) and to make community development investments—typically equity or grants—in these communities (“the investment test”), among other requirements.
More information on CDFIs:
• Opportunity Finance Network, a national network of CDFIs: http://opportunityfinance.net
• The CDFI Coalition’s website: www.cdfi.org
• The Reinvestment Fund, an innovative Philadelphia, PA-based CDFI$: www.trfund.com

**Angel Investors and Venture Capital**

Angel Investors and Venture Capital firms invest in early stage companies that they typically anticipate will grow quickly and have the potential to yield a large financial return through the sale of the company. These early stage companies often involve significant risk of failure, but those that are successful return large financial profits to these early investors.

**Venture capitalists** are professional investors who invest others’ money, often funds from wealthy individuals or institutional investors (investors that pool money from multiple investors such as pension funds), and usually are actively involved in driving business decisions in these ventures by helping to build the management team, sitting on the board, etc. Many venture capital models align poorly with our vision for community capital because investors may look only at the financial bottom-line and expect fast rates of growth, often forcing business owners to take a myopic and short-term approach to rapidly scale and increase profits, sacrificing other core elements of their missions like community benefit, living wages for their employees, and environmental stewardship. In addition, these investors typically look for "rapid exits" from their investments, often by forcing the sale of a successful business after just a few years, which threatens local ownership.

**Angel investors** are wealthy individuals investing their own money in start-up companies. Some operate solo while others organize themselves to find deals together, such as through Investors Circle, which coordinates mission-driven angel investors.

**There are a range of mission-driven VCs and angel investors. A few examples:**
• Investors Circle, a non-profit network of angel investors.
• CalCEF, a family of California non-profits that includes a venture fund targeting the acceleration of clean energy technology development and deployment.

**Government**

Federal, state/provincial, and local governments often provide support to local businesses and organizations through grants, loans, loan guarantees and by other means. Governments are also able to issue tax-exempt bonds (discussed below) for a range of activities. The options vary by location, and many funds are made available as competitive grants with defined criteria.

---

$ A BALLE “Accelerating Community Capital” Webinar on The Reinvestment Fund is available here: https://bealocalist.org/july-2011-community-capital-webinar-recording
In the U.S., some federal agencies that offer funding include the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) and the Small Business Administration (SBA).

You can learn more about the options available in your community by starting conversations with local financial institutions, economic development organizations, and staff at state and local government agencies.

Community Capital Tools

Enabling regional capital sources to meet local needs and opportunities often necessitates a creative spin on traditional capital-raising strategies. This creativity is required to both meet the unique needs of local investors and entrepreneurs, and to comply with government financial regulations. Before we explore the range of community capital tools, we review the investment tools that are deployed in the “traditional” financial system.

There are three primary types of traditional capital investment tools: 1) grants, 2) equity, and 3) debt. Each of these tools comes in a variety of forms, has different financial risks and returns, and may be appropriate for different investors, innovators, and entrepreneurs – and at different stages of a company or project’s life. In many cases, a blend of all three of these investment classes can be harnessed to fund a project in a way that meets the unique needs of investors, businesses, and the community. We also describe several adaptations of these tools as hybrid investments, which share characteristics of grants, equity and/or debt.

Grants = A gift (usually with some strings)

Grants (aka gifts or donations) are sources of capital that usually fund a defined set of work or activities and do not have to be repaid. Grants fund important community initiatives and can help lower the cost of starting and running a project. Grant monies come from a range of entities including individuals, governments, and philanthropic organizations such as community foundations. The volume of grant monies available is limited and grants are often highly competitive. More information on grants is available from the Foundation Center: http://foundationcenter.org/

Equity = A stake in the ownership

Equity investments are purchases of an ownership share in a project or business. Unlike debt, which must be paid back (often with interest), equity investments have no repayment timeline. Instead, they entitle investors to partial (or full) ownership of a venture. In some cases, equity investments are set up to pay all or a portion of profits to investors in the form of dividends (usually cash payments). In other cases, equity investors simply benefit over time from the increase in a company’s financial value (realized when the company is sold or the investor sells her shares), or from the business’s delivery of a range of non-financial benefits.
The most common form of equity investment is common stock. Each “share” of common stock entitles its holder to a portion of the ownership of a company, and a dividend payment (if applicable), and typically includes a vote in decision making at “shareholder meetings”. For many entrepreneurs and innovators, seeking equity investments from values-aligned stakeholders in their local community is preferable to the impersonal world of venture capital.

Another form of equity is member equity in certain types of cooperatives. Cooperatives are organizations through which members are also the owners and organizational decision makers. For more information on cooperatives, visit: http://www.ncba.coop/

**Debt = Borrowing money (often with interest)**

Debt investments entail the lending of money to a project or business. Unlike equity, debt must be paid back (often with interest) and typically has a pre-specified payment schedule and interest rate. A debt investor is not given any ownership in the business or project, has no voting rights, and is not entitled to dividends. Debt is “more secure” than equity – in the event that a company or project fails, the remaining funds or assets (if any) go to debt investors before equity investors / owners get a penny.

**Secured vs. Unsecured Debt**

The underlying “security” of debt (i.e. a lender’s ability to recover their capital from a borrower in the event the borrower is unwilling or unable to pay) can be set up in many ways to meet the needs of lenders and borrowers, but loans are broadly characterized as “secured” or “unsecured”. Secured debt is a loan for which a borrower pledges a specific asset or assets as collateral (often specific property) against the loan. To the extent the borrower is unable or unwilling to repay the loan the lender can take possession of those assets. An unsecured loan, on the other hand, has no assets pledged against it. Because unsecured loans are considered riskier than secured loans, they often have higher interest rates and shorter repayment lengths, or are available only to borrowers with good credit (i.e. a history of reliable debt repayment).

**Bonds**

All debt is a form of loan. Bonds are popular loan structures that enable lenders/investors to take a fractional share in a loan, which can help small investors to participate in larger financings and large investors to diversify their risk across many loans. Bonds can usually be sold to other investors with relatively low transaction costs (i.e. they are liquid = easy to buy and sell). These characteristics typically result in more attractive (to the borrower) rates and terms, but must be balanced against the higher costs of issuing bonds relative to standard loans.
Debt Credit Enhancement
Credit enhancements reduce investor risk and can allow borrowers to get better loan terms or qualify for a loan when they wouldn’t otherwise. Philanthropic or government capital is often deployed as “credit enhancement” to improve the terms of or expand access to debt. Common credit enhancements include:

- **Loan Loss Reserves (LLRs).** LLRs are a pool of monies that, in the event of loan nonpayment (default), lenders may use to recover all or a portion of that loss. LLRs typically sit in a bank account until they are needed. They are commonly used to support pools of small loans and the “protection” offered to investors is usually capped at a percentage of an overall loan pool, i.e. for 10% LLR, lenders can collect up to 10% of the amount they invested should they experience substantial losses. Slow Money Northwest raised grant monies from local stakeholders for a 20% LLR to support the Farmer Reserve Fund, a microloan program offered through North Coast Credit Union for beginning farmers and food businesses.

- **Loan Guarantees.** Loan guarantees are similar to LLRs— a third party “guarantees” loan repayment to the lender in the case that the borrower fails to make payment. They typically cover 100% of a loan or loan pool and are not typically “capped” at a maximum payout amount (though they can be).

- **Subordinated Debt.** Rather than sit in a bank account like an LLR, subordinated debt is actually used to fund a portion of loans or loan pools with “senior” debt investors. In the event that there are loan defaults, senior debt investors recover 100% of their investment before the subordinated debt investors recover any of their investment. One benefit of subordinated capital is that because it funds part of a loan or loan pool, it typically earns interest. This interest rate can be set such that it partially or fully offsets anticipated customer default rates and makes the credit enhancement “evergreen,” i.e. customer principal and interest payments fully offset losses expected due to customer defaults. This is fundamentally different from LLRs, where monies sit in an escrow account earning de minimus interest and are typically depleted as loan defaults occur.

- **Debt Service Reserves (DSRs).** Debt service reserves provide credit enhancement by protecting lenders from short-term fluctuations in a borrower’s ability to make debt repayments. Short-term cash flow constraints are common among small businesses, particularly in industries like agriculture, where most revenues come in a single season but loan payments are due year-round. DSRs can allow farmers to make seasonal debt repayments that align with their revenue streams.

---

6 For example, a 10% LLR of $100,000 could support a $1,000,000 loan pool. Lenders could use the LLR to cover losses and if the loan pool lost more than $100,000, the additional losses would be borne by the lender.

Hybrid & Non-Traditional Investments

There are also several hybrid and non-traditional investment vehicles that share characteristics of both traditional debt and equity:

- **Convertible Debt.** With traditional debt, a lender receives its loan principal back by the end of a loan period. With convertible debt, a lender typically has the option of receiving either its loan principal or a pre-negotiated number of ownership shares in a company. If the company’s value has increased substantially since the loan was made, the lender will typically opt for equity. There is room for flexibility around what an investor might opt to receive in lieu of cash at the end of a loan’s term.

- **Preferred Stock.** With traditional stock, a shareholder receives an ownership stake in a company that entitles them both to vote on company matters and to receive financial benefits in the form of stock value increases and/or dividend payments. Preferred stock, on the other hand, more closely resembles debt – holders are typically not entitled to vote on company matters and are often entitled to a fixed dividend, not a share of company profits. Preferred stock is typically “senior” to common stock (i.e. it collects before common stock in the event of the company going out of business), but is “subordinated” to debt.

- **Pre-Sales.** Pre-sales involve the “forward sale” of goods or services and are neither debt nor equity. By pre-selling products, a business can raise up-front capital without giving up ownership rights or owing money to lenders (they just “owe” products or services). For example, Credibles enables local food businesses to raise money through customer pre-payments that entitle the buyers to purchase products from the business. Whether a pre-sale is treated as a “security”, which can trigger financial regulatory compliance, depends on a state’s securities laws and whether pre-sales are used to fund an existing or new business. Claire’s Restaurant and Bar, in Hardwick, VT, used “community-supported restaurant subscriptions” to raise $50,000 that helped launch the restaurant.

- **Royalty Financing.** Equity financing requires businesses to give up a portion of company ownership, and some companies lack sufficient assets or credit history to gain access to attractive debt or don’t want to be saddled with an obligation to repay debt. Royalty financing is a hybrid through which investors earn a pre-arranged percentage of a business’s revenues.

---

8 Preferred stock is a very flexible instrument – its terms (e.g. dividend rate, redemption policies) and the rights of preferred shareholders (e.g. voting rights), can be defined by businesses to meet their goals and needs.


10 Broadly construed, a security is a financial instrument that represents some type of financial value and implies some type of risk or opportunity for financial gain to the holder of the financial instrument. Because new businesses are generally considered riskier than existing businesses, using pre-sales to fund an existing business poses less risk that a pre-sale would be treated as a security.

11 A BALLE “Accelerating Community Capital” Webinar on Claire’s Restaurant and Bar is available here: [https://bealocalist.org/March-2012-Community-Capital-Webinar-Recording](https://bealocalist.org/March-2012-Community-Capital-Webinar-Recording)

until their initial investment and a pre-negotiated premium is earned, or for a specified period of time (often 3-5 years). By necessity, this financing tool is most appropriate for businesses that are approaching profitability or are already profitable. Royalty financing relieves entrepreneurs of the implicit pressure to grow rapidly towards an “exit” that early equity investors often create, avoids diluting the ownership of a company and, compared to debt, may work well for businesses with highly seasonal revenue streams.

5 Tools for Local Investing

By Michael H. Shuman

If you’ve been told that it’s impossible to invest your life savings in anything but Wall Street, here’s some practical advice to prove the financial “experts” wrong:

1. **Move Your Money** – Move all your day-to-day financial activities, including your checking, loans, credit cards, and mortgage, to a local bank or credit union. These are the institutions that recycle their capital locally.

2. **Stretch Your Co-op** – Because memberships in a cooperative are not deemed “securities,” they can be more easily used as vehicles for local investments. Other coop investment tools, such as borrowing from members, are securities, but the costs of compliance are modest. Some coops, like Weaver Street Market in North Carolina, pay their members handsomely to borrow money for capital projects. The La Montanita Grocery Coop in New Mexico has created a revolving loan fund so that members’ capital can support local farmers and food processors.

3. **Sponsor Local Businesses** – Last year, web sites like Kickstarter and IndieGogo raised more than $100 million for small businesses and projects. Even though all you get for your money is a t-shirt or token of appreciation, you know that thousands of small contributors like yourself are helping to get a big idea off the ground. It’s important to scan these sites for businesses in your own community. A new generation of web sites, like Lucky Ant and Community Funded, specifically facilitate local sponsorships.

4. **Create a Local Investment Fund** – Pools of capital are preferable to one-off investments because they diversify risk. There are thousands of local-investment pools around the country, most of them linked with local economic-development programs, but nearly all of them are only open to accredited investors. Important exceptions that allow unaccredited investor participation include MountainBizWorks in North Carolina, the New Hampshire Community Loan Fund, and ECDI in Columbus, Ohio. These funds demonstrate that it’s possible to create non-profits that can take money from all kinds of local investors and then use the funds to grow local businesses.

5. **Promote Program Related Investments** – By law, foundations must give away at least 5% of their assets each year. The other 95% is typically invested in distant stocks and bonds. Work with your local foundations to help them move that 95% (or even just 1%) into local business. If these businesses are “program related” and the investment does not succeed, the foundation can apply losses to fulfill its annual grant obligation.

More on these tools below, and elaborated in Local Dollars, Local Sense: How to Shift Your Money from Wall Street to Main Street and Achieve Real Prosperity (White River Junction, VT: Chelsea Green, 2012). The author may be reached by phone (202-669-1220), email (shuman@igc.org).
Investment Offerings and Community Capital Platforms

Now that we’ve covered the types of capital tools that are on the table, this section highlights some of the ways in which these offerings can be structured and then describes existing innovative platforms for investing locally or accessing debt and equity capital.

Direct Public Offerings and Private Placements

While certain financial tools described in this guide are not considered “securities” some debt and all equity investments are defined as securities. The offer and sale of securities in the U.S. is regulated by both Federal and State governments and typically requires formal securities registration. Small businesses often qualify for exemptions to Federal securities registrations, and the way in which – and to whom – debt and equity investment opportunities are advertised and sold impacts whether businesses are eligible for exemptions.

Direct Public Offerings (DPOs). A DPO is a tool used by businesses to sell debt or equity directly to the public. With a DPO, a company is free to advertise and offer securities directly to the public rather than using an investment bank or intermediary (whereas an initial public offering or IPO typically involves an investment bank or intermediary). By permitting public advertising, DPOs enable entrepreneurs to seek funding from a broad range of investors. But, there is a trade-off. DPOs generally necessitate Federal and State securities registrations that can be expensive and time-consuming. To reduce these costs, small businesses often use exemptions to Federal securities registration requirements – these exemptions restrict the amount of money businesses can raise through DPOs and the number, type, and location of investors from whom they can raise funds.

In California, People’s Community Market (PCM), is in the process of raising up to $2 million of preferred stock through a DPO to fund a full-service grocery store, health resource center and community hub to help families attain healthier and more socially connected lives in the underserved community of West Oakland. Accredited and unaccredited California residents may invest in the preferred stock, which will pay 3% annual interest and a 1% annual store credit, and is redeemable after 7 years (or may be left outstanding). By raising money only from California residents, PCM avoided federal securities filings through a Federal securities law exemption and was only required to register its offering with the State of California.

Cutting Edge Capital provides more information on DPOs: (http://www.cuttingedgecapital.com/what-is-a-direct-public-offering) and provides a listing of recent DPOs on their Cutting Edge X (https://www.cuttingedgex.com).

---

13 A discussion of securities and why they matter is available from Cutting Edge Capital: http://www.cuttingedgecapital.com/what-is-a-security-and-why-does-it-matter/
14 A BALLE “Accelerating Community Capital Webinar” on Direct Public offerings is available here: http://bealocalist.org/august-2012-community-capital-webinar-recording
15 While exemptions to Federal securities registration requirements can reduce offering costs, businesses often must pay tens of thousands of dollars to meet the requirements of the Federal exemptions and comply with relevant State securities laws and exemptions.
Private Placements. Like DPOs, private placements can be completed for both debt and equity. However, private placements are non-public offerings – meaning that they may not be advertised by the business seeking to raise money. They also are largely offered to accredited investors. The same Federal and State securities registration requirements apply to private placements, but they often qualify for Federal exemptions that eliminate caps on the amount of capital raised before securities registrations are required, an exemption not available to DPOs. Sales of debt or equity to “friends and family” with whom one has a pre-existing relationship are typically exempted from most securities laws as well. Co-op Power used a private placement to raise over $800,000 of equity capital to finance its Northeast Biodiesel plant. The private placement afforded them the flexibility to work with investors to structure an innovative agreement focused on long-term employee ownership and community benefit.

Community Capital Platforms & Mechanisms

Entities that pursue DPOs are free to advertise their stock or bond offerings widely. For others – those that complete private placements, or investors and borrowers seeking loans that don’t have to be registered as securities – finding investors that share the same goals can be more challenging. This section describes a number of platforms and mechanisms that can be harnessed to bridge the gap between investors and opportunities for investment.

Investment Clubs. Investment club members pool their money to make debt, equity or other types of investments. This allows members to collectively make larger investments and/or to diversify their risk by investing in more businesses together with other members. Investment club members meet regularly to evaluate investment options and the group requires a majority vote of members before any investment decisions are approved. Generally, every member of an investment club must actively participate in these investment decisions in order for the club to avoid membership interests being treated as securities. The No Small Potatoes Investment Club in Maine makes micro-loans to local food businesses, offering 3 percent interest unsecured loans up to $5,000 with terms up to 3 years.

---

16 Like direct public offerings, businesses taking advantage of Federal securities registration exemptions for private placements often must pay tens of thousands of dollars to meet the requirements of the Federal exemptions and comply with relevant State securities laws and exemptions.
17 A BALLE “Accelerating Community Capital” Webinar on Co-op Power is available here: http://bealocalist.org/january-2012-community-capital-webinar-recording
18 Investment clubs with even a single unaccredited investor member can only invest in securities in which unaccredited investors are eligible to invest.

---
Local Investment Opportunities Networks (LIONs). Local Investment Opportunities Networks (LIONs). LIONs help members that want to invest money locally to become aware of investment opportunities. LIONs are not investment vehicles – instead, they are mechanisms for potential investors to get alerted to potential investment options. Once LION members have become aware of an opportunity, they make their own decisions about whether to invest in a business or initiative and take individual risk in making that investment. Entrepreneurs and business owners typically submit business plans to the LION, and LION members that have pre-existing relationships with the applicants receive these business plans. These members then contact the applicant directly if they are interested in making an investment. LIONs are effectively “match-making” organizations, and they can be used to facilitate both equity and debt investments. In Port Townsend, Washington, LION members have invested almost $3 million since 2006 in 43 deals, of which about 80% were structured as loans. More information about LIONs and other local investment options is available at the Local Investing Resource Center: http://www.local-investing.com/

Impact or Targeted Certificates of Deposit (CDs). A CD is similar to a savings account, but has a fixed term during which a customer may not withdraw deposited funds (or must pay a penalty). Financial institutions are then free to use these deposits, typically lending or otherwise investing these monies at higher rates of interest. Several financial institutions and their non-profit or business partners have developed “impact” or “targeted” CDs – in which CD investments are targeted to specific areas of customer interest (e.g. clean energy) or to specific businesses. These products allow customers to save, rather than spend, to support a business or cause that they believe in. In Massachusetts, Equal Exchange, a fair-trade worker-owned coffee cooperative, partnered with a local bank to create the “Equal Exchange CD”. The CD is open to both accredited and unaccredited individuals. Equal Exchange can use up to 90% of the pooled monies invested in the CD (currently over $1 million) as a line of credit (a line of credit is effectively a pre-authorized loan used as needed). While the CD is Federally-insured from theft, if Equal Exchange defaults on its loans, the bank is not obligated to repay investors.

Local Exchanges. Local exchanges enable the trading of private securities in a region. While there are still legal challenges to operating a local stock exchange, Mission Markets has just begun offering communities the opportunity to run their own portals to sell initial and secondary offerings of local business to local investors. They provide communities with most of the back-office, legal, and administrative services, so that one staff person can focus on recruiting companies and investors, and get paid through fees imposed on listed businesses. Unlike a typical Wall Street exchange, a community portal looks more like E-bay, where shares are listed for days or weeks at a set price until a buyer makes a purchase.

21 Having a pre-existing relationship between the potential investor and the applicant is critical to qualifying for exemptions to Federal securities registration. Some LIONs host social events so that investors and entrepreneurs can develop relationships.

22 Unaccredited LION members may only invest in securities in which unaccredited investors are eligible to invest.

23 A BALLE “Accelerating Community Capital” Webinar on the Port Townsend LION is available here: https://bealocalist.org/may-2013-community-capital-webinar-recording

Crowdfunding. Crowdfunding typically involves raising many very small investments from a large group of investors/donors (often through an online platform help to reduce the transaction costs of raising these monies). The Jumpstart Our Business Startups (JOBS) Act, signed in 2012, may make it easier to raise non-grant capital from both accredited and non-accredited investors, but that law is currently undergoing what is expected to be a fairly long Federal rule making process. A few crowdfunding platforms do permit “at risk” equity or debt investments. For example, Mosaic, an Oakland, CA-based crowdfunding platform connecting investors to solar power projects has gone through full securities registration processes in CA and NY and offers “Solar Power Notes” to accredited and unaccredited investors with a minimum investment of $25. The notes pay interest of 4-6% over 5 year terms. Kiva also offers debt investments to both accredited and unaccredited investors, but because lenders do not earn interest, loans on the platform are exempted from securities laws. More on crowdfunding below.

Which of the three types of crowdfunding are we talking about?

By Elizabeth Ü

People use the term “crowdfunding” to refer to any of several techniques to raise funds from supporters or future customers, so it can get a bit confusing. One of the most common forms of crowdfunding is the practice of using online crowdfunding platforms (such as Kickstarter, IndieGoGo, and StartSomeGood) to raise gift money from donors in exchange for small tokens of appreciation. A second form of crowdfunding involves a business collecting payments in advance (aka presales, see page 11 above) for products they intend to deliver later. In addition to raising gift money and preselling products, businesses can offer people in their communities financial returns to reward them for investing – provided that everyone abides by the appropriate laws. This is the third type of crowdfunding, and the most legally challenging.

What these models all have in common is that they are methods where an entrepreneur can solicit small investments from a large number of (usually non-wealthy) investors. The first example is not subject to securities laws, but there are some relevant laws related to “gifts/donations” to be aware of. For entrepreneurs who plan to pursue the latter two forms of crowdfunding investment, there are several basic securities laws that you’ll need to understand.

In the next couple years there will likely be new online platforms that will make it easier for entrepreneurs to offer debt and/or equity investment opportunities to non-accredited investors. Businesses will likely take the new crowdfunding laws resulting from the JOBS Act of 2012 and turn them into legal, user-friendly, web-based fundraising tools. As of this writing, there are already several websites that help streamline the process of raising money from accredited investors; successful companies are usually tech-related, though some food manufacturers have raised funds on these platforms as well.

Adapted from Raising Dough: the Complete Guide to Financing a Socially Responsible Food Business (Chelsea Green Publishing 2013), which covers the three forms of crowdfunding, securities laws, and exemptions, plus many other methods for raising small business capital from individuals, foundations, financial institutions, and government agencies. © Elizabeth Ü
**Partnership Lending.** Partnership lending involves a partnership between a financial institution and a community organization (or other sponsor) in which the community organization provides loan capital, defines loan eligibility, terms, and requirements, and the financial institution manages loan origination and servicing. Partnership lending solves a challenge for each partner – community organizations often have clients and capacity to raise money but lack the ability to manage a loan fund while financial institutions have expertise at managing loans but little risk tolerance. In Ithaca, NY, Alternatives Credit Union (ACU) has pioneered partnership lending, working with local community organization partners to deliver capital to low-income individuals and businesses.26

**Lending Circles.** Lending circles involve a “circle” of friends, family and/or colleagues that collectively act as microfinance lenders to one another. Financial institutions or other organizations often provide support such as closing and servicing loans, and reporting payments to credit bureaus to help participants build their credit history. For example, Mission Asset Fund (MAF), a non-profit in San Francisco, CA, sponsors lending circles in which it partners with community organizations that have strong relationships and standing within a community to help build credit for low-income individuals.27

**Peer-to-Peer Lending.** There are several online platforms that allow individuals to make direct loans to each other. Examples are Lending Club and Prosper. Prosper has well over a million members, and has facilitated $500 million in loans.

**Individual Retirement Accounts (IRAs).** IRAs are (often) tax-deferred investment accounts that individuals setup to save for retirement. In most cases, pre-tax income is put into these accounts, and this income can be withdrawn after retirement (and taxed then – often at a lower tax rate than one pays during working years). Many IRAs are employer-sponsored and have a limited number of investment funds into which an employee may allocate their contributions. These limited options prevent individuals from investing their retirement savings in their local community. However, two approaches have targeted tapping into this >$1 trillion of wealth for local investment.

- **Including regional investment options among standard IRA offerings.** The Reinvestment Fund (TRF), a CDFI based in Philadelphia, PA has successfully gotten IRA custodians to include its promissory notes (i.e. debt) in employee IRA investment options. TRF files securities registrations for these notes, and they are available to accredited and unaccredited individuals with IRAs through participating institutions. TRF lends monies raised through the notes to help fund projects that meet regional development needs. Rather than exposing unaccredited investors to the risk that projects default, TRF structures the notes as “general

---

26 A BALLE “Accelerating Community Capital” Webinar on Community Partnership Lending with Alternatives Federal Credit Union is available here: https://bealocalist.org/september-2012-community-capital-webinar-recording
27 A BALLE “Accelerating Community Capital” Webinar on Mission Asset Fund is available here: https://bealocalist.org/February-2012-Community-Capital-Webinar-Recording
obligations” (TRF pledges all of their assets to repaying the debt). In exchange for this low investment risk, TRF offers investors a low fixed return on the notes and marks up the interest when it re-lends to make up for potential loan defaults.

• **Self-directed IRAs (SD IRAS).** SD IRAs enable individuals to invest their savings in virtually all of the investments described above. Individuals place their IRA with a custodian, such as The Entrust Group, that allows the account holder to direct their investments.

**Pooled Investment Notes.** Several organizations offer pooled investment notes – funds raised from these notes are invested (often as debt) in a range of mission-aligned businesses and organizations. Examples include:

• **RSF Social Finance Social Investment Fund.** RSF Social Finance, a non-profit financial services organization, offers minimum $1,000 investments in their Social Investment Fund to accredited and unaccredited investors currently at 1% interest. These investments support RSF’s Social Enterprise Lending Program, which has made over $250 million in mortgage loans, lines of credit, and inventory financing to non-profit and for-profit social and environmental organizations.

• **Calvert Foundation Community Investment Notes.** The Calvert Foundation has offered senior, fixed-interest general obligation bonds to accredited and unaccredited investors for 15 years. These notes are available online (through MicroPlace, a for-profit online brokerage offering retail investors a range of social investment opportunities), with a minimum investment of $20. Over $200 million has been raised to date, and the proceeds are lent to a range of non-profit organizations and for-profit social enterprises in the areas of affordable housing, microfinance, community development, and sustainable business.

**OK, so what’s next?**

Innovators around the globe are changing the way capital flows through our economy – developing the tools, networks and infrastructure to replace a fundamentally broken financial system with a system grounded in meeting community needs using community resources. This guide has offered you the basics – but there are more resources for you within the BALLE network including thought leaders, webinars, and conferences to help you learn more. For those that are ready to take the next step – to get your money out of big banks that don’t reflect your values, or to raise capital for your venture from local investors – the right financing tools and investment platforms will be a function of both the existing community capital infrastructure in your community and your goals for your business or investment. Check out the resources on our website: [https://bealocalist.org/community-capital-toolkit-resources](https://bealocalist.org/community-capital-toolkit-resources), listen to the BALLE community capital webinars: [https://bealocalist.org/community-capital-webinar-series](https://bealocalist.org/community-capital-webinar-series), or attend an upcoming event: [https://bealocalist.org/balle-live-webinar-series](https://bealocalist.org/balle-live-webinar-series). And, most importantly, now that you know what to look for, start reaching out to the financial institutions and networks in your own community, and join an existing effort or start your own initiative!
Glossary of Terms

- **Accredited investors** are individuals with a certain level of financial wealth; e.g. over $1 million in assets or significant annual income. Individuals below this threshold are called unaccredited investors.

- **Angel investors** are wealthy individuals investing their own money in start-up companies.

- **Bonds** are popular loan structures that enable investors to take a fractional share in a loan.

- **Community Development Financial Institutions (CDFIs)** are not-for-profit financial institutions in the U.S. that fill in the gaps left by traditional lenders, offering services and products in neighborhoods or to customers that others are unable or unwilling to serve.

- **Community Reinvestment Act (CRA)** a U.S. law requiring banks and other financial institutions to direct capital towards a number of activities they might not otherwise prioritize, including: housing and revitalization in low-moderate income communities, and economic development by providing financing to small businesses or farms.

- **Convertible debt** gives a lender the option of receiving either its loan principal or a pre-negotiated number of ownership shares in a company.

- **Credit enhancements** reduce investor/lender risk by protecting against losses, examples include loan loss reserves, loan guarantees, and subordinated debt.

- **Credit unions** are not-for-profit member-owned financial cooperatives.

- **Debt investments/Loans** entail the lending of money to a project or business, which must be paid back (often with interest).

- **Debt Service Reserve Funds (DSRFs)** protect lenders from short-term fluctuations in a borrower’s ability to make debt repayments.

- **Direct Public Offerings (DPOs)** are a tool used by businesses to sell debt or equity directly to the public.

- **Dividends** are payments (usually a portion of profits) to the owners of a company.

- **Donor-advised funds** allow donors (usually wealthy individuals or businesses) to establish an account with a “charitable sponsor” (often a community foundation or other philanthropic entity) by making irrevocable, tax-deductible contributions to the charitable sponsor.

- **Equity investments** are purchases of an ownership share in a project or business.

- **Loan guarantees** enable a third party to cover up to 100% of a loan or loan pool losses to protect lenders from risk.

- **Loan Loss Reserves (LLRs)** are a pool of monies that, in the event of loan nonpayment (default), lenders may use to recover all or a portion of that loss.

- **Mission-Related Investments (MRIs)** are those made by foundations if they are related to the foundation’s mission but are also expected to have a return, and must meet applicable prudent investor standards like the foundation’s more conventional investments.
• **Preferred stock**, unlike traditional stock, gives stockholders a fixed dividend (not a share of company profits) and does not entitle them to vote on company matters.

• **Pre-sales** involve the advanced sale of goods or services and are neither debt nor equity.

• **Private placements** are a tool used by businesses to sell debt or equity privately to those they already have a relationship with.

• **Program-Related Investments (PRIs)** are those made by foundations if they primarily serve a charitable purpose, and are treated similar to grants for tax purposes.

• **Revolving Loan Funds (RLFs)** are pools of money that, once capitalized (or funded), are self-replenishing. Loans are made to borrowers, and as loan principal and interest is repaid, it can then be re-lent to new businesses and projects.

• **Royalty financing** is a debt-equity hybrid where investors earn a pre-arranged percentage of a business’s revenues until their initial investment and a pre-negotiated premium is earned, or for a specified period of time (often 3-5 years).

• **Secured debt** is a loan for which a borrower pledges a specific asset or assets as collateral (often specific property) against the loan. If the borrower is unable or unwilling to repay the loan, the lender can take possession of those assets.

• **Securities** are broadly defined as “investment contracts” - some debt and all equity investments are securities. The offer and sale of securities in the U.S. are regulated by both the Federal and State governments and typically require formal securities registration processes, though there are exemptions possible.

• **Subordinated debt** is used to fund a portion of loans or loan pools along with “senior” debt investors; in the event that there are loan defaults senior debt investors recover 100% of their investment before the subordinated debt investors recover any of their investment.

• **Venture capitalists** invest others’ money (often funds from wealthy individuals or institutional investors) in early stage companies, and expect rapid growth and large returns.
PRINCIPLES FOR MANAGING NEIGHBORHOODS

An essay on the principles for managing lean neighborhoods. (Courtesy Bruce F. Donnelly.)
Principles for Managing Neighborhoods

Bruce F. Donnelly

The principles would support a structure for managing neighborhoods that would cover several separate issues:

1. Governance & local rules (presumably including development under a PUD Master Plan),
2. Training, trade, & socialization (could be all together — e.g. a street fair)
3. Maintenance, services, & capital improvements (there being a trade-off), and
4. Policing & other forms of enforcement.

Each of these issues has sub-issues. For instance, garbage collection would be a service.

For greenfields, the organization should follow these rules:

1. Each organization should have a separate charter, but be chartered under a parent organization that takes care of the "back end." That allows the organizations to be smaller. For example, the big organization would have a legal fund. This is compatible with Dan Slone’s limitations on HOAs.
2. The charter (of the organization) would list certain capabilities under the four issues listed above. These would be periodically amended — mostly by crossing them off. For instance, garbage collection could be crossed off if the city picks up the slack.
3. The overriding principle for the capabilities are only offered if both of these are true:
   a. The locality doesn't offer the capability at a minimum level (e.g., weekly garbage collection); and
   b. the locality wouldn't be capable of providing the service if all the peer organizations within it were to fund it. (That is, if everyone in the organization and its peers paid the locality for garbage collection, could the locality afford it?)
4. The organization would be an interface for the locality, both in order to ease municipal administration, and to represent residents. The organization thus has an advocacy role.
5. Governance should include some combination of property owners, renters, businesses, and daytime workers — according to the capability in question. (E.g. tenant residents and homeowners vote on residential garbage collection; property owners vote on building inspections.) However, — to Dan's point — this may also require separate organizations. For instance, a BID could include the owners of apartment buildings, but a residents' neighborhood organization could include the residents but not the building owners. (I laid this out last summer.)

6. Likewise, the charter should specify non-interference between those spheres. That is, it should be against the charter for residents to vote out commercial use. This would have to be carefully organized by the parent organization.

7. The basic principles of subsidiarity apply. Note, though, that this may mean refraining from local control of some issues. For instance, a local organization should not treat a large municipal park as its plaything.

8. Last, but far from least, the parent organization should be chartered to "produce a public benefit or public benefits and to operate in a responsible and sustainable manner." (From Delaware) This makes it a public benefit corporation. That is, the organizations should do as they will, but they're responsible to the public as well as to the organization's members.

Bruce Donnelly has provided some thoughts on Benefit Corporations. They are expected to provide the following:

1. Local governance and respect for rights.

2. Standards and ground rules, but does not supercharge busybodies. For example, it would provide basic standards for things like local control of fence heights, CPTED rules (e.g. blind spots), and so on. NOT requiring pastels. That would be against the best practices.

3. Maintenance and amenities using economies of scale, but only for what the locality doesn't provide to a minimum standard. If that standard is met (e.g., weekly garbage pick-up) then it shifts from providing those amenities to advocacy for them. (E.g., drop private garbage collection & start demanding good service).

4. Interface for the locality — holding meetings, requesting things, providing mailing lists, explaining city programs, etc.

5. Training for homeowners, renters, businesses, etc. Sort of a settlement house.
Provides, or at least smooths, certain services like cleanup days and so on.
So even if you only have a dozen houses you can avail yourself of good services.
EXTRACTS FROM A WORLD OF OPPORTUNITY

A 2007 publication from the Center for an Urban Future.
A World of Opportunity

Immigrant entrepreneurs have emerged as key engines of growth for cities from New York to Los Angeles—and with a little planning and support, they could provide an even bigger economic boost in the future.
Immigrant entrepreneurs have emerged as key engines of growth for cities from New York to Los Angeles—and with a little planning and support, they could provide an even bigger economic boost in the future.

As the stakes of economic competition grow ever-higher in America’s cities, mayors have sought to kick-start local economies by embracing everything from artists and biotechnology companies to sports arenas. For many of the nation’s urban centers, however, a more rewarding—if decidedly less glamorous—answer is hiding in plain sight: tapping their growing immigrant populations.

During the past decade, immigrants have been the entrepreneurial sparkplugs of cities from New York to Los Angeles—starting a greater share of new businesses than native-born residents, stimulating growth in sectors from food manufacturing to health care, creating loads of new jobs, and transforming once-sleepy neighborhoods into thriving commercial centers. And immigrant entrepreneurs are also becoming one of the most dependable parts of cities’ economies: while elite sectors like finance (New York), entertainment (Los Angeles) and energy (Houston) fluctuate wildly through cycles of boom and bust, immigrants have been starting businesses and creating jobs during both good times and bad.

Two trends suggest that these entrepreneurs will become even more critical to the economies of cities in the years ahead: immigrant-led population growth and the ongoing trend of large companies in many industries moving to decentralize their operations out of cities and outsource work to cheaper locales. But despite this great and growing importance, immigrant entrepreneurs remain a shockingly overlooked and little-understood part of cities’ economies, and they are largely disconnected from local economic development planning.

Although much of the recent national debate over immigration has focused on the impact of immigrants on America’s labor market, this report concentrates squarely on immigrant entrepreneurs. The report documents the role that immigrant entrepreneurs are playing in cities’ economies, the potential they hold for future economic growth and the obstacles they encounter as they try to start and expand businesses. The study predominantly looks at immigrant entrepreneurs in New York City, yet also considers in detail immigrant-owned businesses in Los Angeles, Houston and Boston.
Based on 18 months of research, this work is built upon extensive data analysis, focus groups conducted with immigrant business owners and economic development experts, and roughly 200 interviews with business owners, immigration experts, ethnographers, local economic development officials, banking and microfinance specialists and government officials.

Immigrant entrepreneurs have made decisive contributions to the U.S. economy for more than a century. Their legacy of entrepreneurship runs the gamut from the hundreds of Chinese laundries opened in San Francisco in the mid-19th century to the swarm of Eastern European pushcart vendors that lined the streets of New York’s Lower East Side early the following century. Although their place in the popular imagination is connected with small mom-and-pop businesses, first-generation immigrants founded many of the country’s most enduring corporations: a short list includes Warner Brothers, Anheuser Busch, Goya Foods, Goldman Sachs, Paramount Pictures, Fortunoff, Max Factor and Sbarro.

Although immigrants to the U.S. during the past few decades largely come from different parts of the globe than those who entered during the country’s first great waves of immigration, today’s new Americans still tend to be far more entrepreneurial than native-born residents. In 2005, an average of 0.35 percent of the adult immigrant population (or 350 out of 100,000 adults) created a new business each month, compared to 0.28 percent for the native-born adult population (or 280 out of 100,000 adults), according to a recent study by the Ewing Marion Kauffman Foundation. Moreover, the percentage of immigrants starting businesses has generally been on the rise: between 2002 and 2005, the average annual rate of entrepreneurial activity among immigrants was 0.3825, up from 0.324 between 1997 and 2001.¹

This trend isn’t new. In every U.S. Census since 1880, immigrants have been more likely to be self-employed than the native-born population.² What’s different now is that the U.S. has been experiencing a prolonged burst of new immigration, at levels not seen since early in the 20th century. True to form, this phenomenal growth has been accompanied by a concomitant explosion in immigrant-run businesses.

Nationwide, the immigrant population grew by 57 percent in the 1990s, bringing the share of the U.S. population that is foreign-born to a higher level than anytime since 1930.³ But the biggest impact has occurred in cities. Foreign-born individuals accounted for 97 percent of the overall population growth in Los Angeles between 1980 and 2000, 128 percent in New York City, 101 percent in Houston, and 357 percent in Boston.⁴ Nowhere is the impact of immigrants on urban economies more visible than in New York City. Over the past 10 to 15 years, immigrant entrepreneurs fueled much of the overall growth in new businesses across the city and triggered dramatic turnarounds in neighborhoods all over the five boroughs. The number of self-employed foreign-born individuals in the city increased by 53 percent during the 1990s, while the number of native-born self-employed people declined by 7 percent.⁵ Over the same period, neighborhoods where immigrants own the lion’s share of businesses—including Jackson Heights, Sunset Park, Flushing, Sheepshead Bay, Brighton Beach and Elmhurst—created jobs at a significantly faster rate than the city as a whole. Several of these communities even added jobs in the two years after September 11th, a time when the city’s overall economy was shedding massive numbers of jobs.

Immigrant-run businesses are also helping the city recapture tax revenue from suburban shoppers. That’s because ethnic retail strips like 74th Street in Jackson Heights, St. Nicholas Avenue in Washington Heights, Liberty Avenue in Richmond Hill and Main Street in Flushing have become destination shopping districts throughout the region, routinely attracting second- and third-generation immigrants who live outside the city to eat at local restaurants and shop for everything from saris to plantains and mangoes.

“These entrepreneurs are the future of New York,” says Eduardo Giraldo, owner of Abetex International Brokers, an insurance company in Jackson Heights, and president of the Hispanic Chamber of Commerce of Queens. “These people are taking risks, putting their savings on the line and growing businesses.”

Foreign-born entrepreneurs are having a similar impact in Los Angeles. They provided an important boost to the economy in the early 1990s following the devastating riots and earthquake that rocked LA, and have since become an even more potent catalyst for growth. According to one estimate, immigrants are starting as many as 80 percent of all new
Who Is an Immigrant?

The Merriam-Webster dictionary defines an immigrant as an individual “who comes to a country to take up permanent residence.” In this report, we use the word “immigrant” to refer to individuals who were born in another country and subsequently moved to the U.S. with the intention of living here permanently. Our definition includes people who relocated to the U.S. this year as well as those who moved here several decades ago. We also include those who were born in another country and came to the U.S. as children. However, our definition does not include children of immigrants who were born in this country. It also does not include individuals born in Puerto Rico or other commonwealths and territories of the U.S.

businesses in L.A. While this includes thousands of taco trucks, carnicerías and other microbusinesses, immigrant entrepreneurs in L.A. have founded nationally renowned firms such as El Pollo Loco, Panda Express, LuLu’s Deserts and Forever 21. Incredibly, at least 22 of L.A.’s 100 fastest growing companies in 2005 were started by first-generation immigrants.

Los Angeles County has more Asian-owned firms and Hispanic-owned businesses than any county in the U.S. It also boasts 36 of the country’s 500 largest Hispanic-owned businesses, according to Hispanic Business.

In Houston, a telecommunications firm started by a Pakistani immigrant topped the 2006 Houston Small Business 100 list, a ranking of the city’s most successful small businesses compiled by the Houston Business Journal. Additionally, a Houston-based energy company started by a Nigerian immigrant was recently named the second largest black-owned firm in the U.S. by Black Enterprise magazine.

In Boston, between 1997 and 2002, the number of Hispanic-owned firms increased by 97 percent and the number of Asian-owned firms grew by 41 percent.

While large corporations still play a key role in the economies of all of these cities, small businesses are fueling much of the growth, thanks in large part to the explosion of immigrant-run firms. In L.A., for instance, the number of firms with fewer than five employees increased by 67 percent between 1994 and 2004, even as the number of businesses with more than 500 employees decreased by 12 percent.

In New York City, the number of firms with less than 10 employees increased by roughly 20,000 between 1990 and 2005, a 13 percent jump, but the number of companies with over 500 jobs declined slightly.

In Houston, 94 percent of the growth in businesses between 1995 and 2005 occurred among firms with fewer than 50 employees.

Immigrant entrepreneurs are already making valuable contributions to the economies of cities, but there’s little doubt that they could make an even larger contribution to economic growth in the future. “We haven’t even tapped a little of the potential that’s out there [in L.A.],” says Jose Legaspi, a Los Angeles-based real estate developer.

A large part of the reason why is that none of the cities studied for this report have incorporated immigrant entrepreneurs into their overall economic development strategies in any meaningful way. In most cases, immigrant-run businesses aren’t even on the radar of local economic development officials. And when these cities have structured programs to support small businesses, too often these efforts have failed to reach immigrant entrepreneurs. Similarly, many local chambers of commerce and community-based economic development organizations that exist to support entrepreneurs and small firms haven’t effectively connected with immigrant communities.

Many immigrant entrepreneurs could use the help. They often encounter stiff obstacles as they try to start and grow businesses—challenges that keep some from getting out of the starting gate, inhibit countless others from growing beyond the mom-and-pop stage and prompt a number of the most successful companies to expand elsewhere.

Cities like New York and Los Angeles often are difficult environments for any entrepreneur. But, as this report documents, many immigrants must contend with challenges that go above and beyond those faced by other business owners, from language and cultural barriers to difficulty accessing financing and a lack of understanding about local rules and regulations.
Immigrant entrepreneurs are having an increasingly powerful impact on the economies of cities such as New York, Los Angeles, Houston and Boston.

NEW YORK CITY
- In 2000, foreign-born individuals comprised 36 percent of New York City’s population, yet they accounted for nearly half (49 percent) of all self-employed workers in the city.
- Immigrants drove all of the growth in the city’s self-employed population between 1990 and 2000: the number of foreign-born individuals who were self-employed increased by 64,001 (a 53 percent jump) while the number of native-born people who were self-employed decreased by 15,657 (a 7 percent decline).
- Citywide, 9.27 percent of foreign-born workers are self-employed, compared to 7.71 percent of native-born workers. In Queens and the Bronx, self-employment rates for foreign-born individuals in the workforce are nearly twice those of native-born workers—9.98 percent to 5.74 percent in Queens, and 7.31 percent to 3.98 percent in the Bronx.
- Neighborhoods across the city in which many, if not most, businesses are immigrant-owned have seen an explosion of new enterprises over the past decade, far surpassing the number of firms created citywide. Between 1994 and 2004, the number of businesses citywide increased by 9.6 percent, while the number of firms grew by 54.6 percent in Flushing, 47.3 percent in Sunset Park, 33.7 percent in Sheepshead Bay-Brighton Beach, 17.8 percent in Washington Heights, 14.3 percent in Jackson Heights and 10.8 percent in Flatbush.
- Job growth in immigrant-dominated communities also far outpaced overall employment gains: between 1994 and 2004, overall employment in the city grew by 6.9 percent, but rose by 27.9 percent in Jackson Heights, 23.2 percent in Sunset Park, 13.3 percent in Sheepshead Bay-Brighton Beach, 12.1 percent in Flushing and 10.2 percent in Elmhurst.

LOS ANGELES
- First-generation immigrants created at least 22 of LA’s 100 fastest growing companies in 2005.
- Immigrant entrepreneurs in LA have founded nationally renowned firms such as El Pollo Loco, Panda Express, LuLu’s Deserts and Forever 21.
- Los Angeles County has more Asian-owned firms and Hispanic-owned businesses than any county in the U.S.

HOUSTON
- Houston ranks third among all American cities in the number of Hispanic-owned businesses (41,753) and sixth in the number of Asian-owned firms (15,966). It is also home to 16 of the largest 500 Hispanic-owned firms in the country.
- A telecommunications firm started by a Pakistani immigrant topped the 2006 Houston Small Business 100 list. Meanwhile, a Houston-based energy company started by a Nigerian immigrant was recently named the second largest black-owned firm in the U.S.

BOSTON
- The number of Hispanic-owned firms in Boston increased by 97 percent between 1997 and 2002 while the number of Asian-owned businesses grew by 41 percent.
- Immigrant entrepreneurs have provided a major boost in the resurgence of neighborhoods such as Fields Corner, East Boston, Allston Village and Jamaica Plain.
- With immigrants continuing to fuel the population growth of these and other American cities, foreign-born entrepreneurs have the potential to be an even more dynamic engine of growth for cities in the years ahead.
- In every U.S. Census since 1880, immigrants have been more likely to be self-employed than the native-born population. What’s different now is that the U.S. has been experiencing a prolonged burst of new immigration, at levels not seen since early in the 20th century.
- Between 1980 and 2000, foreign-born individuals accounted for 128 percent of the overall population growth in New York City, 97 percent in Los Angeles, 101 percent in Houston, and 357 percent in Boston.

Unlocking the potential of immigrant entrepreneurs will require more attention and support from policymakers, business advocacy organizations and community development organizations.
- Immigrants often encounter formidable challenges as they attempt to start and grow businesses, which keep some from getting out of the starting gate and inhibit others from growing beyond the mom-and-pop stage.
- Some of the obstacles they face are common to all entrepreneurs, but many others are much more daunting for immigrants—including language and cultural barriers, a lack of awareness about local regulations, limited financial literacy and, often, no credit history.
- Immigrant entrepreneurs remain largely disconnected from cities’ local economic development planning.
- Too few of the established nonprofit organizations that support entrepreneurs and small business owners—from chambers of commerce to local development corporations—have managed to effectively connect with businesses in immigrant communities.
CHART 1: FOREIGN-BORN VS. NATIVE-BORN IN NYC, GROWTH IN SELF-EMPLOYMENT 1990-2000

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Number of Self-Employed 1990</th>
<th>Number of Self-Employed 2000</th>
<th>Increase in Number of Self-Employed 1990–2000</th>
<th>Percent Increase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Foreign-Born</td>
<td>121,693</td>
<td>185,694</td>
<td>64,001</td>
<td>53%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Native-Born</td>
<td>210,184</td>
<td>194,527</td>
<td>(15,657)</td>
<td>(7%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Infosheet, Public-Use Microdata Sample, 1990 and 2000 U.S. Census

CHART 2: FOREIGN-BORN VS. NATIVE-BORN IN NYC, SELF-EMPLOYMENT RATE 2000

- Foreign-Born Self-Employment Rate
- Native-Born Self-Employment Rate

Source: Infosheet, Public-Use Microdata Sample, 2000 U.S. Census

#### FOREIGN-BORN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Borough</th>
<th>Number of Self-Employed 1990</th>
<th>Number of Self-Employed 2000</th>
<th>Change 1990–2000</th>
<th>Percent Change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bronx</td>
<td>11,416</td>
<td>19,669</td>
<td>8,253</td>
<td>72.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brooklyn</td>
<td>31,077</td>
<td>51,544</td>
<td>20,467</td>
<td>65.9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manhattan</td>
<td>29,555</td>
<td>37,183</td>
<td>7,628</td>
<td>25.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queens</td>
<td>46,269</td>
<td>71,807</td>
<td>25,538</td>
<td>55.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staten Island</td>
<td>3,376</td>
<td>5,494</td>
<td>2,118</td>
<td>62.7 %</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### NATIVE-BORN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Borough</th>
<th>Number of Self-Employed 1990</th>
<th>Number of Self-Employed 2000</th>
<th>Change 1990–2000</th>
<th>Percent Change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bronx</td>
<td>16,568</td>
<td>16,142</td>
<td>(426)</td>
<td>(2.6)%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brooklyn</td>
<td>46,525</td>
<td>43,072</td>
<td>(3,453)</td>
<td>(7.4)%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manhattan</td>
<td>98,160</td>
<td>90,599</td>
<td>(7,561)</td>
<td>(7.7)%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queens</td>
<td>37,345</td>
<td>31,997</td>
<td>(5,348)</td>
<td>(14.3)%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staten Island</td>
<td>11,586</td>
<td>12,717</td>
<td>1,131</td>
<td>9.8%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Infoshare, Public-Use Microdata Sample, 1990 and 2000 U.S. Census
## Chart 4: Immigrant Neighborhoods Outpace Rest of NYC in Business Growth

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NYC</td>
<td>192,405</td>
<td>210,783</td>
<td>18,378</td>
<td>9.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flushing*</td>
<td>2,364</td>
<td>3,654</td>
<td>1,290</td>
<td>54.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunset Park**</td>
<td>1,090</td>
<td>1,606</td>
<td>516</td>
<td>47.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheepshead Bay–Brighton Beach</td>
<td>1,421</td>
<td>1,900</td>
<td>479</td>
<td>33.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elmhurst</td>
<td>1,040</td>
<td>1,301</td>
<td>261</td>
<td>25.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washington Heights***</td>
<td>1,807</td>
<td>2,129</td>
<td>322</td>
<td>17.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jackson Heights****</td>
<td>1,284</td>
<td>1,468</td>
<td>184</td>
<td>14.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flatbush</td>
<td>888</td>
<td>984</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>10.8%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Includes Flushing (11354) and Flushing-Murray Hill (11355). ** Only includes zip code 11120. *** Includes zip codes 10032, 10033 and 10040. **** Only includes zip code 11372.

Source: NYS Labor Department
### Chart 5: Immigrant Neighborhoods Outpace Rest of NYC in Employment Growth

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area</th>
<th>Number of Employees 1994</th>
<th>Number of Employees 2004</th>
<th>Change in Employment 1994–2004</th>
<th>Percent Change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NYC</td>
<td>3,322,300</td>
<td>3,550,300</td>
<td>228,000</td>
<td>6.9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jackson Heights*</td>
<td>5,240</td>
<td>6,700</td>
<td>1,460</td>
<td>27.9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunset Park**</td>
<td>14,034</td>
<td>17,286</td>
<td>3,252</td>
<td>23.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheepshead Bay–Brighton Beach</td>
<td>10,220</td>
<td>11,580</td>
<td>1,360</td>
<td>13.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flushing***</td>
<td>26,893</td>
<td>30,155</td>
<td>3,262</td>
<td>12.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elmhurst</td>
<td>11,588</td>
<td>12,768</td>
<td>1,180</td>
<td>10.2%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Only includes zip code 11372. ** Only includes zip code 11220. *** Includes Flushing (11354) and Flushing–Murray Hill (11355). Source: NYS Labor Department
CHART 6: IMMIGRANT NEIGHBORHOODS’ JOB GAINS AFTER 9/11

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Number of Employees 1999</th>
<th>Number of Employees 2004</th>
<th>Change in Employment 1999–2004</th>
<th>Percent Change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NYC</td>
<td>3,620,700</td>
<td>3,550,300</td>
<td>(70,400)</td>
<td>(1.9%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flushing–Murray Hill*</td>
<td>12,272</td>
<td>14,255</td>
<td>1,983</td>
<td>16.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elmhurst</td>
<td>11,527</td>
<td>12,788</td>
<td>1,241</td>
<td>10.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunset Park**</td>
<td>15,632</td>
<td>17,286</td>
<td>1,654</td>
<td>10.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jackson Heights***</td>
<td>6,211</td>
<td>6,700</td>
<td>489</td>
<td>7.9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheepshead Bay–Brighton Beach</td>
<td>11,468</td>
<td>11,580</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>1.0%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Only includes Flushing-Murray Hill (11355). **Only includes zip code 11230. ***Only includes zip code 11372.

Source: NYS Labor Department
CHART 7:
GROUPS IN NYC WITH HIGHER SELF-EMPLOYMENT RATES THAN THE NATIVE-BORN POPULATION

Self-Employment Rate by Country of Origin

Source: Infoshare, Public-Use Microdata Sample, 2000 U.S. Census
Understanding Immigrant Entrepreneurship

There is no single explanation for the "entrepreneurial spirit" that's often ascribed to immigrants. Academics who have studied the subject suggest that one possible explanation is that individuals who immigrate to the U.S. are more likely to be risk-takers, an important trait for people starting their own businesses. After all, those who summon the will and resources to leave their homeland in favor of starting a new life from scratch aren't exactly playing it safe.

"It takes a lot of guts for people to have the courage to leave families, friends and culture," says Jerry Villacres, editor of El Planeta, Boston's largest Spanish-language weekly newspaper. "There is already an entrepreneurial gene in people who are willing to do that."

Another explanation is that many immigrants encounter endless frustrations and barriers working for other people or organizations in this country, and turn to entrepreneurship because it seems a more likely way to guarantee a fair shot at improving their circumstances. For instance, immigrants who were highly educated professionals in their home country often start businesses here after years working in low-paying jobs for which they are overqualified, due to language barriers, discrimination or other factors.

Others who arrive in this country with little education and limited skills sometimes go into business for themselves after growing tired of working in minimum-wage jobs and seeing scant opportunity for advancement. "If you're an immigrant, often you don't find the job of your dreams. The best thing you can do is start a business," says Liliana Henao, a native of Colombia who has launched several businesses in Queens.

Of course, some immigrants start businesses to supplement their families' income, or because they have no other viable options to earn a living. One recent study that focused on Latino immigrants in the New York City region noted that as recent downsizings and plant closings cut into the number of factory jobs in the area, many who previously might have pursued those positions instead started informal businesses.

The sheer number of immigrants in cities like New York and Los Angeles also undoubtedly contributes to the high concentration of foreign-born entrepreneurs. After all, a large ethnic community provides a considerable market for small businesses that cater to that community—whether they are restaurants, law firms, manufacturers that make ethnic products or businesses that provide specialized wedding services. Additionally, many immigrants are emboldened to start a business after seeing so many of their compatriots succeed with businesses of their own.
Why Some Immigrants Are More Entrepreneurial Than Others

As this report documents, immigrants as a group tend to be highly entrepreneurial—but immigrants are far from monolithic, and the impulse to launch a business varies greatly from one ethnic community to another. While new arrivals from every part of the globe have been starting businesses and contributing to the economic vibrancy of cities like New York and LA, data show that individuals from some countries have dramatically higher rates of self-employment than those from others.

In New York City, for instance, Syrian-born individuals in the workforce start businesses at an astonishingly high rate (27.92 percent). Those from Iran (23.63 percent), Greece (22.14), Afghanistan (19.79), Korea (19.27), Israel (18.42 percent), Lebanon (16.16 percent), Turkey (15.58 percent) and Brazil (15.54 percent) also start businesses at more than twice the rate of American-born New Yorkers (7.71 percent). At the other end of the spectrum, New York City residents who were born in Haiti (4.83 percent), Guyana (4.90 percent) and Jamaica (5.41 percent) have comparatively low rates of self-employment.43 (See Chart 7, page 19)

One major reason for the wide variation in entrepreneurial appetite is that individuals who emigrate from some countries tend to arrive with financial assets, high levels of educational attainment and professional experience, while those who move here from other countries are more likely to be poor, uneducated and inexperienced in business matters. A study by researchers Pyong Gap Min and Mehdi Bozorgmehr, focusing on immigrants who came to the U.S. after the 1965 Immigration Act, notes that “the majority of Asian, Middle Eastern and African immigrants have professional and middle-class backgrounds, while the majority of Latino and Caribbean immigrants come from working-class and farming backgrounds.”44

Cultural experiences also explain some of the differences in self-employment rates. For instance, scholars have found that some immigrant groups were particularly successful in starting businesses because they brought with them a tradition of using rotating credit associations to overcome financing obstacles. In contrast, other cultures frown upon taking loans and going into debt.

Another factor that might help to explain why some immigrant communities start businesses at higher rates than others is that some countries from which immigrants hail have stronger or weaker traditions of entrepreneurship. “There’s no role model [for entrepreneurs in our country],” says one New York-based urban affairs expert, speaking about her native country. “In our culture, money is dirty and business is not looked upon highly.”
RECOMMENDATIONS

Immigrant entrepreneurs have been indispensable to New York City’s economic growth in recent years—and, given that immigration is projected to continue driving the city’s population growth and that local policymakers have barely begun to explore the possibilities for strengthening immigrant businesses, it’s clear that they could provide an even bigger boost to prosperity in the decade ahead.

But for the city to take full advantage of this tremendous economic asset, public and private sector leaders will have to show a greater appreciation for the role that immigrant-run firms have come to play in the city’s economy and provide more assistance to help immigrant entrepreneurs scale the multitude of unique obstacles they face in their efforts to start and grow businesses in the five boroughs. These recommendations offer an action plan for government, banks, foundations and nonprofit economic development organizations that will help New York City capitalize on this growing but often neglected part of the economy.

Government

Integrate immigrant entrepreneurs into New York City’s overall economic development strategy. Mayor Bloomberg has demonstrated through his statements and some policy actions that he understands and appreciates how much immigrants contribute to New York City’s cultural, civic and economic life. But his administration has only begun to incorporate immigrant entrepreneurs into its larger economic development framework. Going forward, the mayor and his top economic aides would be wise to embrace New York’s growing population of immigrant entrepreneurs as a powerful engine for future growth, and to pursue policies that place them closer to the heart of the city’s economic agenda. As Deputy Mayor Daniel Doctoroff and the heads of the Economic Development Corporation and Department of Small Business Services (SBS) strive to create a master plan for the city’s economic development, they should carefully consider how best to support immigrant entrepreneurs and strengthen several of the city’s major ethnic business districts.

Develop a new framework for providing business services to immigrant communities. As this report details, too few of the programs overseen by the Department of Small Business Services are reaching immigrant entrepreneurs. Considering the importance of these emerging businesses, the agency should conduct a comprehensive assessment of how it can better serve this growing part of the city’s business community. The goal would be both to connect many more immigrant entrepreneurs with existing SBS programs and also create a new set of specially-tailored mechanisms for serving immigrant communities that take into account the limitations of traditional government-run programs and the different cultural norms and practices of those communities.

Partner with local organizations that have credibility in immigrant communities. Any plan to provide business services to immigrant entrepreneurs must start with the understanding that countless numbers of legal immigrants will never seek assistance from a government-run center—and that many won’t set foot into a nonprofit organization they don’t trust. Experience shows, however, that many immigrants are eager to work with organizations that are based in their own community, have staff that speak their language and take the time to provide the close and sustained assistance that is often necessary. SBS should identify groups that have credibility in immigrant communities, many of which aren’t currently in the agency’s orbit. Then, it should make these community-based organizations full-fledged partners in delivering business assistance services, much the way the agency now works closely with a handful of local development corporations to manage the city’s Industrial Business Zones and conduct outreach to manufacturing firms. To make it work, SBS will have to provide adequate funding for groups to ramp up their services.

Push for well-established economic development organizations to collaborate with newer groups that have roots in immigrant communities. SBS should also facilitate partnerships between longstanding business intermediaries—such as local development corporations and chambers of commerce—and recently founded nonprofits that are rooted in or have closer ties with immigrant communities. By marrying the expertise and resources of the more established groups with the cultural credibility and physical proximity of the newer nonprofits, the agency can quickly and dramatically strengthen the latter without a major expenditure of public resources or the need to build a new set of institutions.

Initiate a major new initiative to help local immigrant-run businesses export their products beyond the five boroughs. A major opportunity for economic growth lies with the scores of businesses throughout the five boroughs that manufacture unique ethnic products, import foreign goods for distribution or provide specialized services to immigrant communities. Many of these firms could easily expand their operations—and create new jobs—by exporting their goods and services to other parts of the country that have emerging immigrant populations but few ethnic businesses of their own. With minimal support, some of the city’s small immigrant-run
firms might become the next Goya or Golden Krust. The city’s Economic Development Corporation should create a new initiative to actively target these businesses and provide resources to help them develop the expertise and capacity to export into new markets. As part of any such effort, EDC should support a citywide expansion of Brooklyn Goes Global, a well-regarded export-assistance program run by the Brooklyn Chamber of Commerce.

Create a marketing campaign to promote the city’s major ethnic business districts as unique destinations for shoppers from throughout the region. Ethnic business districts like Washington Heights, Flushing and Jackson Heights already attract large numbers of shoppers from throughout the tri-state region. But with additional marketing, these business districts could bring in many more shoppers from throughout the area who are looking for products they can’t find at Whole Foods or Wal-Mart and a shopping experience that simply isn’t available today on the Upper West Side or in Scarsdale. The city’s marketing czar, in collaboration with EDC and local business groups, should initiate a campaign to promote these unique city assets throughout the region.

Advocate against federal cuts to microenterprise programs. Mayor Bloomberg has admirably spoken out against immigration reform proposals in Congress that would hurt New York. Working with the city’s newly empowered congressional delegation, he should also add his voice in protest against the Bush administration’s repeated attempts to eliminate or drastically cut back federal funding for microenterprise programs—like the CDFI Fund and the SBA’s Microloan program—that have been incredibly effective in helping immigrant entrepreneurs get access to seed capital and technical assistance. Indeed, the mayor should lobby Congress and the State Legislature to increase support for microfinance programs, most of which are woefully under-funded and receive only a fraction of the resources that go to assist larger businesses.

Make better use of the Mayor’s Office of Immigrant Affairs. SBS and EDC should forge closer ties to the Mayor’s Office of Immigrant Affairs, and work with the unit to conduct outreach efforts into immigrant neighborhoods.

Rein in overzealous regulatory enforcement efforts. Every city has a stake in enforcing regulations that protect citizens’ safety and health and ensure a reasonably high quality of life. In recent years, however, many of New York’s enforcement agencies have gone overboard in issuing tickets to small businesses around the five boroughs—and the perception is that the city’s motivation in doing so has been more a desire to collect revenue than to prevent egregious violations. The mayor and agency leaders need to recognize that this has seriously poisoned the business environment in the five boroughs, and they should send a strong message to curb excessive ticketing.

Banks

Support efforts to get more immigrants into the banking system. Too many immigrants never establish a checking or savings account, and fail to develop a credit history. Not doing so subsequently hurts those who wish to receive bank financing to start a business. Banks can help bring many more immigrants into the banking system by lowering or removing barriers to establish various accounts, opening more branches in immigrant communities, hiring lending officers who come from ethnic communities and speak a mix of languages, and offering products that immigrants want, like money transmission services.

Refer rejected business loan applicants to microlenders. All banks in New York should make it a standard practice to refer immigrants who are turned down for business loans to ACCION, NYANA, the BOC Network or other groups that make microloans. Currently, too few banks are making these referrals, even though doing so may help them get business from that entrepreneur down the road.

Help microfinance organizations with capacity-building efforts. As part of their community development efforts, banks could do much more to help microfinance organizations build capacity for their lending. Specific actions should include everything from having bank officials serve on the groups’ lending committees to giving them input on managing portfolios.

Foundations

Support microenterprise organizations as part of community development initiatives. Many philanthropic foundations provide financial support to microfinance organizations on an international level, but only a small number of them have embraced microenterprise activities as an effective tool for asset-building and community development in New York and other American cities. Foundations should take a new look at the impact of microenterprise groups in supporting the growth of immigrant and minority entrepreneurs, and the role they play in creating wealth and growing communities. Even a relatively small amount of support from foundations could make a real difference for these organizations, particularly if directed at bolstering and expanding the critical technical assistance services these groups offer.
LEAN BUILDER RESOURCES

Lean Builder resources (Courtesy of Stephen Mouzon.).
Lean Builder Resources
*Mouzon Design*

TEAR-OUT PREVENTION WORKSHOP

This one is done as a walk-around with a builder’s guild in a place where they’ve been working. They need to have at least 20–30 houses completed in order to be most effective. I carry a big whitepad around with me to draw as necessary. The idea is to both praise them for what they’ve done well, and also to point out things that should be torn out, and explain why. Sometimes this can get pretty graphic, like the workshop where a builder put in some incredibly flimsy punched metal for a foundation vent. I said “this will never hold up; imagine what happens when kids are playing ball or something,” and with that, I kicked it and knocked it out. The builders there are still talking about that after all these years.

EAVE WORKSHOP

In this one-day workshop we build three eaves: one vernacular, one median, and one classical. The developer or neighborhood association constructs the three framing boxes beforehand, so we’re just doing the rafters and trim. I need one master carpenter, for whom I work as assistant and also instructor. He’s cutting and nailing all the time; I’m doing that part of the time and talking and drawing on a whitepad and easel the rest of the time. We’ve done more of these than any other workshop type. The really powerful thing about this workshop type and the ones to follow are that I’m not teaching in the normal demeaning “follow the drawings, stupid” way that’s often used by architects. Instead, I’m giving them the principles of how to construct the eaves, then we go over to the stack of trim pieces the lumberyard delivered to see how we can put the eaves together following the principles with the materials we have on hand. So instead of being demeaning, this method is empowering because it gives them principles they can use in many conditions. It also helps create the “great variety in a narrow range” that is a hallmark of great places worldwide, and it does so with the natural randomness that is a natural part of using materials on hand. One of the places we did this workshop was at Norton Commons, where there was a particularly rough crew that I thought would be gone by 10 AM. When I say rough, I mean they looked like they were straight out of the deep woods, and had swastikas tattooed on their heads. But somewhere in the middle of the day, they got the idea that they could become craftsmen,
where on every day that came before, they knew they were just wood-butchers, trading time for beer and grocery money. Several months later, Andrés visited and asked Town Architect Mike Watkins “what have you done here? This is the best quality of architecture we have ever gotten in a first-home community.” Mike should have taken more credit, but instead he said “it all began with the builders’ workshop that transformed the backwoods crew. Today, they compete with each other and with the other crews for who can do the best details.”

**Dormer Workshop**

This one-day workshop follows the same pattern as the Eave Workshop, in that the developer or neighborhood association builds the rough framing boxes beforehand, then we finish framing the rafters and trim the three dormers. This one sometimes runs long, so the crews need to know that they may need to stay late. As with the eaves, the finished dormers should be kept in a shop or warehouse somewhere so crews can refer to them later. Some of the things we build haven’t been done correctly anywhere nearby in a hundred years or more. It’s really empowering for guys to see it done right, like their great-grandfathers did, and realize that it’s not rocket science. By keeping the elements we build, it helps them remember the right way until it becomes second nature to them.

**Porch Workshop**

This one-day workshop builds three 3’ square, full-height porch corners. As with the others, they are the vernacular, median, and classical settings for that place.

**Door & Window Workshop**

This one-day workshop varies from the others, in that we trim out one full-size window installed in a 6’ long section of wall at the most vernacular setting, then build a series of a dozen head-jamb connections on 32” square chunks of wall, from vernacular to classical for that place, then build four jamb-sill connections at the same settings.
Traditional Construction Patterns Workshop

This is the only classroom workshop in the series. Here, I step through all 108 patterns in *Traditional Construction Patterns*, which represent the most commonly screwed-up elements in traditional architecture. Normally, the developer or neighborhood association buys a book for each workshop participant to help them remember. As with the other workshops, the powerful thing is that the builders aren’t just told what, but why.

TA-TV

TA-TV (Town Architect TV) is a video channel highlighting problems I run into regularly working as Town Architect in several New Urbanist places. It’s done in a somewhat humorous way... at least as much humor as I can muster! There are 5 sub-channels: Walls & Massing, Doors & Windows, Porches & Balconies, Eaves & Roofs, and Attachments & Sitework. There will be a sixth one: Critiquing the Neighborhood, once I get the videos processed from Andrés walking around Seaside, Rosemary, and Alys. Right now, some of the categories are a bit thin, but eventually, I’d like to have a hundred or more. As you’ll see, they’re all really short and to the point.
SMART GROWTH SCHOOLS REPORT CARD

Smart Growth Schools Report Card, courtesy Nathan Norris.
SMART GROWTH SCHOOLS
REPORT CARD

WWW.SMARTGROWTHSCHOOLS.COM
**RESTORATION PREFERENCE**

Will old schools be restored rather than replaced so long as the cost is less than a new school? This is a separate question than whether the school building will be recycled for another use (i.e., adaptive reuse).

Costs to citizens include much more than the expenses that are directly paid by the school system such as construction costs. The real costs also include busing expenses, long-term energy costs, expected road expansions, water utilities, sewerage, fiber optics, fire and rescue services, environmental costs (such as water or air pollution), and items that are generally hard to quantify, but might be relevant to a particular new school such as whether it generates a loss of agricultural lands, whether it increases the amount of time that the community must spend in morning rush hour, whether the materials of the school improve the health of the students through increased light or decreased mold in the air, or whether it is likely to generate increased health and property losses as a result of increased teenager driving.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Cost Analysis and 100%</strong></th>
<th>A published analysis is required of the “real costs” of building a new school versus restoring an existing school, and there is a rule that requires an existing school to be restored so long as it costs less than the total cost of a new school.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cost Analysis and No Rule</strong></td>
<td>A published analysis is required of the “real costs” of building a new school versus restoring an existing school, but there is no rule pertaining to whether a new school must be restored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cost Analysis and 85%</strong></td>
<td>A published analysis is required of the “real costs” of building a new school versus restoring an existing school, and there is a rule that requires an existing school to be restored so long as it costs less than 85% of the total cost of a new school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>No Cost Analysis and No Rule</strong></td>
<td>No policy on the restoring of schools.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>70%</strong></td>
<td>An existing school may be restored only if it costs less than 70% of the cost of building a new school.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**HOLISTIC PLANNING**

Is school planning done in conjunction with land planning and transportation planning or are these segregated?

| A | School, Land Use and Transportation Planning in Sync. School system planning is done in conjunction and is consistent with land use planning and transportation planning. |
| B | School and Transportation Planning in Sync. School system planning is done in conjunction and is consistent with transportation planning. |
| C | School and Land Use Planning in Sync. School system planning is done in conjunction and is consistent with land use planning. |
| D | School Master Plan. School system has a master plan for how it will grow or contract. |
| E | No School Master Plan. No master plan exists for school system. |

[www.smartgrowthschools.com](http://www.smartgrowthschools.com)
## COMMUNITY BUY-IN
Is the school planning process designed in a way to secure meaningful community input prior to key decisions being made?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td><strong>Multiple Scenarios, Full Impact Analysis, and Formal Input.</strong> Community given multiple school planning scenarios; given the economic/visual/environmental/social impact of those different scenarios; a meaningful formal process for the community to express their preference for one of the multiple planning scenarios.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td><strong>Multiple Scenarios, Limited Impact Analysis, and Meetings.</strong> Community given multiple school planning scenarios; given the economic/visual impact of those different scenarios; meetings held to secure feedback from the community on school planning decisions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td><strong>Multiple Scenarios, No Impact Analysis, and Meetings.</strong> Community given multiple school planning scenarios; not given the economic/visual/environmental/social impact of those different scenarios; meetings held to secure feedback from the community on school planning decisions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td><strong>No Multiple Scenarios, No Impact Analysis, and Meetings.</strong> Community not given multiple school planning scenarios; not given the economic/visual/environmental/social impact of suggested school planning decisions; meetings held to secure feedback from the community on school planning decisions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td><strong>No Multiple Scenarios, No Impact Analysis, and No Meetings.</strong> Community not given multiple school planning scenarios; not given the economic/visual/environmental/social impact of suggested school planning decisions; no meaningful formal process for voicing a preference for school planning decisions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[www.smartgrowthschools.com](http://www.smartgrowthschools.com)
ELIMINATION OF DESIGN CONSTRAINTS
Do you have the flexibility to design the school efficiently for the site and the community or are there one-size-fits-all rules governing design such as:

1. Minimum acreage requirements;
2. Programmatic design requirements such as
   (a) parking/stacking requirements;
   (b) prohibition of multi-level schools;
   (c) Minimum square footage requirements for classrooms; or
3. Maximum costs per square foot?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>F</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>No Acreage; No Design Program; No Max Costs.</strong> No minimum acreage requirements; no programmatic design requirements; no maximum construction cost per square foot.</td>
<td><strong>No Acreage; Design Program; No Max Costs.</strong> No minimum acreage requirements; programmatic design requirements; no maximum construction cost per square foot.</td>
<td><strong>No Acreage; Design Program; Max Costs.</strong> No minimum acreage requirements; programmatic design requirements; maximum construction cost per square foot.</td>
<td><strong>Required Acreage; Design Program; No Max Costs.</strong> Mandated minimum acreage requirements; programmatic design requirements; no maximum construction cost per square foot.</td>
<td><strong>Required Acreage; Design Program; Max Costs.</strong> Mandated minimum acreage requirements; programmatic design requirements; maximum construction cost per square foot.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**NEIGHBORHOOD SCHOOL**
Is the school embedded into a walkable neighborhood so that most students can reach it safely without the necessity of a car or bus?

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>60% of students regularly walk or bike to school.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>45%</td>
<td>45% of students regularly walk or bike to school.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>30% of students regularly walk or bike to school.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>15% of students regularly walk or bike to school.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>No students regularly walk or bike to school.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*www.smartgrowthschools.com*
**PROMINENT SITE**
Is the school sited in a prominent location (e.g., terminated vista or on top of a hill) so that it communicates the importance the school has in the culture of the community?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Terminated Vista; Top of a Hill; Neighborhood Center.</th>
<th>Terminated Vista; Not Atop of a Hill; Neighborhood Center.</th>
<th>No Terminated Vista; Not Atop a Hill; Neighborhood Center.</th>
<th>No Terminated Vista; Top of a Hill; Not Neighborhood Center.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>School terminates a vista, sits atop a hill, and is in a location that is in the heart of the neighborhood center (co-located with other important civic institutions or close to an important intersection).</td>
<td>School terminates a vista, does not sit atop a hill, and is in a location that is in the heart of the neighborhood center (co-located with other important civic institutions or close to an important intersection).</td>
<td>School does not terminate a vista; it does not sit atop a hill, but it is in the heart of the neighborhood center (co-located with other important civic institutions or close to an important intersection).</td>
<td>School does not terminate a vista; sits atop a hill, and it is not in the heart of the neighborhood center (co-located with other important civic institutions or close to an important intersection).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

WWW.SMARTGROWTHSCHOOLS.COM
**SHARED USE**
Is the school sited or designed so that it can share uses with the community such as a gym (or YMCA), park, ballfields, community meeting space, daycare, library, performance theater, art studio, cafeteria/restaurant, community garden, health clinic, etc.?

| A | Ballfields, Gym + 2 More Additional Shared Uses. | Ballfields, gym, and two or more of the following shared with the community: community meeting space, daycare, library, performance theater, art studio, cafeteria/restaurant, community garden, or health clinic. |
| B | Ballfields, Gym, + 1 More Additional Shared Use. | Ballfields, gym, and one of the following shared with the community: community meeting space, daycare, library, performance theater, art studio, cafeteria/restaurant, community garden, or health clinic. |
| C | Ballfields & Gym. | Ballfields and the gym are shared with the community. |
| D | Ballfields. | Ballfields are shared with the community. |
| E | No shared use. | |

**WWW.SMARTGROWTHSCHOOLS.COM**
### SMART GROWTH SCHOOLS REPORT CARD

**FLEXIBILITY**

Is the school designed so that it can grow (independent additional wings, floors or structures) or contract in size and services (areas can be removed or adaptively reused if no longer used for school purposes) as the neighborhood grows or contracts so that it remains useful over a longer period of time?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Grow or Contract. School is designed so that it can easily grow or contract.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Grow, not Contract. School is designed so that it can easily grow, but not contract.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Contract, not Grow. School is designed so that it can contract, but it is not designed so that it can easily grow.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Neither Grow, nor Contract. School is not designed so that it can grow or contract.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[www.smartgrowthschools.com](http://www.smartgrowthschools.com)
**CONNECTED LEARNING ENVIRONMENT**

Does the school connect itself to effective distance learning opportunities; is the school connected to the local community through interaction with local businesses or through a community service program?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>Substantial Distance Learning, Substantial Interaction with Business Community, and Community Service Program. There is substantial distance learning, the school has substantial interaction with the local business community, and the school has a structured community service program.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Substantial Distance Learning, Some Interaction with Community through Business or Community Service Program. There is substantial distance learning, plus the school has some interaction with the local business community or the school has a structured community service program.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Substantial Distance Learning and No Interaction; or Some Distance Learning and Some Interaction. There is substantial distance learning and no interaction with the community through business or a community service program; OR there is some distance learning, and some interaction with the community through business or a community service program.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Some Distance Learning and No Interaction; or No Distance Learning and Some Interaction. There is some distance learning and no interaction with the community through business or a community service program; OR there is no distance learning and some interaction with the community through business or a community service program.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>No Distance Learning and No Interaction with Community through Business or Community Service Program. There is no distance learning, there is no interaction with the local business community, and the school does not have a structured community service program.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Community Pride in the Design

Is the school designed so that it generates community pride as measured by a Visual Preference Survey (VPS)?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Score</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>7 to 10.</strong></td>
<td>Proposed school receives a positive 7 or higher on a VPS which is scaled from negative 10 to positive 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4 to 6.</strong></td>
<td>Proposed school receives a positive 4, 5 or 6 on a VPS which is scaled from negative 10 to positive 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 to 3.</strong></td>
<td>Proposed school receives a positive 1, 2 or 3 on a VPS which is scaled from negative 10 to positive 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>0.</strong></td>
<td>Proposed school receives a 0 on a VPS which is scaled from negative 10 to positive 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Negative.</strong></td>
<td>Proposed school receives a negative score on a VPS which is scaled from negative 10 to positive 10.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[www.smartgrowthschools.com](http://www.smartgrowthschools.com)
**GREEN BUILDING CERTIFICATION**
Does the construction or renovation of the school follow best practices regarding energy efficiency, water efficiency, indoor air quality, daylighting, light pollution and earth-friendly construction techniques as set out in the LEED for Schools program?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Certification</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Platinum</strong></td>
<td>School building receives LEED for Schools Platinum certification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gold</strong></td>
<td>School building receives LEED for Schools Gold certification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Silver</strong></td>
<td>School building receives LEED for Schools Silver certification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bronze</strong></td>
<td>School building receives LEED for Schools certification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>No</strong></td>
<td>School building does not receive LEED for Schools certification.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[www.smartgrowthschools.com](http://www.smartgrowthschools.com)
LEANING OF CODES

Sandy Sorlien prepared a few slides for the Salt Lake City CNU with steps toward leaning your development codes.
How did we get from a model SmartCode that is only 50 pages to a 222 page adopted SmartCode for a small city, and how can we streamline?

• adding architectural controls & guidelines, including 36 pages of pattern book material • pattern book should be separate publication
• adding several other SmartCode modules • if only advisory, put in appendix
• parsing nuances of every use (8 extra pages of definitions) • persuade or be patient, someday cities will stop wanting this
• including lengthy administrative protocols • persuade or be patient, someday cities will stop wanting this
• including the maps • need the maps
• providing advice and teaching within the code text • put in annotations or a separate guide
• adding the ever-popular “This Page Intentionally Left Blank.”
Decisions for Protecting Local Character
Form & Type vs Style & Materials

Should the code regulate style or materials at all? What about materials for fences and walls?

If so, how much, just the short SmartCode Architectural Module, or more? “Shall” or “should?”

What should be coded and what should just be in a separate pattern book or guidelines?

Is there a provision for design review in the code? Is there too much discretion, or not enough? Will guidelines become de facto requirements?
ARCHITECTURAL STANDARDS

SMARTCODE MODULE

PREPARED BY DHARMA PACKERS & CO.

ARCHITECTURAL STANDARDS

SMARTCODE ANNOTATED

5.14 ARCHITECTURAL STANDARDS

This optional Module contains basic Architectural Standards for Buildings. These provisions contribute to visually harmonious environments, ensuring the proper alignment of visual functions in adjacency, and in some instances, supporting the superior environmental performance of traditional building techniques. More complete and more detailed Modules, in the form of more elaborate standards, are available from Howland Architects (on the website www.smartcodearch.com).

Some municipalities may desire to regulate architectural standards. However, many of these standards, including architectural offices, have been developed and published for the purpose of expanding the use of sustainable techniques in support of their implementations.

5.14.1 The average minimum of mainstays is 3,000 feet. This may be reduced by 2,000 feet on the adjacent streets. This may be reduced by 2,000 feet on the adjacent streets.

5.14.2 Any provision should be removed where minimum is 3,000 feet. Even codes that provide a 3,000-foot minimum should be removed.

5.14.3 Any provision should be removed where minimum is 3,000 feet. Even codes that provide a 3,000-foot minimum should be removed.

5.14.4 Other materials may be added to this list as the community wishes. For example, anything that obstructs the view of the sky should be removed. Also, materials that provide a 3,000-foot minimum should be removed.

5.14.5 In any case, this provision is for Fasade only. Materials should provide clear regulations regarding the side elevations.

SMARTCODE MODULE

ARCHITECTURAL STANDARDS

5.14

SMARTCODE ANNOTATED

5.14 ARCHITECTURAL STANDARDS

5.14.1 Genesis to Earth, 74, 76, 78

a. Building materials may be included on each facade only horizontally, with
b. The materials below the first floor.

c. The materials above the first floor shall not exceed 50% of the total building wall area.

5.14.2 Awnings, canopies, awnings, and awnings with the exception of Bay windows, may be included on each facade. 

5.14.3 Openings above the first floor shall not exceed 50% of the total building wall area.

5.14.4 Plants and trees that obstruct views are prohibited from being attached.

5.14.5 Potted plants, if placed, shall be placed on a minimum of 42 inches, or as required by the conditions of the structure.

5.14.6 Roof garden and plants shall be made of natural wood.

5.14.7 Finishes of the first floor shall extend to the wall."
Architectural Module - calibration for a small New England town before insertion into base code

5.14.1 **GENERAL TO ZONES T3, T4, T5, T6**

- a. Building wall materials may be combined on each Facade only horizontally, with the heavier below the lighter.
- b. Streetscreens should be constructed of a material matching the adjacent building Facade.
- c. All openings, including porches, Galleries, Arcades and windows, with the exception of Shopfronts, shall be square or vertical in proportion.
- d. Openings above the first Story shall not exceed 50% of the total building wall area, with each Facade being calculated independently.
- e. Doors and windows that operate as sliders are prohibited along Frontages.
- f. Pitched roofs, if provided, shall be symmetrically sloped no less than 5:12, except that roofs for porches and attached sheds may be no less than 2:12.
- g. The exterior finish material on all Facades shall be limited to brick, wood siding, cementitious siding and/or stucco.
- h. Flat roofs shall be enclosed by parapets a minimum of 42 inches high, or as required to conceal mechanical equipment to the satisfaction of the CRC.
- i. Balconies and porches shall be made of painted wood.
- j. Fences at the first Lot Layer shall be painted. Fences at other Layers may be of wood board or chain link.

- k. All openings, including porches, Galleries, Arcades and windows, with the exception of Shopfronts, shall be square or vertical in proportion.
- l. Openings above the first Story shall not exceed 50% of the total building wall area, with each Facade being calculated independently.
- m. Sliding doors and windows are prohibited along Frontages.
- n. Gabled roofs, if provided, shall be symmetrically sloped no less than 5:12. Hipped roofs, if provided, shall be symmetrically sloped no less than 3:12. Roofs for porches and attached sheds shall be no less than 2:12.
- o. The exterior finish material on all Facades shall be limited to stone, brick, wood siding, cementitious siding, stucco and/or vinyl clapboard with the vinyl clapboard having wood trim for corner boards, window casings, door casings and all trim and ornamentation.
- p. Flat roofs shall be enclosed by parapets a minimum of 42 inches high, or as required to conceal mechanical equipment to the satisfaction of the CRC.
- q. Balconies and porches shall be made of painted wood or metal.
- r. Fences or walls at the first Lot Layer shall be brick, stone, or painted. Fences at other Layers may be of wood board, chain link, brick, stone, or painted metal.

Most of the buildings in Damariscotta are Colonial, Federal, Greek Revival, Colonial Revival, American Renaissance, or the loft buildings downtown on Main Street (T5). They have in common that they are simple Classical or Vernacular Classical buildings with shared visual principles, built of durable, naturally sustainable materials. The Damariscotta Architectural Code illustrates and describes these principles, such as simple, well-proportioned massing on the street, and refers to the examples in *Get Your House Right* to show how to correctly build in the tradition of Damariscotta.

*(credit: John Massengale, Massengale & Co., LLC)*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE SU2: Shading of Glazing This table illustrates methods to achieve high levels of shading glazing within each Transact Zone.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tree</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shading</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Roof Overhang</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exterior Blinds</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Light Shelf</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Deep Window</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Double Skin</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Craftsman
The model SmartCode addresses three scales of planning:

Article 2 • Regional Scale Plans
Articles 3 & 4 • Community Scale Plans
Article 5 • Lot & Building Scale Plans

The model Neighborhood Conservation Code (infill SmartCode) addresses two scales:

Chapters 2 & 3 • Community Scale Plans
Chapter 4 • Lot & Building Scale Plans

The Pocket Code (Transect-based five-pager) addresses two scales:

Section I • Rules for Private Lots & Buildings
Section 2 • Rules for Neighborhood / Downtown Planning
Sandy Sorlien prepared a few slides for the Dallas CNU to quickly teach Lean Urbanism's principles. They are suitable for Pecha Kucha.
Buron
an impediment to common-sense building, community planning, or business startup efforts. A buron may be a person, group, code, procedure, or entrenched habit. By the prolonging of planning, permitting, and building, a buron makes them more expensive. (syn: clog.) It may be unfixable in the short term and require a bypass/workaround.

Buronics
the general condition of multiple burons and the thinking that arises from them.
Regulatory Centipede
a cascade of often well-intended regulations and incentives that damage urban life and urban fabric, causing necrosis. Commonly found where regulation doesn't account for urban reality (e.g. brownfield cleanup cascading into parking lots capping contamination, cascading into last minute halts on development cascading into full cleanup, cascading into bankruptcy, lawsuits, liens, and chain link fences around derelict houses.)
Progress Trap
the condition human societies experience when, in pursuing progress through human ingenuity, they inadvertently introduce problems they don't have the resources or will to solve, for fear of short-term losses in status, stability or quality of life. This prevents further progress and sometimes leads to collapse.
Baroquery
the purely ornamental provision of regulation, because the
regulations are too incomprehensible, self-contradictory,
or voluminous to enforce. In other words, it is on the
books, but unusable.
Kafka-ization
the accretion of regulations into hermetic or circular arrangements, so there's no entry or exit. Example: You need a "certificate of substantial completion" to subdivide lots, and you need utilities hooked up before you can get the certificate, but the water utility won't hook you up until the lots are subdivided.
Rent-Seeking
creating a condition under which you can benefit from its complexity or dysfunction. (See Suckerfish.)

Suckerfish
person who benefits from a more industrious person or entity, or exploits complex or dysfunctional conditions. (var: lamprey, parasite.)
Regulatory Capture
when groups or individuals with a high-stakes interest in the outcome of policy or regulatory decisions can focus their resources toward gaining the policy outcomes they prefer, while members of the public, each with only a tiny individual stake in the outcome, will ignore it altogether. This explains why some Public Works departments only allow Reinforced Concrete Pipe for drainage, or why we end up with 600 page stormwater regulations, or why fire sprinklers become mandatory. A subset of rent-seeking.
**Barnacle**
a growth that increases drag.

**Drag**
something that causes misdirection and unwanted slowing of progress, analogous to the hydraulic inefficiency that makes a ship lose its heading. A "high drag" regulatory environment increases costs.

**Encrustation**
aggregate of barnacles.
Lean Seam
the narrow scope of concern for Lean Urbanism, between and somewhat overlapping the concerns of Tactical Urbanism and the Congress for the New Urbanism.

Lean Urbanism
(1) urbanism that requires a minimum of resources to incubate and mature. (2) a movement comprised of builders, planners, architects, developers, engineers, writers, artists, civic activists, non-profits, government entities, business owners, students, etc., working for more sustainable, attainable housing and development in an era of limited resources. The Project for Lean Urbanism focuses on lowering the thresholds for the incremental urbanization of humane communities in a permanently contracted economy.
80% Solution
the deliberate solution of only 80% of a given problem, leaving time, budget, and room for improvement and course-correction. The term is derived from the Pareto Principle or “80-20 Rule.” See also: Under-Solution.
**Patch**
a small-scale statute or policy to a dysfunctional system or code. Patches include amendments, rezonings, revisions, and local variations. A patch may be limited by time or place, and may be partial. (See Tactical Competence.)
Bypass
a process or system that avoids dealing with the buron or foible creating an impediment.
(syn: Workaround)
**Symbiote**
a person or firm who creates more value than he, she, or it captures. (var: oxpecker.)
Idaho Stop
a relaxation of regulation permitting a bicyclist to roll (cautiously) through a stop sign as if it were a yellow yield sign, and to treat a red light like a stop sign is supposed to be treated, that is, come to a full stop and proceed with caution. The Idaho Stop provides a useful metaphor for some Lean protocols.
Subsidiarity
the assignment of decisionmaking to the lowest competent level. In the US some initiatives are best handled at the federal level, while others devolve appropriately to the state, municipality, neighborhood, block, or household. The concept, which originated in Catholicism, also implies a preference for private over public entities. (See Distributed Leadership.)

Distributed Leadership
a leader's assignment, and even abdication, of leadership to other leaders at subsidiary levels or satellite spheres of concern.
Umwelt
the idea that different animals in the same ecosystem pick up on different elements of their environment and thus live in different micro-realities based on the subset of the world they’re able to detect. The Lean ethos stresses the importance of recognizing our own umwelt — our unawareness of the limits of our awareness.
Pink Code
a development or building code that lightens the red tape of conventional permitting. A "pink" module or overlay may be added to an existing code to incentivize its use and reduce the expense of building.

Pink Zone
area for development where the bureaucratic red tape is lightened up, or where a pink code would apply.

Pocket Code
a development or building code that is brief and compact in format. Pocket Codes may fold to fit into a shirt pocket. They address only the most essential elements of walkability and/or building safety.
Vernacular Mind
a species mind whose nature is coherent, sparse, direct, awake but not self-conscious, and, above all, concrete; it locates intelligence in the environment, and culture in tradition. Its antonym is abstraction.

Vernacular
a local tradition or collection of traditions generated by the Vernacular Mind.
Regulatory Harmony
when regulations are in sync with community goals and the desire of stakeholders to carry out those goals smoothly and expeditiously.
Low grade bad humor
a prerequisite to getting things done.
CODE CHECK SAMPLE

A sample document from Code Check
Abbreviations

A = amp(s) (ex: a 15A breaker)
ABS = acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic pipe
ACH = air changes per hour
AHJ = authority having jurisdiction
AMI = in accordance with manufacturer's instructions
ASCE = American Society of Civil Engineers
ASTM = American Society for Testing & Materials
AWG = American Wire Gauge
B (vent) = gas appliance vent, usually double-wall
BO = building official
Btu = British thermal unit
BWP = braced wall panel
CATV = cable television
cfm = cubic feet per minute
cPVC = chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic pipe
CSST = corrugated stainless-steel tubing
cu. = cubic (ex: 24 cu. ft.)
Cu = copper
DFU = drainage fixture unit(s)
DW = dishwasher
DWV = drain, waste & vent
e.g. = for example (exempli gratia)
EGC = equipment ground conductor
EMT = electrical metallic tubing
e.g. = example
FAU = forced-air unit (central furnace)
FLR = flood level riser
FMC = flexible metal conduit
fs. (after number) = foot, feet (ex: 5 ft.)
FVIR = flammable-vapor ignition-resistant
galv = galvanized
GB = gypsum board
GEC = grounding electrode conductor
GPM = gallons per minute
hp = horse power
ICF = insulating concrete forms
IMC = intermediate metal conduit
in. (after number) = inch(es) (ex: 24 in.)
IS = IAPMO Installation Standard
kw = kilowatt
L&L = listed & labeled
lav = lavatory (bathroom sink)
lb. = pound
LFMC = liquidtight flexible metal conduit
LFNC = liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit
LL = lot line dividing one lot from another or from a street
manu = manufacturer
max = maximum
min = minimum
mph = miles per hour
n/a = not applicable
NM = nonmetallic sheathed cable
O.C. = on center
PEX = cross-linked polyethylene plastic pipe (water pipe)
psf = pounds per square foot
psi = pounds per square inch
psig = pounds per square inch gauge
PT = Preservative-treated (wood)
PVC = polyvinyl chloride plastic water pipe or electrical conduit
recep = receptacle outlet (electrical)
RMC = rigid metal conduit
SDC = Seismic Design Category
SDC D = SDC D1, D2, D3, or D4
SE = service entrance
sq. = square (ex: 24 sq. in.)
UL = Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc.
WP = electrical conductors rated for wet location
w/ = with
w/o = without
WC = water closet (toilet)
WH = water heater
WSFU = water supply fixture unit(s)
Zn = Zinc

Code Check® Seventh Edition

By DOUGLAS HANSEN & REDWOOD KARDON
Illustrations & layout by Paddy Morrissey

Code Check® is a trademark of The Taunton Press, Inc., registered in the U.S. Patent & Trademark Office. Printed in China

Code Check is a field inspection guide to important code requirements and common code violations in the construction of 1- & 2-family dwellings & townhouses. The primary reference is the 2012 edition of the International Residential Code® for One- and Two-Family Dwellings, published by the International Code Council (the IRC).

Codes are adopted at different times in different places around the country. New editions come out every three years, and some states make extensive modifications to the model codes prior to adoption. Since the code used in a particular area could vary, we include references to the two most commonly used codes for every item in the book. Significant code changes are highlighted in the text and summarized on the inside back cover. For users in areas still using the 2009 IRC, the “building” section of the book cites both the 2009 and 2012 references. To determine the codes in your area, contact your local building department and check our web site at www.codecheck.com.

For updates to this book, and other valuable news, articles, and information, visit www.codecheck.com.

Codes Referenced in Code Check

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organization</th>
<th>Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ICC</td>
<td>2009 &amp; 2012 IRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>International Residential Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAPMO</td>
<td>2009 &amp; 2012 UPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Uniform Plumbing Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAPMO</td>
<td>2009 &amp; 2012 UMC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Uniform Mechanical Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NFPA</td>
<td>2009 &amp; 2011 NEC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>National Electrical Code</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The changes referenced on the inside back cover compare the most recent codes in this table to the earlier editions.

Abbreviations

A = amp(s) (ex: a 15A breaker)
ABS = acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic pipe
ACH = air changes per hour
AHJ = authority having jurisdiction
AMI = in accordance with manufacturer's instructions
ASCE = American Society of Civil Engineers
ASTM = American Society for Testing & Materials
AWG = American Wire Gauge
B (vent) = gas appliance vent, usually double-wall
BO = building official
Btu = British thermal unit
BWP = braced wall panel
CATV = cable television
cfm = cubic feet per minute
cPVC = chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic pipe
CSST = corrugated stainless-steel tubing
cu. = cubic (ex: 24 cu. ft.)
Cu = copper
DFU = drainage fixture unit(s)
DW = dishwasher
DWV = drain, waste & vent
e.g. = for example (exempli gratia)
EGC = equipment ground conductor
EMT = electrical metallic tubing
e.g. = example
FAU = forced-air unit (central furnace)
FLR = flood level riser
FMC = flexible metal conduit
fs. (after number) = foot, feet (ex: 5 ft.)
FVIR = flammable-vapor ignition-resistant
galv = galvanized
GB = gypsum board
GEC = grounding electrode conductor
GPM = gallons per minute
hp = horse power
ICF = insulating concrete forms
IMC = intermediate metal conduit
in. (after number) = inch(es) (ex: 24 in.)
IS = IAPMO Installation Standard
kw = kilowatt
L&L = listed & labeled
lav = lavatory (bathroom sink)
lb. = pound
LFMC = liquidtight flexible metal conduit
LFNC = liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit
LL = lot line dividing one lot from another or from a street
manu = manufacturer
max = maximum
min = minimum
mph = miles per hour
n/a = not applicable
NM = nonmetallic sheathed cable
O.C. = on center
PEX = cross-linked polyethylene plastic pipe (water pipe)
psf = pounds per square foot
psi = pounds per square inch
psig = pounds per square inch gauge
PT = Preservative-treated (wood)
PVC = polyvinyl chloride plastic water pipe or electrical conduit
recep = receptacle outlet (electrical)
RMC = rigid metal conduit
SDC = Seismic Design Category
SDC D = SDC D1, D2, D3, or D4
SE = service entrance
sq. = square (ex: 24 sq. in.)
UL = Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc.
WP = electrical conductors rated for wet location
w/ = with
w/o = without
WC = water closet (toilet)
WH = water heater
WSFU = water supply fixture unit(s)
Zn = Zinc

Model Code Organizations

ICC = The International Code Council
IAPMO = International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials
NFPA = National Fire Protection Association

The IRC is a prescriptive guide to residential construction. It is intended primarily for wood-frame conventional construction within prescribed height limits and areas of wind and seismic design. When a project has aspects that exceed the prescriptive limits of the IRC, those aspects require an engineered design. Many houses will require design for certain specific portions, while the majority of the construction can be built prescriptively using the IRC. Some projects might be in wind, snow, or seismic areas that require all of the structural aspects be built to the International Building Code (IBC), while the nonstructural aspects are built to the IRC.

The information in this document is believed to be accurate; however, it is provided for informational purposes only and is not intended as a substitute for the full text of the referenced codes. Publication by The Taunton Press, ICC, and the authors should not be considered by the user to be a substitute for the advice of a registered design professional. Contact the local building department to learn what codes apply in your area as well as any local amendments and procedures.

Key to Using Code Check

Each item with a checkbox refers to a code rule, and is followed by code citations. In the building section, most sections have only one column of code citations and they reference the numbers from the 2009 & 2012 IRC. Two columns of references are used when the 2009 & 2012 IRC used different numberings. In the plumbing, mechanical, and electrical sections the left citation is from the 2012 IRC, and the right column is from the 2012 UPC, 2012 UMC, or 2011 NEC.

Example from p.22:

Indoor Air as Sole Source

12 IRC 12 UMC

Min volume of space 50 cu.ft./1kBtu/hr. T18, F55 [2407.5.1] (701.4.1)

This line says that appliances deriving all their combustion air from indoors must have a space at least 50 cu. ft. for each 1,000 Btu of the appliance rating. The rule is found in section 2407.5.1 of the IRC and 701.4.1 of the UMC. It is also shown in Table 18 and Figure 55.

When the code line text ends in “EXC” an exception follows the main rule, as in this example from p.18

Valve ahead of union & ≤ 6 ft. of appliance F41,42 EXC [2420.5.1] (1211.5)

This line says that a gas shutoff valve is required within 6 ft. of each appliance, as shown in figures 41 & 42. The IRC has an exception that allows the valve to be 50 ft. from the appliance at an accessible labeled manifold. The UPC prohibits this practice, so the reference in that column is “/O.”

Code changes from the previous code edition are shown by placing the reference in a different color, and a superscript endnote to the table on p.31, as in this example from p.20

Pan not req’d under tankless WHs [2801.5] (n/a)

The IRC does not intend to require a drain pan under a tankless water heater. The UPC does not have this rule, so it’s reference is “/n/a”. This change is explained as change #51 on p.31.

Lumber dimensions, e.g. “2 x 4”, are nominal dimensions unless including a fraction or otherwise stated.
**PLANNING**

**Plans, Permits & Inspections**

- **09 & 12 IRC**
  - Approved plans & permit card on site [106.3.1]
  - Permits req’d for all work EXC [105.1]
    - 1-story accessory structures ≤ 200 sq. ft., fences ≤ 7 ft. high, water tanks on grade ≤ 5,000 gallons, sidewalks, driveways, painting, countertops, similar finish work, window awnings projecting ≤ 54 in., decks ≤ 200 sq. ft. & ≤ 30 in. above grade & not serving req’d exit door [105.2]¹
  - Inspection & approval prior to covering any work [109.4]

**Design**

- Engineered design per IBC OK as alternative to IRC [301.1.3]
- Determine climatic and geographic design criteria [301.2]
- AHJ to determine wind speed from maps & topography [T301.2]
- Special design (e.g. ASCE-7 or ICC-600) where maps indicate special wind regions or basic wind speed > 110 mph [301.2.1.1]²
- AHJ to determine seismic design category from IRC maps [301.2.2.1]
- AHJ may allow alternate determination of SDC E if all shear walls extend from foundation to top story & no cantilevers or irregularity [301.2.2.1.2]

---

**BUILDING LOCATION**

**Setbacks F1**

- 09 IRC 12 IRC
  - Verify setbacks – unrated walls min 5 ft. to LL EXC [T302.1] (T302.1(1))
  - 3 ft. if compliant automatic sprinkler system present [n/a] (T302.1(2))³
  - No openings in walls < 3 ft. to LL EXC [T302.1] (T302.1)
  - Openings in walls perpendicular to LL OK [302.1X1] (302.1X1)
  - Facing dwellings & accessory structures on same lot [302.1X2] (302.1X2)
  - Accessory structures that are exempt from permits [302.1X3] (302.1X3)
  - Foundation vents [302.1X5] (302.1X5)
  - Openings up to 25% of wall area OK > 3 ft. & ≤ 5 ft. EXC [T302.1] (T302.1)
  - No limit > 3 ft. if automatic sprinkler system present [n/a] (T302.1(2))⁴
  - Projections (leaves) min. 5 ft. from LL EXC [T302.1] (T302.1(1))
  - 2 ft. OK if 1-hr. protected on underside [T302.1] (T302.1(1))
  - 3 ft. OK unrated if automatic sprinkler system present [n/a] (T302.1(2))⁵
  - 4 in. OK in detached garages 2 ft. from LL [302.1X4] (302.1X4)

**FIG. 1 Fire Separation Distances & Openings**

- **Non-sprinklered**
  - 1-hour fire rating
  - No openings
- **Sprinklered**
  - 1-hour fire rating
  - No openings

---

*Benjamin Franklin was chosen as the main character in our Code Check illustrations for a number of reasons. The “First American’s” insatiable curiosity, scientific genius, and civic-mindedness drove him to study fire safety, safe exiting, public sanitation, improved heating methods, and of course, electricity. Franklin made major contributions to each of the four main disciplines of building inspection: Building, Plumbing, Mechanical, and Electrical. To find out more, visit: www.codecheck.com/cc/Ben.html*
### WALL FRAMING

**Stud Framing**

- Size, spacing, notching & boring per tables T4,F10 [602.3.1]
- Studs must fully bear on min 2 in. nominal sole plate [602.3.4]
- Corners req 3 studs min EXC [F602.3(2)]
  - 2 studs OK w/ cleats for attaching interior surfaces [F602.3(2)]
- Single members headers allowed w/ spans per IRC T602.7.1 F11 [602.7.1]

**Top Plates**

- Bearing wall intersections & corners must overlap [602.3.2]
- End joints must offset 24 in. min (see T7 for nailing) [602.3.2]
- Joints need not be over studs [602.3.3]
- Min 16 gauge 1 1/2 in. strap w/ min 8 10d nails each side over notches or holes > 50% of plate width F10 EXC [602.6.1]
- Not req’d when structural panel sheathing covers notch [602.6.1]

**Cripple Walls**

- Cripple wall < 14 in. sheathed or solidly blocked [602.9]
- Studs ≥ studs above them, walls > 4 ft. sized as additional story [602.9]

**Wood Structural Panel Sheathing**

- Panels req grade stamp from approved agency [602.3]
- Fasten direct to framing members in accordance w/ T7 [602.3]

### TABLE 4 STUD SIZING, SPACING, NOTCHING & BORING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stud Size</th>
<th>2×4</th>
<th>3×4</th>
<th>2×6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bearing Walls (to 10ft. high)</strong></td>
<td>24 in. O.C.</td>
<td>24 in. O.C.</td>
<td>24 in. O.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supporting roof &amp; ceiling</td>
<td>24 in. O.C.</td>
<td>24 in. O.C.</td>
<td>24 in. O.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof &amp; ceiling + 1 floor</td>
<td>16 in. O.C.</td>
<td>24 in. O.C.</td>
<td>24 in. O.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof &amp; ceiling + 2 floors</td>
<td>16 in. O.C.</td>
<td>16 in. O.C.</td>
<td>16 in. O.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notching F9</td>
<td>7/8 in.</td>
<td>7/8 in.</td>
<td>1 1/2 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boring F9</td>
<td>2 1/2 in.</td>
<td>1 1/2 in.</td>
<td>2 1/2 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boring 2 doubled consecutive</td>
<td>2 in.</td>
<td>2 in.</td>
<td>3 1/2 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nonbearing Walls</strong></td>
<td>1 1/2 in.</td>
<td>1 1/2 in.</td>
<td>2 1/2 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notching F9</td>
<td>1 1/2 in.</td>
<td>1 1/2 in.</td>
<td>2 1/2 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boring F9</td>
<td>2 in.</td>
<td>2 in.</td>
<td>3 1/2 in.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A. Limited to roof spans ≤ 32 ft.

### WALL BRACING FOR WOOD FRAME BUILDINGS

**Locations**

- BWL is straight line in plan view [202] (602.10)
- Exterior walls max offset from braced wall line 4 ft. [602.10.1.4] (602.10.1.2)
- Max spacing of BWLs 25 ft. SDC D [602.10.1.5] (T602.10.1.3)
- Max length from end 10 ft. (12.5 combined in 09) [602.10.1.4] (602.10.2.2)
- Max. 20 ft. between braced wall panel ends in same BWL [n/a] (602.10.2.2)

**Methods**

- All buildings req bracing by 1 of following methods: [602.10] (602.10)
  - Intermittent bracing methods [602.10.2] (602.10.4)
  - Continuous sheathing [602.10.4.6] (602.10.4.2)
  - Simplified wall bracing method in SDC A, B & C [n/a] (602.12)
- Intermittent braced wall panels min 48 in. length EXC [602.10.3] (602.10.5)
  - Alternate braced wall panels [602.10.3.2] (T602.10.5)
  - Portal frame w/ hold-downs [602.10.3.3] (T602.10.5)
  - Garage door openings in SDC A, B, or C [602.10.3.4] (T602.10.5)
SAFETY GLAZING

Safety Glass Identification

- Tempered glass reqs permanent etched label EXC [308.1]
- Spandrel glass removable paper label OK [308.1X2]
- Only 1 lite req’s full label in multipane windows w/ lites ≤ 1 sq. ft., others marked “CPSC 16 CFR 1201* or “ANSI Z27.1” [308.1]
- Laminated glass does not req label [308.1X1]

Hazardous Locations Requiring Safety Glass

- Glass in swinging, bifold, or sliding doors EXC [308.4-1] (308.4.1)
- Decorative glazing or lites w/ < 3 in. least dimension (308.4-1X) (308.4.1X)

- < 60 in. above floor or walking surface EXC F22 [308.4-2] (308.4.2)
- Decorative glazing (308.4-2X1) (308.4.2X)
- Where separated by wall or intervening barrier (308.4-2X2) (308.4.2X2)
- Where door only accesses closet < 3 ft. deep (308.4-2X3) (308.4.2X3)
- Perpendicular to door & on latch side F22 (308.4-2X4) (308.4.2X4)
- Adjacent to fixed panel of patio doors (308.4-2X5) (308.4.2X5)
- Windows w/ walk-through hazard EXC F22 [308.4-3] (308.4.3)
- Decorative glass (308.4-3X1) (308.4.3X1)
- Protection from railing on side w/ walking surface (308.4-3X2) (308.4.3X2)
- All glazing in railings (308.4.4) (308.4.4)
- Wet areas (walls & enclosures facing walls of hot tubs, spas, whirlpools, bathtubs, showers, & pools) where lower edge of glass < 60 in. above standing or walking surface EXC [308.4-5&6] (308.4.5&6)
- Glazing > 60 in. horizontal from water’s edge [308.4-5X] (308.4.5X)
- Glazing ≤ 3 ft. horizontally from stair or ramp EXC [308.4-7] (308.4.6X2)
- Intervening rail 34-38 in. high & withstandng 50 psf load w/o touching glass (308.4-7X1) (308.4.6X1)
- Guard or handrail > 18 in. horizontal from glass (308.4-7X2) [n/a] (308.4.7X2)
- Solid wall 34 in. to 36 in. below glass (308.4-7X3) [n/a] (308.4.7X3)
- Glazing < 60 in. horizontal of bottom stair landing & < 36 in. above landing EXC (308.4-8) (308.4.7)
- Intervening guard min 18 in. from glass (308.4-8X1) (308.4.7X)
- Solid wall 34 in. to 36 in. below glass (308.4-8X2) [n/a] (308.4.8X2)

ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Compliance

- Software can be approved to demonstrate compliance [n/a] (1101.5) (1101.5)
- Compliance certificate posted on electrical panel [1101.9] (1101.16)
- Additions & alterations same as new construction EXC [n/a] (1101.3)
  - Replacement fenestration, glass, up to 50% of luminaires, refoaming if sheathing not exposed & energy use not increased [n/a] (1101.3X)

Building Thermal Envelope

- Basic zone for sidelites: within 24 in. radius of door edge in closed position & < 60 in. above walking surface
- Exempt if a 3 in. sphere cannot pass
- Sidelite exempt when perpendicular to door & on latch side

Safety Glass when walk-through hazard exists: all four of
- (1) > 9 sq. ft., (2) lower edge < 18 in. above walking surface, (3) upper edge > 36 in. above walking surface & (4) within 36 in. horizontal of walking surface

Building Thermal Envelope

- HVAC systems sized per ACCA Manual S & J [1103.6] (1103.6)
- Programmable thermostat req’d for central FAU heat [1104.1] (1103.1)
- Attic ducts min R-6 & insulated, others min R-6 [1103.2] (1103.2)
- Duct leakage test mandatory [1103.2.2] (1103.2.2)
- All recessed luminaires type IC airtight & gasketed trim (1102.4.5) (1102.4.4)
- Min 75% installed lamps high-efficacy (50% in 09) [1104.1] (1104.1)
Utility Trenches

- Backfill in layers & tamped in place - no backhoe or grader until 12 in. of tamped earth in place
- Contact utility re: sharing gas or electric in water trench (utility)
- Water service min 12 in. deep (12 in. cover UPC)
- Water service min 6 in. (12 in. UPC) below frost line
- Water in sewer trench if materials OK in house
- If other sewer material, separate trench req’d (5 ft. away IRC) or install water pipe on shelf 12 in. above sewer
- Sewer depth per local BO & utility
- Utility or other trench may not undermine footing
- Pipes through foundation req sleeve or arch

Piping in Trench

- Water & sewer in same trench only if type of sewer pipe is approved in the building
- Fill in layers for first 12 in. with smooth material free of rocks or debris

Underground Gas Pipes

- Min depth (min cover UPC) 12 in. EXC
- 8 in. OK for individual lines to lights, grills, etc.
- 18 in. cover unless external damage not likely
- Provide sleeve or bridge in conduit if < 12 in. cover
- Plastic only OK underground outside building
- Tracer wire min 18 AWG (UPC 14 AWG) adjacent to plastic pipe & brought above ground at riser
- Buried metal-clip wrapped EXC
- Field wrapping OK where stripped for threading

ROUGH INSPECTION - TESTING

- Test all piping before cover or concealment
- DWV water test min. 10 ft. head for 15 minutes OR
- Air test 5psig (10 in. mercury) for 15 minutes
- Test all piping before cover or concealment
- Min depth (min cover UPC) 12 in. EXC

TABLE 12

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fixture</th>
<th>Min. Trap Size</th>
<th>DFUs</th>
<th>IRC Length to Vent</th>
<th>UPC Length to Vent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bathhtub</td>
<td>1 1/2 in.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6 ft.</td>
<td>3 ft. 6 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bidet</td>
<td>1 1/4 in.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5 ft.</td>
<td>2 ft. 6 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clothes Washer</td>
<td>2 in.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>8 ft.</td>
<td>5 ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor Drain</td>
<td>2 in.</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>8 ft.</td>
<td>5 ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kitchen Sink</td>
<td>1 1/2 in.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6 ft.</td>
<td>3 ft. 6 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laundry Tub</td>
<td>1 1/4 in.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5 ft.</td>
<td>2 ft. 6 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lavatory</td>
<td>1 1/4 in.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5 ft.</td>
<td>2 ft. 6 in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shower</td>
<td>2 in.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8 ft.</td>
<td>5 ft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water Closet</td>
<td>3 in.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>no limit</td>
<td>6 ft.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A: If used as a receptacle, use the DFUs of the fixture; the UPC counts all floor drains as 2 DFUs
B: With or without dishwasher or disposer
C: After the trap arm the UPC min. drain size is 2 in.
D: IRC 1 1/2 in. for sets of 2 or 3 lavatories
E: IRC shower traps can be 1 1/2 in. for up to 5.7 gpm flow rates
WATER SUPPLY & DISTRIBUTION (CONT.)

Piping & Valves

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>12 IRC</th>
<th>12 UPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accessible fullway main shutoff req’d [F33.34]</td>
<td>[2403.9.1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessible fullway shutoff req’d at WH [F33.34]</td>
<td>[2403.9.2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brass adapter [or dielectric fittings] between galv &amp; Cu [2905.17.1]</td>
<td>(316.2.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water hammer arrestors req’d if quick-close valves</td>
<td>[2903.5]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Individual shutoff req’d each fixture except tubs &amp; showers</td>
<td>[2903.9.3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control valve can be at manifold if identified</td>
<td>[2903.8.5]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Protection of Potable Water Supply

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>12 IRC</th>
<th>12 UPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No connections between private &amp; public water supply</td>
<td>[2902.1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fixture outlet air gaps min 2X diameter of outlet</td>
<td>[2902.3.1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backflow protection devices to recognized standards</td>
<td>[12902.3]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GAS PIPING

General

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>12 IRC</th>
<th>12 UPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Locate gas meter in accessible &amp; ventilated space</td>
<td>[utility]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main shutoff req’d at each meter &amp; building [F36]</td>
<td>[2420.263]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Material: steel (galv or black), type K or L Cu, CSST</td>
<td>[2414.485]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cu only OK for low sulfur-content gas</td>
<td>[2414.5.2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size pipe per tables [T16-17]</td>
<td>[2413.3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support pipe &amp; smooth-wall tubing per [T15]</td>
<td>[2424.1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior of pipe or tubing must be deburred</td>
<td>[2414.7]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No gas pipe in duct, clothes chute, or gas vent</td>
<td>[2415.3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outdoor piping min 3½ in. above ground or roof</td>
<td>[2415.9]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No unions or bushings in concealed locations</td>
<td>[2415.5]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutoff before each medium-pressure regulator</td>
<td>[2420.4]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Appliance Shutoffs & Connections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>12 IRC</th>
<th>12 UPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Valve ahead of union &amp; ≤ 6 ft. of appliance [F41.42]</td>
<td>[2420.5.1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 ft OK if accessible identified valve at manifold</td>
<td>[2420.5.3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max length connector 6 ft.</td>
<td>[2422.1.2.1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flex connectors not through walls, floors, ceilings</td>
<td>[2422.1.2.3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connector not through appliance housing [EXC]</td>
<td>[2422.1.2.3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hard pipe, flex connectors protected against damage, &amp; fireplace inserts w/ grommets AMI</td>
<td>[2422.1.2.3X]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sediment trap close as practical to appliance [EXC] [F41.42]</td>
<td>[2419.4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ranges, clothes dryers, fireplaces &amp; gas lights</td>
<td>[2419.4]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>12 IRC</th>
<th>12 UPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Install AMI (includes training &amp; qualification)</td>
<td>[2414.5.3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sizing, support, protection, &amp; connection AMI</td>
<td>[2414.5.3]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Electrical Bonding

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>12 IRC</th>
<th>12 UPC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gas pipe not OK as grounding electrode in earth</td>
<td>[2410.1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrically bond above-ground metal gas pipes</td>
<td>[2411.1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appliance EGC sufficient to bond non-CSST gas pipe</td>
<td>[2411.1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bond between electrical service &amp; metal pipe between meter &amp; first downstream CSST fitting</td>
<td>[2411.1.1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSST bonding jumper min 6 AWG Cu</td>
<td>[F36]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 15 GAS PIPING & TUBING SUPPORT [T2424.1] & [T1210.2.4.1]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steel Pipe Nominal Size (in.)</th>
<th>Max. Support Spacing (ft.)</th>
<th>Smooth-Wall Tubing Nominal Size (in.)</th>
<th>Max. Support Spacing (ft.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>½ in.</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>½</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¾ or 1</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>5/8 or ¾</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ 1½ (horizontal)</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>7/8 or 1 (horizontal)</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ 1½ (vertical)</td>
<td>Every floor level</td>
<td>7/8 or 1 (vertical)</td>
<td>Every floor level</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TABLE 16 SIZE PROCEDURES [2413.4.1&2] & (1216.1.1&2)

1. Determine Btu/cu. ft. gas from local supplier (usually 1100).
2. Divide appl Btu by Btu/cu. ft. to obtain appliance demand.
3a. Longest length method: Measure developed length to most remote outlet.
4a. Longest length method: Use column from [T17] for most remote fixture for all outlets.
3b. Branch length method: Measure developed length to each outlet.
4b. Branch length method: Select column from [T17] for load on piping to each outlet.
5. Select now for pipe size equaling or exceeding demand each section.

TABLE 17 GAS PIPING [T2413.4(1)] & [T12-8]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pipe</th>
<th>Length (in feet)</th>
<th>Demand Capacity (cu.ft/hr)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>½ in.</td>
<td>172  118  95  81  72  65  60  56  52</td>
<td>50  44  40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>¾ in.</td>
<td>360  247  199  170  151  137  126</td>
<td>117  110  104  92  93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 in.</td>
<td>678  466  374  320  284  257  237</td>
<td>237  220  207  195  173  157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1½ in.</td>
<td>1390  957  768  657  583  528  486</td>
<td>486  452  424  400  355  322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1½ in.</td>
<td>2090  1430  1150  985  873  791  728</td>
<td>728  677  635  600  532  482</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**WATER HEATERS**

**General**
- 12 IRC
- 12 UPC
- Replacement of WH req’s permit
- Installation & maintenance instructions to be left w/ WH
- Full-open valve req’d on cold water supply
- Unions req’d within 12 in. of tank for service and removal
- Electric WH req’s in-sight or lockable disconnect

**Location**
- Fuel-fired WH prohibited in storage closets
- Fuel-fired WHs in bedroom, bathroom, req separation by weatherstripped self-close door & exterior combustion air EXC
- Direct-vent type
- Watertight pan req’d if leaks would cause damage
- Pan drain to approved location
- Pan not req’d under tankless WHs
- Flammable Vapor Ignition Resistant (F VIR)
- Temperature & Pressure-Relief Valve (TPRV)
- Gas shutoff ahead of sediment trap

**Access & Working Space**
- Access & working space req’d
- Min closet door size
- Attic: solid passage floor max 20 ft., min 24 in. wide
- Attic equipment req’s light & recep near WH

**Tankless (On Demand) Water Heaters F42**
- Size gas line to max Btu rating
- Install AMI (PRV usually specified)
- Type III vent typically req’d
- Direct-vent water heater vent clearances
- Not OK to vent in common w/ other appliances

**Temperature & Pressure-Relief Valve**
- Combination TPRV (req’d in UPC) OR F42
- Locate TPRV AMI

**TPRV Discharge Pipe**
- Size at least same as TPRV outlet
- End pointing downward and w/ no threads
- End outside or other approved location ≤ 6 in. (6–24 in. UPC)
- May not run uphill or be trapped
- May discharge to WH pan (not OK in UPC)

**Vents & Flues (also see “Venting” on p.23)**
- Draft hood or barometric damper in same space as WH
- Terminate min 5 ft. above draft hood
- Only 1 draft hood
- Single-wall vents prohibited in dwellings
- Single-wall outdoors in cold climate
- Secure vent connector to draft hood & vent w/ screws or other approved means

**FIG. 42**
- Water Heater in Garage

**FIG. 43**
- Temperature & Pressure-Relief Valve
VENTING

General (Gravity Gas)  12 IRC  12 UMC
☐ Install vents AMI (most appliances ship w/ GAMA venting tables that include limits for size, length & offsets) [2427.6.1] (802.1.1)
☐ Induced-draft (Category II) can be "gravity vent" T19 [2427.6.1] (802.1.1)
☐ Vent size ≥ draft hood size & ≤ 7x draft hood size_ [2427.6.8.1] (802.6.3.1)
☐ One 60° offset OK, others max 45° EXC [2427.6.8.2] (802.6.1)
• Systems designed using vent sizing tables [2427.6.8.1] (802.6.1)
☐ Provide proper support AMI [2426.6] (802.6.7)
☐ Insulation shield to min 2 in. above attic insulation [2426.4] (manu)
☐ No solid fuel & gas in same chimney flue [2427.5.6.1] (802.5.8)
☐ Vents < 1½ in. from face of framing req steel plate protection extending 4 in. beyond edge of framing member [2426.7] (manu)

TABLE 19  APPLIANCE VENTING CATEGORIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Condensation</th>
<th>Static Pressure</th>
<th>Typical vent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Nonpositive</td>
<td>B Vent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Nonpositive</td>
<td>Per manu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>Stainless Steel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>Plastic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Connectors  12 IRC  12 UMC
☐ Connectors short & straight as practical [2427.10.8] (n/a)30
☐ Basic max horizontal length 18 in. per in of diameter [2428.3.2] (802.3.1)
☐ Single-wall connector max length 75% of vertical vent [2427.10.8] (802.10.7.1)
☐ Type B connector max length 100% of vertical vent [2427.10.8] (802.10.7.2)
☐ Max 2x diameter of vent collar or draft hood [2428.2.11] (803.1.14)
☐ No single wall in attics or excessively cold areas [2427.10.2.2] (802.10.1.2)
☐ No single-wall connector through interior wall [2427.10.13] (802.10.12)
☐ Slope min ½ in/ft toward appliance [2427.10.7] (802.10.6)
☐ Connect to appliance vent collar w/ screws or AMI [2427.10.6] (802.10.5)

Appliances with Common Venting
☐ 2 draft-hood equipped appliances: common connector ≥ largest connector + 50% of smaller flue collar outlet size [2427.10.3.4] (802.10.2.3)
☐ Join smaller connector to common connector at highest level consistent w/ available headroom F56 [2427.10.4] (802.10.3.1)
☐ Connectors ≤ 45° of vertical OK at same level F56 [2427.10.4.1] (802.10.3)

FIG. 56

Gas Vent Entering Masonry Chimney  12 IRC  12 UMC
☐ Must be lined w/ clay or metal EXC [2427.5.5.1] (802.5.4.2)
• Not req’d when replacing appliance of similar type & rating if chimney inspected for damage [2427.5.5.1] (802.5.4.2)
☐ Cross-sectional area not >7× size of gas vent [2427.5.4] (802.5.3)

Single-Wall Vent  12 IRC  12 UMC
☐ Not allowed in dwellings [2427.7.4] (802.7.3.1)
☐ Only for runs from appliance space directly to outside [2427.7.6] (802.7.3.2)
☐ May not originate in attic or pass through inside wall [2427.7.7] (802.7.3.4)
☐ Min 6 in. clear to combustible for single-wall pipe [2427.7.8] (802.7.3.4)

B Vent Termination
☐ Must extend above roof [2427.6.3] (802.6.2)
☐ Min 5 ft. vertical height above flue collar F44 [2427.6.4] (802.6.2.1)
• If vertical surface within 8 ft. vent must terminate min. 2 ft. higher than any part of building within 10 ft. horizontal F57 [2427.6.4] (802.6.2)
☐ Min height above roofs F20 [2427.6.3] (802.6.2)

TABLE 20  B VENT TERMINATION (F57) [F2427.6.3] {T802.6.2}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roof Slope</th>
<th>Min. Height (ft)</th>
<th>Roof Slope</th>
<th>Min. Height (ft)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Flat to 6/12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>&gt; 11/12 to 12/12</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 6/12 to 7/12</td>
<td>1¼</td>
<td>&gt; 12/12 to 14/12</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 7/12 to 8/12</td>
<td>1½</td>
<td>&gt; 14/12 to 16/12</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 8/12 to 9/12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>&gt; 16/12 to 18/12</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 9/12 to 10/12</td>
<td>2½</td>
<td>&gt; 18/12 to 20/12</td>
<td>7½</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 10/12 to 11/12</td>
<td>3½</td>
<td>&gt; 20/12 to 21/12</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Forced Vents (Category IV)  12 IRC  12 UMC
☐ All mechanical draft systems L&L & installed AMI [2427.3.3] (802.3.4.1)
☐ Forced draft system must be gas tight [2427.3.3] (802.3.4.3)
☐ Req’d plastic joint primers must be contrasting color [2427.1.1] (802.4.2)
☐ No natural & forced-vent to common flue [2427.3.3] (802.3.4.4)
☐ Terminate min 4 ft. to side or below or 1 ft. above building openings & min 1 ft. above ground level EXC [2427.8] (802.8.1.2)
• Termination can be same as direct vent if AMI [2427.8] (802.8.1.2)
☐ Collect & dispose of condensate from vent (p.24) [2427.9] (802.9)

Direct Vent Termination
☐ Clearances to building openings: 0-10 kBu/hr min 6 in., 10-50 kBu/hr min 9 in., > 50 kBu/hr min 12 in. F58 [2427.8] (802.8.3)
☐ 12 in. min clearance to finished ground level [2427.8] (802.8.3)

FIG. 57

FIG. 58
### PANELBOARDS (LOAD CENTERS)

#### General
- Working space 30 in. wide x 3 ft. deep min F63 (3405.2) (110.26A1a)
- Working space to floor & min 6 ft. 6 in. height F63 (3405.2) (110.26A3)
- No grounding of neutral after service EXC F65 (3607.2) (250.24A5)
  - Existing separate structure w/ no parallel metal path (3607.3.2) (250.32BX)
- No bonding subpanel neutral to enclosure F65 (3908.6) (408.40)
- Only 1 wire per breaker unless L&L for 2 (3406.10) (110.14A)
- Each neutral req’s individual terminal (3706.4) (408.41)
- Overcurrent protection req’d per T24 (3705.5) (240.4)
- All terminals torqued per labeling (3403.3) (110.3B)
- Breaker brand and models L&L for panel (3403.3) (110.3B)
- Use of each circuit legibly identified w/ sufficient detail to distinguish use from other circuits (3706.2) (408.4)
- Circuit description not dependent on temporary conditions, e.g., room color or occupant’s name (3706.2) (408.4)
- Multiwire circuits req handle tie or single breaker F66 (3701.5.1) (210.4B)
- Unused openings closed equivalent to original (3404.6) (110.12A)
- Max height of center of breaker handle 6 ft. 7 in. (3705.7) (240.24A)
- No panels in clothes closet or bathroom (3705.7) (240.24DAE)
- Not to be located over steps of a stairway (3705.7) (240.24F)
- 1/4 in. air space req’d behind surface-mounted metal panel in damp or wet location (3907.2) (312.2)

#### Grounding Electrode System (GES) F66
- Use metal underground water pipe if ≥ 10 ft. in earth (3608.1.1) (250.52A1)
- Connect GEC to pipe not > 5 ft. inside building (3608.1.1.1) (250.58C)
- Bond around removable equipment (meters, etc.) (3608.1.1.2) (250.53D1)
- Water pipe cannot be only grounding electrode (3608.1.1.2) (250.53D2)
- “Ufer” = 20 ft. #4 rebar or 4 AWG Cu wire in concrete footing, foundation, or pier in contact w/ earth EXC (3608.1.2) (250.52A3)
- Ufer not req’d in existing buildings where steel not accessible w/o removal of concrete (3608.1.2X) (250.50X)
- Ground rod min 8 ft. (3608.1.4) (250.52A5)
- Ground rod min 8 ft. deep & driven flush (3608.1.4.1) (250.53G)
- If resistance > 25 ohms, 2nd rod req’d ≥ 6 ft. from 1st (3608.4) (250.53A2)
- Each structure w/ 1 branch circuit req’s GES (3607.3) (250.32A)

#### FIG. 66
- Grounding Electrode System (GES)

**FIG. 64**
- Service Panel
- Subpanel
- Neutral conductor identified
- Line side
- Load side
- Bond neutral in service enclosure
- 2 circuits to common yoke & multiwire circuits req handle tie or single-handle 2-pole breaker.

**FIG. 65**
- Grounding conductor

#### Grounding Electrode Conductor (GEC)
- GEC must connect to incoming service neutral (3607.2) (250.24A)
- 8 AWG req’s protection in raceway or cable armor (3610.2) (250.64B)
- 6 AWG following building contour OK w/o protection (3610.2) (250.64B)
- Size GEC to T23 EXC (3603.1) (250.66)
  - 6 AWG largest req’d size if dead-ends at Ufer T3603.1 (250.66A)
  - 4 AWG largest req’d size if dead-ends at rod T3603.1 (250.66B)

#### TABLE 23
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GEC (T3603.1) &amp; (T250.66)</th>
<th>EGC (T3908.12) &amp; (T250.122)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cu Service Wire AWG Size</td>
<td>Al Service Wire AWG Size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≤ 1/0</td>
<td>≤ 1/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 or 3/0</td>
<td>2/0 or 3/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2/0 or 3/0</td>
<td>4/0 or 250 kcmil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 3/0 to 350 kcmil</td>
<td>&gt; 250kcmil to 500 kcmil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 350 kcmil to 600 kcmil</td>
<td>&gt; 500 kcmil to 900 kcmil</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A. See Code Check Electrical for Al/GEC sizes.
B. Al EGCs 1 size larger than Cu.

#### Bonding
- Bond all available electrodes (water piping, rod, Ufer) (3608.1) (250.50)
- Bond metal raceways enclosing GEC (3610.3) (250.64E)
- Bond service raceway fittings w/ bonding jumpers if knockouts remain or reducing washers used (3608.4) (250.92B)
- Use bonding locknuts if no remaining concentrics (3609.4) (250.92B)
- Bond metal piping, hot, cold & gas (3609.8&7) (250.104A&B)
- EGC of equipment may be used to bond gas (3607.9) (250.104B)

#### Intersystem Bonding
- Provide accessible external terminal bar w/ min 3 terminals to bond phone & CATV (3609.3) (250.94)
- Bar not to interfere w/ opening service enclosure (3609.3) (250.94)

#### Equipment Bonding & Grounding
- Wire EGCs sized per T23 (3908.12) (250.122)
- EGC must provide effective ground-fault current path (3908.4) (250.44A5)
- Earth is not an effective ground-fault current path (3908.5) (250.44A5)
- RMC, IMC, EMT, AC cable armor, electrically continuous raceways & surface metal raceways OK as EGC (3908.8) (250.122A)
- Remove paint from contact surfaces of ground bars (3908.17) (250.12)
### APPLIANCES

**Required Disconnecting Means**

- [ ] Breaker alone OK if appliance ≤ 300VA or 1/4 hp [T4101.5] (422.31A)
- [ ] Accessible cord/plug OK for appliances listed for cords [T4101.5] (422.33A)
- [ ] Unit switch that opens all hot conductors OK [T4101.5] (422.34)
- [ ] In-sight or lockable breaker or switch F70 [T4101.5] (422.31B)
- [ ] Breaker lockout hasp must remain in place F70 [T4101.5] (422.31B)

### FIG. 70

#### Breaker Lockout Hasp

Hasp for locking breaker must remain with or without lock in place.

### FIG. 71

#### Air Conditioning Condenser

All air conditioners require an in-sight disconnect.

### GFCI & AFCI PROTECTION

**Required GFCI Protection**

- [ ] All bathroom recepts _3902.1_ (210.8A1)
- [ ] All garage & accessory building recepts _3902.2_ (210.8A2)
- [ ] All outdoor recepts EXC _3902.3_ (210.8A3)
  - Non-readily-accessible deicing circuit recept _3902.3X_ (210.8A3X)
- [ ] Recepts in crawl spaces at or below grade _3902.4_ (210.8A4)
- [ ] All unfinished basement recepts EXC _3902.5_ (210.8A5)
  - Recept supplying permanent fire or burglar alarm _3902.5X_ (210.8A5X)
- [ ] All recepts serving kitchen countertops _3902.6_ (210.8A6)
- [ ] Recepts within 6 ft. of non-kitchen sinks _3902.7_ (210.8A7)

**AFCI Protection**

- [ ] Req’d for all branch circuits w/ outlets in family rooms, dining rooms, living rooms, parlors, libraries, dens, bedrooms, sunrooms, recreation rooms, closets, hallways, or similar rooms or areas _3902.12_ (210.12A)
- [ ] Req’d for extensions or modifications of existing circuits serving above locations (can be outlet at 1st recept) _3902.13_ (210.12B)
- [ ] "Outlet” = receptacle, lighting, or smoke alarm outlet _3901_ (100)
- [ ] Must be UL listed “combination type” _3902.12_ (210.12A)

### LIGHTING OUTLETS

**Required Locations**

- [ ] All habitable rooms & bathrooms _3903.2_ (210.70A1)
- [ ] Switched recep OK in lieu of lighting outlet except in kitchens & bathrooms _3903.2X1_ (210.70A1X)
- [ ] Hallways, stairways & garages _3903.3_ (210.70A2)
- [ ] Outside each exterior door w/ grade-level access _3903.3_ (210.70A2)
- [ ] Not req’d at garage vehicle door _3903.3_ (210.70A2)

**Switching**

- [ ] All switching in ungrounded (hot) conductors _4001.8_ (404.2A&B)
- [ ] Req’d at each access to interior stairs if ≥ 6 risers _3903.3_ (210.70A2)
- [ ] No dimmers controlling switched recepts _4001.12_ (404.14E)
- [ ] Neutral req’d at switch box _4001.15_ (404.2C)

**Bath**

- [ ] No pendant, track, or suspended lights or paddle fans < 8 ft. above 3 ft. to side of tub/shower _4003_ (410.10D)
- [ ] Luminaires < 8 ft. above foot print of tub/shower L&L for damp or wet locations subject to shower spray _4003_ (410.10D)

**Recessed Lights**

- [ ] Type IC OK in contact w/ insulation & combustibles _4004.8&B_ (410.116A2)
- [ ] Recessed light (non-IC rated) 1/2 in. from combustibles _4004.8_ (410.116A1)
- [ ] Recessed light (non-IC rated) 3 in. from insulation _4004.9_ (410.116B)

**Clothes Closet F72**

- [ ] No open incandescent bulb fixtures _4003.12_ (410.16B)
- [ ] Storage area = 12 in. shelf width & to ceiling _4003.12_ (410.2)
- [ ] Enclosed surface incandescent: 12 in. clearance _4003.12_ (410.16C)
- [ ] LED, fluorescent, or recessed incandescent: 6 in. __ _4003.12_ (410.16C)

---

**FIG. 71**

**Air Conditioning Condenser**

Switch must have working clearance.

---

**FIG. 72**

Closet Light Clearances

- Surface fluorescent, LED, or recessed incandescent

- Shaded areas are designated as storage. The storage area above the shelf is the shelf width or 12 in. whichever is greater.
PINK CODE ILLUSTRATIONS

Dhiru Thadani created a beautiful three-slide sequence explaining the leanness of the Pink Code.